Seventh Edition

Product Design AND Development

Karl T. Ulrich Steven D. Eppinger Maria C. Yang

Mc Graw Hill

Product Design and Development

Seventh Edition

Karl T. Ulrich
University of Pennsylvania

Steven D. Eppinger
Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Maria C. Yang
Massachusetts Institute of Technology

Mc Graw Hill

PRODUCT DESIGN AND DEVELOPMENT, SEVENTH EDITION

Published by McGraw-Hill Education, 2 Penn Plaza, New York, NY 10121.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 LCR 21 20 19

ISBN 978-1-260-04365-5 (bound edition)
MHID 1-260-04365-7 (bound edition)
ISBN 978-1-260-13444-5 (loose-leaf edition)
MHID 1-260-13444-X (loose-leaf edition)

Executive Portfolio Manager: *Meredith Fossel*
Associate Porfolio Manager: *Laura Hurst Spell*
Marketing Manager: *Nicole Young*
Content Project Manager: *Lisa Bruflodt*
Buyer: *Laura Fuller*
Designer: *Beth Blech*
Content Licensing Specialist: *Jacob Sullivan*
Cover Image: *Toothbrushes: ©Koninklijke Philips NV; Hopper: ©Wazer, Inc.; Vacuum: ©SharkNinja*
Compositor: *SPi Global*
All credits appearing on page or at the end of the book are considered to be an extension of the copyright page.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Ulrich, Karl T., author. | Eppinger, Steven D., author. | Yang, Maria C., author.
Title: Product design and development / Karl T. Ulrich, University of Pennsylvania, Steven D. Eppinger, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Maria C. Yang, Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
Description: Seventh edition. | New York, NY : McGraw-Hill Education, [2020] | Includes index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2019015282 | ISBN 9781260043655 (alk. paper)
Subjects: LCSH: Industrial management. | Production management. | Industrial engineering. | New products—Management.
Classification: LCC HD31 .U47 2020 | DDC 658.5/752—dc23 LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2019015282

To the professionals who shared their experiences with us and to the product development teams we hope will benefit from those experiences.

About the Authors

Karl T. Ulrich *University of Pennsylvania*
is the CIBC Professor and Vice Dean of Innovation at the Wharton School at the University of Pennsylvania and is also Professor of Mechanical Engineering. He received the S.B., S.M., and Sc.D. degrees in Mechanical Engineering from MIT. Professor Ulrich has led the development efforts for many products, including medical devices and sporting goods, and is the founder of several technology-based companies. As a result of this work, he has received more than 24 patents. His current research concerns technological innovation, product design, and entrepreneurship.

Steven D. Eppinger *Massachusetts Institute of Technology*
is the General Motors LGO Professor of Management Science and Innovation at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology Sloan School of Management. He received the S.B., S.M., and Sc.D. degrees in Mechanical Engineering from MIT and served as Deputy Dean of the MIT Sloan School for five years. He specializes in the management of complex product development processes and has worked extensively with the automobile, electronics, aerospace, medical devices, and capital equipment industries. His current research is aimed at the creation of improved product development practices, systems engineering methods, and project management techniques.

Maria C. Yang *Massachusetts Institute of Technology*
is Professor of Mechanical Engineering and MacVicar Faculty Fellow at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. She earned an S.B. from MIT and M.S. and Ph.D. from Stanford University, all in Mechanical Engineering. Her research investigates how early stage design process drives innovation. Her work spans product design to complex engineering systems, with applications in aerospace, energy, and water. She is an ASME Fellow and a recipient of the NSF CAREER award. Yang has previously served as director of design at a Silicon Valley start-up and cofounded a consumer product start-up.

Preface

This book contains material developed for use in the interdisciplinary courses on product development that we teach. Participants in these courses include graduate students in engineering, industrial design students, and MBA students. While we aimed the book at interdisciplinary graduate-level audiences such as this, many faculty teaching graduate and undergraduate courses in engineering design have also found the material useful. *Product Design and Development* is also for practicing professionals. Indeed, we could not avoid writing for a professional audience, because most of our students are themselves professionals who have worked either in product development or in closely related functions.

This book blends the perspectives of marketing, design, and manufacturing into a single approach to product development. As a result, we provide students of all kinds with an appreciation for the realities of industrial practice and for the complex and essential roles played by the various members of product development teams. For industrial practitioners, in particular, we provide a set of product development methods that can be put into immediate practice on development projects.

A debate often heard in the academic community relates to whether design should be taught primarily by establishing a foundation of theory or by engaging students in loosely supervised practice. For the broader activity of product design and development, we reject both approaches when taken to their extremes. Theory without practice is ineffective because there are many nuances, exceptions, and subtleties to be learned in practical settings and because some necessary tasks simply lack sufficient theoretical underpinnings. Practice without guidance can too easily result in frustration and fails to exploit the knowledge that successful product development professionals and researchers have accumulated over time. Product development, in this respect, is like sailing: proficiency is gained through practice, but some theory of how sails work and some instruction in the mechanics (and even tricks) of operating the boat help tremendously.

We attempt to strike a balance between theory and practice through our emphasis on methods. The methods we present are typically step-by-step procedures for completing tasks, but rarely embody a clean and concise theory. In some cases, the methods are supported in part by a long tradition of research and practice, as in the chapter on product development economics. In other cases, the methods are a distillation of relatively recent and *ad hoc* techniques, as in the chapter on design for environment. In all cases, the methods provide a concrete approach to solving a product development problem. In our experience, product development is best learned by applying structured methods to ongoing project work in either industrial or academic settings. Therefore, we intend this book to be used as a guide to completing development tasks either in the context of a course project or in industrial practice.

An industrial example or case study illustrates every method in the book. We chose to use different products as the examples for each chapter rather than carrying the same example through the entire book. We provide this variety because we think it makes the book more interesting and because we hope to illustrate that the methods can be applied to a wide range of products, from industrial equipment to consumer products.

We designed the book to be extremely modular—it consists of 19 independent chapters. Each chapter presents a development method for a specific portion of the product development process. The primary benefit of the modular approach is that each chapter can be used independently of the rest of the book. This way, faculty, students, and practitioners can easily access the material they find most useful.

This seventh edition of the book includes updated examples and data. We have also revised the book throughout with insights from recent research and innovations in practice.

We maintain a website to supplement the book. The site is intended to be a resource for instructors, students, and practitioners. We will keep the site current with additional references, examples, and links to available resources related to the product development topics in each chapter. Please make use of this information via www.pdd-resources.net.

The application of structured methods to product development also facilitates the study and improvement of development processes. We hope, in fact, that readers will use the ideas in this book as seeds for the creation of their own development methods, uniquely suited to their personalities, talents, and company environments. We encourage readers to share their experiences with us and to provide suggestions for improving this material. Please write to us with your ideas and comments at ulrich@wharton.upenn.edu, eppinger@mit.edu, and mcyang@mit.edu.

Acknowledgments

Hundreds of people contributed to this book in large and small ways. We are grateful to the many industrial practitioners who provided data, examples, and insights. We appreciate the assistance we have received from numerous academic colleagues, research assistants, and support staff, from our sponsors, and from the McGraw-Hill team. Indeed we could not have completed this project without the cooperation and collaboration of many professionals, colleagues, and friends. Thank you all.

Financial support for the initial development of this textbook came from the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation, from the MIT Leaders for Manufacturing Program, and from the MIT Center for Innovation in Product Development.

Many industrial practitioners helped us in gathering data and developing examples. We would particularly like to acknowledge the following: Richard Ahern, Liz Altman, Lindsay Anderson, Terri Anderson, Mario Belsanti, Mike Benjamin, Scott Beutler, Bill Burton, Michael Carter, Jim Caruso, Pat Casey, Scott Charon, Victor Cheung, James Christian, Alan Cook, David Cutherell, Tim Davis, Tom Davis, John Elter, George Favaloro, Marc Filerman, David Fitzpatrick, Gregg Geiger, Anthony Giordano, David Gordon, Kamala Grasso, Matt Haggerty, Rick Harkey, Matthew Hern, Alan Huffenus, Art Janzen, Randy Jezowski, Carol Keller, Edward Kreuzer, David Lauzun, Peter Lawrence, Brian Lee, David Levy, Jonathan Li, Albert Lucchetti, Brint Markle, Paul Martin, Doug Miller, Leo Montagna, Al Nagle, John Nicklaus, Hossain Nivi, Chris Norman, Paolo Pascarella, E. Timothy Pawl, Parika Petaipimol, Paul Piccolomini, Amy Potts, Earl Powell, Jason Ruble, Virginia Runkle, Nader Sabbaghian, Mark Schurman, Norm Seguin, David Shea, Wei-Ming Shen, Sonja Song, Leon Soren, Paul Staelin, Michael Stephens, Scott Stropkay, Larry Sullivan, Malcom Taylor, Brian Vogel, David Webb, Bob Weisshappel, Dan Williams, Gabe Wing, Sabrina Chang Svec, Mark Winter, and Raymond Wong.

We have received tremendous assistance from our colleagues who have offered frequent encouragement and support for our somewhat unusual approach to teaching and research, some of which is reflected in this book. We are especially indebted to the unique partnerships at MIT involving the engineering and management schools. These programs include Leaders for Manufacturing (LFM), Leaders for Global Operations (LGO), System Design and Management (SDM), Integrated Design and Management (IDM), and Center for Innovation in Product Development (CIPD). We have benefited from collaboration with the faculty and staff associated with these programs, especially Gabriel Bitran, Kent Bowen, Don Clausing, Tom Eagar, Charlie Fine, Woodie Flowers, Steve Graves, John Hauser, Rebecca Henderson, Maurice Holmes, Matt Kressy, Tom Magnanti, Kevin Otto, Don Rosenfield, Warren Seering, Shoji Shiba, Anna Thornton, Jim Utterback, Eric von Hippel, Dave Wallace, and Dan Whitney. We have received financial support from LFM, CIPD, and the Gordon Book Fund. Most important, MIT's partner companies have provided us with unparalleled access to industrial projects and research problems in product development and manufacturing.

Several faculty members have helped us by reviewing chapters and providing feedback from their in-class trials in teaching with this material. We are particularly grateful to these reviewers and “beta testers”: Alice Agogino, Steven Beyerlein, Don Brown, Steve Brown, Charles Burnette, Gary Cadenhead, Roger Calantone, Cho Lik Chan, Kim Clark, Richard L. Clark, Jr., Morris Cohen, Denny Davis, Michael Duffey, William Durfee, Donald Elger, Josh Eliashberg, David Ellison, Woodie Flowers, Gary Gabriele, Paulo Gomes, Abbie Griffin, Marc Harrison, Rebecca Henderson, Tim Hight, Mike Houston, Marco Iansiti, Kos Ishii, Nitin Joglekar, R. T. Johnson, Kyoung-Yun “Joseph” Kim, Annette Köhler, Viswanathan Krishnan, Yuyi Lin, Richard Locke, Bill Lovejoy, Jeff Meldman, Farrokh Mistree, Donatus Ohanehi, Wanda Orlikowski, Louis Padulo, Matthew Parkinson, Robert Pelke, Warren Seering, Paul Sheng, Robert Smith, Carl Sorensen, Michael A. Stanko, Mark Steiner, Cassandra Telenko, Christian Terwiesch, Chuck Turtle, Marcie Tyre, Dan Whitney, Kristin Wood, Maria Yang, and Khim-Teck Yeo.

Several industrial practitioners and training experts have also assisted us by reviewing and commenting on draft chapters: Wesley Allen, Jerome Arul, Geoffrey Boothroyd, Gary Burchill, Clay Burns, Eugene Cafarelli, James Carter, Kimi Ceridon, David Cutherell, Gerard Furbershaw, Jack Harkins, Gerhard Jünemann, David Meeker, Ulrike Närger, B. Joseph Pine II, William Townsend, Brian Vogel, and John Wesner.

We also wish to acknowledge the thousands of students in the classes in which we have tested these teaching materials. These students have been in several teaching programs at MIT, Helsinki University of Technology, Rhode Island School of Design, HEC Paris, STOA (Italy), University of Pennsylvania, and Nanyang Technological University (Singapore). Many students provided constructive comments for improving the structure and delivery of the material finally contained here. Also, our experiences in observing the students’ use of these methods in product development projects have greatly helped us refine the material.

Several students served as research assistants to help investigate many of the development methods, examples, and data contained in the book. These individuals are Michael Baeriswyl (Chapters 12, 17, and 18), Anitha Balasubramaniam (Chapter 18), Paul Brody (Chapter 11), Tom Foody (Chapter 18), Amy Greenlief (Chapter 14), Christopher Hession (Chapter 4), Eric Howlett (Chapter 8), Emily Hsu (Chapter 11), Timothy Li (Chapter 5), Tom Pimmler (Chapter 13 Appendices), Stephen Raab (Chapter 19), Harrison Roberts (Chapter 13 Appendices), Jonathan Sterrett (Chapter 5), and Gavin Zau (Chapter 7).

Other MIT students have also contributed by assisting with data collection and by offering comments and stimulating criticisms related to some of the chapters: Tom Abell, E. Yung Cha, Steve Daleiden, Russell Epstein, Matthew Fein, Brad Forry, Mike Frauens, Ben Goss, Daniel Hommes, Bill Liteplo, Habs Moy, Robert Northrop, Leslie Prince Rudolph, Vikas Sharma, and Ranjini Srikantiah.

The staff throughout the McGraw-Hill Education organization has been superb. We are particularly grateful for the support of our associate portfolio manager Laura Hurst Spell. We also appreciate the efforts of project manager Lisa Bruflodt, copy editor Jennifer Blankenship, photo researcher Jacob Sullivan.

Finally, we thank our families for their love and support. Our parents provided much encouragement. Nancy, Julie, Tony, Lauren, Andrew, Jamie, Nathan, Pablo, and Luca have shown endless patience over the years of this ongoing product development project.

Karl T. Ulrich

Steven D. Eppinger

Maria C.Yang

Brief Contents

About the Authors iv
Preface v
Acknowledgments vii

1 Introduction 1
2 Product Development Process and Organization 11
3 Opportunity Identification 35
4 Product Planning 55
5 Identifying Customer Needs 77
6 Product Specifications 95
7 Concept Generation 121
8 Concept Selection 149
9 Concept Testing 171
10 Product Architecture 189
11 Industrial Design 213
12 Design for Environment 237
13 Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain 261
14 Prototyping 295
15 Robust Design 317
16 Patents and Intellectual Property 337
17 Service Design 359
18 Product Development Economics 373
19 Project Management 401

Index **425**

McGraw Hill
501-1333

Contents

About the Authors iv
Preface v
Acknowledgments vii

Chapter 1
Introduction 1

Characteristics of Successful Product Development 2
Who Designs and Develops Products? 3
Duration and Cost of Product Development 5
The Challenges of Product Development 6
Approach of This Book 6
Structured Methods 7
Industrial Examples 7
Organizational Realities 7
Roadmap of the Book 8
References and Bibliography 10
Exercises 10
Thought Question 10

Chapter 2
Product Development Process and Organization 11

The Product Development Process 12
Concept Development: The Front-End Process 16
Adapting the Generic Product Development Process 18
Technology-Push Products 18
Platform Products 20
Process-Intensive Products 20
Customized Products 20
High-Risk Products 21
Quick-Build Products 21
Digital Products 21
Product-Service Systems 22
Complex Systems 22
Product Development Process Flows 22
The Tyco Product Development Process 23
Product Development Organizations 24
Organizations Are Formed by Establishing Links among Individuals 24
Organizational Links May Be Aligned with Functions, Projects, or Both 26
Choosing an Organizational Structure 27
Distributed Product Development Teams 30
The Tyco Product Development Organization 30
Summary 31
References and Bibliography 31
Exercises 33
Thought Questions 33

Chapter 3
Opportunity Identification 35

What Is an Opportunity? 36
Types of Opportunities 36
Tournament Structure of Opportunity Identification 37
Effective Opportunity Tournaments 39
Opportunity Identification Process 41
Step 1: Establish a Charter 41
Step 2: Generate and Sense Many Opportunities 42
Techniques for Generating Opportunities 42
Step 3: Screen Opportunities 48
Step 4: Develop Promising Opportunities 49
Step 5: Select Exceptional Opportunities 49
Step 6: Reflect on the Results and the Process 51
Summary 52
References and Bibliography 52
Exercises 53
Thought Questions 53

Chapter 4
Product Planning 55

The Product Planning Process 57
Four Types of Product Development Projects 58
The Process 58
Step 1: Identify Opportunities 59
Step 2: Evaluate and Prioritize Projects 60
Competitive Strategy 60
Market Segmentation 61
Technological Trajectories 61
Product Platform Planning 63
Technology Roadmapping 64
Evaluating Fundamentally New Product Opportunities 65
Balancing the Portfolio 65
Step 3: Allocate Resources and Plan Timing 67
Resource Allocation 68
Project Timing 69
The Product Plan 69
Step 4: Complete Pre-Project Planning 69
Mission Statements 70
Assumptions and Constraints 71
Staffing and Other Pre-Project Planning Activities 72
Step 5: Reflect on the Results and the Process 72
Summary 73
References and Bibliography 73
Exercises 75
Thought Questions 75

Chapter 5
Identifying Customer Needs 77

The Importance of Latent Needs 79
The Process of Identifying Customer Needs 79
Step 1: Gather Raw Data from Customers 81
Choosing Customers 82
The Art of Eliciting Customer Needs Data 84
Documenting Interactions with Customers 85
Step 2: Interpret Raw Data in Terms of Customer Needs 87
Step 3: Organize the Needs into a Hierarchy 88
Step 4: Establish the Relative Importance of the Needs 90
Step 5: Reflect on the Results and the Process 92
Summary 92
References and Bibliography 93
Exercises 94
Thought Questions 94

Chapter 6
Product Specifications 95

What Are Specifications? 96
When Are Specifications Established? 97
Establishing Target Specifications 98
Step 1: Prepare the List of Metrics 99
Step 2: Collect Competitive Benchmarking Information 103
Step 3: Set Ideal and Marginally Acceptable Target Values 103
Step 4: Reflect on the Results and the Process 107
Setting the Final Specifications 107
Step 1: Develop Technical Models of the Product 109
Step 2: Develop a Cost Model of the Product 110
Step 3: Refine the Specifications, Making Trade-Offs Where Necessary 112
Step 4: Flow Down the Specifications as Appropriate 113
Step 5: Reflect on the Results and the Process 115
Summary 115
References and Bibliography 116
Exercises 117
Thought Questions 117
Appendix
Target Costing 118

Chapter 7
Concept Generation 121

The Activity of Concept Generation 122
Structured Approaches Reduce the Likelihood of Costly Problems 123
A Five-Step Method 123
Step 1: Clarify the Problem 124
Decompose a Complex Problem into Simpler Subproblems 125
Focus Initial Efforts on the Critical Subproblems 127

Step 2: Search Externally 128
Interview Lead Users 128
Consult Experts 129
Search Patents 129
Search Published Literature 130
Benchmark-Related Products 131
Step 3: Search Internally 131
Both Individual and Group Sessions Can Be Useful 132
Hints for Generating Solution Concepts 133
Step 4: Explore Systematically 135
Concept Classification Tree 136
Concept Combination Table 138
Managing the Exploration Process 141
Step 5: Reflect on the Solutions and the Process 143
Summary 144
References and Bibliography 145
Exercises 147
Thought Questions 147

Chapter 8
Concept Selection 149

Concept Selection Is an Integral Part of the Product Development Process 150
All Teams Use Some Method for Choosing a Concept 151
A Structured Method Offers Several Benefits 154
Overview of Methodology 155
Concept Screening 156
Step 1: Prepare the Selection Matrix 156
Step 2: Rate the Concepts 157
Step 3: Rank the Concepts 158
Step 4: Combine and Improve the Concepts 158
Step 5: Select One or More Concepts 158
Step 6: Reflect on the Results and the Process 159
Concept Scoring 160
Step 1: Prepare the Selection Matrix 160
Step 2: Rate the Concepts 161
Step 3: Rank the Concepts 162
Step 4: Combine and Improve the Concepts 162
Step 5: Select One or More Concepts 162
Step 6: Reflect on the Results and the Process 163
Caveats 163
Summary 165
References and Bibliography 165
Exercises 166
Thought Questions 167
Appendix A
Concept-Screening Matrix Example 168
Appendix B
Concept-Scoring Matrix Example 169

Chapter 9
Concept Testing 171

Step 1: Define the Purpose of the Concept Test 173
Step 2: Choose a Survey Population 173
Step 3: Choose a Survey Format 174
Step 4: Communicate the Concept 175
Matching the Survey Format with the Means of Communicating the Concept 179
Issues in Communicating the Concept 179
Step 5: Measure Customer Response 181
Step 6: Interpret the Results 181
Step 7: Reflect on the Results and the Process 184
Summary 185
References and Bibliography 185
Exercises 186
Thought Questions 186
Appendix
Estimating Market Sizes 187

Chapter 10
Product Architecture 189

What Is Product Architecture? 190
Types of Modularity 192
When Is the Product Architecture Defined? 193
Implications of the Architecture 193
Product Change 193
Product Variety 194
Component Standardization 195
Product Performance 195
Manufacturability 196
Product Development Management 196
Establishing the Architecture 197
Step 1: Create a Schematic of the Product 197
Step 2: Cluster the Elements of the Schematic 199
Step 3: Create a Rough Geometric Layout 201
Step 4: Identify the Fundamental and Incidental Interactions 202

Delayed Differentiation 203
Platform Planning 206
Differentiation Plan 206
Commonality Plan 206
Managing the Trade-Off between Differentiation and Commonality 207
Related System-Level Design Issues 208
Defining Secondary Systems 208
Establishing the Architecture of the Chunks 209
Creating Detailed Interface Specifications 209
Summary 210
References and Bibliography 210
Exercises 212
Thought Questions 212

Chapter 11
Industrial Design 213

What Is Industrial Design? 216
Assessing the Need for Industrial Design 217
Expenditures for Industrial Design 217
How Important Is Industrial Design to a Product? 218
User Experience Needs 219
Aesthetic Needs 219
The Impact of Industrial Design 220
Is Industrial Design Worth the Investment? 220
How Does Industrial Design Establish a Corporate Identity? 222
The Industrial Design Process 223
1. Investigation of Customer Needs 224
2. Conceptualization 224
3. Preliminary Refinement 225
4. Further Refinement and Final Concept Selection 225
5. Control Drawings or Models 226
6. Coordination with Engineering, Manufacturing, and External Vendors 227
Management of the Industrial Design Process 227
Timing of Industrial Design Involvement 229
Assessing the Quality of Industrial Design 229
1. Usability 230
2. Emotional Appeal 230
3. Ability to Maintain and Repair the Product 231
4. Appropriate Use of Resources 232
5. Product Differentiation 232
Summary 232
References and Bibliography 233
Exercises 234
Thought Questions 235

Chapter 12
Design for Environment 237

What Is Design for Environment? 239
Two Life Cycles 240
Environmental Impacts 241
History of Design for Environment 242
Herman Miller's Journey toward Design for Environment 242
The Design for Environment Process? 243
Step 1: Set the DFE Agenda: Drivers, Goals, and Team 244
Identify the Internal and External Drivers of DFE 244
Set the DFE Goals 245
Set Up the DFE Team 246
Step 2: Identify Potential Environmental Impacts 247
Step 3: Select DFE Guidelines 248
Step 4: Apply the DFE Guidelines to the Initial Product Design 250
Step 5: Assess the Environmental Impacts 251
Compare the Environmental Impacts to DFE Goals 252
Step 6: Refine the Product Design to Reduce or Eliminate the Environmental Impacts 252
Step 7: Reflect on the DFE Process and Results 253
Summary 255
References and Bibliography 255
Exercises 256
Thought Questions 257
Appendix
Design for Environment Guidelines 258

Chapter 13
Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain 261

Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain Defined 262
DFM Requires a Cross-Functional Team 262
DFM Is Performed throughout the Development Process 263
Overview of the DFM Method 263

Step 1: Consider the Strategic Sourcing Decisions 264
Step 2: Estimate the Manufacturing Costs 266
Cost of Goods 266
Fixed Costs versus Variable Costs 269
The Bill of Materials 269
Estimating the Costs of Standard Components 270
Estimating the Costs of Custom Components 271
Estimating the Costs of Assembly 272
Estimating the Overhead Costs 273
Step 3: Reduce the Costs of Components 274
Understand the Process Constraints and Cost Drivers 274
Redesign Components to Eliminate Processing Steps 275
Choose the Appropriate Economic Scale for the Part Process 275
Standardize Components 276
Adhere to "Black Box" Component Procurement 276
Step 4: Reduce the Costs of Assembly 277
Integrate Parts 277
Maximize Ease of Assembly 277
Consider Customer Assembly 278
Step 5: Reduce the Costs of Supporting Production 278
Minimize Systemic Complexity 279
Error Proofing 279
Step 6: Reduce the Costs of Logistics 280
Here are some guidelines for minimizing volume 280
Step 7: Consider the Impact of DFM Decisions on Other Factors 281
The Impact of DFM on Development Time 281
The Impact of DFM on Development Cost 281
The Impact of DFM on Product Quality 281
The Impact of DFM on the Larger Enterprise 282
Results 282
Summary 283
References and Bibliography 284
Exercises 284
Thought Questions 285
Appendix A
Materials Costs 286
Appendix B
Component Manufacturing Costs 287
Appendix C
Assembly Costs 293
Appendix D
Cost Structures 294

Chapter 14
Prototyping 295

Understanding Prototypes 297
Types of Prototypes 297
What Are Prototypes Used For? 300
Principles of Prototyping 303
Analytical Prototypes Are Generally More Flexible Than Physical Prototypes 303
Physical Prototypes Are Required to Detect Unanticipated Phenomena 303
A Prototype May Reduce the Risk of Costly Iterations 304
A Prototype May Expedite Other Development Steps 306
A Prototype May Restructure Task Dependencies 307
Prototyping Technologies 307
CAD Modeling and Analysis 307
3D Printing 308
Planning for Prototypes 309
Step 1: Define the Purpose of the Prototype 309
Step 2: Establish the Level of Approximation of the Prototype 310
Step 3: Outline an Experimental Plan 310
Step 4: Create a Schedule for Procurement, Construction, and Testing 310
Planning Milestone Prototypes 311
Summary 312
References and Bibliography 313
Exercises 314
Thought Questions 315

Chapter 15
Robust Design 317

What Is Robust Design? 318
Design of Experiments 320
The Robust Design Process 321

Step 1: Identify Control Factors, Noise Factors, and Performance Metrics 321
Step 2: Formulate an Objective Function 322
Step 3: Develop the Experimental Plan 323
Experimental Designs 323
Testing Noise Factors 325
Step 4: Run the Experiment 327
Step 5: Conduct the Analysis 327
Computing the Objective Function 327
Computing Factor Effects by Analysis of Means 328
Step 6: Select and Confirm Factor Setpoints 329
Step 7: Reflect and Repeat 329
Caveats 330
Summary 330
References and Bibliography 331
Exercises 332
Thought Questions 332
Appendix
Orthogonal Arrays 333

Chapter 16
Patents and Intellectual Property 337

What Is Intellectual Property? 338
Overview of Patents 339
Utility Patents 340
Preparing a Disclosure 340
Step 1: Formulate a Strategy and Plan 342
Timing of Patent Applications 342
Type of Application 343
Scope of Application 344
Step 2: Study Prior Inventions 344
Step 3: Outline Claims 345
Step 4: Write the Description of the Invention 346
Figures 347
Writing the Detailed Description 347
Defensive Disclosure 348
Step 5: Refine Claims 349
Writing the Claims 349
Guidelines for Crafting Claims 352
Step 6: Pursue Application 352
Step 7: Reflect on the Results and the Process 354
Summary 354
References and Bibliography 355
Exercises 355
Thought Questions 355
Appendix A
Trademarks 356
Appendix B
Advice to Individual Inventors 356

Chapter 17
Service Design 359

Product-Service Systems 360
In What Ways Are Services and Products Different? 361
The Service Design Process 362
The Service Concept 362
Concept Development at Zipcar 364
The Service Process Flow Diagram 365
Subsequent Refinement 366
Downstream Development Activities in Services 366
Prototyping a Service 367
Growing Services 368
Continuous Improvement 368
Summary 369
References and Bibliography 370
Exercises 370
Thought Questions 371

Chapter 18
Product Development Economics 373

Elements of Economic Analysis 374
Quantitative Analysis 374
Qualitative Analysis 375
When Should Economic Analysis Be Performed? 375
Economic Analysis Process 376
Step 1: Build a Base-Case Financial Model 376
Estimate the Timing and Magnitude of Future Cash Inflows and Outflows 376
Compute the Net Present Value of the Cash Flows 378
Other Cash Flows 379
Supporting Go/No-Go and Major Investment Decisions 380
Step 2: Perform Sensitivity Analysis 381
Development Cost Example 381
Development Time Example 383
Understanding Uncertainties 384

Step 3: Use Sensitivity Analysis to Understand Trade-Offs 384

Potential Interactions 386

Trade-Off Rules 387

Limitations of Quantitative Analysis 388

Step 4: Consider the Influence of Qualitative Factors 389

Projects Interact with the Firm, the Market, and the Macro Environment 389

Carrying Out Qualitative Analysis 391

Summary 392

References and Bibliography 393

Exercises 394

Thought Questions 394

Appendix A

Time Value of Money and the Net Present Value Technique 395

Appendix B

Modeling Uncertain Cash Flows Using Net Present Value Analysis 397

Chapter 19

Project Management 401

Understanding and Representing Tasks 402

Sequential, Parallel, and Coupled Tasks 402

The Design Structure Matrix 404

Gantt Charts 405

PERT Charts 406

The Critical Path 406

Baseline Project Planning 407

The Contract Book 407

Project Task List 407

Team Staffing and Organization 409

Project Schedule 410

Project Budget 411

Project Risk Plan 411

Modifying the Baseline Plan 412

Accelerating Projects 413

Project Execution 415

Coordination Mechanisms 416

Assessing Project Status 419

Corrective Actions 419

Postmortem Project Evaluation 420

Summary 422

References and Bibliography 422

Exercises 424

Thought Questions 424

Index 425

CHAPTER ONE

Introduction

Clockwise from top left: Courtesy of Belle-V LLC; Courtesy of AvaTech; ©Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography/Alamy; ©Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography/Alamy; ©Robert Clayton/Alamy.

EXHIBIT 1-1
Examples of engineered, discrete, physical products (clockwise from top left): Belle-V Ice Cream Scoop, AvaTech Avalanche Probe, iRobot Roomba Vacuum Cleaner, Tesla Model S Automobile, Boeing 787 Aircraft.

The economic success of most firms depends on their ability to identify the needs of customers and to quickly create products that meet these needs and can be produced at low cost. Achieving these goals is not solely a marketing problem, nor is it solely a design problem or a manufacturing problem; it is a product development problem involving all of these functions. This book provides a collection of methods intended to enhance the abilities of cross-functional teams to work together to develop products.

A *product* is something sold by an enterprise to its customers. *Product development* is the set of activities beginning with the perception of a market opportunity and ending in the production, sale, and delivery of a product. Although much of the material in this book is useful in the development of any product, we explicitly focus on products that are engineered, discrete, and physical. Exhibit 1-1 displays several examples of products from this category. Because we focus on engineered products, the book applies better to the development of power tools and computer peripherals than to magazines or sweaters. Our focus on discrete goods makes the book less applicable to the development of products such as gasoline, nylon, and paper. Because of the focus on physical products, we do not emphasize the specific issues involved in developing services or software. Even with these restrictions, the methods presented apply well to a broad range of products, including, for example, consumer electronics, sports equipment, scientific instruments, machine tools, and medical devices.

The goal of this book is to present in a clear and detailed way a set of product development methods aimed at bringing together the marketing, design, and manufacturing functions of the enterprise. In this introductory chapter, we describe some aspects of the industrial practice of product development and provide a roadmap of the book.

Characteristics of Successful Product Development

From the perspective of the investors in a for-profit enterprise, successful product development results in products that can be produced and sold profitably, yet profitability is often difficult to assess quickly and directly. Five more specific dimensions, all of which ultimately relate to profit, are commonly used to assess the performance of a product development effort:

- ***Product quality:*** How good is the product resulting from the development effort? Does it satisfy customer needs? Is it robust and reliable? Product quality is ultimately reflected in market share and the price that customers are willing to pay.
- ***Product cost:*** What is the manufacturing cost of the product? This cost includes spending on capital equipment and tooling as well as the incremental cost of producing each unit of the product. Product cost determines how much profit accrues to the firm for a particular sales volume and a particular sales price.
- ***Development time:*** How quickly did the team complete the product development effort? Development time determines how responsive the firm can be to competitive forces and to technological developments, as well as how quickly the firm receives the economic returns from the team's efforts.
- ***Development cost:*** How much did the firm have to spend to develop the product? Development cost is usually a significant fraction of the investment required to achieve the profits.

- ***Development capability:*** Are the team and the firm better able to develop future products as a result of their experience with a product development project? Development capability is an asset the firm can use to develop products more effectively and economically in the future.

High performance, along these five dimensions, should ultimately lead to economic success; however, other performance criteria are also important. These criteria arise from interests of other stakeholders in the enterprise, including the members of the development team, other employees, and the community in which the product is manufactured. Members of the development team may be interested in creating an inherently exciting product. Members of the community in which the product is manufactured may be concerned about the degree to which the product creates jobs. Both production workers and users of the product hold the development team accountable to high safety standards, whether or not these standards can be justified on the strict basis of profitability. Other individuals, who may have no direct connection to the firm or the product, may demand that the product make ecologically sound use of resources and create minimal dangerous waste products.

Who Designs and Develops Products?

Product development is an interdisciplinary activity requiring contributions from nearly all the functions of a firm; however, three functions are almost always central to a product development project:

- ***Marketing:*** The marketing function mediates the interactions between the firm and its customers. Marketing often facilitates the identification of product opportunities, the definition of market segments, and the identification of customer needs. Marketing also typically arranges for communication between the firm and its customers, sets target prices, and oversees the launch and promotion of the product.
- ***Design:*** The design function plays the lead role in defining the physical form of the product to best meet customer needs. In this context, the design function includes engineering design (mechanical, electrical, software, etc.) and industrial design (aesthetics, ergonomics, user interfaces).
- ***Manufacturing:*** The manufacturing function is primarily responsible for designing, operating, and/or coordinating the production system in order to produce the product. Broadly defined, the manufacturing function also often includes purchasing, distribution, and installation. This collection of activities is sometimes called the *supply chain.*

Different individuals within these functions often have specific disciplinary training in areas such as market research, mechanical engineering, electrical engineering, materials science, or manufacturing operations. Several other functions, including finance and sales, are frequently involved on a part-time basis in the development of a new product. Beyond these broad functional categories, the specific composition of a development team depends on the particular characteristics of the product.

Rarely are products developed by a single individual. The collection of individuals developing a product forms the *project team.* This team usually has a single team leader, who could be drawn from any of the functions of the firm. The team can be thought of as

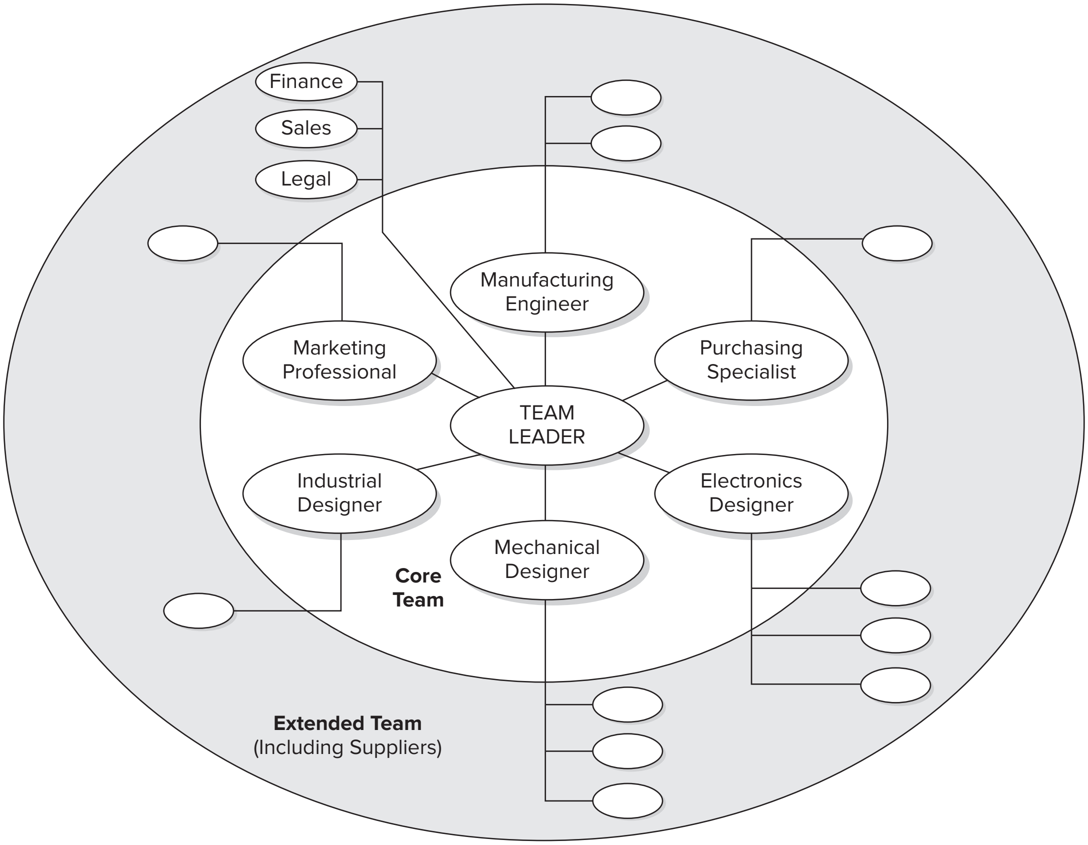


EXHIBIT 1-2 The composition of a product development team for an electromechanical product of modest complexity.

consisting of a *core team* and an *extended team.* In order to work together effectively, the core team usually remains small enough to meet in a conference room, while the extended team may consist of dozens, hundreds, or even thousands of other members. (Even though the term *team* is inappropriate for a group of thousands, the word is often used in this context to emphasize that the group must work toward a common goal.) In most cases, a team within the firm will be supported by individuals or teams at partner companies, suppliers, and consulting firms. Sometimes, as is the case for the development of a new airplane, the number of external team members may be even greater than that of the team within the company whose name will appear on the final product. The composition of a team for the development of an electromechanical product of modest complexity is shown in Exhibit 1-2.

Throughout this book we assume that the team is situated within a firm. In fact, a for-profit manufacturing company is the most common institutional setting for product development, but other settings are possible. Product development teams sometimes work within consulting firms, universities, government agencies, and nonprofit organizations.

	Belle-V Ice Cream Scoop	AvaTech Avalanche Probe	iRobot Roomba Vacuum Cleaner	Tesla Model S Automobile	Boeing 787 Aircraft
Annual production volume	10,000 units/year	1,000 units/year	2,000,000 units/year	50,000 units/year	120 units/year
Sales lifetime	10 years	3 years	2 years	5 years	40 years
Sales price	$40	$2,250	$500	$80,000	$250 million
Number of unique parts (part numbers)	2 parts	175 parts	1,000 parts	10,000 parts	130,000 parts
Development time	1 year	2 years	2 years	4 years	7 years
Internal development team (peak size)	4 people	6 people	100 people	1,000 people	7,000 people
External development team (peak size)	2 people	12 people	100 people	1,000 people	10,000 people
Development cost	$100,000	$1 million	$50 million	$500 million	$15 billion
Production investment	$20,000	$250,000	$10 million	$500 million	$15 billion

EXHIBIT 1-3 Attributes of five products and their associated development efforts. All figures are approximate, based on publicly available information, estimates, and company sources.

Duration and Cost of Product Development

Most people without experience in product development are astounded by how much time and money are required to develop a new product. The reality is that very few products can be developed in less than 1 year, many require 3 to 5 years, and some take as long as 10 years. Exhibit 1-1 shows five engineered, discrete products. Exhibit 1-3 is a table showing the approximate scale of the associated product development efforts along with some distinguishing characteristics of the products.

The cost of product development is roughly proportional to the number of people on the project team and to the duration of the project. In addition to expenses for development effort, a firm will almost always have to make some investment in the tooling and equipment required for production. This expense is often as large as the rest of the product development budget; however, it is sometimes useful to think of these expenditures as part of the *fixed costs* of production. For reference purposes, this production investment is listed in Exhibit 1-3 along with the development expenditures.

The Challenges of Product Development

Developing great products is hard. Few companies are highly successful more than half the time. These odds present a significant challenge for a product development team. Some of the characteristics that make product development challenging are:

- ***Trade-offs:*** An airplane can be made lighter, but this action will probably increase manufacturing cost. One of the most difficult aspects of product development is recognizing, understanding, and managing such trade-offs in a way that maximizes the success of the product.
- ***Dynamics:*** Technologies improve, customer preferences evolve, competitors introduce new products, and the macroeconomic environment shifts. Decision making in an environment of constant change is a formidable task.
- ***Details:*** The choice between using screws or snap-fits on the enclosure of a computer can have economic implications of millions of dollars. Developing a product of even modest complexity may require thousands of such decisions.
- ***Time pressure:*** Any one of these difficulties would be easily manageable by itself given plenty of time, but product development decisions must usually be made quickly and without complete information.
- ***Economics:*** Developing, producing, and marketing a new product requires a large investment. To earn a reasonable return on this investment, the resulting product must be both appealing to customers and relatively inexpensive to produce.

For many people, product development is interesting precisely because it is challenging. For others, several intrinsic attributes also contribute to its appeal:

- ***Creation:*** The product development process begins with an idea and ends with the production of a physical artifact. When viewed both in its entirety and at the level of individual activities, the product development process is intensely creative.
- ***Satisfaction of societal and individual needs:*** All products are aimed at satisfying needs of some kind. Individuals interested in developing new products can almost always find institutional settings in which they can develop products satisfying what they consider to be important needs.
- ***Team diversity:*** Successful development requires many different skills and talents. As a result, development teams involve people with a wide range of different training, experience, perspectives, and personalities.
- ***Team spirit:*** Product development teams are often highly motivated, cooperative groups. The team members may be colocated so they can focus their collective energy on creating the product. This situation can result in lasting camaraderie among team members.

Approach of This Book

We focus on product development activities that benefit from the participation of all the core functions of the firm. For our purposes, we define the core functions as marketing, design, and manufacturing. We expect that team members have competence in one or more specific disciplines such as mechanical engineering, electrical engineering, industrial design, market research, or manufacturing operations. For this reason, we do not discuss, for example, how to perform a stress analysis or to create a conjoint survey. These are disciplinary skills we expect someone on the development team to possess. The integrative methods in this book are intended to facilitate problem solving and decision making among people with different disciplinary perspectives.

Structured Methods

The book consists of methods for completing development activities. The methods are structured, which means we generally provide a step-by-step approach and often provide templates for the key information systems used by the team. We believe structured methods are valuable for three reasons: First, they make the decision process explicit, allowing everyone on the team to understand the decision rationale and reducing the possibility of moving forward with unsupported decisions. Second, by acting as "checklists" of the key steps in a development activity they ensure that important issues are not forgotten. Third, structured methods are largely self-documenting; in the process of executing the method, the team creates a record of the decision-making process for future reference and for educating newcomers.

Although the methods are structured, they are not intended to be applied blindly. The methods are a starting point for continuous improvement. Teams should adapt and modify the approaches to meet their own needs and to reflect the unique character of their institutional environment.

Industrial Examples

Each remaining chapter is built around an example drawn from industrial practice. The major examples include the following: a wireless security system, a laser-based cat toy, a digital copier, a thermostat, a mountain bike suspension fork, a power nailer, a dose-metering syringe, an electric scooter, a computer printer, a mobile telephone, office seating products, an automobile engine, a mobile robot, a seat belt system, a coffee-cup insulator, a coffee maker, and a microfilm cartridge. In most cases we use as examples the simplest products we have access to that illustrate the important aspects of the methods. When a syringe illustrates an idea as well as a jet engine, we use the syringe. However, every method in this book has been used successfully in industrial practice by hundreds of people on both large and small projects.

Although built around examples, the chapters are not intended to be historically accurate case studies. We use the examples as a way to illustrate development methods, and in doing so we recast some historical details in a way that improves the presentation of the material. We also disguise much of the quantitative information in the examples, especially financial data.

Organizational Realities

We deliberately chose to present the methods with the assumption that the development team operates in an organizational environment conducive to success. In reality, some organizations exhibit characteristics that lead to dysfunctional product development teams. These characteristics include:

- ***Lack of empowerment of the team:*** General managers or functional managers may engage in continual intervention in the details of a development project without a full understanding of the basis for the team's decisions.

- ***Functional allegiances transcending project goals:*** Representatives of marketing, design, or manufacturing may influence decisions in order to increase the political standing of themselves or their functions without regard for the overall success of the product.
- ***Inadequate resources:*** A team may be unable to complete development tasks effectively because of a lack of staff, a mismatch of skills, or a lack of money, equipment, or tools.
- ***Lack of cross-functional representation on the project team:*** Key development decisions may be made without involvement of marketing, design, manufacturing, or other critical functions.

While most organizations exhibit one or more of these characteristics to some degree, the significant presence of these problems can be so stifling that sound development methods are rendered ineffective. While recognizing the importance of basic organizational issues, we assume, for clarity of explanation, that the development team operates in an environment in which the most restrictive organizational barriers have been removed.

Roadmap of the Book

We divide the product development process into six phases, as shown in Exhibit 1-4. (These phases are described in more detail in Chapter 2, Product Development Process and Organization.) This book describes the concept development phase in its entirety and the remaining phases less completely, because we do not provide methods for the more focused development activities that occur later in the process. Each of the remaining chapters in this book can be read, understood, and applied independently.

- Chapter 2, Product Development Process and Organization, presents a generic product development process and shows how variants of this process are used in different industrial situations. The chapter also discusses the way individuals are organized into groups in order to undertake product development projects.
- Chapter 3, Opportunity Identification, describes a process for creating, identifying, and screening ideas for new products.
- Chapter 4, Product Planning, presents a method for deciding which products to develop. The output of this method is a mission statement for a particular project.
- Chapters 5 through 9, Identifying Customer Needs, Product Specifications, Concept Generation, Concept Selection, and Concept Testing, present the key activities of the concept development phase. These methods guide a team from a mission statement through a selected product concept.
- Chapter 10, Product Architecture, discusses the implications of product architecture on product change, product variety, component standardization, product performance, manufacturing cost, and project management; it then presents a method for establishing the architecture of a product.
- Chapter 11, Industrial Design, discusses the role of the industrial designer and how human interaction issues, including aesthetics and ergonomics, are treated in product development.
- Chapter 12, Design for Environment, considers the environmental impacts associated with products and presents a method for reducing these impacts through better design decisions.
- Chapter 13, Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain, discusses techniques used to reduce manufacturing cost. These techniques are primarily applied during the system-level and detail-design phases of the process.

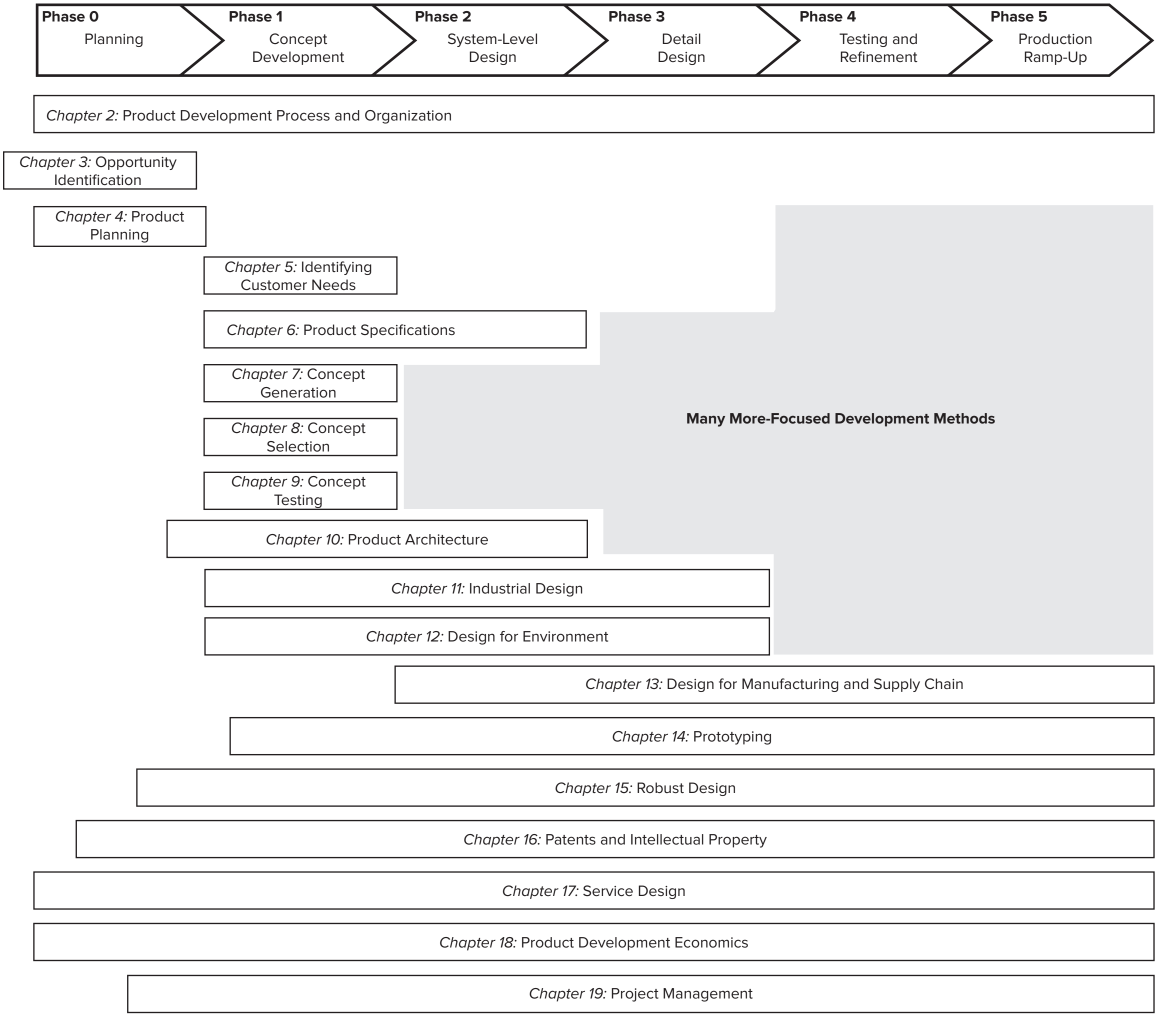


EXHIBIT 1-4 The product development process. The diagram shows where each of the integrative methods presented in the remaining chapters is most applicable.

- Chapter 14, Prototyping, presents a method to ensure that prototyping efforts, which occur throughout the process, are applied effectively.
- Chapter 15, Robust Design, explains methods for choosing values of design variables to ensure reliable and consistent performance.
- Chapter 16, Patents and Intellectual Property, presents an approach to creating a patent application and discusses the role of intellectual property in product development.
- Chapter 17, Service Design, shows how the methods in this book can be applied to the development of intangible products, and introduces a method for representing those products, the service process flow diagram.

- Chapter 18, Product Development Economics, describes a method for understanding the influence of internal and external factors on the economic value of a project.
- Chapter 19, Project Management presents some fundamental concepts for understanding and representing interacting project tasks, along with a method for planning and executing a development project.

References and Bibliography

A wide variety of resources for this chapter and for the rest of the book are available on the Internet. These resources include data, templates, links to suppliers, and lists of publications. Current resources may be accessed via
www.pdd-resources.net

Katzenbach and Smith write about teams in general, but most of their insights apply to product development teams as well.

Katzenbach, Jon R., and Douglas K. Smith, *The Wisdom of Teams: Creating the High-Performance Organization,* Harvard Business Review, Reprint Edition, Boston, 2015.

These four books provide rich narratives of development projects, including fascinating descriptions of the intertwined social and technical processes.

Kidder, Tracy, *The Soul of a New Machine,* Avon Books, New York, 1981.

Sabbagh, Karl, *Twenty-First-Century Jet: The Making and Marketing of the Boeing 777,* Scribner, New York, 1996.

Vance, Ashley, *Elon Musk: Tesla, SpaceX, and the Quest for a Fantastic Future,* HarperCollins, New York, 2015.

Walton, Mary, *Car: A Drama of the American Workplace,* Norton, New York, 1997.

Exercises

1. Estimate what fraction of the price of a coffee maker is required to cover the cost of developing the product. To do this you might start by estimating the information needed to fill out Exhibit 1-3 for the coffee maker.
2. Create a set of scatter charts by plotting each of the rows in Exhibit 1-3 against the development cost row. For each one, explain why there is or is not any correlation. (For example, you would first plot "annual production volume" versus "development cost" and explain why there seems to be no correlation. Then repeat for each of the remaining rows.)

Thought Question

1. Each of the chapters listed in Exhibit 1-4 presents a method for a portion of the product development process. For each one, consider what types of skills and expertise might be required. Can you make an argument for staffing the development team from start to finish with individuals possessing all of these skills and areas of expertise?

CHAPTER TWO

Product Development Process and Organization

Courtesy of Tyco International

EXHIBIT 2-1
A wireless security alarm system control panel, one of Tyco's products.

Tyco International is a leading manufacturer of sensors and controls, including home and industrial security systems. One of Tyco's products is the wireless security alarm system control panel shown in Exhibit 2-1. Senior managers at Tyco wanted to establish a common product development process structure that would be appropriate for all of the many different operating divisions across the company. They also needed to create a product development organization that would allow Tyco to compete effectively in a variety of competitive business markets. Some of the questions Tyco faced were:

- What are the key product development activities that must be included in every project?
- What project milestones and review gates can be used to manage the overall development process by phases?
- Is there a standard development process that will work for every operating division?
- What role do experts from different functional areas play in the development process?
- Should the development organization be divided into groups corresponding to projects or to technical and business functions?

This chapter helps answer these and related questions by presenting a generic development process and showing how this process can be adapted to meet the needs of particular industrial situations. We highlight the activities and contributions of different functions of the company during each phase of the development process. The chapter also explains what constitutes a product development organization and discusses why different types of organizations are appropriate for different settings.

The Product Development Process

A process is a sequence of steps that transforms a set of inputs into a set of outputs. Most people are familiar with the idea of physical processes, such as those used to bake a cake or to assemble an automobile. A *product development process* is the sequence of steps or activities that an enterprise employs to conceive, design, and commercialize a product. Many of these steps and activities are intellectual and organizational rather than physical. Some organizations define and follow a precise and detailed development process, while others may not even be able to describe their process. Furthermore, every organization employs a process at least slightly different from that of every other organization. In fact, the same enterprise may follow different processes for each of several different types of development projects.

A well-defined development process is useful for the following reasons:

- ***Quality assurance:*** A development process specifies the phases a development project will pass through and the checkpoints along the way. When these phases and checkpoints are chosen wisely, following the development process is one way of assuring the quality of the resulting product.
- ***Coordination:*** A clearly articulated development process acts as a master plan that defines the roles of each of the players on the development team. This plan informs the members of the team when their contributions will be needed and with whom they will need to exchange information and materials.

- ***Planning:*** A development process includes milestones corresponding to the completion of each phase. The timing of these milestones anchors the schedule of the overall development project.
- ***Management:*** A development process is a benchmark for assessing the performance of an ongoing development effort. By comparing the actual events to the established process, a manager can identify possible problem areas.
- ***Improvement:*** The careful documentation and ongoing review of an organization's development process and its results may help to identify opportunities for improvement.

The generic product development process consists of six phases, as illustrated in Exhibit 2-2. The process begins with a planning phase, which is the link to advanced research and technology development activities. The output of the planning phase is the project's mission statement, which is the input required to begin the concept development phase and which serves as a guide to the development team. The conclusion of the product development process is the product launch, at which time the product becomes available for purchase in the marketplace.

One way to think about the development process is as the initial creation of a wide set of alternative product concepts and then the subsequent narrowing of alternatives and increasing specification of the product until the product can be reliably and repeatably produced by the production system. Note that most of the phases of development are defined in terms of the state of the product, although the production process and marketing plans, among other tangible outputs, are also evolving as development progresses.

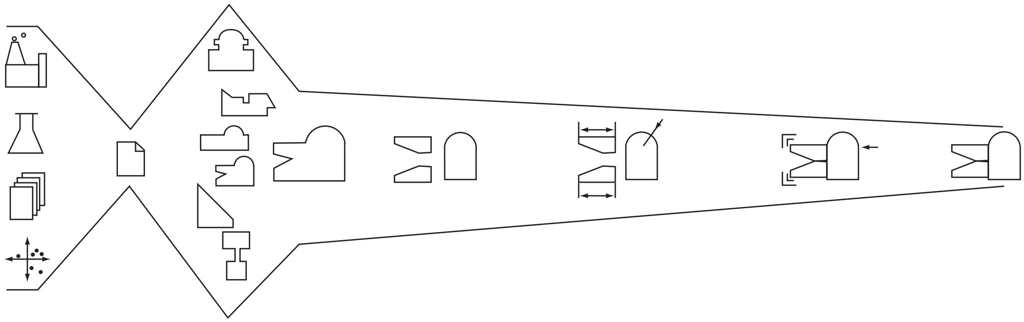
Another way to think about the development process is as an information-processing system. The process begins with inputs such as the corporate objectives, strategic opportunities, available technologies, product platforms, and production systems. Various activities process the development information, formulating specifications, concepts, and design details. The process concludes when all the information required to support production and sales has been created and communicated.

A third way to think about the development process is as a risk management system. In the early phases of product development, various risks are identified and prioritized. As the process progresses, risks are reduced as the key uncertainties are eliminated and the performance of the product is validated. When the process is completed, the team should have substantial confidence that the product will work correctly and be successful in the market.

Exhibit 2-2 also identifies the key activities and responsibilities of the different functions of the organization during each development phase. Because of their continuous involvement in the process, we choose to articulate the roles of marketing, design, and manufacturing. Representatives from other functions, such as research, finance, project management, field service, and sales, also play key roles at particular points in the process.

The six phases of the generic development process are:

0. ***Planning:*** The planning activity is often referred to as "phase zero" because it precedes the project approval and launch of the actual product development process. This phase begins with opportunity identification guided by corporate strategy and includes assessment of technology developments and market objectives. The output of the planning phase is the project mission statement, which specifies the target market for the product, business goals, key assumptions, and constraints. Chapter 3, Opportunity Identification,



	Planning	Concept Development	System-Level Design	Detail Design	Testing and Refinement	Production Ramp-Up
Marketing	• Articulate market opportunity. • Define market segments.	• Collect customer needs. • Identify lead users. • Benchmark competitive products.	• Develop plan for product options and extended product family.	• Develop marketing plan.	• Develop promotion and launch materials. • Facilitate field testing.	• Place early production with key customers.
Design	• Consider product platform and architecture. • Assess new technologies.	• Investigate feasibility of product concepts. • Develop industrial design concepts. • Build and test experimental prototypes.	• Develop product architecture. • Define major subsystems and interfaces. • Refine industrial design. • Preliminary component engineering.	• Define part geometry. • Choose materials. • Assign tolerances. • Complete industrial design control documentation.	• Test overall performance, reliability, and durability. • Obtain regulatory approvals. • Assess environmental impact. • Implement design changes.	• Evaluate early production output.
Manufacturing	• Identify production constraints. • Set supply chain strategy.	• Estimate manufacturing cost. • Assess production feasibility.	• Identify suppliers for key components. • Perform make-buy analysis. • Define final assembly scheme.	• Define piece-part production processes. • Design tooling. • Define quality assurance processes. • Begin procurement of long-lead tooling.	• Facilitate supplier ramp-up. • Refine fabrication and assembly processes. • Train workforce. • Refine quality assurance processes.	• Begin full operation of production system.
Other Functions	• Research: Demonstrate available technologies. • Finance: Provide planning goals. • Project Management: Allocate project resources.	• Finance: Facilitate economic analysis. • Legal: Investigate patent issues.	• Finance: Facilitate make-buy analysis. • Service: Identify service issues.		• Sales: Develop sales plan.	• Project Management: Conduct postproject review.

EXHIBIT 2-2 The generic product development process. Six phases are shown, including some of the typical tasks and responsibilities of the key business functions for each phase.

explains a process for gathering, evaluating, and choosing from a broad range of product opportunities. Chapter 4, Product Planning, presents a discussion of the subsequent product planning process.

1. ***Concept development:*** In the concept development phase, the needs of the target market are identified, alternative product concepts are generated and evaluated, and one or more concepts are selected for further development and testing. A concept is a description of the form, function, and features of a product and is usually accompanied by a set of specifications, an analysis of competitive products, and an economic justification of the project. This book presents several detailed methods for the concept development phase (Chapters 5–9). We expand this phase into each of its constitutive activities in the next section.

2. ***System-level design:*** The system-level design phase includes the definition of the product architecture, decomposition of the product into subsystems and components, preliminary design of key components, and allocation of detail design responsibility to both internal and external resources. Initial plans for the production system and final assembly are usually defined during this phase as well. The output of this phase usually includes a geometric layout of the product, a functional specification of each of the product's subsystems, and a preliminary process flow diagram for the final assembly process. Chapter 10, Product Architecture, discusses some of the important activities of system-level design.

3. ***Detail design:*** The detail design phase includes the complete specification of the geometry, materials, and tolerances of all of the unique parts in the product and the identification of all of the standard parts to be purchased from suppliers. A process plan is established and tooling is designed for each part to be fabricated within the production system. The output of this phase is the *control documentation* for the product—the drawings or computer files describing the geometry of each part and its production tooling, the specifications of the purchased parts, the production supply chain, and the process plans for the fabrication and assembly of the product. Three critical issues that are best considered throughout the product development process, but are finalized in the detail design phase, are materials selection, production cost, and robust performance. These issues are discussed respectively in Chapter 12, Design for Environment, Chapter 13, Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain, and Chapter 15, Robust Design.

4. ***Testing and refinement:*** The testing and refinement phase involves the construction and evaluation of multiple preproduction versions of the product. Early *(alpha)* prototypes are usually built with *production-intent* parts—parts with the same geometry and material properties as intended for the production version of the product but not necessarily fabricated with the actual processes to be used in production. Alpha prototypes are tested to determine whether the product will work as designed and whether the product satisfies the key customer needs. Later *(beta)* prototypes are usually built with parts supplied by the intended production processes but may not be assembled using the intended final assembly process. Beta prototypes are extensively evaluated internally and are also typically tested by customers in their own use environment. The goal for the beta prototypes is usually to answer questions about performance and reliability to identify necessary engineering changes for the final product. Chapter 14, Prototyping, presents a thorough discussion of the nature and use of prototypes.

5. ***Production ramp-up:*** In the production ramp-up phase, the product is made using the intended production system. The purpose of the ramp-up is to train the workforce and to work out any remaining problems in the production processes. Products produced during production ramp-up are sometimes supplied to preferred customers and are carefully evaluated to identify any remaining flaws. The transition from production ramp-up to ongoing production is usually gradual. At some point in this transition, the product is *launched* and becomes available for widespread distribution. A *postlaunch project review* may occur shortly after the launch. This review includes an assessment of the project from both commercial and technical perspectives and is intended to identify ways to improve the development process for future projects.

Concept Development: The Front-End Process

Because the concept development phase of the development process demands perhaps more coordination among functions than any other, many of the integrative development methods presented in this book are concentrated here. In this section we expand the concept development phase into what we call the *front-end process.* The front-end process generally contains many interrelated activities, ordered roughly as shown in Exhibit 2-3.

Rarely does the entire process proceed in purely sequential fashion, completing each activity before beginning the next. In practice, the front-end activities may be overlapped in time and iteration is often necessary. The dashed arrows in Exhibit 2-3 reflect the uncertain nature of progress in product development. At almost any stage, new information may become available or results learned that can cause the team to step back to repeat an earlier activity before proceeding. This repetition of nominally complete activities is known as development *iteration.*

The concept development process includes the following activities:

- ***Identifying customer needs:*** The goal of this activity is to understand customers' needs and to effectively communicate them to the development team. The output of this step is a set of carefully constructed customer need statements, organized in a hierarchical list, with importance weightings for many or all of the needs. Special attention is paid to the identification of *latent needs,* which are difficult for customers to articulate and unaddressed by existing products. A method for this activity is presented in Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs.
- ***Establishing target specifications:*** Specifications provide a precise description of what a product has to do. They are the translation of the customer needs into technical terms.

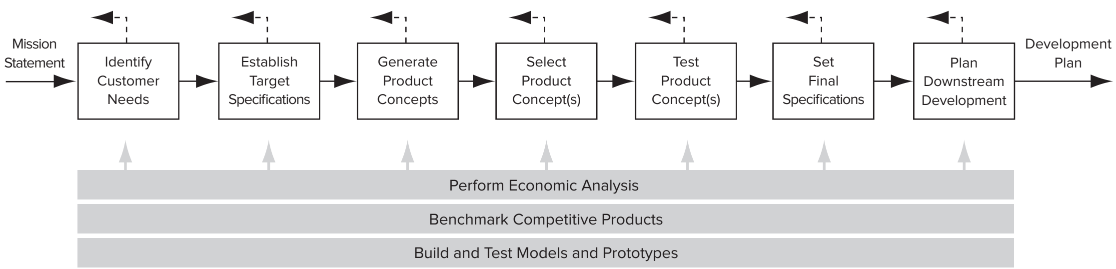


EXHIBIT 2-3 The many front-end activities comprising the concept development phase.

Targets for the specifications are set early in the process and represent the hopes of the development team. Later these specifications are refined to be consistent with the constraints imposed by the team's choice of a product concept. The output of this stage is a list of target specifications. Each specification consists of a metric, and marginal and ideal values for that metric. A method for the specification activity is given in Chapter 6, Product Specifications.

- ***Concept generation:*** The goal of concept generation is to thoroughly explore the space of product concepts that may address the customer needs. Concept generation includes a mix of external search, creative problem solving within the team, and systematic exploration of the various solution fragments the team generates. The result of this activity is usually a set of 10 to 20 concepts, each typically represented by a sketch and brief descriptive text. Chapter 7, Concept Generation, describes this activity in detail.
- ***Concept selection:*** Concept selection is the activity in which various product concepts are analyzed and sequentially eliminated to identify the most promising concept(s). The process usually requires several iterations and may initiate additional concept generation and refinement. A method for this activity is described in Chapter 8, Concept Selection.
- ***Concept testing:*** One or more concepts are then tested to verify that the customer needs have been met, assess the market potential of the product, and identify any shortcomings that must be remedied during further development. If the customer response is poor, the development project may be terminated or some earlier activities may be repeated as necessary. Chapter 9, Concept Testing, explains a method for this activity.
- ***Setting final specifications:*** The target specifications set earlier in the process are revisited after a concept has been selected and tested. At this point, the team must commit to specific values of the metrics reflecting the constraints inherent in the product concept, limitations identified through technical modeling, and trade-offs between cost and performance. Chapter 6, Product Specifications, explains the details of this activity.
- ***Project planning:*** In this final activity of concept development, the team creates a detailed development schedule, devises a strategy to minimize development time, and identifies the resources required to complete the project. The major results of the front-end activities can be usefully captured in a *contract book,* which contains the mission statement, the customer needs, the details of the selected concept, the product specifications, the economic analysis of the product, the development schedule, the project staffing, and the budget. The contract book serves to document the agreement (contract) between the team and the senior management of the enterprise. A project planning method is presented in Chapter 19, Project Management.
- ***Economic analysis:*** The team, often with the support of a financial analyst, builds an economic model for the new product. This model is used to justify continuation of the overall development program and to resolve specific trade-offs between, for example, development costs and manufacturing costs. Economic analysis is shown as one of the ongoing activities in the concept development phase. An early economic analysis will almost always be performed before the project even begins, and this analysis is updated as more information becomes available. A method for this activity is presented in Chapter 18, Product Development Economics.
- ***Benchmarking of competitive products:*** An understanding of competitive products is critical to successful positioning of a new product and can provide a rich source of ideas

for the product and production process design. Competitive *benchmarking* is performed in support of many of the front-end activities. Various aspects of competitive benchmarking are presented in Chapters 5–9.

- ***Modeling and prototyping:*** Every stage of the concept development process involves various forms of models and prototypes. These may include, among others: early "proof-of-concept" models, which help the development team to demonstrate feasibility; "form-only" models, which can be shown to customers to evaluate ergonomics and style; spreadsheet models of technical trade-offs; and experimental test models, which can be used to set design parameters for robust performance. Methods for modeling, prototyping, and testing are discussed throughout the book, including in Chapters 5–7, 9, 11, 14, 15, and 17.

Adapting the Generic Product Development Process

The development process described by Exhibits 2-2 and 2-3 is generic, and particular processes will differ in accordance with the unique context of the firm and the challenges of any specific project. The generic process is most like the process used in a *market-pull* situation: a firm begins product development with a market opportunity and then uses whatever available technologies are required to satisfy the market need (i.e., the market "pulls" the development decisions). In addition to the market-pull process outlined in Exhibits 2-2 and 2-3, several variants are common and correspond to the following: *technology-push* products, *platform* products, *process-intensive* products, *customized* products, *high-risk* products, *quick-build* products, *product-service* systems, and *complex* systems. Each of these situations is described below. The characteristics of these situations and the resulting deviations from the generic process are summarized in Exhibit 2-4.

Technology-Push Products

In developing technology-push products, the firm begins with a new proprietary technology and looks for an appropriate market in which to apply this technology (that is, the technology "pushes" development). Gore-Tex, an expanded Teflon sheet manufactured by W. L. Gore Associates, is a striking example of technology push. The company has developed dozens of products incorporating Gore-Tex, including artificial veins for vascular surgery, insulation for high-performance electric cables, fabric for outerwear, dental floss, and liners for bagpipe bags.

Many successful technology-push products involve basic materials or basic process technologies. This may be because basic materials and processes are deployed in thousands of applications, and there is therefore a high likelihood that new and unusual characteristics of materials and processes can be matched with an appropriate application.

The generic product development process can be used with minor modifications for technology-push products. The technology-push process begins with the planning phase, in which the given technology is matched with a market opportunity. Once this matching has occurred, the remainder of the generic development process can be followed. The team includes an assumption in the mission statement that the particular technology will be embodied in the product concepts considered by the team. Although many extremely successful products have arisen from technology-push development, this approach can be

Process Type	Description	Distinct Features	Examples
Generic (Market-Pull) Products	The team begins with a market opportunity and selects appropriate technologies to meet customer needs.	Process generally includes distinct planning, concept development, system-level design, detail design, testing and refinement, and production ramp-up phases.	Sporting goods, furniture, tools.
Technology-Push Products	The team begins with a new technology, then finds an appropriate market.	Planning phase involves matching technology and market. Concept development assumes a given technology.	Gore-Tex rainwear, Tyvek envelopes.
Platform Products	The team assumes that the new product will be built around an established technological subsystem.	Concept development assumes a proven technology platform.	Consumer electronics, computers, printers.
Process-Intensive Products	Characteristics of the product are highly constrained by the production process.	Either an existing production process must be specified from the start, or both product and process must be developed together from the start.	Snack foods, breakfast cereals, chemicals, semiconductors.
Customized Products	New products are slight variations of existing configurations.	Similarity of projects allows for a streamlined and highly structured development process.	Motors, switches, batteries, containers.
High-Risk Products	Technical or market uncertainties create high risks of failure.	Risks are identified early and tracked throughout the process. Analysis and testing activities take place as early as possible.	Pharmaceuticals, space systems.
Quick-Build Products	Rapid modeling and prototyping enables many design-build-test cycles.	Detail design and testing phases are repeated a number of times until the product is completed or time/budget runs out.	Clothing, furniture.
Digital Products	Following planning and concept development is a highly iterative design-build-test process.	System-level design specifies a sequence of development goals for layered design-build-test spirals.	Application software, websites, e-commerce platforms.
Product-Service Systems	Products and their associated service elements are developed simultaneously.	Both physical and operational elements are developed, with particular attention to design of the customer experience and the process flow.	Restaurants, software applications, financial services.
Complex Systems	System must be decomposed into several subsystems and many components.	Subsystems and components are developed by many teams working in parallel, followed by system integration and validation.	Airplanes, jet engines, automobiles.

EXHIBIT 2-4 Summary of variants of generic product development process.

perilous. The product is unlikely to succeed unless (1) the assumed technology offers a clear competitive advantage in meeting customer needs, and (2) suitable alternative technologies are unavailable or very difficult for competitors to utilize. Project risk can possibly be minimized by simultaneously considering multiple market opportunities and a broader set of concepts that do not necessarily incorporate the new technology. In this way, the team verifies that the product concept embodying the new technology is superior to the alternatives.

Platform Products

A platform product is built around a preexisting technological subsystem (a technology *platform*). Examples of such platforms include the Intel chipset in a personal computer, the Apple iOS smartphone operating system, and the blade design in a Gillette razor. Huge investments are made in developing such platforms, and therefore every attempt is made to incorporate them into several different products. In some sense, platform products are very similar to technology-push products in that the team begins the development effort with an assumption that the product concept will embody a particular technology. One difference is that a technology platform has already demonstrated its usefulness in the marketplace in meeting customer needs. The firm can in many cases assume that the technology will also be useful in related markets. Products built on technology platforms are much simpler to develop than if the technology were developed from scratch. For this reason, and because of the possible sharing of costs across several products, a firm may be able to offer a platform product in markets that could not justify the development of a unique technology.

Process-Intensive Products

Examples of process-intensive products include semiconductors, foods, chemicals, and paper. For these products, the production process places strict constraints on the properties of the product, so that the product design cannot be separated, even at the concept phase, from the production process design. In many cases, process-intensive products are produced in very high volumes and are bulk, as opposed to discrete, goods.

In some situations, a new product and new process are developed simultaneously. For example, creating a new shape of breakfast cereal or snack food will require both product and process development activities. In other cases, a specific existing process for making the product is chosen in advance, and the product design is constrained by the capabilities of this process. This might be true of a new paper product to be made in a particular paper mill or a new semiconductor chip to be made in an existing fabrication facility.

Customized Products

Examples of customized products include switches, motors, batteries, and containers. Customized products are slight variations of standard configurations and are typically developed in response to a specific order by a customer. Development of customized products consists primarily of setting values of design variables such as physical dimensions and materials. Templates for specifying customized products may be provided with online design tools. When a customer orders a new product, the firm executes a structured design and development process to create the product to meet the customer's needs. Such firms typically have created a highly detailed development process involving a well-defined sequence of steps with a structured flow of information (analogous to a production process). For customized products, the generic process is augmented with a detailed description of the specific information-processing activities required within each of the phases. Such development processes may consist of hundreds of carefully defined activities and may be highly automated.

High-Risk Products

The product development process addresses many types of risk. These include technical risk (Will the product function properly?), market risk (Will customers like what the team develops?), and budget and schedule risk (Can the team complete the project on time and within budget?). High-risk products are those that entail unusually large uncertainties related to the technology or market so that there is substantial technical or market risk. The generic product development process is modified in high-risk situations by taking steps to address the largest risks in the early stages of product development. This usually requires completing some design and test activities earlier in the process. For example, when there is great uncertainty regarding customer acceptance of a new product, concept testing using renderings or user-interface prototypes may be done very early in the process in order to reduce the market uncertainty and risk. If there is high uncertainty related to technical performance of the product, it makes sense to build working models of the key features and to test these earlier in the process. Multiple solution paths may be explored in parallel to ensure that one of the solutions succeeds. Design reviews must assess levels of risk on a regular basis, with the expectation that risks are being reduced over time and not being postponed.

Quick-Build Products

For the development of some products, such as furniture, clothing, and many electronics products, building and testing prototype models is such a rapid process that the design-build-test cycle can be repeated many times. In fact, teams can take advantage of rapid iteration to achieve a more flexible and responsive product development process, sometimes called a *spiral product development process.* Following concept development in this process, the system-level design phase entails decomposition of the product into high-, medium-, and low-priority features. This is followed by several cycles of design, build, integrate, and test activities, beginning with the highest-priority items. This process takes advantage of the fast prototyping cycle by using the result of each cycle to learn how to modify the priorities for the next cycle. Customers may even be involved in the testing process after one or more cycles. When time or budget runs out, usually all of the high- and medium-priority features have been incorporated into the evolving product, and the low-priority features may be omitted until the next product generation.

Digital Products

Most purely digital products, such as software and websites, are also developed using a highly iterative (spiral) product development process. Since digital products are extremely quick to build, they are often developed incrementally, beginning with basic functions and building up the complete system through many iterations. Product planning may determine high-level development milestones and a series of product releases. The system-level design phase specifies the software architecture and decomposition by major functions. In a process known as *agile software development,* planning the complete set of features and functions may be avoided in favor of discovering customer needs and use cases through testing of the evolving product directly with users and other stakeholders.

Product-Service Systems

Services are largely intangible product offerings and are often provided in conjunction with tangible products. Examples of *product-service systems* are automobile rentals, restaurants, and mobile communications. Services are largely developed using the standard product development methods described throughout this book; however, because customers are so intimately involved in the service experience, service design teams pay careful attention to the range of customer needs and the timing of key touch points in creating the service experience. Many services are produced and consumed at the same time and therefore matching supply with demand is critical. Design of the service process flow may take advantage of a modular architecture in order to deliver customized services to every customer. Chapter 17, Service Design, discusses these and other distinctions in the process for developing services and product-service systems.

Complex Systems

Larger-scale products such as automobiles and airplanes are complex systems comprising many interacting subsystems and components. When developing complex systems, modifications to the generic product development process address a number of system-level issues. The concept development phase considers the architecture of the entire system, and multiple architectures may be considered as competing concepts for the overall system. The system-level design phase becomes critical. During this phase, the system is decomposed into subsystems and these further into many components. Teams are assigned to develop each component. Additional teams are assigned the special challenge of integrating components into the subsystems and these into the overall system.

Detail design of the components is a highly parallel process in which the many development teams work at once, usually separately. Managing the network of interactions across the components and subsystems is the task of systems engineering specialists of many kinds. The testing and refinement phase includes not only component and system integration, but also extensive testing and validation at all levels.

Product Development Process Flows

The product development process generally follows a structured flow of activity and information flow. This allows us to draw *process flow diagrams* illustrating the process, as shown in Exhibit 2-5. The generic process flow diagram (a) depicts the process used to develop market-pull, technology-push, platform, process-intensive, customized, and high-risk products. Each product development phase (or stage) is followed by a review (or gate) to confirm that the phase is completed and to determine whether the project proceeds. Quick-build and digital products enable a spiral (or agile) product development process (b) whereby detail design, prototyping, and test activities are repeated a number of times. The process flow diagram for development of complex systems (c) shows the decomposition into parallel stages of work on the many subsystems and components.

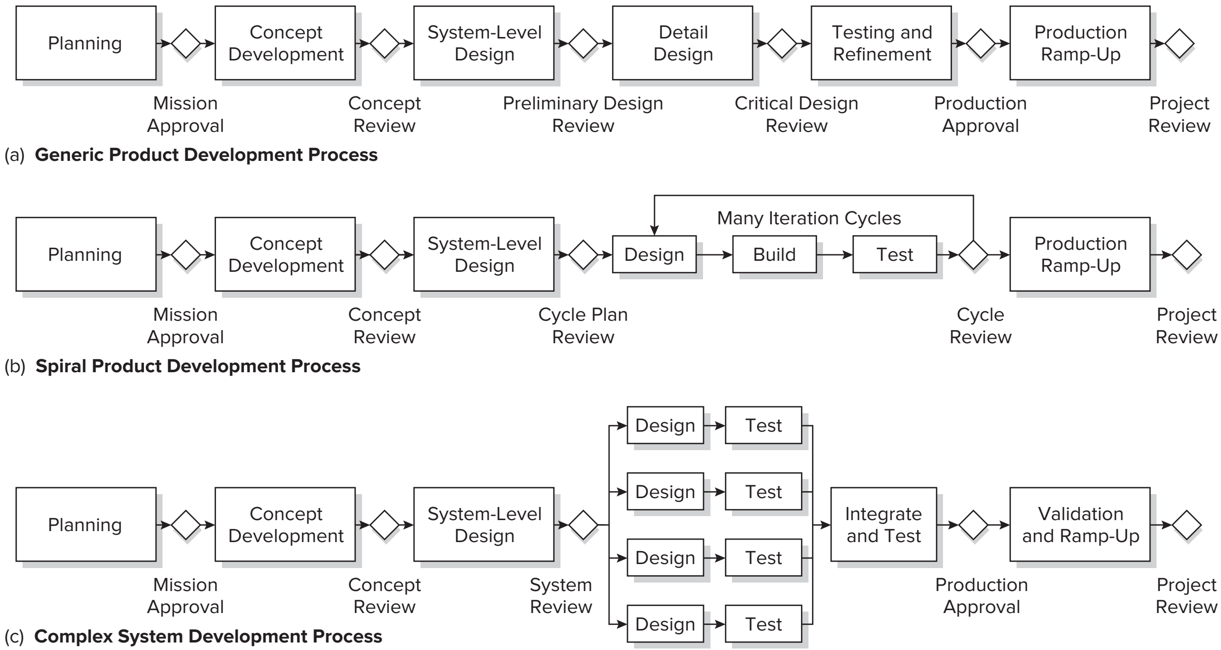


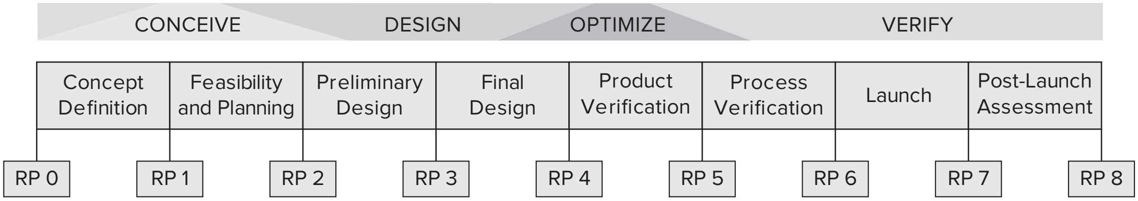
EXHIBIT 2-5 Process flow diagrams for three product development processes.

Once the product development process has been established within an organization, a process flow diagram is used to explain the process to everyone on the team.

The Tyco Product Development Process

Tyco is primarily a market-pull enterprise. This means that Tyco generally drives its development projects based on a perceived market need and utilizes new or established technologies to meet that need. Its competitive advantage arises from highly effective marketing channels worldwide, strong brand recognition, a large installed base of equipment, and an ability to integrate new technologies into its product lines. For this reason, the technology-push process would not be appropriate. Most Tyco products are assembled from components fabricated with relatively conventional processes such as molding, machining, and electronics assembly. Products are generally customized for a particular customer in the final sales and installation processes, so the development process at Tyco is primarily aimed at creation of new models of products, rather than at the customization of existing models.

Tyco therefore established a common product development process similar to the generic phased process. The resulting Tyco Rally Point process flow is illustrated in Exhibit 2-6. Note that there are nine phases in the Rally Point process, with six of the phases (from concept definition to process verification) comprising the fundamental product development process activities. Each phase is followed by a critical review (called a



Courtesy of Tyco International

EXHIBIT 2-6 Tyco's Rally Point product development process includes nine distinct phases and review gates.

Rally Point), which is required to gain approval to proceed to the next phase. The primary goal and key activities of each phase as well as the business function responsible for each activity are shown in Exhibit 2-7.

Although Tyco established Rally Point as its standard process, Tyco managers realized that this process would not be perfectly suitable for all Tyco development projects across all business units; therefore, one key activity in the concept definition phase is to select a Rally Point process variant if necessary. For example, some of Tyco's new products are based on existing technology platforms. To develop such derivative products, the team assumes the use of the existing technology platform during concept development. Also, some products are designed for specific customers as private-label variants of standard Tyco products. In these cases, a streamlined process known as Rally Point EZ is used. Nevertheless, the standard Rally Point product development process is the baseline from which a particular project plan begins.

Product Development Organizations

In addition to crafting an effective development process, successful firms must organize their product development staff to implement the process in an effective manner. In this section, we describe several types of organizations used for product development and offer guidelines for choosing among these options.

Organizations Are Formed by Establishing Links among Individuals

A product development organization is the scheme by which individual designers and developers are linked together into groups. The links among individuals may be formal or informal and include, among others, these types:

- ***Reporting relationships:*** Reporting relationships give rise to the classic notion of *supervisor* and *subordinate*. These are the formal links most frequently shown on an organization chart.
- ***Financial arrangements:*** Individuals are linked by being part of the same financial entity, such as a business unit or department within a firm.
- ***Physical layout:*** Links are created between individuals when they share the same office, floor, building, or site. These links are often informal, arising from spontaneous encounters while at work.

Rally Point Phase	0. Project Registration	1. Concept Definition	2. Feasibility and Planning	3. Preliminary Design	4. Final Design	5. Product Verification	6. Process Verification	7. Launch	8. Post-Launch Assessment
Primary Goal	Define project and business unit needs	Develop project concept and charter	Create product description	Create preliminary detailed design	Detail and optimize design	Demonstrate product performance	Demonstrate process performance	Launch product	Identify lessons learned
Marketing and Sales	Identify customers and market size Describe competitive features and benefits Identify target cost and price	Capture voice of the customer Analyze customer needs Document customer needs	Develop marketing and sales plans Create phase-in and phase-out plans	Review concepts with customers		Initialize field trials	Complete field trials Finalize training plans	Finalize pricing and sales forecasts Complete sales and service training	Solicit customer feedback and satisfaction ratings Measure sales vs. forecast Complete phase-in and phase-out
Engineering	Identify project risks	Identify critical-to-quality specs Develop and select concepts Update project risks	Create functional specification and performance metrics Review concept selection Define product architecture Assess technical failures modes	Conduct a preliminary design review Build and test alpha prototypes Assess product failure modes	Freeze hardware and software design Complete engineering documentation Draft technical documentation Secure beta prototypes	Finalize design documentation Complete beta prototype and field testing Apply for regulatory approvals	Obtain regulatory approvals	Finalize product metrics	
Quality Assurance			Create preliminary test plan		Test beta prototypes for robustness	Complete quality assurance testing	Conduct process verification testing		
Manufacturing				Begin manufacturing process development Conduct a preliminary manufacturing process review	Finalize bill of materials (BOM) Develop manufacturing control plans	Update manufacturing control plans	Run manufacturing pilots Finalize manufacturing control plans		Register obsolete and scrap products
Purchasing				Create a supplier participation matrix Assess suppliers for certification	Identify long lead-time items		Verify supply chain readiness		
Legal		Search patents	Identify trade compliance issues	Identify potential patents	Prepare patent applications	Assure trade compliance			
Financial	Prepare preliminary business case	Refine business case	Complete financial package						Monitor return on investment
Project Management	Identify project timing, resources, and capital Prepare RP0 checklist & submit for approval	Assess team capabilities/skills Identify development team members Select a Rally Point process variant Prepare RP1 checklist & submit for approval	Plan integrated product development schedule Assign a project manager Update RP1 deliverables Prepare RP2 checklist & submit for approval	Update RP1-2 deliverables Prepare RP3 checklist & submit for approval	Update RP1-3 deliverables Prepare RP4 checklist & submit for approval	Update RP1-4 deliverables Prepare RP5 checklist & submit for approval	Update RP1-5 deliverables Prepare RP6 checklist & submit for approval	Finalize all deliverables Finalize launch plans and documentation Update RP1-6 deliverables Prepare RP7 checklist & submit for approval	Document best practices Prepare RP8 checklist & submit for approval

Courtesy of Tyco International

EXHIBIT 2-7 Key activities and the responsible functions comprising the Tyco Rally Point product development process.

Any particular individual may be linked in several different ways to other individuals. For example, an engineer may be linked by a reporting relationship to another engineer in a different building, while being linked by physical layout to a marketing person sitting in the next office. The strongest organizational links are typically those involving performance evaluation, budgets, and other resource allocations.

Organizational Links May Be Aligned with Functions, Projects, or Both

Regardless of their organizational links, particular individuals can be classified in two different ways: according to their *function* and according to the *projects* they work on.

- A function (in organizational terms) is an area of responsibility usually involving specialized education, training, or experience. The classic functions in product development organizations are marketing, design, and manufacturing. Finer divisions than these are also possible and may include, for example, market research, market strategy, stress analysis, industrial design, human factors engineering, process development, and operations management.
- Regardless of their functions, individuals apply their expertise to specific projects. In product development, a project is the set of activities in the development process for a particular product and includes, for example, identifying customer needs and generating product concepts.

Note that these two classifications must overlap: individuals from several different functions will work on the same project. Also, while most individuals are associated with only one function, they may contribute to more than one project. Two classic organizational structures arise from aligning the organizational links according to function or according to projects. In *functional organizations,* the organizational links are primarily among those who perform similar functions. In *project organizations,* the organizational links are primarily among those who work on the same project.

For example, a strict functional organization might include a group of marketing professionals, all sharing similar training and expertise. These people would all report to the same manager, who would evaluate them and set their salaries. The group would have its own budget and the people may sit in the same part of a building. This marketing group would be involved in many different projects, but there would be no strong organizational links to the other members of each project team. There would be similarly arranged groups corresponding to design and to manufacturing.

A strict project organization would be made up of groups of people from several different functions, with each group focused on the development of a specific product (or product line). These groups would each report to an experienced project manager, who might be drawn from any of the functional areas. Performance evaluation would be handled by the project manager, and members of the team would typically be colocated as much as possible so that they all work in the same office or part of a building. New ventures, or "start-ups," are among the most extreme examples of project organizations: every individual, regardless of function, is linked together by a single project—the growth of the new company and the creation of its product(s). In these settings, the president or CEO can be viewed as the project manager. Established firms will sometimes form an autonomous "tiger team" with dedicated resources for a single project when special focus is required to complete an important development project. Software projects are often organized using small "scrum teams" to implement a specific form of agile software development known as *Scrum* (Sutherland et al., 2011).

The *matrix organization* was conceived as a hybrid of functional and project organizations. In the matrix organization, individuals are linked to others according to both the project they work on and their function. Typically each individual has two supervisors, one a project manager and the other a functional manager. The practical reality is that either the project or the function tends to have stronger links. This is because, for example, both functional and project managers cannot independently assign their shared staff, they cannot independently evaluate and determine the salaries of their subordinates, and both functional and project organizations cannot easily be grouped together physically. As a result, either the functional or the project organization tends to dominate.

Two variants of the matrix organization are called the *heavyweight project organization* and *lightweight project organization* (Hayes et al., 1988). A heavyweight project organization contains strong project links. The heavyweight project manager has complete budget authority, is heavily involved in performance evaluation of the team members, and makes most of the major resource allocation decisions. Although each participant in a project also belongs to a functional organization, the functional managers have relatively little authority and control. A heavyweight project team in various industries may be called an *integrated product team* (IPT), a *design-build team* (DBT), or simply a *product development team* (PDT). Each of these terms emphasizes the cross-functional nature of these teams.

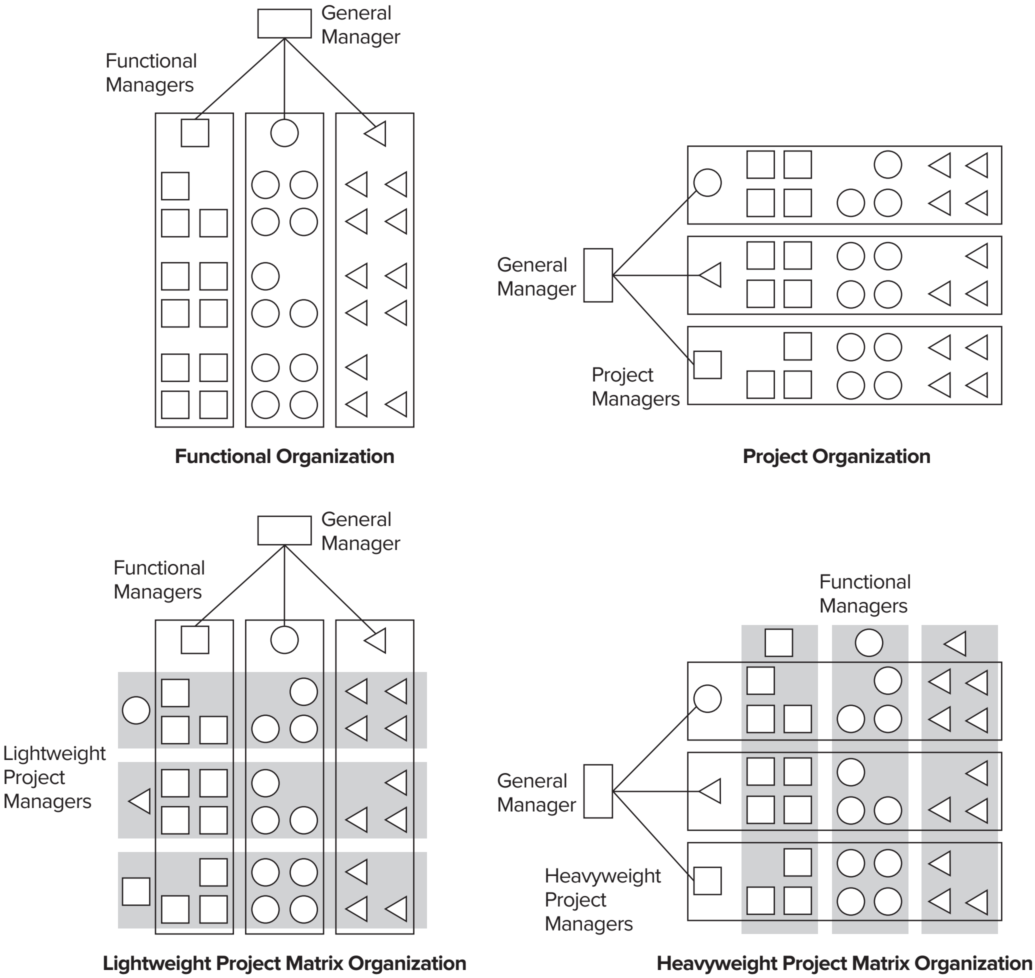
A lightweight project organization contains weaker project links and relatively stronger functional links. In this scheme, the project manager is more of a coordinator and administrator. The lightweight project manager updates schedules, arranges meetings, and facilitates coordination, but the manager has no real authority and control in the project organization. The functional managers are responsible for budgets, hiring and firing, and performance evaluation. Exhibit 2-8 illustrates the pure functional and project organizations, along with the heavyweight and lightweight variants of the matrix organization.

In this book, we refer to the *project team* as the primary organizational unit. In this context, the team is the set of all people involved in the project, regardless of the organizational structure of the product development staff. In a functional organization, the team consists of individuals distributed throughout the functional groups without any organizational linkages other than their common involvement in a project. In the other organizations, the team corresponds to a formal organizational entity, the project group, and has a formally appointed manager. For this reason, the notion of a team has much more meaning in matrix and project organizations than it does in functional organizations.

Choosing an Organizational Structure

The most appropriate choice of organizational structure depends on which organizational performance factors are most critical to success. Functional organizations tend to breed specialization and deep expertise in the functional areas. Project organizations tend to enable rapid and effective coordination among diverse functions. Matrix organizations, being hybrids, have the potential to exhibit some of each of these characteristics. The following questions help guide the choice of organizational structure:

- ***How important is cross-functional integration?*** Functional organizations may exhibit difficulty in coordinating project decisions that span the functional areas. Project



Source: Adapted from Hayes, Robert H., Steven C. Wheelwright, and Kim B. Clark, *Dynamic Manufacturing: Creating the Learning Organization,* The Free Press, New York, 1988

EXHIBIT 2-8 Various product development organizations. For simplicity, three functions and three projects are shown.

organizations tend to enable strong cross-functional integration because of the organizational links of the team members across the functions.

- ***How critical is cutting-edge functional expertise to business success?*** When disciplinary expertise must be developed and retained over several product generations, then some functional links are necessary. For example, in some aerospace companies, computational fluid dynamics is so critical that the fluid dynamicists are organized functionally to ensure the firm will have the best possible capability in this area.
- ***Can individuals from each function be fully utilized for most of the duration of a project?*** For example, a project may require only a portion of an industrial designer's time for a fraction of the duration of a project. To use industrial design resources

efficiently, the firm may choose to organize the industrial designers functionally, so that several projects can draw on the industrial design resource in exactly the amount needed for a particular project.

- ***How important is product development speed?*** Project organizations tend to allow for conflicts to be resolved quickly and for individuals from different functions to coordinate their activities efficiently. Relatively little time is spent transferring information, assigning responsibilities, and coordinating tasks. For this reason, project organizations are usually faster than functional organizations in developing innovative products. For example, consumer electronics manufacturers almost always organize their product development teams by project. This allows the teams to develop new products within the extremely short periods required by the fast-paced electronics market.

Dozens of other issues confound the choice between functional and project organizations. Exhibit 2-9 summarizes some of the strengths and weaknesses of each organizational

		Matrix Organization		
	Functional Organization	**Lightweight Project Organization**	**Heavyweight Project Organization**	**Project Organization**
Strengths	Fosters development of deep specialization and expertise.	Coordination and administration of projects is explicitly assigned to a single project manager. Maintains development of specialization and expertise.	Provides integration and speed benefits of the project organization. Some of the specialization of a functional organization is retained.	Resources can be optimally allocated within the project team. Technical and market trade-offs can be evaluated quickly.
Weaknesses	Coordination across different functional groups can be slow and bureaucratic.	Requires more managers and administrators than a nonmatrix organization.	Requires more managers and administrators than a nonmatrix organization.	Individuals may have difficulty maintaining cutting-edge functional capabilities.
Typical Examples	Customized products, where development involves slight variations to a standard design (e.g., motors, bearings, packaging).	Derivative products in many automobile, electronics, and aerospace companies.	New technology or platform projects in automobile, electronics, and aerospace companies.	Start-up companies. “Scrum teams” and “skunkworks” intended to achieve breakthroughs. Firms competing in highly dynamic markets.
Major Issues	How to integrate different functions (e.g., marketing and design) to achieve business goals.	How to balance functions and projects. How to simultaneously evaluate project and functional performance.		How to maintain functional expertise over time. How to share learning from one project to another.

EXHIBIT 2-9 Characteristics of different organizational structures.

type, examples of the types of firms pursuing each strategy, and the major issues associated with each approach.

Distributed Product Development Teams

It is well established that a highly effective way to organize a product development team includes colocation of the team members at a single site; however, the use of modern communication technology and digital development processes allows even globally distributed project teams to be effective. Reasons to utilize product development team members located at multiple sites may include the following:

- Access to information about regional markets.
- Availability of technical expertise.
- Location of manufacturing facilities and suppliers.
- Cost saving through lower wages.
- Outsourcing to increase product development capacity.

Notwithstanding the importance of using the right team members regardless of location, firms implementing globally distributed product development have experienced many challenges due to the weaker ties between team members separated by great distances. This may result in an increased number of design iterations and more difficult project coordination, particularly when such teams are newly formed. Fortunately, organizations having years of experience with global project teams report that distributed projects do work more smoothly over time.

The Tyco Product Development Organization

The primary functions involved in product development at Tyco are engineering, manufacturing, marketing, sales, purchasing, quality assurance, finance, legal, and project management (as listed in Exhibit 2-7). Each of these functions has a manager who reports to the general manager of the division; however, product development projects are led by project managers, with the resources for each project drawn from the functional areas.

In terms of the variants described in Exhibits 2-8 and 2-9, product development at Tyco primarily takes place in projects strongly reflecting a traditional functional organization structure. Project leaders are given only indirect control of the functional resources assigned to their teams. As explained above, a functional structure generally sacrifices some project efficiency in favor of greater ongoing development of the functional skills. To address this concern, Tyco has created a highly effective project management function, with project leaders who know the Rally Point process and how to coordinate the activities across the functions. This organizational choice has indeed led to very good product development performance for Tyco while maintaining very strong functional capabilities.

In recent years, Tyco has created new regional engineering centers at locations in high-growth markets such as China and India. Engineers at these centers are able to support product development projects across multiple Tyco business units around the world. This arrangement improves project performance by augmenting any project team with additional technical resources on an as-needed basis, which is particularly helpful in the later stages of the Rally Point process.

Summary

An enterprise must make two important decisions about the way it carries out product development. It must define both a product development process and a product development organization.

- A product development process is the sequence of steps an enterprise employs to conceive, design, and commercialize a product.
- A well-defined development process helps to ensure product quality, facilitate coordination among team members, plan the development project, and continuously improve the process.
- The generic process presented in this chapter includes six phases: planning, concept development, system-level design, detail design, testing and refinement, and production ramp-up.
- The concept development phase requires tremendous integration across the different functions on the development team. This front-end process includes identifying customer needs, analyzing competitive products, establishing target specifications, generating product concepts, selecting one or more final concepts, setting final specifications, testing the concept(s), performing an economic analysis, and planning the remaining project activities. The results of the concept development phase are documented in a contract book.
- The development process employed by a particular firm may differ somewhat from the generic process described here. The generic process is most appropriate for market-pull products. Other types of products, which may require variants of the generic process, include technology-push products, platform products, process-intensive products, customized products, high-risk products, quick-build products, digital products, product-service systems, and complex systems.
- Regardless of the development process, tasks are completed by individuals residing in organizations. Organizations are defined by linking individuals through reporting relationships, financial relationships, and/or physical layout.
- Functional organizations are those in which the organizational links correspond to the development functions. Project organizations are those in which the organizational links correspond to the development projects. Two types of hybrid, or matrix, organization are the heavyweight project organization and the lightweight project organization.
- The classic trade-off between functional organizations and project organizations is between deep functional expertise and coordination efficiency.
- Globally distributed product development teams allow access to specialized resources, market information, and/or technical expertise; however, global teams experience higher project coordination costs.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Staged product development processes have been dominant in manufacturing firms for the past 30 years. Cooper describes the stage-gate process and many of its enabling practices.

Cooper, Robert G., *Winning at New Products: Creating Value through Innovation,* fourth edition, Basic Books, New York, 2011.

The spiral and agile product development processes have evolved primarily within the software industry; however, many aspects of spiral development can be applied in manufacturing and other industries. McConnell describes spiral software development, along with several other processes used to develop software products. Scrum is a specific way to implement agile software development and is now also being applied to other types of projects.

McConnell, Steve, *Rapid Development: Taming Wild Software Schedules,* Microsoft Press, Redmond, WA, 1996.

Sutherland, Jeff, Rini van Solingen, and Eelco Rustenburg, *The Power of Scrum,* CreateSpace, North Charleston, SC, 2011.

The concept of heavyweight and lightweight project organizations is articulated by Hayes, Wheelwright, and Clark. Wheelwright and Clark also discuss product strategy, planning, and technology development activities, which generally precede the product development process.

Hayes, Robert H., Steven C. Wheelwright, and Kim B. Clark, *Dynamic Manufacturing: Creating the Learning Organization,* The Free Press, New York, 1988.

Wheelwright, Steven C., and Kim B. Clark, *Revolutionizing Product Development: Quantum Leaps in Speed, Efficiency, and Quality,* The Free Press, New York, 1992.

Sosa and Marle provide evidence that project teams whose members have prior positive creative experience working together perform better on innovative tasks.

Sosa, Manuel E., and Franck Marle, "Assembling Creative Teams in New Product Development Using Creative Team Familiarity," *Journal of Mechanical Design,* Vol. 135, No. 8, 2013.

Andreasen and Hein provide some good ideas on how to integrate different functions in product development. They also show several conceptual models of product development organizations.

Andreasen, M. Myrup, and Lars Hein, *Integrated Product Development,* Springer-Verlag, New York, 1987.

Allen provides strong empirical evidence that physical layout can be used to create significant, although informal, organizational links. He also discusses the use of matrix organizations to mitigate the weaknesses of functional and project organizations.

Allen, Thomas J., *Managing the Flow of Technology: Technology Transfer and the Dissemination of Technological Information within the R&D Organization,* MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 1977.

Galbraith's seminal book on organizational design contains much useful information that can be applied to product development. His 1994 book is an update of his earlier writing.

Galbraith, Jay R., *Designing Complex Organizations,* Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1973.

Galbraith, Jay R., *Competing with Flexible Lateral Organizations,* second edition, Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1994.

Exercises

1. Diagram a process for planning and cooking a family dinner. Does your process resemble the generic product development process? Is cooking dinner analogous to a market-pull, technology-push, platform, process-intensive, customization, high-risk, quick-build, product-service system, or complex system process?
2. Define a process for finding a job. For what types of endeavor does a well-defined process enhance performance?
3. What type of development process would you expect to find in an established company successful at developing residential air-conditioning units? How about for a small company that is trying to break into the market for racing wheelchairs?
4. Sketch the organization (in some appropriate graphical representation) of a consulting firm that develops new products for clients on a project-by-project basis. Assume that the individuals in the firm represent all of the different functions required to develop a new product. Would this organization most likely be aligned with functions, be aligned by projects, or be a hybrid?

Thought Questions

1. What role does basic technological research play in the product development process? How would you modify Exhibit 2-3 to better represent the research and technology development activities in product development?
2. Is there an analogy between a university and a product development organization? Is a university a functional or project organization?
3. What is the product development organization for students engaged in projects as part of a product development class?
4. Is it possible for some members of a product development organization to be organized functionally, while others are organized by project? If so, which members of the team would be the most likely candidates for the functional organization?

CHAPTER THREE

Opportunity Identification[1]

Courtesy of Lucky Litter LLC and Asentio Design

EXHIBIT 3-1
The Bolt laser-based cat toy, the original product of the FroliCat brand.

[1]Many of the ideas in this chapter were developed in collaboration with Christian Terwiesch and are described in more detail in the book *Innovation Tournaments* (Terwiesch and Ulrich, 2009).

The pet products company *FroliCat* had introduced two successful laser-based cat toys, including the *Bolt* (Exhibit 3-1), a product that embodies a randomly moving laser beam to entertain cats. The company's management team, hoping to build upon their initial success, sought additional opportunities to develop new cat toys. They were particularly interested in opportunities to extend their brand to other types of motion-based cat toys. FroliCat was a small company, and so an investment in developing a new product represented substantial financial risk. As a result, the team hoped to identify opportunities that would be highly likely to result in profitable products.

FroliCat was based in Chicago, but because all of FroliCat's products were produced by factories in China, and because it wished to adopt a more global market perspective, it engaged a Shanghai-based product development consulting firm, Asentio Design, to lead the opportunity identification effort.

This chapter provides a conceptual foundation for opportunity identification, and articulates a six-step process, which includes generating a large number of alternatives and filtering them to identify those that are exceptionally promising. We illustrate the opportunity identification process using the FroliCat example.

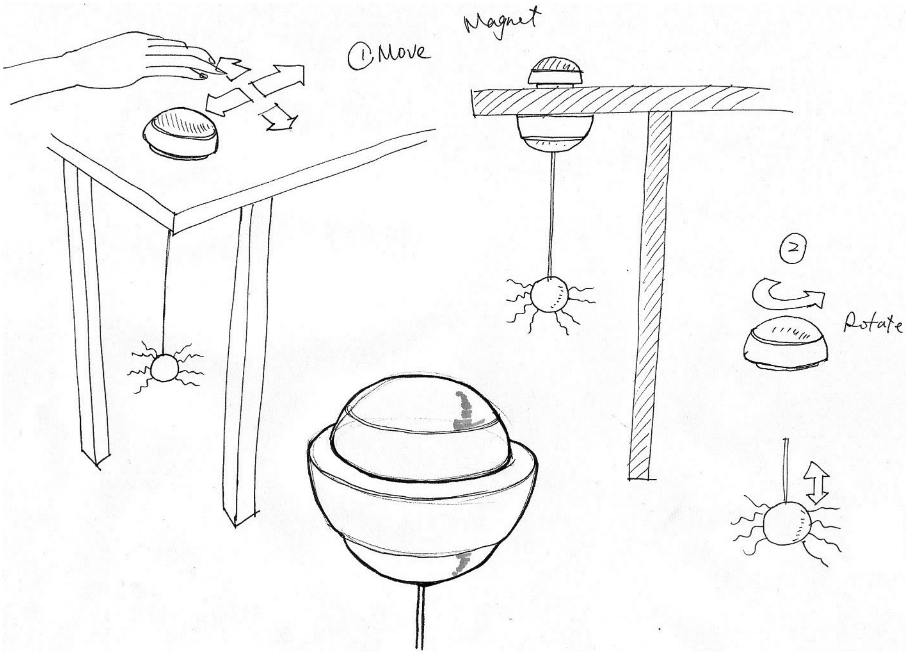
What Is an Opportunity?

In the context of product development, an opportunity is an idea for a new product. An opportunity is a product description in embryonic form, a newly sensed need, a newly discovered technology, or a rough match between a need and a possible solution. At the earliest stage of development, uncertainty clouds the future, so an opportunity can be thought of as a hypothesis about how value might be created. For a consumer-products company like Procter & Gamble, an opportunity might be a new type of cleaner suggested by a customer. For a materials company like 3M, it might be a new polymer with unusual properties. Some opportunities ultimately become new products while others never warrant substantial further development.

An opportunity for a new product is usually articulated with less than one page of information, often including a descriptive title, a narrative explaining the idea, and sometimes including a sketch of a possible product concept. Exhibit 3-2 shows the opportunity eventually pursued by FroliCat as it was first articulated following a brainstorming session by members of the team. The opportunity was for an interactive cat toy consisting of a swinging object hanging from the underside of a table, which would be moved around by a hand from above. This is an example of an opportunity that includes a possible solution concept, which is typical for efforts focused on identifying opportunities for new products in a well-defined category like cat toys.

Types of Opportunities

While there are many ways to categorize opportunities, two dimensions are particularly useful. They are (1) the extent to which the team is familiar with the solution likely to be employed, and (2) the extent to which the team is familiar with the need that the solution addresses. For technology-based products, these dimensions can also be thought of as knowledge of the technology and knowledge of the market. These two dimensions are illustrated in Exhibit 3-3.



Courtesy of Lucky Litter LLC and Asentio Design

EXHIBIT 3-2 The "swinging ball" opportunity eventually pursued by the FroliCat team as first recorded in a sketch. This is an example of an opportunity that includes a potential solution concept.

Because risk of failure increases as opportunities deviate from what the team already knows well, we can divide the opportunity landscape into categories based on the uncertainty "horizon" faced by the team. *Horizon 1* opportunities are largely improvements, extensions, variants, and cost reductions of existing products for existing markets. They are relatively low-risk opportunities. *Horizon 2* opportunities push out into less-known territory in one or both of the dimensions of the market or the technology. *Horizon 3* opportunities represent attempts to exploit opportunities that in some way are new to the world, embodying the highest level of uncertainty.

Because of the need to launch a product within about a year, the FroliCat team explicitly avoided Horizon 3 opportunities. The team wished to build on its initial success with the *Bolt* cat toy, and so focused on its existing customers and the existing needs it already addressed. It sought a next-generation solution for the existing need to entertain cats, and thus focused on Horizon 2 opportunities.

Tournament Structure of Opportunity Identification

Opportunities vary widely in value; however, that value is plagued by uncertainty. It is therefore very useful to identify a set of opportunities and then to select a subset for further development, with just a few coming to fruition. This process can be thought of as an

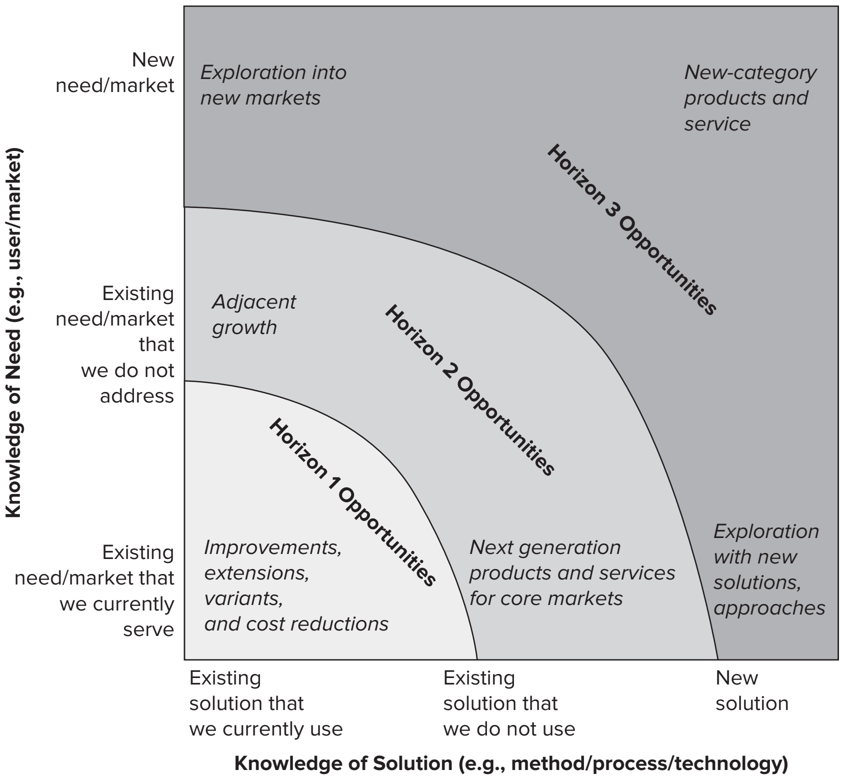


EXHIBIT 3-3 Types of opportunities. Horizons 1, 2, and 3 represent increasing levels of risk, reflecting different types of uncertainty.

Source: Terwiesch, Christian, and Karl T. Ulrich, "Innovation Tournaments: Creating and Identifying Exceptional Opportunities," *Harvard Business Press,* 2009.

innovation tournament, with only the best ideas prevailing. In most settings, dozens, hundreds, or even thousands of opportunities are considered for every one commercial success. A filtering process selects a subset for further development and, from those, picks one or more "champions" that will be launched as full product development efforts. Exhibit 3-4 illustrates this tournament structure.

The opportunity identification process embodied in an innovation tournament precedes the product development process as shown in Exhibit 3-4. While both the opportunity identification process and the product development process consist of development steps and selection steps, the overarching goals of the two activities are quite different. In opportunity identification, the goal is to generate a large number of opportunities and efficiently kill those that are not worthy of further investment. In the product development process, the goal is to take the opportunity articulated in the mission statement and do everything possible to assure it becomes the best product it can be.

Although opportunity identification and product development can be thought of as separate activities, there is clearly some overlap between them. For example, in a consumer product business like FroliCat, preliminary product concepts are almost always generated

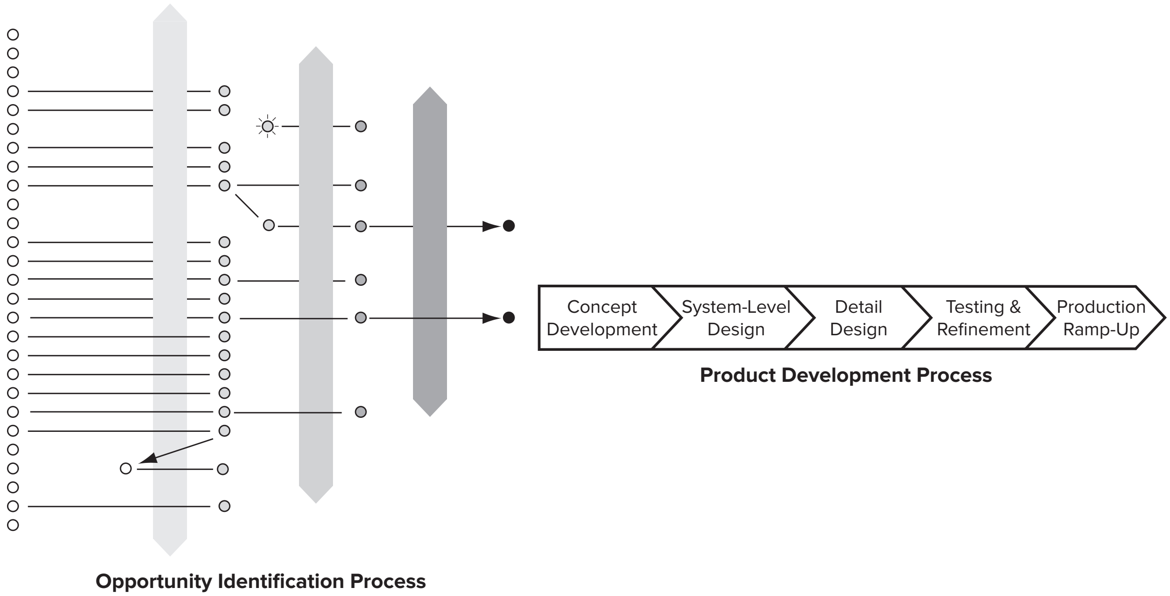


EXHIBIT 3-4 The tournament structure of the opportunity identification process. The opportunity tournament feeds the product development process with exceptional opportunities.

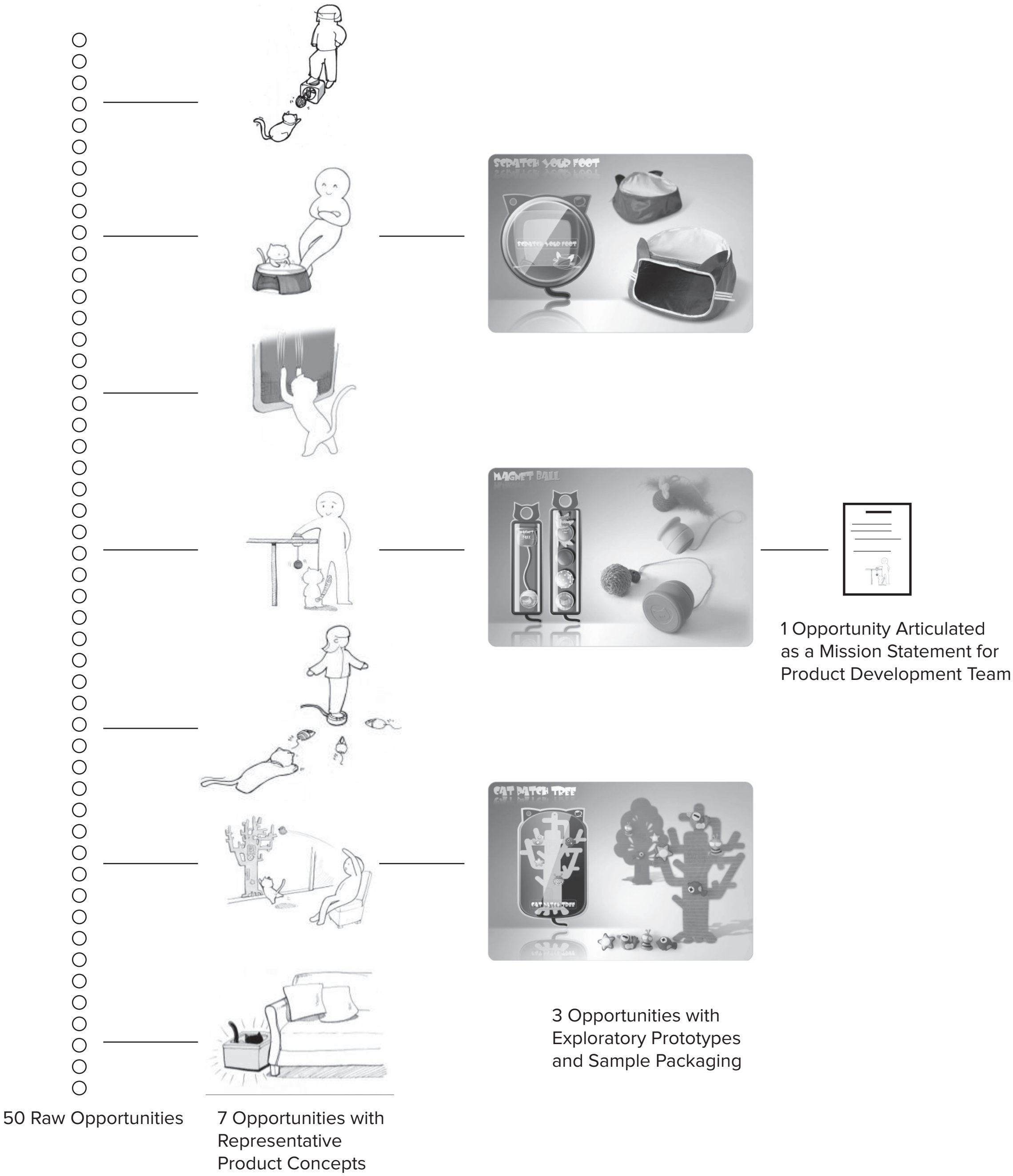
Source: Terwiesch, Christian, and Karl T. Ulrich, "Innovation Tournaments: Creating and Identifying Exceptional Opportunities," *Harvard Business Press,* 2009.

and explored with prototypes during the opportunity identification process, before a formal product development process begins. However, these exploratory activities are typically conducted for several alternative opportunities, with only the most promising proceeding to more comprehensive product design and development. Exhibit 3-5 illustrates the opportunity identification tournament structure used by FroliCat, starting with 50 opportunities and eventually resulting in one chosen to go into full product development.

Effective Opportunity Tournaments

Given that great opportunities are rare, how can the opportunity identification process be managed to increase the number of excellent opportunities identified? There are three basic ways.

1. **Generate a large number of opportunities.** If you produce more opportunities, you'll see more exceptional ones. The logic here is simple: On average, if you find one 7-foot (213 cm) tall person per 100,000 people, you'll find two among 200,000. Creating more opportunities (without sacrificing their average quality) is thus a key lever in finding the exceptional few.
2. **Seek high quality of the opportunities generated.** Adopting better methods for generating opportunities and mining better sources of opportunities can increase the average quality of the opportunities under consideration, which will also increase the quality of the *best* ideas resulting from the tournament.



Courtesy of Lucky Litter LLC and Asentio Design

EXHIBIT 3-5 The overall tournament structure of the opportunity identification process for FroliCat. Fifty raw opportunities were eventually filtered and explored, resulting in a "swinging ball" opportunity that was developed into a product launched to the market.

3. **Create high variance in the quality of opportunities.** This is a direct, though not immediately obvious, implication of statistics. Holding the average quality and number of opportunities constant, you'll generate more exceptional ones from a process that exhibits greater variability; that is, if it's less consistent in the quality of its output. The quest for variability contradicts normal approaches to process improvement, but it's exactly what you want in opportunity creation. Generating wacky ideas and wild notions increases the chance that at least one of the opportunities will be exceptionally good.

Opportunity Identification Process

We divide the opportunity identification process into six steps as follows:

1. Establish a charter.
2. Generate and sense many opportunities.
3. Screen opportunities.
4. Develop promising opportunities.
5. Select exceptional opportunities.
6. Reflect on the results and the process.

Each step is the focus of a section of this chapter.

Step 1: Establish a Charter

Organizations create new products to achieve goals such as growing revenues from existing customers, filling a hole in a product line, or entering new market segments. Entrepreneurs starting new organizations also have goals like creating a new product related to an area of personal interest. The *innovation charter* articulates these goals and establishes the boundary conditions for an innovation effort. Charters are closely analogous to (although somewhat broader than) the mission statement for a new product. (See Chapter 4, Product Planning.)

For example, the charter for the FroliCat effort was:

> *Create a physical product in the cat toy category that we can launch to the market within about a year through our existing retail sales channel.*

The main restrictions in this charter were the emphasis on physical goods instead of software or services, a focus on the cat toy category, a preference for opportunities that would not require enormous investments of calendar time, and a desire to take advantage of the company's existing relationships with retailers.

The charter requires resolving a tension between leaving the innovation problem unconstrained, and specifying a direction that is likely to meet the goals of the team and organization. By specifying a narrow charter, the team avoids wasting effort generating opportunities in areas that are unlikely to be pursued. On the other hand, sometimes deciding which opportunities are worthy of pursuit in advance and in the abstract is difficult.

Similar to the mission statement for a new product, we recommend that the innovation charter be broad, perhaps a bit broader than the team is comfortable with. Generating ideas is inexpensive, and sharpening the focus later is not difficult. The benefit of allowing a broad focus is that opportunities that may otherwise have never been considered will challenge the team's assumptions about what kinds of opportunities it should pursue.

Step 2: Generate and Sense Many Opportunities

Based on a survey of companies across many industries, about half of innovation opportunities are generated internally to an organization and about half are recognized from customers and other external sources (Terwiesch and Ulrich, 2009). The distribution of sources of opportunities is shown in Exhibit 3-6.

We therefore recommend that the team explicitly focus on both internal and external sources of opportunities. Typically, the team will want to identify dozens if not hundreds of raw opportunities. Fortunately, this daunting task is made much easier through the application of some structured techniques, which we outline here.

Techniques for Generating Opportunities

For some creative people there is nothing more fun than coming up with new ideas. However, we find that the majority of people have a hard time when asked simply to generate some promising opportunities. For them the problem of coming up with something new is simply too abstract, too unstructured, and has too many degrees of freedom. Following are seven basic techniques for stimulating the identification of opportunities. Most work well in both entrepreneurial and corporate settings.

Follow a Personal Passion

List your passions—endeavors that keep you awake with excitement—and then consider how emerging technologies, trends, and business models might influence them. Or identify unmet needs that you have in connection with a personal interest. An avid bicyclist whom

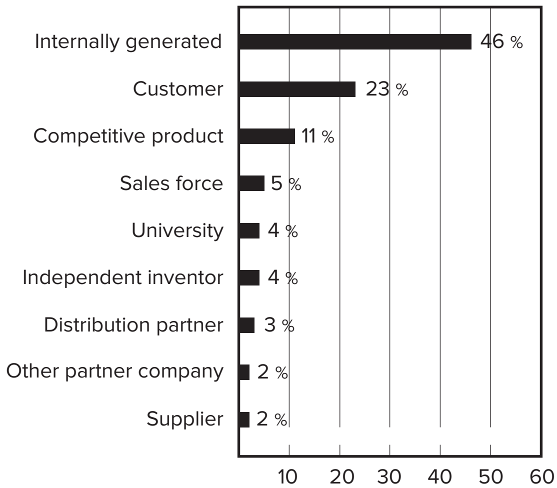


EXHIBIT 3-6 The distribution of sources of opportunities in innovation.

Source: Terwiesch, Christian, and Karl T. Ulrich, "Innovation Tournaments: Creating and Identifying Exceptional Opportunities," *Harvard Business Press,* 2009.

©Matthew Kressy

EXHIBIT 3-7 Nutrient delivery system worn during testing by the inventor, Matt Kressy (nutrient pouch, tubing, and valve on his right side).

we know has been developing a nutrient delivery system for use with existing hydration backpacks (for example, CamelBak), which has applications for the military and for a wide variety of sports (Exhibit 3-7). He identified the opportunity while reflecting on his desire to adjust the amount of sugar and electrolytes in the beverages in his hydration pack.

Compile Bug Lists

Successful innovators are often chronically dissatisfied with the world around them. They notice unmet needs of users, including themselves. List (or photograph) every annoyance or frustration you encounter over a period of days or weeks and then pick the most universal and vexing ones and dream up solutions. Any problem is an opportunity.

An annoyance that gives birth to the opportunity doesn't have to be yours alone. Instead, you might find it through customer complaints or market research. A powerful way to understand others' annoyances is to immerse yourself in the world of people using your products or services.

Pull Opportunities from Capabilities

Theories of competitive advantage abound, but most spring from the idea that firms achieve above-average profits by exploiting *unique resources.* Resources, an umbrella term, includes *capabilities, core competencies,* and *competitive advantage.* To provide advantage, a resource must be:

- **Valuable.** To be valuable, a resource must either allow a firm to achieve greater performance than competitors or reduce a weakness relative to competitors.
- **Rare.** Given competition, a valuable resource must be rare.

- **Inimitable.** For value and rarity to persist, a resource must not be easily imitated.
- **Nonsubstitutable.** Even if valuable, rare, and inimitable, a resource providing advantage can't be easily substituted.

This perspective, abbreviated as VRIN, can be used to define targets by first articulating an inventory of resources and then using the inventory as a lens for opportunity generation.

Apple Inc. VRIN resources, for example, might include excellence in industrial design, a leading brand, and a loyal customer base. Each of these resources can guide the opportunity creation process by reformulating them as a challenge. For example: In what other product categories might Apple's design excellence create advantage? For which product or service categories could the Apple brand be deployed to advantage? What other products or services could Apple provide to its customer base?

Study Customers

Opportunities can be identified by studying customers in a selected market segment. These studies (also called *user anthropology* or *consumer ethnography*) provide a deeper understanding of the true customer needs than you can obtain through surveys.

Consider the bicycle industry. Shimano, a maker of bike components like pedals and brakes, recently commissioned a user anthropology study to understand why more people in the United States don't ride bikes. The traditional approach to this problem would have been to create a survey or a set of focus groups, asking customers how often they ride and what attributes of a bike they value the most. Most likely, most Americans would say that they ride regularly (which for some might mean once a year) and that they want light bikes with many gears. Those, after all, are the product attributes emphasized in nearly every bike shop.

Unfortunately, what people say to researchers and what they really do can differ substantially. By spending many hours observing potential cyclists, including time on and off bicycles, Shimano's researchers found that many consumers want bikes that are technically simple, easy to ride, and easy to get on and off—all attributes that aren't emphasized in the current competition among bicycle manufacturers, who tend to emphasize the needs of biking enthusiasts.

User anthropology thus helped Shimano to identify a set of *latent needs.* (See Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs, for a description of latent needs.) When a latent need is articulated, it becomes a target for the opportunity creation process. Once they identified the factors that keep many potential customers in their automobiles as opposed to on their bikes, they had the opportunity to redefine the product category.

In the case of Shimano, these efforts led to the creation of bikes targeted specifically at the leisure rider; that is, people who might rent a bike during their annual family trip to the beach but otherwise weren't riding regularly. Shimano developed a line of components under the brand Coasting, and manufacturers then incorporated them into their bikes. One example is the Trek Lime, shown in Exhibit 3-8.

Consider Implications of Trends

Changes in technology, demography, or social norms often create innovation opportunities. Ubiquitous mobile telephone service, for example, enables a wide variety of information delivery services. An increasing Spanish-speaking population in the United States, for

Courtesy of Trek

EXHIBIT 3-8 The Trek Lime bicycle incorporating the Shimano Coasting component group.

example, enables new sorts of Spanish-language media. Growing environmental awareness creates a market for green products and services. Once again, the means of exploration is easy: list social, environmental, technological, or economic trends and then imagine innovation opportunities made possible by each one.

Imitate, but Better

When another firm innovates successfully, it in effect publishes the location of a gold mine. You can exploit this information by either considering alternative solutions that could address the same need or alternative needs that could be addressed with the same solution. Exhibit 3-9 shows examples of the imitate-but-better approach. Here are some sources of opportunities for imitation:

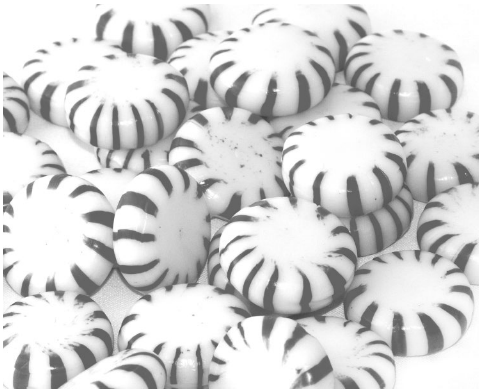
- ***Media and marketing activities of other firms.*** Scan the media and monitor the activities of other firms by attending trade shows and following patent filings, for example. Articulate the need and solution associated with any innovation that you identify. Generate alternative approaches to meeting the need or alternative needs that can be addressed with the new approach.
- ***De-commoditize a commodity.*** Often, price competition characterizes a product category, and the offerings themselves are little more than commodities. Recall coffee before Starbucks or breath mints before Altoids. A situation like this creates an opportunity for innovation. To pursue this kind of innovation, list all of the inexpensive, undifferentiated products or services in a category and then consider the possibility of deluxe versions.

©Stockbyte/PunchStock

©Tannis Toohey/
Getty Images

©Ingram Publishing/Alamy

©McGraw-Hill Education/Jill
Braaten



©val lawless/Shutterstock

©Mark Collinson/Alamy

Existing Product | **"Imitate-but-Better" Product**

EXHIBIT 3-9 Examples of the imitate-but-better approach: SpinBrush, Starbucks, Altoids.

- ***Drive an innovation "down market."*** Four entrepreneurs with a history in the toy and candy businesses invented the Crest SpinBrush in 1998. They believed that their competitive advantage was in creating small, cheap, battery-powered devices, as they had done with the Spin Pop, a lollipop spun by a little motor. They were struck by the array of electric toothbrushes, many selling for about $100, yet none having much more complexity than their spinning lollipops. They decided to "create an electric toothbrush that can sell for six dollars." Their SpinBrush became the best-selling toothbrush of any type. To follow their example, list the premium products or services in a category and then imagine much cheaper versions that provide many of the same benefits.
- ***Import geographically isolated innovations.*** Innovations are often geographically isolated, particularly if introduced by smaller firms. Translating the innovation from one geographic region to another can be a source of innovation. The Red Bull energy drink started as a product for Thai truck drivers. Starbucks founder Howard Schultz created the chain after visiting Milan and becoming infatuated with its café culture and espresso-based drinks.

Mine Your Sources

Recall that about half of product opportunities arise from sources inside an organization and about half come from outside sources. As a result, you benefit from cultivating external sources of ideas. Those sources include the following:

- ***Lead users.*** Firms have ample incentive to innovate. Innovation, after all, can result in new sources of cash. But lead users and independent inventors may have even greater incentives. Lead users are people or firms that have advanced needs that may not be met by existing products or services. Lead users must either tolerate their unmet needs or innovate themselves to address them. Many devices and procedures in health care were invented by clinicians. For example, consider Dr. Lillian Aronson, a veterinarian at the University of Pennsylvania who performs feline liver transplants. Her procedure is relatively new, the market is small, and few existing surgical tools fit the task. Dr. Aronson thus has to choose between ill-suited instruments and inventing her own. If she invents a useful device, she creates an opportunity for further innovation by an established firm.
- ***Representation in social networks.*** Another way to increase the keenness of your sensing is to ensure that you are plugged into the appropriate social networks. Social institutions of all kinds facilitate communication among innovators. Some of these institutions may not be related to professional life. Cricket and softball leagues in Silicon Valley are widely known to be hotbeds of entrepreneurial activity and have played a key role in facilitating the exchange of ideas leading to opportunities for new products. Online social networking communities and discussion forums also may foster communication among innovators.
- ***Universities and government laboratories.*** Students, research staff, and professors continually pursue novel solutions to vexing challenges. In many cases, the solutions identified in universities and government laboratories can be commercialized by third parties, including existing companies and start-ups. Research universities and government laboratories have technology transfer organizations to facilitate this process.
- ***Online idea submission.*** Opportunities may be collected from customers and non-customers through websites. For example, the computer company Dell runs a website IdeaStorm for soliciting innovation opportunities from customers.

Step 3: Screen Opportunities

The goal of screening is simply to eliminate opportunities that are highly unlikely to result in the creation of value and to focus attention on the opportunities worthy of further investigation. The aim is not to pick the single best opportunity. Given many opportunities to be screened, the process must be relatively efficient, even at the expense of perfect accuracy.

For this step, a very effective screening criterion is the holistic judgment by a group of individuals of whether or not the opportunity is worthy of a few days or weeks of additional investigation. Separate application of multiple screening criteria (e.g., market need, technological feasibility, alignment with strategy) tends to bog down the process in unnecessary discussion. Recall that in most settings you will have dozens or even hundreds of raw opportunities to consider.

Two methods are effective approaches to screening: Web-based surveys and workshops with "multivoting." Both methods rely on the independent judgments of a group of people. Typically this group comprises members of your organization, but could be an extended entrepreneurial team, or even friends and family members with relevant expertise. Of course, the group performing the evaluation must have relevant expertise, even if that expertise varies in type and depth.

A Web-based interface can ensure that the participants don't know the author of each idea, so they will base their votes on the quality of the opportunity, not their opinion of its originator. Many free Web-based survey tools are available, or you can use one of the Web-based tools designed specifically for the purpose of evaluating innovation opportunities. A Web-based screening survey can be as simple as a listing of opportunities with short descriptions for which you ask respondents simply to indicate a yes–no vote on whether or not the opportunity deserves further investment. Alternatively, you can use a 1–10 scale, which may be useful if you have a relatively small group of people voting. In our experience, you need at least six independent judgments, and preferably more than 10, to make reliable decisions.

You can also use an in-person workshop to evaluate opportunities. In a format we have used frequently, each participant presents one or more opportunities to the group. These presentations can be supported by a single slide, page, or flip-chart sheet. We strongly recommend that these presentations be limited to about one minute and that each presenter adhere to the same time limit and format. Summaries of each opportunity may be distributed in advance of the workshop.

Following the presentations, you ask a group of raters to *multivote* on the opportunities. With multivoting, you display opportunities on pages or flip-chart sheets posted on the walls of the room where you're conducting your workshop. Raters are given "dots" (or other types of stickers) to register their votes. They simply apply their stickers to the opportunities they favor. (Another way that multivoting may be applied in the product development process is for choosing the most promising concepts. See Chapter 8, Concept Selection.)

We recommend that you number the opportunities and ask voters to write the number of the opportunity they will vote for on each of their stickers. They do this quietly as a group before actually applying the stickers to the sheets. Then, everyone places their stickers simultaneously. By this method, you avoid influencing the voting decisions with information about how others have voted.

Workshops work well for reviewing up to about 50 opportunities. For more than 50, we suggest first doing a round of Web-based screening.

Regardless of which voting method you choose, we suggest that you consider advancing not only the ideas receiving the most votes, but also those with only a few very enthusiastic supporters. Strong opinions often point to exceptional ideas. Remember that your goal is to efficiently eliminate opportunities that are not worthy of further investment, but to avoid killing a potentially great idea.

The FroliCat team had developed 50 raw opportunities as the result of the efforts of six individuals working independently and in brainstorming sessions. The team members identified seven opportunities they felt were worthy of further development, by aggregating the individual judgments of the team members, including both product designers at Asentio and marketing managers at FroliCat.

Step 4: Develop Promising Opportunities

Rarely does it make sense to bet on a single opportunity. Too much uncertainty clouds the prospects for success. After screening opportunities, the team should invest modest levels of resources in developing a few of them. At a minimum, an opportunity passing the initial screen warrants an Internet search for existing solutions and an informal discussion with a few potential customers.

Some additional tasks that are often worth completing include customer interviews, testing of existing products, concept generation, quick prototypes, and estimates of market sizes and growth rates. You might invest a few days to a few weeks in each of several promising opportunities.

In developing promising opportunities, the goal is to resolve the greatest uncertainty surrounding each one at the lowest cost in time and money. One way to structure this step is to list the major uncertainties regarding the success of each opportunity, the tasks you could take to resolve the uncertainties, and the approximate cost of each task. Then, perform the tasks that resolve the most uncertainty at the lowest cost. For example, an opportunity based on a clever concept might not be very valuable if a patent is unlikely. A cursory patent search takes just a couple of hours, and so that is a task that should be completed early in the process of developing the opportunity.

The FroliCat team explored the seven opportunities shown in Exhibit 3-5 and selected three opportunities for further development. The subsequent development tasks were to build functional prototypes and test them with cats and cat owners, to create packaging concepts and test their appeal with consumers, and to complete financial analysis based on likely manufacturing costs and price points.

Step 5: Select Exceptional Opportunities

Once a handful of opportunities have been developed with modest investment of resources, enough uncertainty should be resolved in order to pick the exceptional few opportunities that warrant a significant investment in product development.

Chapter 8, Concept Selection, describes how to choose a design concept by comparing alternatives against selection criteria. The same basic method can be used to select product opportunities. One specific approach used within established companies is the *Real-Win-Worth-it* (RWW) method, developed originally by 3M (Day, 2007). The name, Real-Win-Worth-it, summarizes the three questions an organization should attempt to answer when screening opportunities:

- Is the opportunity *real*? Is there a real market that you can serve with the product? Criteria here include market size, potential pricing, availability of technology, and the likelihood the product can be delivered in the required volume at the required cost.
- Can you *win* with this opportunity? Can you establish a sustainable competitive advantage? Can you patent or brand the idea? Are you more capable of executing it than competitors? For example, do you have superior engineering talent in this field?
- Is the opportunity *worth it* financially? Do you have the resources needed (financial and developmental) and are you confident that the investment will be rewarded with appropriate returns?

Exhibit 3-10 shows the RWW criteria applied to the "swinging ball" opportunity for FroliCat. An analysis like this one, done for each opportunity, allows the team to narrow the opportunities to the exceptional few. For FroliCat, the swinging ball concept was highly appealing to potential purchasers, was engaging for cats, offered the prospect of a good patent, and could be developed and launched with modest investment. These factors distinguished the opportunity from the others.

Real-Win-Worth-it (RWW) Framework—"Swing Ball Cat Toy" Example

1. Is there a real market and a real product?	
Is there a need? (What is the need? How is the need presently satisfied?)	Yes
Can the customer buy? (size of the market, customer decision-making process)	Yes
Will the customer buy? (perceived risks and benefits, expectations on price and availability)	Yes
Is there a viable concept for a product already? How likely are we to be able to develop a viable concept?	Yes
Is the product acceptable within the social, legal, and environmental norms?	Yes
Is the product feasible? Can it be made? Is the technology available? Does it satisfy the needs?	Yes
Will our product satisfy the market? Is there a relative advantage to other products?	Yes
Can it be produced at low cost?	Yes
Are the risks perceived by the customer acceptable? What are the barriers to adoption?	Yes
Answer	YES
2. Can we win? Can our product or service be competitive? Can we succeed as a company?	
Do we have a competitive advantage? Is it sustainable? (performance, patents, barriers to entry, substitution, price)	Yes
Is the timing right?	Yes
Does it fit our brand?	Yes
Will we beat our competition? (How much will they improve? price trajectories, entrants)	Yes
Do we have superior resources? (engineering, finance, marketing, production; fit with core competencies)	No
Do we have the management that can win? (experience? fit with culture? commitment to this opportunity?)	Yes
Do we know the market as well as or better than our competitors? (customer behavior? channels?)	Yes
Answer	YES
3. Is it worth doing? Is the return adequate and the risk acceptable?	
Will it make money?	Yes
Do we have the resources and the cash to do this?	Yes
Are the risks acceptable to us? (What could go wrong? technical risk vs. market risk)	Yes
Does it fit our strategy? (fit with our growth expectation, impact on brand, embedded options)	Yes
Answer	YES

EXHIBIT 3-10

The Real-Win-Worth-it criteria applied to the swinging ball opportunity. The checklist is available from the book website.

This same selection method can be applied using other criteria. An entrepreneur starting a new business will use different criteria from those of an established company. For example, in addition to or instead of the Real-Win-Worth-it criteria, an entrepreneur might select opportunities based on the amount of capital required, the time required to get to market, or the passion and excitement invoked by the opportunity.

Step 6: Reflect on the Results and the Process

The FroliCat team pursued the swing ball opportunity and developed a product for sale (Exhibit 3-11), which was named the *Sway*. The *Sway* was launched through major retailers such as Amazon. The team anxiously awaited the market response, which would be a key indicator of the success of their opportunity identification process. However, market success is not the only success criterion for the process. Some questions to consider in reflecting on the opportunity identification results and process are:

- How many of the opportunities identified came from internal sources versus external sources?
- Did we consider dozens or hundreds of opportunities?
- Was the innovation charter too narrowly focused?
- Were our filtering criteria biased, or largely based on the best possible estimates of eventual product success?
- Are the resulting opportunities exciting to the team?

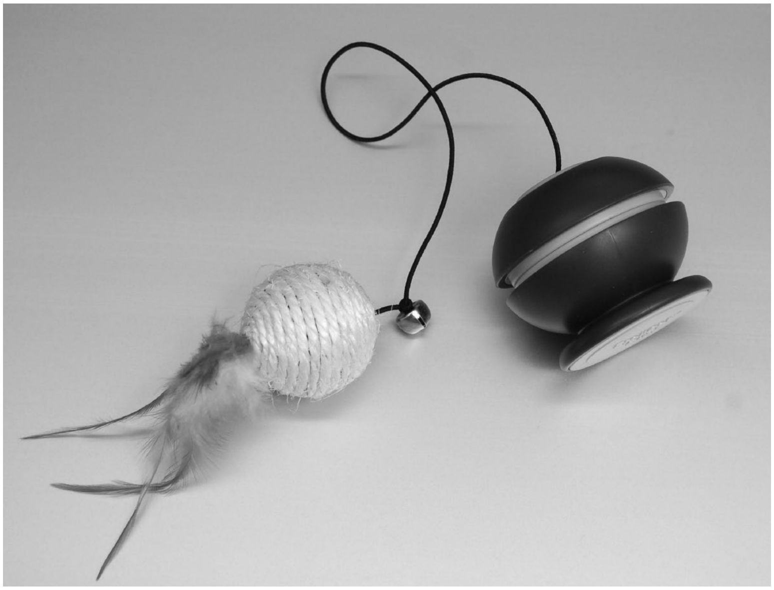


EXHIBIT 3-11 The *Sway* cat toy product that resulted from the swinging ball opportunity.

Summary

This chapter articulates a conceptual framework for opportunity identification as a tournament in which a large number of raw opportunities are generated and then filtered and explored in order to narrow those opportunities to an exceptional few.

The opportunity identification process includes six steps:

1. Establish a charter.
2. Generate and sense many opportunities.
3. Screen opportunities.
4. Develop promising opportunities.
5. Select exceptional opportunities.
6. Reflect on the results and the process.

The performance of the opportunity identification process depends on considering a large number of opportunities from a variety of sources, applying idea generation processes that result in good opportunities, and considering opportunities of widely varying quality. By systematically filtering and developing a large set of raw opportunities to identify an exceptional few for further development, the resources of the organization are put to their best use.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources, including the Real-Win-Worth-it spreadsheet, and Web-based software for evaluating opportunities, are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

For more information about opportunity identification, see these books.

Kim, W. Chan, and Renee Mauborgne, *Blue Ocean Strategy: How to Create Uncontested Market Space and Make Competition Irrelevant,* Harvard Business Press, Boston, 2005.

Nalebuff, Barry, and Ian Ayres, *Why Not? How to Use Everyday Ingenuity to Solve Problems Big and Small,* Harvard Business Press, Boston, 2003.

Terwiesch, Christian, and Karl T. Ulrich, *Innovation Tournaments: Creating and Identifying Exceptional Opportunities,* Harvard Business Press, Boston, 2009.

VanGundy discusses the merits of various screening methods.

VanGundy, Arthur B., *Techniques of Structured Problem Solving,* second edition, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1988.

The Real-Win-Worth-it method is described in greater detail in this article by Day.

Day, George S., "Is it Real? Can We Win? Is it Worth Doing?: Managing Risk and Reward in an Innovation Portfolio," *Harvard Business Review,* December 2007.

The following studies provide some of the theoretical and experimental evidence for the principles underlying the opportunity identification process.

Girotra, Karan, Christian Terwiesch, and Karl Ulrich, “Idea Generation and the Quality of the Best Idea,” *Management Science,* Vol. 56, No. 4, 2010, pp. 591–604.

Kornish, Laura J., and Karl T. Ulrich, “Opportunity Spaces in Innovation: Empirical Analysis of Large Samples of Ideas,” *Management Science,* Vol. 57, No. 1, January 2011, pp. 107–128.

Kornish, Laura J., and Karl T. Ulrich, “The Importance of the Raw Idea in Innovation: Testing the Sow’s Ear Hypothesis,” *Journal of Marketing Research,* Vol. LI, February 2014, pp. 14–26.

Exercises

1. Visit a local specialty retail store (e.g., sporting goods, cooking products, electronics) and identify a generic product or commodity that might be “de-commoditized” and differentiated through innovation.
2. Generate 10 opportunities for innovation based on an area of your own personal passion.
3. Identify the VRIN resources for a product-based company you admire. What new product opportunities might be enabled by these resources?

Thought Questions

1. What are the advantages and disadvantages of *anonymous* voting in screening opportunities?
2. Would consumers make good raters in an opportunity screening process?
3. Can you really answer the question of whether an opportunity is *real* (as in the Real-Win-Worth-it criteria) before developing a product concept?
4. Could a great opportunity identification process result in a product that fails in the market?
5. How do the risks differ between two types of Horizon 2 opportunities, one addressing a current market need and the other using a current solution?

CHAPTER FOUR

Product Planning

Courtesy of SharkNinja

EXHIBIT 4-1
SharkNinja's first cordless stick vacuum cleaner (left) was a tremendous success. Planning for the next cordless products involved consideration of multiple adjacent product opportunities, including a powered lift-away model (right).

SharkNinja is a leading manufacturer of household products including its Shark brand of floor cleaning products and its Ninja brand of small kitchen appliances. Exhibit 4-1 shows both the Shark IONFlex—a lightweight cordless "stick" vacuum, and the Shark ION Powered Lift-Away—a larger-capacity cordless "upright" vacuum. After a successful launch of the IONFlex cordless stick, the development team at SharkNinja began considering a range of additional models they might create for the cordless vacuum market. Their efforts led to several new products including the cordless Powered Lift-Away (PLA).

While both Shark and Ninja product lines enjoy leading positions in the U.S. market, SharkNinja understood the need for constant renewal of its existing portfolio of product models. In addition, they faced significant opportunities to grow internationally, especially in Europe and Asia. A key element of SharkNinja's competitive strategy is to provide customers with innovative convenience features at competitive prices. Facing myriad development opportunities, creating the right products for each product line in each target market requires careful *product planning*.

The product planning process takes place before a product development project is formally approved, before substantial resources are applied, and before the larger development team is formed. Product planning is an activity that considers both the current product line and the potential portfolio of projects that an organization might pursue. Product planning decisions determine what subset of the possible development projects will be pursued over a certain time period. The product planning activity ensures that product development projects support the broader business strategy of the company, and in doing so addresses these questions:

- What product development projects will be undertaken?
- What mix of fundamentally new products, platforms, and derivative products should be pursued?
- How do the various projects relate to the current product line and to each other as a portfolio?
- What will be the timing and sequence of the projects?

Each of the selected projects is then executed by a product development team. The team needs to know its mission before beginning development. The answers to these critical questions are included in a mission statement for the team:

- What market segment(s) should be considered in designing the product and developing its features?
- What new technologies (if any) and what key features should be incorporated into the new product?
- What are the manufacturing and service goals and constraints?
- What are the financial targets for the project?
- What are the budget and time frame for the project?

This chapter explains how an organization can maximize the effectiveness of its product development efforts by first considering the set of potential projects it might pursue, deciding which projects are most desirable, and then launching each project with a focused mission. We present a five-step planning process beginning with the identification of opportunities and resulting in a mission statement for the project team.

The Product Planning Process

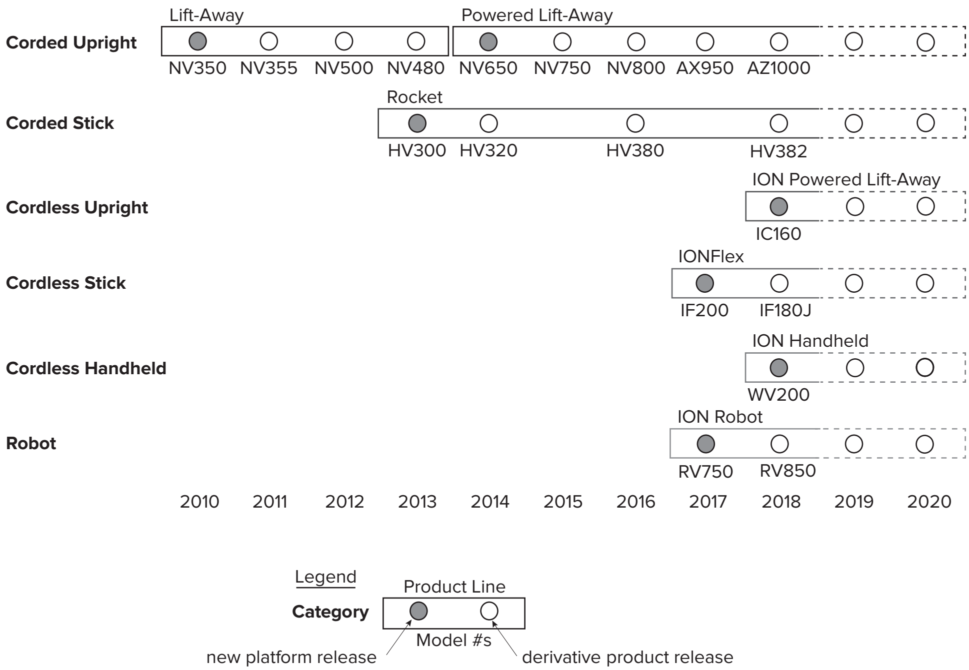
The *product plan* identifies the portfolio of products to be developed by the organization and the timing of their introduction to the market. The planning process considers product development opportunities identified by many sources, including suggestions from marketing, sales force, technical research, customers, current product development teams, customer service, product support, and benchmarking of competitors. From among these opportunities, a portfolio of projects is chosen, timing of projects is outlined, and resources are allocated. Exhibit 4-2 shows an example of a product plan that identifies the portfolio of projects to be pursued by the development organization and how the resulting future product releases relate to the current offerings. This plan may include projects in various categories, such as new platforms, derivatives of existing platforms, product improvements, and fundamentally new products.

The product plan is regularly updated to reflect changes in the competitive environment, changes in technology, and information on the success of existing products. Product plans are developed with the company's goals, capabilities, constraints, and competitive environment in mind. Product planning decisions generally involve the senior management of the organization and may take place only annually or a few times each year. Some organizations have a chief product officer or director of planning who manages this process.

Organizations that do not carefully plan the portfolio of development projects to pursue are often plagued with inefficiencies such as:

- Inadequate coverage of target markets with competitive products.
- Poor timing of market introductions of products.

EXHIBIT 4-2
2018 product plan for Shark brand vacuums in six product categories, showing historical and future market release of each product platform and some of their derivative products.



- Mismatches between aggregate development capacity and the number of projects pursued.
- Poor distribution of resources, with some projects overstaffed and others understaffed.
- Initiation and subsequent cancellation of ill-conceived projects.
- Frequent changes in the directions of projects.

Four Types of Product Development Projects

Product development projects can be classified as four types. The first three types may be considered adjacent to current offerings, while the last one departs more substantially from the firm's existing products:

- ***New product platforms:*** This type of project involves a major development effort to create a new family of products based on a new, common platform. The new product family may address familiar product categories but add compelling new features and/or technology. SharkNinja's project to develop its first lithium-ion battery-powered cordless stick vacuum (model IF200) is an example of this type of project.
- ***Derivatives of existing product platforms:*** These projects extend an existing product platform to address familiar or adjacent markets with new products or features. To develop a next-generation brush head or to create models specific to regional markets or major retailers based on an existing vacuum product platform would be examples of this type of project. SharkNinja's HV380 is a derivative which added the new DuoClean head to the existing line of Rocket corded stick vacuums.
- ***Incremental improvements to existing products:*** These projects may only involve adding or modifying some features of existing products in order to keep the product line current and competitive. Color changes or technical improvements such as a larger capacity battery to increase run time would be examples of this type of project. Such modifications are often released to the market without introducing a new product name and only changing the model number.
- ***Fundamentally new products:*** These projects involve radically different product or production technologies and may help to address new and unfamiliar markets. Such projects inherently involve more risk; however, the long-term success of the enterprise may depend on what is learned through these important projects. SharkNinja's entry into the autonomous robot market with the RV750 is an example of a fundamentally new product that is very different from Shark's line of manual vacuum cleaners.

The Process

Exhibit 4-3 illustrates the steps in the product planning process. First, multiple opportunities are prioritized and a set of promising projects is selected. Resources are allocated to these projects and they are scheduled. These planning activities focus on a portfolio of opportunities and potential projects and are sometimes referred to as portfolio management, aggregate product planning, product line planning, or product management. Once projects have been selected and resources allocated, a mission statement is developed for each project. The formulation of a product plan and the development of a mission statement therefore precede the actual product development process.

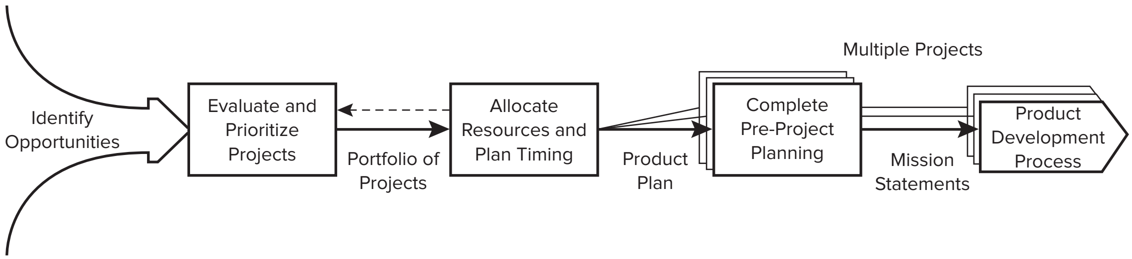


EXHIBIT 4-3 The product planning process. These activities address a portfolio of product development projects, resulting in a product plan and, for each selected project, a mission statement.

Although we show the planning process as essentially linear, the activities of selecting promising projects and allocating resources are inherently iterative. The realities of schedules and budgets often force a reassessment of priorities and further refinement and culling of potential projects. The product plan is therefore reevaluated frequently and should be modified based on the latest information from development teams, research laboratories, production, marketing, and service organizations. People involved later in the process are often the first to realize that something about the overall plan or a project's mission is inconsistent, infeasible, or out of date. The ability to adjust the product plan over time is vital to the long-term success of the enterprise.

To develop a product plan and project mission statements, we suggest a five-step process:

1. Identify opportunities.
2. Evaluate and prioritize projects.
3. Allocate resources and plan timing.
4. Complete pre-project planning.
5. Reflect on the results and the process.

Step 1: Identify Opportunities

The planning process begins with the identification of product development opportunities. Such opportunities may involve any of the four types of projects defined above. This step can be thought of as the opportunity funnel because it brings together inputs from across the enterprise. Opportunities may be collected passively, but we also recommend that the firm explicitly attempt to generate opportunities. Chapter 3, Opportunity Identification, provides a process for generating, recognizing, and evaluating opportunities.

When employed actively, the opportunity funnel collects ideas continuously, and new product opportunities may arise at any time. As a way of tracking, sorting, and refining these opportunities, we recommend that each promising opportunity be described in a short, coherent statement and that this information be collected in a database. Several Internet-based idea management systems are available for gathering and storing information on opportunities, although a simple list in a spreadsheet may be sufficient.

At SharkNinja, product opportunities were regularly gathered by product managers and discussed in meetings with the executive team. SharkNinja regularly interviewed and observed customers in their own homes as well as in a demonstration home situated within its corporate headquarters. They also organized design sprints to flesh out several of the most promising ideas before planning decisions were finalized. Opportunities spanned the spectrum from incremental to radical, and included feature enhancements to current products, regionalization of existing products for new geographic markets, proposals for new products based on new technologies, and entirely new kitchen or cleaning product categories. Following are some examples of opportunity statements similar to those proposed at SharkNinja related to cordless vacuums:

- Develop a next-generation cordless stick vacuum with new technology for the U.S. market (new platform).
- Create a derivative of the IONFlex cordless stick vacuum for the China market with a modified cleaning head (derivative).
- Update two current products with a new dust cup design (improvements).

This opportunity statement eventually became the cordless PLA project:

- Develop a cordless upright vacuum cleaner for larger homes (new platform)

Step 2: Evaluate and Prioritize Projects

If managed actively, the opportunity funnel can collect hundreds or even thousands of opportunities during a year. Some of these opportunities do not make sense in the context of the firm's other activities, and in most cases, there are simply too many opportunities for the firm to pursue at once. The second step in the product planning process is therefore to select the most promising projects to pursue. Four basic perspectives are useful in evaluating and prioritizing opportunities for new products in existing product categories: competitive strategy, market segmentation, technological trajectories, and product platforms. After discussing these four perspectives, we then discuss evaluating opportunities for fundamentally new products and how to balance the portfolio of projects.

Competitive Strategy

An organization's competitive strategy defines a basic approach to markets and products with respect to competitors. The choice of which opportunities to pursue can be guided by this strategy. Most firms devote much discussion at senior management levels to their strategic competencies and the ways in which they aim to compete. Several strategies are possible, such as:

- ***Technology leadership:*** To implement this strategy, the firm places great emphasis on basic research and development of new technologies and on the deployment of these technologies through product development.
- ***Cost leadership:*** This strategy requires the firm to compete on production efficiency, either through economies of scale, use of superior manufacturing methods, low-cost labor, or better management of the production system. Design for manufacturing

methods (see Chapter 12, Design for Environment) are therefore emphasized in the product (and process) development activities under this strategy.

- ***Customer focus:*** To follow this strategy, the firm works closely with new and existing customers to assess their changing needs and preferences. Carefully designed product platforms facilitate the rapid development of derivative products with new features or functions of interest to customers. This strategy may result in a broad product line featuring high product variety in order to address the needs of heterogeneous customer segments.
- ***Imitative:*** This strategy involves closely following trends in the market, allowing competitors to initially explore which new products are successful for each segment. When viable opportunities have been identified, the firm quickly launches new products to imitate the successful competitors. A fast development process is essential to effectively implement this strategy.

At SharkNinja, a tremendous amount of engineering knowledge is gained with each product development generation and can be used on the subsequent projects. Strategic discussions centered around the best use of development resources to maintain market leadership and steady growth. SharkNinja believed this could be achieved through its intense focus on lifestyle and convenience for customers, incorporation of novel features, and ongoing cost reduction. Every element of the product plan would need to support this strategic focus.

Market Segmentation

Customers can be usefully thought of as belonging to distinct market segments. Dividing a market into segments allows the firm to consider the actions of competitors and the strength of the firm's existing products with respect to each well-defined group of customers. By mapping competitors' products and the firm's own products onto segments, the firm can assess which product opportunities best address weaknesses in its own product line and which exploit weaknesses in the offerings of competitors. Exhibit 4-4 shows a product segment map of this type for cordless vacuum products in which markets are segmented according to the size of the cleaning task.

Technological Trajectories

In technology-intensive businesses, a key product planning decision is when to adopt a new basic technology in a product line. For many cordless electrical products (or wireless electronics), one key technological issue is which battery technology to use. A critical product planning decision is when to employ the latest battery chemistry in each product, as opposed to using the older battery technology. Technology S-curves are a conceptual tool to help think about such decisions.

The technology S-curve displays the performance of the products in a product category over time, usually with respect to a single performance variable such as power, speed, cost, or reliability. The S-curve illustrates a basic but important concept: A given technology evolves from initial emergence when performance is relatively low, through rapid growth in performance based on experience, finally approaching maturity where some natural technological limit is reached and the technology may become obsolete. The S-shaped trajectory captures this general dynamic, as shown in Exhibit 4-5. The horizontal axis may

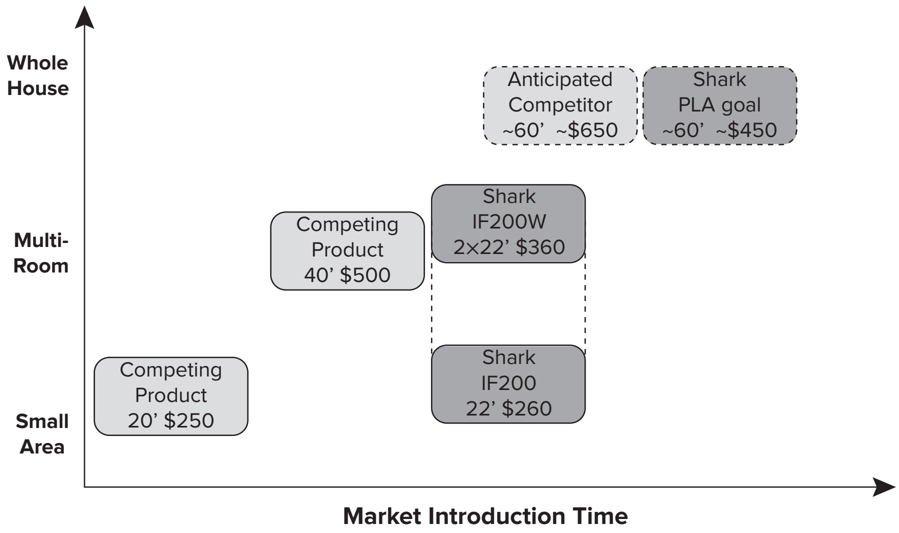


EXHIBIT 4-4 Product segment map showing SharkNinja cordless vacuum products and the leading competition spanning three market segments. Considering the trajectory of key product specifications (runtime and price point shown here) is one way to identify opportunities for future offerings.

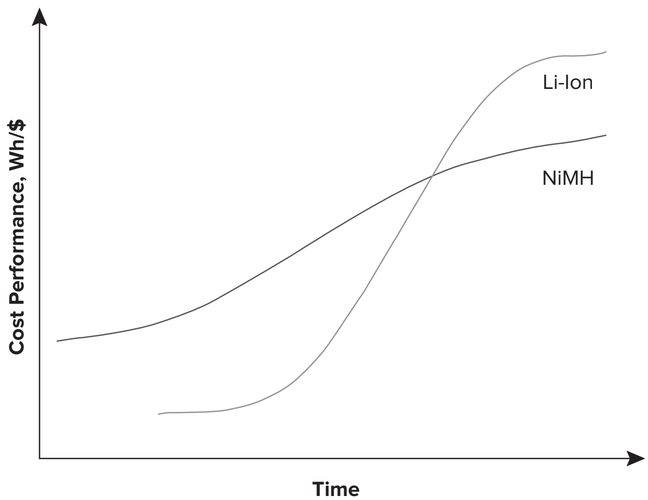


EXHIBIT 4-5 This technology S-curve illustrates the cost improvement over time of two available battery chemistry options for cordless appliances.

be cumulative research and development effort or time; the vertical axis may be a performance/cost ratio or any important performance dimension. While S-curves characterize technological change remarkably well in a wide variety of industries, it is often difficult to predict the future trajectory of the performance curve (where is the ultimate performance limit and when will it be reached).

Product Platform Planning

The product platform is the set of assets shared across a set of products. Components and sub-assemblies are often the most important of these assets. An effective platform can allow a variety of derivative products to be created more rapidly and easily, with each product providing the features and functions desired by a particular market segment. See Chapter 10, Product Architecture, for more discussion of the underlying architecture enabling the product platform and for a platform planning method.

Because platform development projects can take from 2 to 10 times as much time and money as derivative product development projects, a firm cannot afford to make every project a new platform. Exhibit 4-6 illustrates the leverage of an effective product platform. The critical strategic decision at this stage is whether any project will develop a derivative product from an existing platform or develop an entirely new platform. Decisions about product platforms are very closely related to the technology development efforts of the firm and to decisions about which technologies to employ in new products. Exhibit 4-6 depicts two approaches to the timing of derivatives from a platform development effort. A series of derivative products with a range of different features could be released either concurrently or sequentially.

In addition to a valuable stream of derivative products, creation of a new platform may also enable additional growth through *network effects* on both the demand and the supply side. On the demand side, network effects derive from customers who benefit from emergence of the platform standard and make a long-term commitment to using its derivatives. On the supply side, network effects derive from suppliers or partners who invest in complementary innovations such as accessories or services which enhance the value of (and demand for) the platform. To enable such network effects, developers pay close attention to the design of key features and interfaces while creating the platform and their own derivatives.

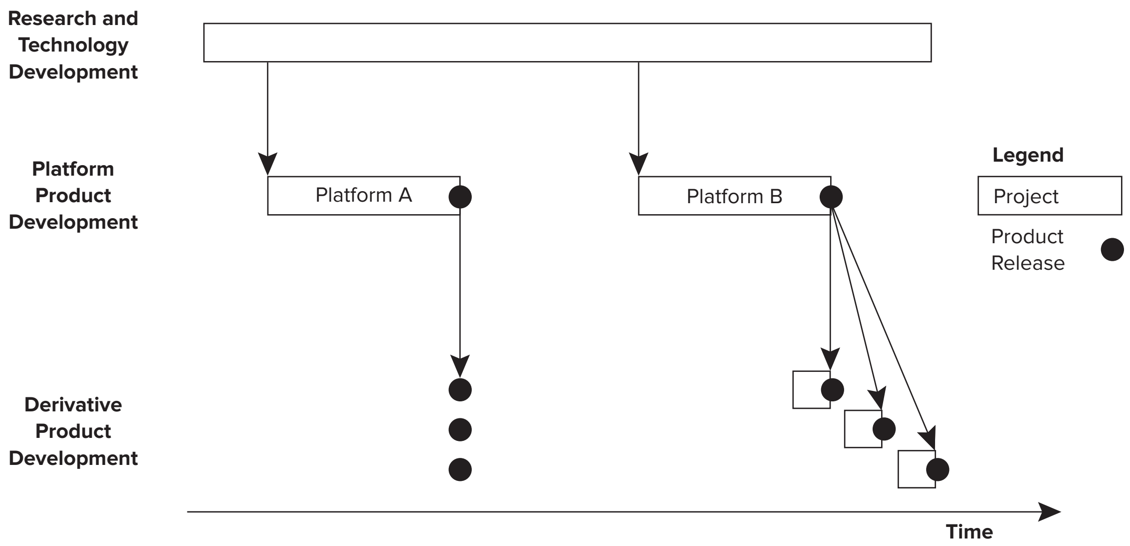


EXHIBIT 4-6 A platform development project creates the architecture of a family of products. Derivative products may be included in the initial platform development effort (Platform A) or derivative products may follow thereafter (Platform B).

Technology Roadmapping

One technique for coordinating technology development with product planning is the technology roadmap. A *technology roadmap* is a way to represent the expected availability and future use of various technologies relevant to the product being considered. This method has been used by Motorola, Philips, Xerox, NASA, Facebook, and other leaders in technology-based industries. The method is particularly useful for planning products in which the critical functional elements are well known in advance.

To create a technology roadmap, multiple generations of technologies are labeled and arranged along a time line, as shown in Exhibit 4-7. The technology roadmap can be augmented with the timing of projects or products that would utilize these technological developments. This is sometimes then called a *product-technology roadmap*. The result is a diagram showing a product's key functional elements and the sequence of technologies

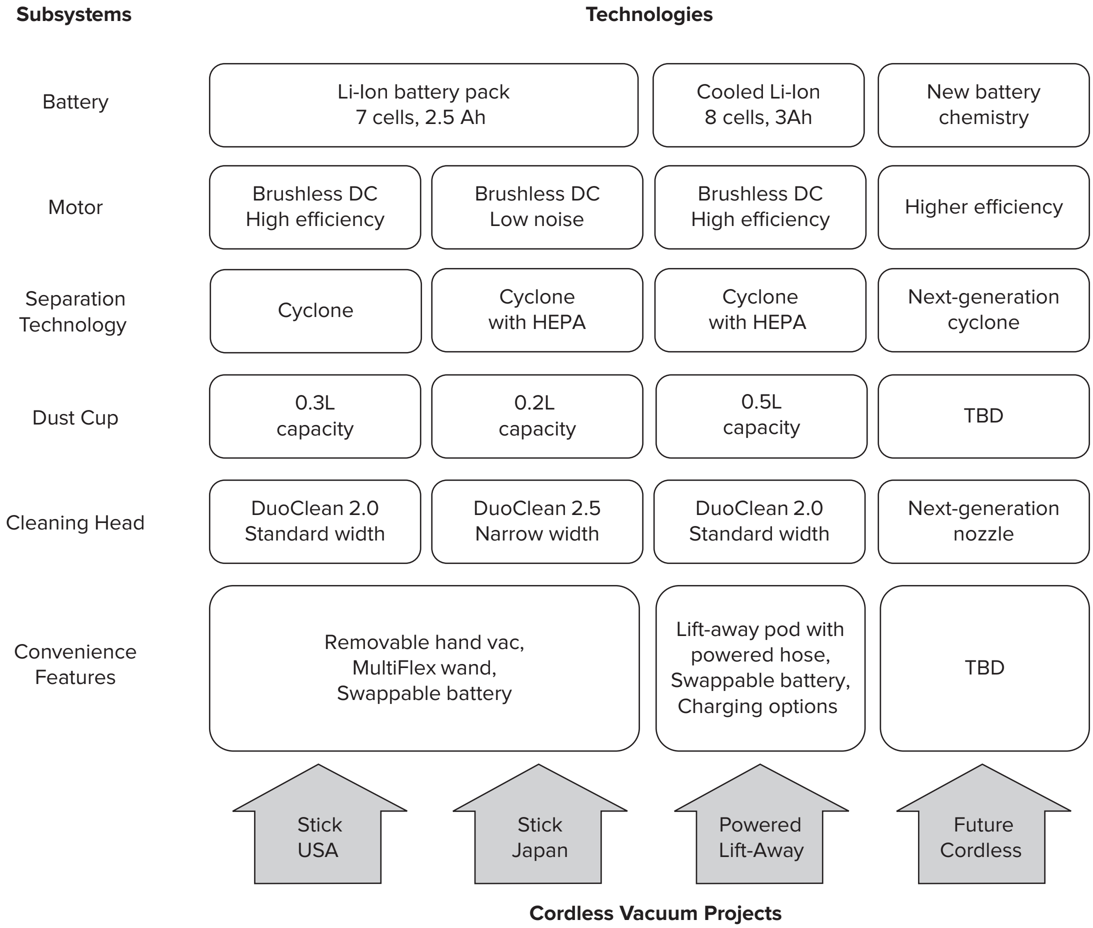


EXHIBIT 4-7 The product-technology roadmap shows the evolution of several subsystem technologies and helps to plan which technologies may be used in future products.

expected to implement these elements over a given period of time. Technology roadmapping can serve as a planning tool to create a joint strategy between technology development and product development. (See Chapter 2, Product Development Process and Organization, for the relationship between product development and technology development processes.)

Evaluating Fundamentally New Product Opportunities

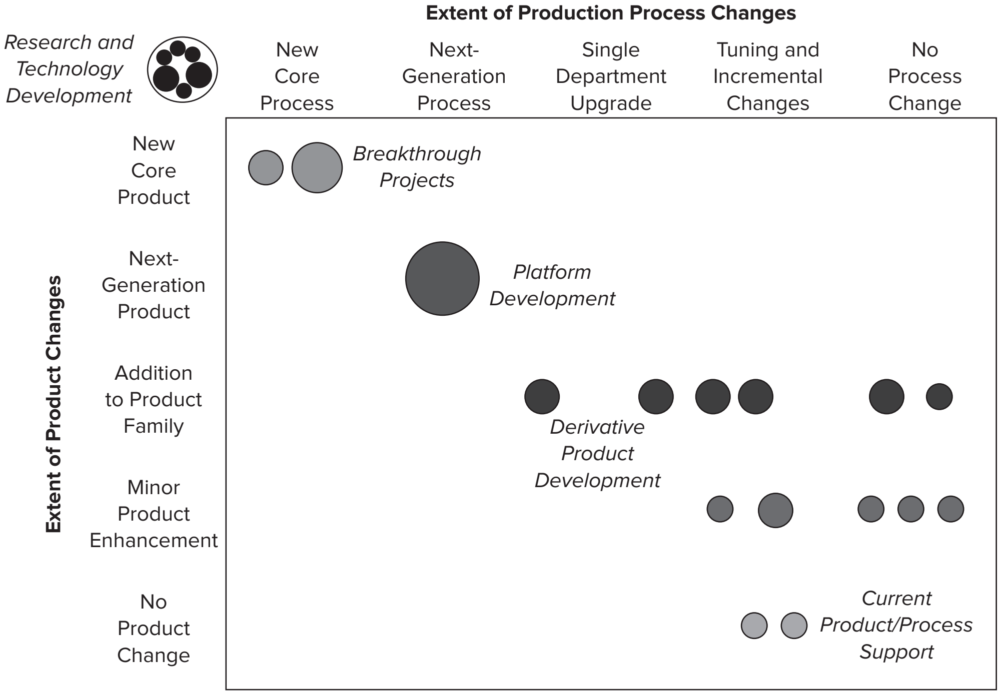
In addition to new versions of products in existing product categories, a firm faces many opportunities in new markets or with fundamentally new technologies. While investing scarce resources in the development of products using new technologies or for new markets is quite risky, some such investments are necessary for ongoing growth and to periodically rejuvenate the product portfolio (Christensen, 1997). Some criteria for evaluating fundamentally new product opportunities include:

- Market size (units/year × average price).
- Market growth rate (percent per year).
- Competitive intensity (range of competitors and their strengths).
- Depth of the firm's existing knowledge of the market.
- Depth of the firm's existing knowledge of the technology.
- Fit with the firm's other products.
- Fit with the firm's core assets and capabilities.
- Potential for patents, trade secrets, or other barriers to competition.
- Existence of a product champion within the firm.

While these criteria are particularly useful in evaluating fundamentally new product opportunities, they also apply generally to evaluating any product opportunity. These criteria can be used in a simple screening matrix to evaluate the overall attractiveness and types of risk for any given opportunity. Chapter 3, Opportunity Identification, includes the Real-Win-Worth-it analysis for opportunities, an example of criteria-based evaluation. Chapter 8, Concept Selection, describes screening matrices for selecting product concepts, and this method is directly applicable to selecting product opportunities as well.

Balancing the Portfolio

Many methods help managers formulate an organization's portfolio of development projects. Several of these methods involve mapping the portfolio along useful dimensions so that managers may consider the strategic implications of their planning decisions. These mapping approaches involve dimensions such as technical risk, financial return, market attractiveness, and the like (Cooper et al., 2001, Terwiesch and Ulrich, 2009). One particularly useful mapping, suggested by Wheelwright and Clark (1992), plots the portfolio of projects along two specific dimensions: the extent to which the project involves a change in the product line and the extent to which the project involves a change in production processes. Exhibit 4-8 illustrates this mapping, called a product-process change matrix. This perspective can be useful to illuminate imbalances in the portfolio of projects under consideration and in assessing the consistency between a portfolio of projects and the competitive strategy. For example, a firm may discover that it has identified essentially no breakthrough opportunities or that it has no projects aimed at incremental improvements to existing products.



Source: Steven C. Wheelwright and Kim B. Clark, "Creating Project Plans to Focus Product Development," *Harvard Business Review,* March–April 1992, pp. 70–82.

EXHIBIT 4-8 Product-process change matrix. The size of the circles indicates the relative cost of the development projects.

There are no general procedures for deciding exactly what the portfolio should look like. However, the firm's choice of competitive strategy should affect the shape of the product development portfolio. For example, a firm pursuing a low-cost strategy would expect the portfolio to contain more production process improvement projects. Firms following a strategy requiring high product variety would need to develop many derivative products based upon existing platforms. Firms implementing a strategy based on technological superiority may need to have a portfolio including more technology development and breakthrough projects in anticipation that not all of these risky projects will result in marketable new products. Note that planning research and technology development activities is closely coupled to, but generally outside the purview of, the product planning process.

The proposed projects for the development portfolio may include a range of scope, from incremental improvements to expensive platform developments and risky breakthrough projects. In practice, it is unwise to directly compare, and thus trade off, specific investments of different types, for example, of incremental versus radical innovation projects. A straightforward way to create an appropriate portfolio is therefore to first allocate funding to the various categories of projects and then to select only the most important projects in each category (Cooper, 2017). This allows discussion to start at the strategic level—for example, how much to spend on long-term breakthrough projects and how much on

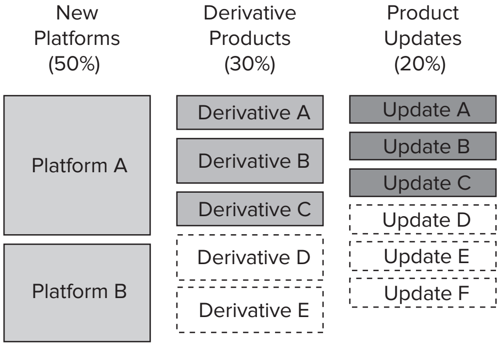


EXHIBIT 4-9 Product development portfolio decisions may begin with a top-down allocation of budgets to different project types, followed by prioritization of projects within each type.

incremental improvements. Then the discussion turns to prioritizing the many opportunities within each type. Exhibit 4-9 illustrates this top-down approach to portfolio budgeting and prioritization.

Note that the method for evaluating projects in each category could be different. For strategic, long-term investments, priority may be given to certain high-risk projects that may pay off with entirely new areas of market success. Many competing projects in existing product areas could be weighed based on revenues or profitability. On the other hand, incremental product updates may be judged based on addressing key customer concerns.

At SharkNinja, the executive team decides each year how much of the R&D budget to spend in support of each existing product line and also what amount to invest in products for entirely new markets. Product managers for each product line then propose how to prioritize development projects within their allocation of R&D funds. SharkNinja executives set a high-level goal for increasing revenues to come from new products. The strategic planning team allocated the majority of engineering and design resources at SharkNinja to the development of new products in support of this goal.

Step 3: Allocate Resources and Plan Timing

It is inevitable that any firm with a culture of innovation cannot afford to invest in every product development opportunity in its desired portfolio of projects. As timing and resource allocation are determined for the most promising projects, too many projects will invariably compete for too few resources. Even if the budget is allocated, there may simply not be enough of the right people to get everything done. As a result, the attempt to assign resources and plan timing almost always results in a return to the prior evaluation and prioritization step to modify the set of projects to be pursued.

When sufficient budget is available but the right people are not, this is one situation in which outside product development resources could be useful. There are many product design consultancies around the world with extensive experience in outsourced development projects and many more that can provide skilled resources to supplement internal staffing.

Resource Allocation

Many organizations routinely take on too many projects without regard for the limited availability of development resources. As a result, skilled engineers and managers are assigned to more and more projects, productivity drops off dramatically, projects take longer to complete, products become late to the market, and profits are lower. Aggregate planning helps an organization make efficient use of its resources by pursuing only those projects that can reasonably be completed with the allocated resources.

The cordless PLA project was only one of many projects undertaken at SharkNinja. As a new platform development effort, however, the cordless PLA required substantially more resources than derivative and product update projects. Design engineers were allocated to explore various product architectures for the new platform. SharkNinja also assigned R&D sub-teams to work on optimizations to improve the efficiency of the first-generation cordless stick vacuums and to apply these technologies to the new cordless PLA platform.

Estimating the resources required for each of the projects in the plan by month, quarter, or year forces the organization to face the realities of finite resources. In most cases, the primary resource to be managed is the effort of the development staff, usually expressed in person-hours or person-months. Other critical resources may also require careful planning, such as model shop facilities, rapid prototyping equipment, pilot production lines, testing facilities, and so on. Estimates of required resources in each period can be compared with available resources to compute an overall capacity utilization ratio (demand/capacity) as well as utilizations by resource types, as shown in Exhibit 4-10. Based on this aggregate resource plan, SharkNinja needed to reallocate certain resources from other product lines to cordless development efforts.

Quarter 1 — *Person-Months Effort*	Technology Development	Mechanical Design	Manufacturing Engineering	Industrial Design	Electrical Engineering	Quality and Testing	Marketing
Cordless PLA Platform	6	9	0	1	1	6	1
Stick Optimizations	9	3	9	1	0	3	2
Japan Stick	2	6	9	1	1	6	2
Cordless Hand vac	2	3	12	2	3	3	3
Cordless Upright	3	2	18	6	6	6	6
Resource Demand	22	23	48	11	11	24	14
Resource Capacity	24	30	45	12	12	30	15
Capacity Utilization	92%	77%	107%	92%	92%	80%	93%

Quarter 2 — *Person-Months Effort*	Technology Development	Mechanical Design	Manufacturing Engineering	Industrial Design	Electrical Engineering	Quality and Testing	Marketing
Cordless PLA Platform	9	12	6	2	2	6	3
Stick Optimizations	6	3	6	0	2	3	3
Japan Stick	1	3	12	1	1	6	3
Cordless Hand vac	6	3	12	2	2	3	3
Cordless Upright	1	2	15	4	3	6	6
Resource Demand	23	23	51	9	10	24	18
Resource Capacity	24	30	45	12	12	30	15
Capacity Utilization	96%	77%	113%	75%	83%	80%	120%

Quarter 3 — *Person-Months Effort*	Technology Development	Mechanical Design	Manufacturing Engineering	Industrial Design	Electrical Engineering	Quality and Testing	Marketing
Cordless PLA Platform	12	15	15	6	6	12	6
Stick Optimizations	4	4	3	0	2	3	3
Japan Stick	1	1	9	0	1	1	2
Cordless Hand vac	1	3	9	1	2	3	3
Cordless Upright	1	1	9	4	3	6	6
Resource Demand	19	24	45	11	14	25	20
Resource Capacity	24	30	45	12	12	30	18
Capacity Utilization	79%	80%	100%	92%	117%	83%	111%

Quarter 4 — *Person-Months Effort*	Technology Development	Mechanical Design	Manufacturing Engineering	Industrial Design	Electrical Engineering	Quality and Testing	Marketing
Cordless PLA Platform	15	21	21	6	6	12	6
Stick Optimizations	4	3	3	0	1	3	3
Japan Stick	0	0	3	0	0	1	1
Cordless Hand vac	0	3	12	0	1	3	3
Cordless Upright	0	0	3	0	4	6	6
Resource Demand	19	27	42	6	12	25	19
Resource Capacity	24	30	45	12	12	30	18
Capacity Utilization	79%	90%	93%	50%	100%	83%	106%

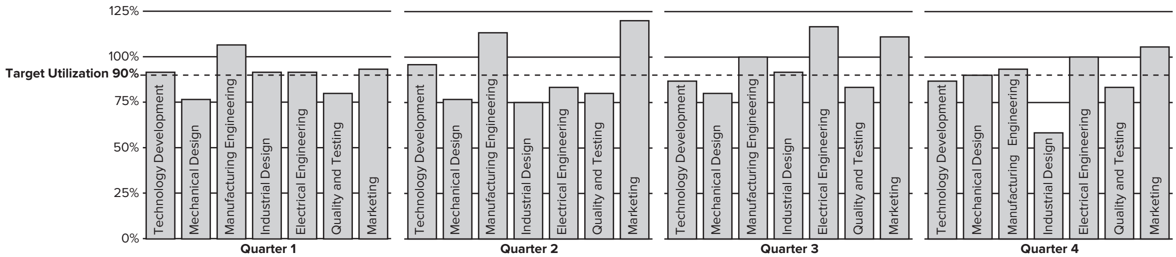


EXHIBIT 4-10 Aggregate resource planning can be achieved using a simple spreadsheet method based on estimates of resource demands over time. This example uses units of person-months, although other time units (quarters, weeks, or days) are commonly used in practice. The associated chart highlights where capacity is insufficient to handle all of the projects at target utilization of 90 percent.

To allow for contingencies and to enable responsiveness, it is helpful to plan for capacity utilization somewhat below 100 percent (80 to 90 percent are common targets). Where utilization exceeds 100 percent or lower targets, there are not sufficient resources to execute all of the projects in the plan on schedule. Unfortunately, many organizations do not do effective aggregate planning and regularly overcommit resources (often by as much as 50 percent or more). Based on the prioritization determined in balancing the portfolio, the organization must determine which projects can be executed with the available resources. Other projects may need to be eliminated from the plan or shifted later in time.

Project Timing

Determining the timing and sequence of projects, sometimes called pipeline management, must consider a number of factors, including:

- ***Timing of product introductions:*** Generally the sooner a product is brought to market, the better. However, launching a product before it is of adequate quality can seriously damage reputation of the brand.
- ***Technology readiness:*** The robustness of the underlying technologies plays a critical role in the planning process. A proven, robust technology can be integrated into products much more quickly and reliably.
- ***Market readiness:*** The sequence of product introductions determines whether early adopters buy the low-end product and may trade up or whether they buy the high-end product offered at a high initial price. Releasing improvements too quickly can frustrate customers who want to keep up; on the other hand, releasing new products too slowly risks lagging behind competitors.
- ***Competition:*** The anticipated release of competing products may accelerate the timing of development projects.

The Product Plan

The set of projects approved by the planning process, sequenced in time, becomes the product plan, as shown earlier in Exhibit 4-2. The plan may include a mix of fundamentally new products, platform projects, and derivative projects of varying size. Product plans are updated on a periodic basis, perhaps quarterly or annually, as part of the firm's strategic planning activity.

Step 4: Complete Pre-Project Planning

For each project that has been approved, a pre-project planning activity takes place before substantial resources are applied. This activity involves a small, cross-functional team of people, often known as the core team. The cordless PLA core team consisted of a small group of people representing a wide range of technical expertise, plus marketing, manufacturing, and service functions.

At this point, the earlier opportunity statement may be rewritten as a product vision statement. The cordless PLA core team began with the following product vision statement:

Develop the next-generation cordless upright vacuum platform.

The objective defined by a product vision statement may be very general. It may not say which specific new technologies should be used, nor does it necessarily specify the goals and constraints of functions such as production and service operations. In order to provide clear guidance for the product development organization, generally the team formulates a more detailed definition of the target market and of the assumptions under which the development team will operate. These decisions are captured in a mission statement, a summary of which is illustrated in Exhibit 4-11.

Mission Statements

The mission statement may include some or all of the following information:

- ***Brief (one-sentence) description of the product:*** This description identifies the basic function of the product but avoids implying a specific product concept. It may, in fact, be the product vision statement.
- ***Benefit proposition:*** This element of the mission statement articulates the critical few reasons a customer would buy the product. To some extent this is a hypothesis, which will be validated during the concept development process.
- ***Key business goals:*** In addition to the project goals that support the corporate strategy, these goals generally include goals for time, cost, and quality (e.g., timing of the product introduction, desired financial performance, market share targets).

Mission Statement: Cordless Powered Lift-Away Vacuum	
Product Description	• New powered lift-away cordless upright vacuum platform for whole-house cleaning
Benefit Proposition	• Large battery capacity and dust cup suitable for multiroom and whole-house cleaning • Swappable battery pack, with multiple charging options including a charging stand • Powered lift-away form factor for convenient floor and detail cleaning
Key Business Goals	• Launch in Fall 2018 • Competitive pricing allowing for target sales volume and margins • Consistent 5-star customer reviews • Grow cordless market share and segment penetration
Primary Market	• U.S. household multiroom and whole house cleaning
Assumptions and Constraints	• Swappable lithium-ion battery pack • Upright form factor with lift-away pod • Powered hose for motorized lift-away • Carpet and hard-floor cleaning with a single DuoClean head
Stakeholders	• Major retailers • New and existing customers • Marketing and sales • Manufacturing supply chain

EXHIBIT 4-11 Mission statement for the new cordless PLA project. This document summarized the direction to be followed by the product development team.

- ***Target market(s) for the product:*** There may be several target markets for the product. This part of the mission statement identifies the primary market as well as any secondary markets that should be considered in the development effort.
- ***Assumptions and constraints that guide the development effort:*** Assumptions must be made carefully; although they restrict the range of possible product concepts, they help to maintain a manageable project scope. Information may be attached to the mission statement to document decisions about assumptions and constraints.
- ***Stakeholders:*** One way to ensure that many of the subtle development issues are addressed is to explicitly list all of the product's stakeholders, that is, all of the groups of people who are affected by the product's success or failure. The stakeholder list begins with the end user (the ultimate external customer) and the external customer who makes the buying decision about the product. Stakeholders also include the customers of the product who reside within the firm, such as the sales force, the service organization, and the production departments. The list of stakeholders serves as a reminder for the team to consider the needs of everyone who will be influenced by the product.

Assumptions and Constraints

In creating the mission statement, the team considers the strategies of several functional areas within the firm. Of the many possible functional strategies to consider, the manufacturing, service, and market differentiation strategies had the largest influence on the new cordless upright project. In fact, these strategies guided the core technical developments of the product.

One could reasonably ask why manufacturing, service, or environmental strategies (for example) should be part of the mission statement for a new product. An alternative view is that decisions about these issues should arise from the customer needs for the new product and should not be determined in advance. First, for many complex projects, development of the manufacturing system is a project of similar magnitude to creation of the product itself. As a result, the manufacturing facilities involved in the product need to be identified very early in the process. Second, some goals and constraints may not be derived strictly from customer needs. For example, most customers will not directly express a need for low environmental impact. However, many firms choose to adopt a corporate policy of environmentally responsible design. In such cases, the mission statement should reflect such corporate objectives and constraints.

Following are some of the issues that SharkNinja considered in establishing assumptions and constraints for the cordless PLA project.

- ***Manufacturing:*** Even at this very preliminary stage, it is important to consider the capabilities, capacities, and constraints of the manufacturing operations. A broad array of questions may be relevant, including: Which internal production facilities might be used to manufacture and assemble the product? What key suppliers should be involved in the development, and when? Are the existing production systems capable of producing the new technologies that have been identified for the product? For the cordless PLA, SharkNinja assumed the product would be produced at existing manufacturing sites in China.
- ***Service:*** In a business where customer service and satisfaction are critical to the success of the firm, it is necessary to also state strategic goals for levels of service quality.

Efforts to improve service include a strategic commitment to designing products that contain few parts, and key components that can be serviced quickly. For the cordless PLA, quality goals included best-in-class reliability ratings and support through existing service channels.

- ***Environment:*** Many products today are developed with environmental sustainability in mind. See Chapter 12, Design for Environment. The cordless PLA design strategy included an energy efficiency goal requiring optimization of run time and power consumption. The team also wished to ensure that its batteries could be economically recycled through municipal collection systems.

Staffing and Other Pre-Project Planning Activities

The pre-project planning activity also generally addresses project staffing and leadership. This may involve getting key members of the development staff to "sign up" for a new project, that is, to agree to commit to leading the development of the product or of a critical element of the product. Budgets are also generally established during pre-project planning.

For fundamentally new products, budgets and staffing plans will be for the concept development phase of development only. This is because the details of the project are highly uncertain until the basic concept for the new product has been established. More detailed planning will occur when and if the concept is developed further.

Step 5: Reflect on the Results and the Process

In this final step of the planning and strategy process, the team should ask several questions to assess the quality of both the process and the results. Some suggested questions are:

- Is the opportunity funnel collecting an exciting and diverse set of product opportunities?
- Does the product plan support the competitive strategy of the firm?
- Does the product plan address the most important current opportunities facing the firm?
- Are the total resources allocated to product development sufficient to pursue the firm's competitive strategy?
- Have creative ways of leveraging finite resources been considered, such as the use of product platforms, joint ventures, and partnerships with suppliers?
- Does the core team accept the challenges of the resulting mission statement?
- Are the elements of the mission statement consistent?
- Are the assumptions listed in the mission statement really necessary or is the project over-constrained? Will the development team have the freedom to develop the best possible product?
- How can the product planning process be improved?

Because the mission statement is the handoff to the development team, a "reality check" must be performed before proceeding with the development process. This early stage is the time to remedy known flaws, lest they become more severe and expensive as the development process progresses.

This chapter explains the product planning method as a stepwise process, largely for simplicity of the presentation. However, reflection and criticism of consistency and fit should be an ongoing process. Steps in the process can and should be executed simultaneously to make sure that the many plans and decisions are consistent with one another and with the goals, capabilities, and constraints of the firm.

Summary

- Product planning is a periodic process that considers the portfolio of product development projects to be executed.
- Product planning involves a five-step process:
  1. Identify opportunities.
  2. Evaluate and prioritize projects.
  3. Allocate resources and plan timing.
  4. Complete pre-project planning.
  5. Reflect on the results and the process.
- The opportunity funnel collects possibilities for new product platforms, enhancements, and fundamentally new products from several sources within and outside the firm.
- Potential product development projects are evaluated based on the organization's competitive strategy, technological trajectories, and product platform plans.
- A balanced portfolio of development projects may include investments in breakthrough products, new platforms, derivatives, and current product support.
- Product development portfolio budgets may be created top-down, by first allocating funds to high-level categories of projects, and then prioritizing projects of each type.
- Aggregate planning ensures that selected projects have adequate resources for successful completion.
- A mission statement for each product development project documents the product description, benefit proposition, business goals, target markets, critical assumptions, and the product's stakeholders.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at:
www.pdd-resources.net

There are many excellent books on strategic product management. These selections include discussions related to technology development, S-curves, and product planning.

Burgelman, Robert A., Clayton M. Christensen, and Steven C. Wheelwright, *Strategic Management of Technology and Innovation,* fifth edition, Irwin McGraw-Hill, New York, 2009.

Crawford, C. Merle, and Anthony Di Benedetto, *New Products Management,* eleventh edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2014.

Moore, Geoffrey A., *Crossing the Chasm: Marketing and Selling Technology Products to Mainstream Customers,* third edition, Harper Business, New York, 2014.

Porter, Michael E., *Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance,* The Free Press, New York, 1985.

Schilling, Melissa A., *Strategic Management of Technological Innovation,* fifth edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2016.

Treacy, Michael, and Fred Wiersema, *The Discipline of Market Leaders,* Basic Books, New York, 1997.

Terwiesch and Ulrich discuss opportunity identification and portfolio mapping methods useful in the product planning process.

Terwiesch, Christian, and Karl T. Ulrich, *Innovation Tournaments: Creating and Identifying Exceptional Opportunities,* Harvard Business Press, Boston, 2009.

Wheelwright and Clark discuss several of the dimensions of product planning presented here, including aggregate planning and some mapping methods.

Wheelwright, Steven C., and Kim B. Clark, "Creating Project Plans to Focus Product Development," *Harvard Business Review,* March–April 1992, pp. 70–82.

Cooper describes a wide range of product portfolio management methods, including financial analysis, scoring techniques, and visual mapping methods.

Cooper, Robert G., *Winning at New Products,* fifth edition, Basic Books, New York, 2017.

Cooper, Robert G., Scott J. Edgett, and Elko J. Kleinschmidt, *Portfolio Management for New Products,* second edition, Basic Books, New York, 2001.

Several authors have written about strategy and planning of product platforms in technology-based industries.

McGrath, Michael E., *Product Strategy for High-Technology Companies,* second edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2000.

Meyer, Marc H., and Alvin P. Lehnerd, *The Power of Product Platforms*, The Free Press, New York, 1997.

Parker, Geoffrey G., Marshall W. Van Alstyne, and Sangeet Paul Choudary. *Platform Revolution: How Networked Markets Are Transforming the Economy and How to Make Them Work for You,* WW Norton & Company, New York, 2016.

Sanderson, Susan W., and Mustafa Uzumeri, *Managing Product Families*, Irwin, Chicago, 1997.

Foster developed the S-curve concept and provides examples from a diverse set of industries.

Foster, Richard N., *Innovation: The Attacker's Advantage,* Summit Books, New York, 1986.

Managers at Motorola and Philips describe their use of several technology roadmapping methods for integrating the planning of technology development and product development.

Groenveld, Pieter, "Roadmapping Integrates Business and Technology," *Research-Technology Management*, Vol. 40, No. 5, September/October 1997, pp. 48–55.

Willyard, Charles H., and Cheryl W. McClees, "Motorola's Technology Roadmap Process," *Research Management*, Vol. 30, No. 5, September/October 1987, pp. 13–19.

Christensen provides evidence that firms must invest in fundamentally new products, technologies, and markets to remain at the leading edge of their industries.

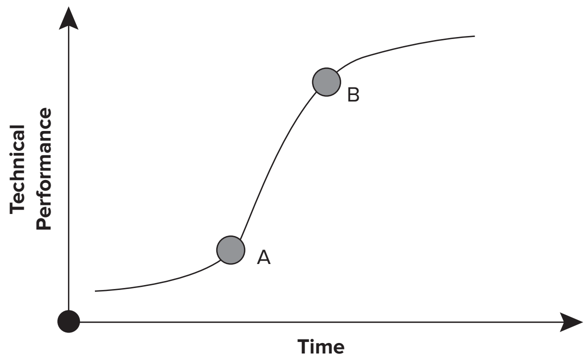
Christensen, Clayton M., *The Innovator's Dilemma: When New Technologies Cause Great Firms to Fail*, Harvard Business School Press, Boston, 1997.

Exercises

1. Conduct a search using the Internet or published corporate annual reports to identify the corporate strategy of a company in which you might be interested in investing. Learn about the firm's product lines and its newest products. How do these products support the corporate strategy? What types of projects would you expect to see in the product plan?
2. Create a product-technology roadmap illustrating the availability of technologies for a class of products you understand well, such as personal computers.

Thought Questions

1. How might a portfolio of development projects differ if the firm believes a particular product technology is currently at position A or B on the technology S-curve shown below?



2. How might an organization be able to address the shortage of manufacturing engineers identified by the aggregate project planning analysis shown in Exhibit 4-10? List five ways to possibly increase the capacity and five ways to reduce the demand for manufacturing engineers.

CHAPTER FIVE

Identifying Customer Needs

Courtesy of Nest Labs

EXHIBIT 5-1 The Nest learning thermostat, which programs itself based on patterns of activity in the home.

Tony Fadell had been a product development leader at Apple for more than a decade, participating in the creation of the iPod portable music player and the iPhone smartphone. After leaving Apple, he contemplated entrepreneurial opportunities and eventually decided to create a better thermostat for control of home heating and cooling systems. Exhibit 5-1 shows the Nest Learning Thermostat, the first product he and his team created from their new company, Nest Labs.

The Nest team aspired to create the best thermostat on the market, and knew that understanding and delivering on customer needs was key to success. The Nest thermostat was extremely successful in the marketplace, and just three years after its formation, Nest Labs was acquired by Google for $3.2 billion, representing a phenomenal financial outcome for the young company.

This chapter presents a method for comprehensively identifying a set of customer needs, and is built around the example of creating a better thermostat.

The goals of the method are to:

- Ensure that the product is focused on customer needs.
- Identify latent or hidden needs as well as explicit needs.
- Provide a fact base for justifying the product specifications.
- Create an archival record of the needs activity of the development process.
- Ensure that no critical customer need is missed or forgotten.
- Develop a common understanding of customer needs among members of the development team.

The philosophy behind the method is to create a high-quality information channel that runs directly between customers in the target market and the developers of the product. This philosophy is built on the premise that those who directly control the details of the product, including the engineers and industrial designers, must interact with customers and experience the *use environment* of the product. Without this direct experience, important customer needs may not be identified, technical trade-offs are not likely to be made correctly, innovative solutions to customer needs may not be discovered, and the development team may never develop a deep commitment to meeting customer needs.

The process of identifying customer needs is an integral part of the larger product development process and is very closely related to opportunity identification, product planning, concept generation, concept selection, competitive benchmarking, and the establishment of product specifications. The customer-needs activity is shown in Exhibit 5-2 in relation

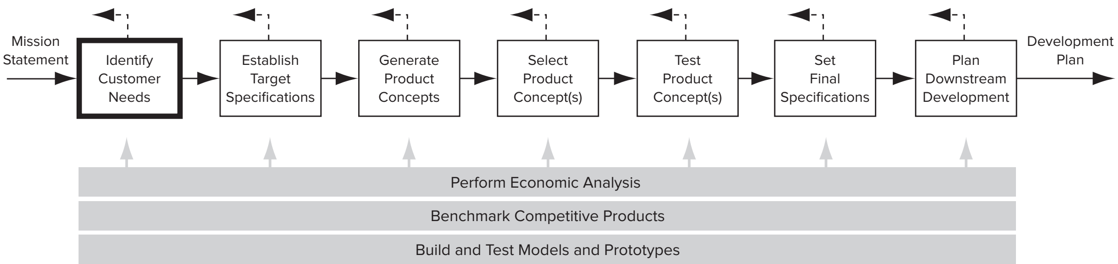


EXHIBIT 5-2 The customer-needs activity in relation to other concept development activities.

to these other front-end product development activities, which collectively can be thought of as the *concept development* phase.

The concept development process illustrated in Exhibit 5-2 implies a distinction between customer needs and product specifications. This distinction is subtle but important. *Needs* are largely independent of any particular product we might develop; they are solution neutral and not specific to the concept we eventually choose to pursue. A team should be able to identify customer needs without knowing if or how it will eventually address those needs. On the other hand, *specifications* do depend on the concept we select. The specifications for the product we finally choose to develop will depend on what is technically and economically feasible and on what our competitors offer in the marketplace, as well as on customer needs. (See Chapter 6, Product Specifications, for a more detailed discussion of this distinction.) Also note that we choose to use the word *need* to label any attribute of a potential product that is desired by the customer; we do not distinguish here between a want and a need. Other terms used in industrial practice to refer to customer needs include *customer attributes* and *customer requirements.*

The Importance of Latent Needs

Latent needs are those not yet widely recognized by most customers and not yet addressed by existing products. The needs exist, and if fulfilled, would result in greater customer satisfaction, yet they remain largely unknown. Consider the following examples:

- Mobile telephones did not contain cameras prior to the year 2000. Most consumers did not know that they wanted to be able to take photographs with their telephones until Nokia and Motorola added the camera.
- When smart speakers emerged with Amazon Echo and Google Home, people began to realize how convenient it would be to use simple verbal requests for access to online services and control of connected devices in the home.
- Until Ford developed the hands-free powered liftgate, people had struggled for years to open the trunk of the car while carrying shopping.

Thinking back, it is clear the needs were real before the products existed. Moreover, fulfillment of these latent needs created differentiating features and breakthrough products. The ability to recognize latent needs is therefore a critical capability in product development, giving firms the ability to create products that surprise and delight customers. Of course, once latent needs are revealed through successful products that fulfill them, they become widely adopted and become "must haves."

The Process of Identifying Customer Needs

Identifying customer needs is itself a process, for which we present a five-step method. We believe that a little structure goes a long way in facilitating effective product development practices, and we hope and expect that this method will be viewed by those who employ it not as a rigid process but rather as a starting point for continuous improvement and refinement. The five steps are:

1. Gather raw data from customers.
2. Interpret the raw data in terms of customer needs.

3. Organize the needs into a hierarchy of primary, secondary, and (if necessary) tertiary needs.
4. Establish the relative importance of the needs.
5. Reflect on the results and the process.

In this chapter, we treat each of the five steps in turn and illustrate key points with the thermostat example. We chose the thermostat because it is simple enough that the method is not hidden by the complexity of the example; however, note that the same method, with minor adaptation, has been successfully applied to many kinds of products ranging from kitchen utensils to smartphones and automobiles.

Before beginning the development project, the firm typically specifies a particular market opportunity and lays out the broad constraints and objectives for the project. This information is frequently formalized as a *mission statement* (also sometimes called a *charter* or a *design brief*). The mission statement specifies in which direction to go but generally does not specify a precise destination or a particular way to proceed. The mission statement is the result of the product planning activities described in Chapter 4, Product Planning. The mission statement for a thermostat is shown in Exhibit 5-3.

The thermostat category of products is already relatively well developed. Such products are particularly well suited to a structured process for gathering customer needs. One could reasonably ask whether a structured method is effective for completely new categories of products with which customers have no experience. Satisfying needs is just as important in revolutionary products as in incremental products. A necessary condition for product success is that a product offers perceived benefits to the customer. Products offer benefits when they satisfy needs. This is true whether the product is an incremental variation on an existing product or whether it is a completely new product based on a revolutionary invention. Developing an entirely new category of product is a risky undertaking, and to some extent the only real indication of whether customer needs have been identified correctly is whether customers like the team's first prototypes. Nevertheless, in our opinion,

EXHIBIT 5-3
Mission statement for the thermostat.

Mission Statement: Thermostat Project	
Product Description	• Thermostat for residential use.
Benefit Proposition	• Simple to use, attractive, and saves energy.
Key Business Goals	• Product introduced in fourth quarter of 2012. • 50% gross margin. • 10% share of replacement thermostat market by 2016.
Primary Market	• Residential consumer.
Secondary Markets	• Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning contractors doing residential work.
Assumptions	• Replacement for an existing thermostat. • Compatible with most existing systems and wiring.
Stakeholders	• User • Retailer • Sales force • Service center • Production • Legal department

a structured method for gathering data from customers remains useful and can lower the inherent risk in developing a radically new product. Whether or not customers are able to fully articulate their true needs, interaction with customers in the target market will help the development team build a personal understanding of the user's environment and point of view. This information is always useful, even if it does not result in the identification of every need the new product will address.

Step 1: Gather Raw Data from Customers

Consistent with our basic philosophy of creating a high-quality information channel directly from the customer, gathering data involves contact with customers and experience with the use environment of the product. Three methods are commonly used:

1. ***Interviews:*** One or more development team members discusses needs with a single customer at a time. Interviews are usually conducted in the customer's environment and typically last one to two hours.
2. ***Focus groups:*** A moderator facilitates a two-hour discussion with a group of 8 to 12 customers. Focus groups are typically conducted in a special room equipped with a transparent mirror allowing several members of the development team to observe the group. In most cases, the moderator is a professional market researcher, but a member of the development team sometimes moderates. The proceedings are usually video recorded. Participants are usually paid a modest fee ($50 to $100 each) for their attendance. The total cost of a focus group, including rental of the room, participant fees, video recording, and refreshments, is about $5,000. In most U.S. cities, firms that recruit participants, moderate focus groups, and/or rent facilities are found in directories and searches under "Market Research."
3. ***Observing the product in use:*** Watching customers use an existing product or perform a task for which a new product is intended can reveal important details about customer needs. For example, watching a consumer replace an existing thermostat may reveal a mismatch in shapes between the new and old products causing unsightly discontinuities in the wall surface. Observation may be completely passive, without any direct interaction with the customer, or may involve working side by side with a customer, allowing members of the development team to develop firsthand experience using the product. Ideally, team members observe the product in the actual use environment. Procter & Gamble, for example, observes thousands of customers every year in their homes or workplaces to better understand their needs. For some products, such as do-it-yourself tools, actually using the products is simple and natural; for others, such as surgical instruments, the team may have to use the products on surrogate tasks (e.g., cutting fruit instead of human tissue when developing a new scalpel).

Some practitioners also rely on surveys for gathering raw data. While online surveys can be quite useful later in the process, we cannot recommend this approach for initial efforts to identify customer needs; text-based surveys simply do not provide enough information about the use environment of the product, and they are generally ineffective in revealing unanticipated (latent) needs.

Research by Griffin and Hauser shows that one 2-hour focus group reveals about the same number of needs as two 1-hour interviews (Griffin and Hauser, 1993). (See Exhibit 5-4.)

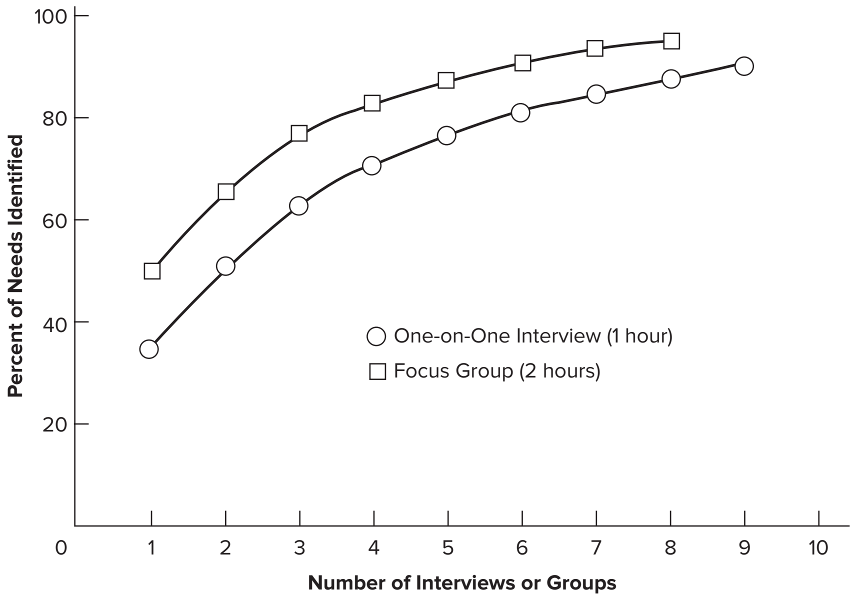


EXHIBIT 5-4
Comparison of the percentages of customer needs that are revealed for focus groups and interviews as a function of the number of sessions. Note that a focus group lasts two hours, while an interview lasts one hour.

Source: Abbie Griffin and John R. Hauser, "The Voice of the Customer," *Marketing Science,* Vol. 12, No. 1, Winter 1993, pp. 1–27.

Because interviews are usually less costly (per hour) than focus groups and because an interview often allows the product development team to experience the use environment of the product, we recommend that interviews be the primary data collection method. Interviews may be supplemented with one or two focus groups as a way to allow top management to observe a group of customers or as a mechanism for sharing a common customer experience (via video) with the members of a larger team. Some practitioners believe that for certain products and customer groups, the interactions among the participants of focus groups can elicit more varied needs than are revealed through interviews, although this belief is not strongly supported by research findings.

Choosing Customers

Griffin and Hauser also addressed the question of how many customers to interview to reveal most of the customer needs. In one study, they estimated that 90 percent of the customer needs for picnic coolers were revealed after 30 interviews. In another study, they estimated that 98 percent of the customer needs for a piece of office equipment were revealed after 25 hours of data collection in both focus groups and interviews. As a practical guideline for most products, conducting fewer than 10 interviews is probably inadequate and 50 interviews are probably too many; however, interviews can be conducted sequentially and the process can be terminated when no new needs are revealed by additional interviews. These guidelines apply to cases in which the development team is addressing a single market segment. If the team wishes to gather customer needs from multiple distinct segments, then the team may need to conduct 10 or more interviews in each segment. Concept development teams consisting of more than 10 people usually collect data from plenty of customers simply by involving much of the team in the process. For example, if a 10-person team is divided into five pairs and each pair conducts 6 interviews, the team conducts 30 interviews in total.

Needs can be identified more efficiently by interviewing *lead users* and/or extreme users. According to von Hippel, lead users are customers who experience needs months or years ahead of the majority of the market and stand to benefit substantially from product innovations (von Hippel, 1988). These customers are particularly useful sources of data for two reasons: (1) they are often able to articulate their emerging needs, because they have had to struggle with the inadequacies of existing products, and (2) they may have already invented solutions to meet their needs. By focusing a portion of the data collection efforts on lead users, the team may be able to identify needs that, although explicit for lead users, are still latent for the majority of the market. Developing products to meet these latent needs allows a firm to anticipate trends and to leapfrog competitive products.

Extreme users are those who use the product in unusual ways or who have special needs. These customers can help the team identify needs that may be felt less acutely by the mainstream market, but are nevertheless important opportunities for competitive advantage. For example, extreme users of the thermostat might be people who have limited vision or dexterity, customers who need to vary temperatures many times each day, or owners of large homes with multiple heating and cooling zones having complex control systems and programming needs. Some extreme users even regulate ventilation systems, a towel warmer, wine cellar, or an aquarium using thermostats. Identifying such extreme users can reveal latent needs and inspire features that could be useful also for mainstream users.

The choice of which customers to interview is complicated when several different groups of people can be considered "the customer." For many products, one customer (the purchaser) makes the buying decision and another customer (the user) actually uses the product. A good approach is to gather data from end users of the product in all situations, and in cases where other types of customers and stakeholders are clearly important, to gather data from these people as well.

A customer selection matrix is useful for planning exploration of both market and customer variety. Burchill suggests that market segments be listed on the left side of the matrix while the different types of customers are listed across the top (Burchill et al., 1997), as shown in Exhibit 5-5. The number of intended customer contacts is entered in each cell to indicate the depth of coverage.

For industrial and commercial products, actually locating customers is usually a matter of making telephone calls or sending interview requests by e-mail. In developing such products within an existing firm, a field sales force can often provide names of customers, although the team must be careful about biasing the selection of customers toward those with allegiances to a particular manufacturer. Online searches can be used to identify names of some types of customers for many classes of products (e.g., building contractors or insurance agents). For products that are integral to a customer's job, getting someone to agree to an interview is usually simple; these customers are eager to discuss their needs. For consumer products, customers can also be located through groups on social networks and via

EXHIBIT 5-5
Customer selection matrix for a thermostat project.

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Lead Users</th><th>Users</th><th>Retailers</th></tr>
<tr><td>Homeowner</td><td>5</td><td>5</td><td rowspan="2">5</td></tr>
<tr><td>HVAC Contractor</td><td>5</td><td>5</td></tr>
</table>

Source: Gary Burchill, et al., Concept Engineering, Center for Quality of Management, Cambridge, MA, Document No. ML0080, 1997.

e-mail; however, arranging a set of interviews for consumer products generally requires more inquiries than for industrial or commercial products because the benefit of participating in an interview is less direct for these customers.

The Art of Eliciting Customer Needs Data

The techniques we present here are aimed primarily at interviewing end users, but these methods do apply to all of the three data-gathering modes and to all types of stakeholders. The basic approach is to be receptive to information provided by customers and to avoid confrontations or defensive posturing. Gathering needs data is very different from a sales call: the goal is to elicit an honest expression of needs, not to convince a customer of what he or she needs. In most cases customer interactions will be verbal; interviewers ask questions and the customer responds. A prepared interview guide is valuable for structuring this dialogue. Some helpful questions and prompts for use after the interviewers introduce themselves and explain the purpose of the interview are:

- When and why do you use this type of product?
- Walk us through a typical session using the product.
- What do you like about the existing products?
- What do you dislike about the existing products?
- What issues do you consider when purchasing the product?
- What improvements would you make to the product?

Here are some general hints for effective interaction with customers:

- ***Go with the flow.*** If the customer is providing useful information, do not worry about conforming to the interview guide. The goal is to gather important data on customer needs, not to complete the interview guide in the allotted time.
- ***Use visual stimuli and props.*** Bring a collection of existing and competitors' products, or even products that are tangentially related to the product under development. At the end of a session, the interviewers might even show some preliminary product concepts to get customers' early reactions to various approaches.
- ***Suppress preconceived hypotheses about the product technology.*** Frequently, customers will make assumptions about the product concept they expect would meet their needs. In these situations, the interviewers should avoid biasing the discussion with assumptions about how the product will eventually be designed or produced. When customers mention specific technologies or product features, the interviewer should probe for the underlying need the customer believes the suggested solution would satisfy.
- ***Have the customer demonstrate the product and/or typical tasks related to the product.*** If the interview is conducted in the use environment, a demonstration is usually convenient and invariably reveals new information.
- ***Be alert for surprises and the expression of latent needs.*** If a customer mentions something surprising, pursue the lead with follow-up questions. Frequently, an unexpected line of questioning will reveal the latent needs, the important dimensions of the customers' needs that are neither fulfilled nor commonly articulated and understood.
- ***Watch for nonverbal information.*** The process described in the chapter is aimed at developing better physical products. Unfortunately, words are not always the best way to communicate needs related to the physical world. This is particularly true of needs

involving the human dimensions of the product, such as comfort, image, or style. The development team must be constantly aware of the nonverbal messages provided by customers. What are their facial expressions? How do they hold competitors' products?

- ***Data privacy.*** When interaction with customers involves any collection of personal data, there are restrictions and procedures governing how the data may be used and must be protected. It is therefore important to learn and comply with the relevant guidelines.

Note that many of our suggested questions and guidelines assume that the customer has some familiarity with products similar to the new product under development. This is almost always true. For example, even before the first programmable thermostats became available, people controlled temperature over the course of the day. Developing an understanding of customer needs as they relate to the general temperature control task would still have been beneficial in developing the first programmable device. Similarly, understanding the needs of customers using other types of household devices such as coffeemakers or microwave ovens can be informative. We can think of no product so revolutionary that there would be no analogous products or tasks from which the development team could learn; however, in gathering needs relating to truly revolutionary products with which customers have no experience, the interview questions should be focused on the task or situation in which the new product will be applied, rather than on the product itself.

Documenting Interactions with Customers

Four methods are commonly used for documenting interactions with customers:

1. ***Audio recording:*** Making an audio recording of the interview is very easy. Unfortunately, transcribing the recording into text is very time consuming, and hiring someone to do it can be expensive. Also, audio recording has the disadvantage of being intimidating to some customers.

2. ***Notes:*** Handwritten notes are the most common method of documenting an interview. Designating one person as the primary note taker allows the other person to concentrate on effective questioning. The note taker should strive to capture some of the wording of every customer statement verbatim. These notes, if transcribed immediately after the interview, can be used to create a description of the interview that is very close to an actual transcript. This debriefing immediately after the interview also facilitates sharing of insights between the interviewers.

3. ***Video recording:*** Video recording is almost always used to document a focus group session. It is also very useful for documenting observations of the customer in the use environment and/or using existing products. The video recording is useful for bringing new team members "up to speed" and is also useful as raw material for presentations to upper management. Multiple viewings of video recordings of customers in action often facilitate the identification of latent customer needs. Video recording is also useful for capturing many aspects of the end user's environment.

4. ***Still photography:*** Taking photographs provides many of the benefits of video recording, but is usually less intrusive and therefore easier to do while observing customers in the field. Additional advantages of still photography are ease of display of the photos and excellent image quality. The primary disadvantage is the relative inability to record dynamic information.

The final result of the data-gathering phase of the process is a set of raw data, usually in the form of *customer statements* but frequently supplemented by video recordings or photographs.

Customer:	Bill Esposito	**Interviewer(s):**	Jonathan and Lisa
Address:	100 Memorial Drive Cambridge, MA 02139	**Date:**	19 January 2018
Telephone:	617-864-1274	**Currently uses:**	Honeywell Model A45
E-mail:	bespo@zmail.com	**Type of user:**	Homeowner
Willing to do follow-up?	Yes		

Question/Prompt	Customer Statement	Interpreted Need
Typical uses	I have to manually turn it on and off when it gets too hot or cold.	The thermostat maintains a comfortable temperature without requiring user action.
	Each time I want to change the temperature, I need to adjust both thermostats in the house.	Any user inputs need not be made in multiple locations. (!)
Likes—current model	I like that I can change the temperature if the setting is too high.	The temperature setting is easy to control manually.
	It didn't cost a fortune.	The thermostat is affordable to purchase.
Dislikes—current model	I'm too lazy to learn how to figure it out.	The thermostat requires little or no user instruction or learning.
	I sometimes forget to turn it off when we leave the house.	The thermostat saves energy when no one is home. (!)
	Sometimes the buttons don't register a push and I have to press it repeatedly.	The thermostat definitively registers any user inputs.
Suggested improvements	I would like my iPhone to adjust my thermostat.	The thermostat can be controlled remotely without requiring a special device.
	I like to shift quickly between different options like energy saving or ultra comfort.	The thermostat responds immediately to differences in occupant preferences.

EXHIBIT 5-6 Customer data template filled in with sample customer statements and interpreted needs. (Note that this template represents a partial list from a single interview. A typical interview session may elicit more than 50 customer statements and interpreted needs.)

A data template implemented in a spreadsheet is useful for organizing these raw data. Exhibit 5-6 shows an example of a portion of such a template. We recommend that the template be filled in as soon as possible after the interaction with the customer and edited by the other development team members present during the interaction. The first column in the main body of the template indicates the question or prompt that elicited the customer data. The second column is a list of verbatim statements the customer made or an observation of a customer action (from a video recording or from direct observation). The third column contains the customer needs implied by the raw data. Some emphasis should be placed on investigating clues that may identify potential latent needs. Such clues may be in the form of humorous remarks, less serious suggestions, frustrations, nonverbal information, or observations and descriptions of the use environment. The symbol (!) is used in Exhibit 5-6 to flag potential latent needs. Techniques for interpreting the raw data in terms of customer needs are given in the next section.

The final task in step 1 is to write thank-you notes to the customers involved in the process. Invariably, the team will need to solicit further customer information, so developing and maintaining a good rapport with a set of users is important.

Step 2: Interpret Raw Data in Terms of Customer Needs

Customer needs are expressed as written statements and are the result of interpreting the need underlying the raw data gathered from the customers. Each statement or observation (as listed in the second column of the data template) may be translated into any number of customer needs. Griffin and Hauser found that multiple analysts may translate the same interview notes into different needs, so it is useful to have more than one team member conducting the translation process. Later in this section, we provide five guidelines for writing needs statements. The first two guidelines are fundamental and are critical to effective translation; the remaining three guidelines ensure consistency of phrasing and style across all needs statements. Exhibit 5-7 provides examples to illustrate each guideline.

- ***Express the need in terms of* what *the product has to do, not in terms of* how *it might do it.*** Customers often express their preferences by describing a solution concept or an implementation approach; however, the needs statement should be expressed in terms independent of a particular technological solution.
- ***Express the need as specifically as the raw data.*** Needs can be expressed at many different levels of detail. To avoid loss of information, express the need at the same level of detail as the raw data.
- ***Use positive, not negative, phrasing.*** Subsequent translation of a need into a product specification is easier if the need is expressed as a positive statement. This is not a rigid guideline, because sometimes positive phrasing is difficult and awkward. For example, one of the needs statements in Exhibit 5-6 is "The thermostat does not require replacing batteries." This need is more naturally expressed in a negative form.

Guideline	Customer Statement	Needs Statement—Right	Needs Statement—Wrong
"What" not "How"	I would like my iPhone to adjust my thermostat.	The thermostat can be controlled remotely without requiring a special device.	The thermostat is accompanied by a downloadable iPhone app.
Specificity	I have different heating and cooling systems.	The thermostat can control separate heating and cooling systems.	The thermostat is versatile.
Positive not negative	I get tired of standing in front of my thermostat to program it.	The thermostat can be programmed from a comfortable position.	The thermostat does not require me to stand in front of it for programming.
An attribute of the product	I have to manually override the program if I'm home when I shouldn't be.	The thermostat automatically responds to an occupant's presence.	An occupant's presence triggers the thermostat to automatically change modes.
Avoid "must" and "should"	I'm worried about how secure my thermostat would be if it were accessible online.	The thermostat controls are secure from unauthorized access.	The thermostat must be secure from unauthorized access.

EXHIBIT 5-7 Examples illustrating the guidelines for writing needs statements.

- ***Express the need as an attribute of the product.*** Wording needs as statements about the product ensures consistency and facilitates subsequent translation into product specifications. Not all needs can be clearly expressed as attributes of the product, however, and in most of these cases the needs can be expressed as attributes of the user of the product (e.g., "An occupant's presence triggers the thermostat to automatically change modes.").
- ***Avoid the words* must *and* should.** The words *must* and *should* imply a level of importance for the need. Rather than casually assigning a binary importance rating (*must* versus *should*) to the needs at this point, we recommend deferring the assessment of the importance of each need until step 4.

The list of customer needs is the superset of all the needs elicited from all the interviewed customers in the target market. Some needs may not be technically realizable. The constraints of technical and economic feasibility are incorporated into the process of establishing product specifications in subsequent development steps. (See Chapter 6, Product Specifications.) In some cases, customers will have expressed conflicting needs. At this point in the process the team does not attempt to resolve such conflicts, but simply documents both needs. Deciding how to address conflicting needs is one of the challenges of the subsequent concept development activities.

Step 3: Organize the Needs into a Hierarchy

The result of steps 1 and 2 is generally a list of 50 to 300 *needs statements.* Such a large number of detailed needs is awkward to work with and difficult to summarize for use in subsequent development activities. The goal of step 3 is to organize these needs into a useful hierarchical list. The list will typically consist of a set of *primary needs,* each one of which will be further characterized by a set of *secondary needs.* In cases of very complex products, the secondary needs may be broken down into tertiary needs as well. The primary needs are the most general needs, while the secondary and tertiary needs express needs in more detail. Exhibit 5-8 shows the resulting hierarchical list of needs for the thermostat example. In this instance, there are eight primary needs and 41 secondary needs.

The procedure for organizing the needs into a hierarchical list is intuitive, and many teams can successfully complete the task without detailed instructions. For completeness, we provide a step-by-step procedure here. This activity is best performed on a wall or a large table by a small group of team members.

1. ***Print or write each needs statement on a separate card or self-stick note.*** A print macro can be easily written to print the needs statements directly from the data template. A nice feature of this approach is that the need can be printed in a large font in the center of the card and then the original customer statement and other relevant information can be printed in a small font at the bottom of the card for easy reference. Four cards can be cut from a standard printed sheet.

2. ***Eliminate redundant statements.*** Those cards expressing redundant needs statements can be stapled together and treated as a single card. Be careful to consolidate only those statements that are identical in meaning.

3. ***Group the cards according to the similarity of the needs they express.*** At this point, the team should attempt to create groups of roughly three to seven cards that express similar needs. The logic by which groups are created deserves special attention. Novice

** **The thermostat is easy to install.**
*** The thermostat works with my existing heating and/or cooling system.
** The thermostat installation is an easy do-it-yourself project for a novice.
** The thermostat can control separate heating and cooling systems.
* The thermostat can be installed without special tools.
The thermostat is easily purchased.

* **The thermostat lasts a long time.**
The thermostat is safe to bump into.
The thermostat resists dirt and dust.
! The thermostat exterior surfaces do not fade or discolor over time.
The thermostat is recyclable at end of life.

*** **The thermostat is easy to use.**
** The thermostat user interaction is easy to understand.
* The thermostat is easy to learn to use.
* The thermostat does not place significant demands on user memory.
! The thermostat can be programmed from a comfortable position.
The thermostat can be controlled remotely without requiring a special device.
! The thermostat works pretty well right out of the box with no setup.
The thermostat's behavior is easy to change.
The thermostat is easy to control manually.
The thermostat display is easy to read from a distance.
The thermostat display can be read clearly in all conditions.
The thermostat's controls accommodate users with limited dexterity.
The thermostat accommodates different conventions for temperature scales.
The thermostat accommodates different preferences for representing time and date.

** **The thermostat controls are precise.**
** The thermostat maintains temperature accurately.
The thermostat minimizes unintended variability in temperature.
The thermostat allows temperatures to be specified precisely.

*** **The thermostat is smart.**
*** The thermostat can adjust temperature during the day according to user preferences.
** The thermostat can be programmed to a precise schedule.
! The thermostat automatically responds to occupancy.
! The thermostat prevents pipes from freezing in cold months.
The thermostat alerts the user when a problem arises.
The thermostat does not require users to set time or date.
The thermostat adjusts automatically to the seasons.

* **The thermostat is personal.**
* The thermostat accommodates different user preferences for comfort.
The thermostat accommodates different user preferences for energy efficiency.
The thermostat controls are secure from unauthorized access.
The thermostat provides useful information.

*** **The thermostat is a good investment.**
** The thermostat is affordable to purchase.
*** The thermostat saves energy.
* The thermostat tracks cost savings.

** **The thermostat is reliable.**
The thermostat does not require replacing batteries.
The thermostat works normally when electric power is suspended.

EXHIBIT 5-8 Hierarchical list of primary and secondary customer needs for the thermostat. Importance ratings for the secondary needs are indicated by the number of *'s, with *** denoting critically important needs. Latent needs are denoted by!.

development teams often create groups according to a technological perspective, clustering needs relating to, for example, materials, packaging, or power. Or they create groups according to assumed components such as enclosure, display, dial, and software. Both of these approaches are dangerous. Recall that the goal of the process is to create a description of the needs of the customer. For this reason, the groupings should be consistent with the way customers think about their needs and not with the way the development team thinks about the product. The groups should correspond to needs customers would view as similar. In fact, some practitioners use a process in which customers actually organize the needs statements.

4. ***For each group, choose a label.*** The label is itself a statement of need that generalizes all of the needs in the group. It can be selected from one of the needs in the group, or the team can write a new needs statement.

5. ***Consider creating supergroups consisting of two to five groups.*** If there are fewer than 20 groups, then a two-level hierarchy is probably sufficient to organize the data. In this case, the group labels are primary needs and the group members are secondary needs; however, if there are more than 20 groups, the team may consider creating supergroups, and therefore a third level in the hierarchy. The process of creating supergroups is identical to the process of creating groups. As with the previous step, cluster groups according to similarity of the need they express and then create or select a supergroup label. These supergroup labels become the primary needs, the group labels become the secondary needs, and the members of the groups become tertiary needs.

6. ***Review and edit the organized needs statements.*** There is no single correct arrangement of needs in a hierarchy. At this point, the team may wish to consider alternative groupings or labels and may engage another team to suggest alternative arrangements.

The process is more complicated when the team attempts to reflect the needs of two or more distinct market segments. There are at least two approaches that can be taken to address this challenge. First, the team can label each need with the segment (and possibly the name) of the customer from whom the need was elicited. This way, differences in needs across segments can be observed directly. One practical visual technique for this labeling is to use different colors of paper for the cards on which the needs statements are written, with each color corresponding to a different market segment. The other approach to multiple market segments is to perform the clustering process separately for each market segment. Using this approach, the team can observe differences both in the needs themselves and in the ways in which these needs are best organized. We recommend that the team adopt this parallel, independent approach when the segments are very different in their needs and when there is some doubt about the ability of the team to address the different segments with the same product.

Step 4: Establish the Relative Importance of the Needs

The hierarchical list alone does not provide any information on the relative importance that customers place on different needs. Yet the development team will have to make trade-offs and allocate resources in designing the product. A sense of the relative importance of the various needs is essential to making these trade-offs correctly. Step 4 in the needs process establishes the relative importance of the customer needs identified in steps 1 through 3. The outcome of this step is a numerical importance weighting for a subset of the needs. There are two basic approaches to the task: (1) relying on the consensus of the team members based on their experience with customers, or (2) basing the importance assessment on further customer surveys. The obvious trade-off between the two approaches is cost and speed versus accuracy: The team can make an educated assessment of the relative importance of the needs in one meeting, while a customer survey generally takes a week or more. In most cases we believe the customer survey is important and worth the time required to complete it. Other development tasks, such as concept generation and analysis of competitive products, can begin before the relative importance surveys are complete.

At this point the team should have developed a rapport with a group of customers. These same customers can be surveyed to rate the relative importance of the needs that have been identified. The survey can be done in person, by telephone, via the Internet, or by mail. Few customers will respond to a survey asking them to evaluate the importance of 100 needs, so typically the team will work with only a subset of the needs. A practical limit on how many needs can be addressed in a customer survey is about 50. This limit is not too severe, however, because many of the needs are either obviously important (e.g., The thermostat maintains temperature accurately) or are easy to implement (e.g., The thermostat allows temperatures to be specified precisely). The team can therefore limit the scope of the survey by querying customers only about needs that are likely to give rise to difficult technical trade-offs or costly features in the product design. Such needs would include, for instance, the need to avoid replacing batteries, or the need to not have to enter time or date. Alternatively the team could develop a set of surveys to ask a variety of customers each about different subsets of the needs list. There are many survey designs for establishing the relative importance of customer needs. One good design is illustrated by the portion of the thermostat survey shown in Exhibit 5-9. In addition to asking for importance ratings, this survey asks the respondent to explicitly identify the needs that are unique or unexpected. This information can be used to help the team identify latent needs.

The survey responses for each needs statement can be characterized in a variety of ways: by the mean, by the standard deviation, or by the number of responses in each category. The responses can then be used to assign an importance weighting to the needs statements. The same scale of 1 to 5 can be used to summarize the importance data. The needs in Exhibit 5-8 are rated according to the survey data, with the importance ratings denoted by the number of *'s next to each needs statement and the latent needs denoted by !. Note that no critical needs are also latent needs. This is because if a need were critical, customers would not be surprised or excited by it; they would expect it to be met.

Thermostat Survey

For each of the following thermostat features, please indicate on a scale of 1 to 5 how important the feature is to you. Please use the following scale:

1. Feature is undesirable. I would not consider a product with this feature.
2. Feature is not important, but I would not mind having it.
3. Feature would be nice to have, but is not necessary.
4. Feature is highly desirable, but I would consider a product without it.
5. Feature is critical. I would not consider a product without this feature.

Also indicate by checking the box to the right if you feel that the feature is unique, exciting, and/or unexpected.

Importance of feature on scale of 1 to 5		Check box if feature is unique, exciting, and/or unexpected.
_______	The thermostat does not require the user to set time or date.	☐
_______	The thermostat does not require replacing batteries.	☐
_______	The thermostat adjusts automatically to the seasons.	☐
_______	The thermostat accommodates different preferences for representing date and time.	☐

And so forth.

EXHIBIT 5-9 Example importance survey (partial).

Step 5: Reflect on the Results and the Process

The final step in the method is to reflect on the results and the process. While the process of identifying customer needs can be usefully structured, it is not an exact science. The team must challenge its results to verify that they are consistent with the knowledge and intuition the team has developed through many hours of interaction with customers. Some questions to ask include:

- Have we interacted with all of the important types of customers in our target market?
- Are we able to see beyond needs related only to existing products to capture the latent needs of our target customers?
- Are there areas of inquiry we should pursue in follow-up interviews or surveys?
- Which of the customers we spoke to would be good participants in our ongoing development efforts?
- What do we know now that we didn't know when we started? Are we surprised by any of the needs?
- Did we involve everyone within our own organization who needs to deeply understand customer needs?
- How might we improve the process in future efforts?

A good way to summarize the results of the process is to list the most important needs and the latent needs. For instance, the most important needs identified are:

- The thermostat is easy to use.
- The thermostat can adjust temperature during the day according to user preferences.
- The thermostat works with my existing heating and/or cooling system.
- The thermostat reduces energy consumption.

The latent needs are:

- The thermostat can be programmed from a comfortable position.
- The thermostat works pretty well right out of the box with no setup.
- The thermostat automatically responds to occupancy.
- The thermostat exterior surfaces do not fade or discolor over time.
- The thermostat prevents pipes from freezing in cold months.

The important needs are an excellent reminder of the critical few needs that must be addressed for a great product, and the latent needs provide insights that can drive the creative process of generating product concepts.

Summary

Identifying customer needs is an integral part of the concept development phase of the product development process. The resulting customer needs are used to guide the team in establishing product specifications, generating product concepts, and selecting a product concept for further development.

- The process of identifying customer needs includes five steps:
  1. Gather raw data from customers.
  2. Interpret the raw data in terms of customer needs.
  3. Organize the needs into a hierarchy.
  4. Establish the relative importance of the needs.
  5. Reflect on the results and the process.
- Creating a high-quality information channel from customers to the product developers ensures that those who directly control the details of the product, including the product designers, fully understand the needs of the customer.
- Lead users are a good source of customer needs because they experience new needs months or years ahead of most customers and because they stand to benefit substantially from new product innovations. Furthermore, they are frequently able to articulate their needs more clearly than typical customers. Extreme users have special needs that may reflect latent needs among mainstream users.
- Latent needs may be even more important than explicit needs in determining customer satisfaction. Latent needs are those that many customers recognize as important in a final product but do not or cannot articulate in advance.
- Customer needs should be expressed in terms of what the product has to do, not in terms of how the product might be implemented. Adherence to this principle leaves the development team with maximum flexibility to generate and select product concepts.
- The key benefits of the method are ensuring that the product is focused on customer needs and that no critical customer need is forgotten; developing a clear understanding among members of the development team of the needs of the customers in the target market; developing a fact base to be used in generating concepts, selecting a product concept, and establishing product specifications; and creating an archival record of the needs phase of the development process.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Concept engineering is a method developed by Burchill at MIT in collaboration with the Center for Quality of Management. This chapter benefits from our observations of the development and application of concept engineering. For a complete and detailed description of concept engineering, see:

Burchill, Gary, et al., *Concept Engineering,* Center for Quality of Management, Cambridge, MA, Document No. ML0080, 1997.

The research by Griffin and Hauser validates different methods for extracting needs from interview data. Their study of the fraction of needs identified as a function of the number of customers interviewed is particularly interesting.

Griffin, Abbie, and John R. Hauser, "The Voice of the Customer," *Marketing Science,* Vol. 12, No. 1, Winter 1993, pp. 1–27.

Feinberg, Kinnear, and Taylor thoroughly discuss data collection methods and survey design, with numerous case examples.

Kinnear, Thomas C., and James R. Taylor, *Modern Marketing Research: Concepts, Methods, and Cases,* second edition, South-Western, Mason, OH, 2013.

Norman has written extensively on user needs, especially as related to the cognitive challenges of using products.

Norman, Donald A., *The Design of Everyday Things,* Doubleday, New York, 1990.

Urban and Hauser provide a thorough discussion of how to create hierarchies of needs (along with many other topics).

Urban, Glen L., and John R. Hauser, *Design and Marketing of New Products,* second edition, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1993.

Von Hippel describes many years of research on the role of lead users in innovation. He provides useful guidelines for identifying lead users.

von Hippel, Eric, *The Sources of Innovation,* Oxford University Press, New York, 1988.

Exercises

1. Translate the following customer statements about a student book bag into proper needs statements:

   a. "See how the leather on the bottom of the bag is all scratched; it's ugly."
   b. "When I'm standing in line at the cashier trying to find my checkbook while balancing my bag on my knee, I feel like a stork."
   c. "This bag is my life; if I lose it I'm in big trouble."
   d. "There's nothing worse than a banana that's been squished by the edge of a textbook."
   e. "I never use both straps on my knapsack; I just sling it over one shoulder."

2. Observe someone performing an everyday task. (Ideally, you should choose a task for which you can observe different users performing the task repeatedly.) Identify frustrations and difficulties encountered by these people. Identify the latent customer needs.
3. Choose a product that continually annoys you. Identify the needs the developers of this product missed. Why do you think these needs were not met? Do you think the developers deliberately ignored these needs?

Thought Questions

1. One of the reasons the method is effective is that it involves the entire development team. Unfortunately, the method can become unwieldy with a team of more than 10 people. How might you modify the method to maximize involvement yet maintain a focused and decisive effort given a large development team?
2. Can the process of identifying customer needs lead to the creation of innovative product concepts? In what ways? Could a structured process of identifying customer needs lead to a fundamentally new product concept like the Post-it Note?

CHAPTER SIX

Product Specifications

Courtesy of Specialized Bicycle Components

EXHIBIT 6-1
One of Specialized's existing mountain bikes with a suspension fork.

Specialized Bicycle Components was interested in developing a new front suspension fork for the mountain bike market. Although the firm was already selling suspension forks on its bicycles (Exhibit 6-1), it was interested in exploring designs that would provide higher value for the recreational cyclist.

The development team had spent a great deal of time identifying customer needs. In addition to logging many hours of riding on suspended bikes themselves, the members of the team had interviewed lead users at mountain bike races and recreational cyclists on local trails, and they also had spent time working with dealers in their stores. As a result of this process they had assembled a list of customer needs. They now faced several challenges:

- How could the relatively subjective customer needs be translated into precise targets for the remaining development effort?
- How could the team and its senior management agree on what would constitute success or failure of the resulting product design?
- How could the team develop confidence that its intended product would garner a substantial share of the suspension fork market?
- How could the team resolve the inevitable trade-offs among product characteristics like cost and weight?

This chapter presents a method for establishing product specifications. We assume that the customer needs are already documented as described in Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs. The method employs several simple information systems, all of which can be constructed using conventional spreadsheet software.

What Are Specifications?

Customer needs are generally expressed in the "language of the customer." The primary customer needs for the suspension fork are listed in Exhibit 6-2. Customer needs such as "the suspension is easy to install" or "the suspension enables high-speed descents on bumpy trails" are typical in terms of the subjective quality of the expressions; however, while such expressions are helpful in developing a clear sense of the issues of interest to customers, they provide little specific guidance about how to design and engineer the product. They simply leave too much margin for subjective interpretation. For this reason, development teams usually establish a set of specifications, which spell out in precise, measurable detail *what* the product has to do. Product specifications do not tell the team *how* to address the customer needs, but they do represent an unambiguous agreement on what the team will attempt to achieve to satisfy the customer needs. For example, in contrast to the customer need that "the suspension is easy to install," the corresponding specification might be that "the average time to assemble the fork to the frame is less than 75 seconds."

We intend the term *product specifications* to mean the precise description of what the product has to do. Some firms use the terms "product requirements" or "engineering characteristics" in this way. Other firms use "specifications" or "technical specifications" to refer to key design variables of the product such as the oil viscosity or spring constant of the suspension system. These are just differences in terminology. For clarity, let us be

EXHIBIT 6-2
Customer needs for the suspension fork and their relative importance (shown in a convenient spreadsheet format).

No.		Need	Imp.
1	The suspension	reduces vibration to the hands.	3
2	The suspension	allows easy traversal of slow, difficult terrain.	2
3	The suspension	enables high-speed descents on bumpy trails.	5
4	The suspension	allows sensitivity adjustment.	3
5	The suspension	preserves the steering characteristics of the bike.	4
6	The suspension	remains rigid during hard cornering.	4
7	The suspension	is lightweight.	4
8	The suspension	provides stiff mounting points for the brakes.	2
9	The suspension	fits a wide variety of bikes, wheels, and tires.	5
10	The suspension	is easy to install.	1
11	The suspension	works with fenders.	1
12	The suspension	instills pride.	5
13	The suspension	is affordable for an amateur enthusiast.	5
14	The suspension	is not contaminated by water.	5
15	The suspension	is not contaminated by grunge.	5
16	The suspension	can be easily accessed for maintenance.	3
17	The suspension	allows easy replacement of worn parts.	1
18	The suspension	can be maintained with readily available tools.	3
19	The suspension	lasts a long time.	5
20	The suspension	is safe in a crash.	5

precise about a few definitions. A *specification* (singular) consists of a *metric* and a *value*. For example, "average time to assemble" is a metric, while "less than 75 seconds" is the value of this metric. Note that the value may take on several forms, including a particular number, a range, or an inequality. Values are always labeled with the appropriate units (e.g., seconds, kilograms, joules). Together, the metric and value form a specification. The *product specifications* (plural) are simply the set of the individual specifications.

When Are Specifications Established?

In an ideal world, the team would establish the product specifications once early in the development process and then proceed to design and engineer the product to exactly meet those specifications. For some products, such as soap or soup, this approach works quite well; the technologists on the team can reliably concoct a formulation that satisfies almost any reasonable specifications; however, for technology-intensive products this is rarely possible. For such products, specifications are established at least twice. Immediately after identifying the customer needs, the team sets *target specifications*. These specifications represent the hopes and aspirations of the team, but they are established before the team knows what constraints the product technology will place on what can be achieved.

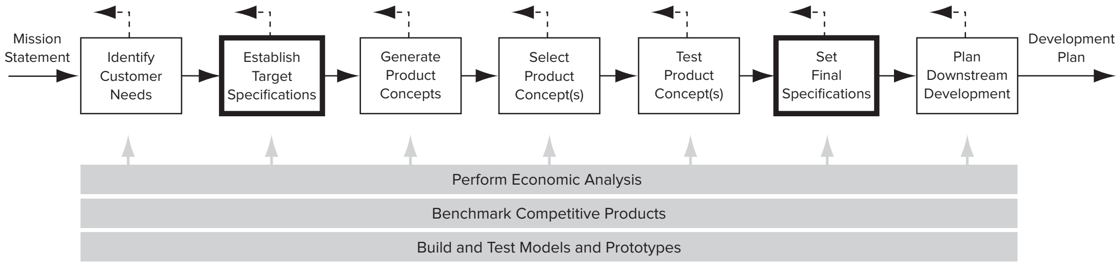


EXHIBIT 6-3 The concept development process. The target specifications are set early in the process, but setting the final specifications must wait until after the product concept has been selected.

The team's efforts may fail to meet some of these specifications and may exceed others, depending on the product concept the team eventually selects. For this reason, the target specifications must be refined after a product concept has been selected. The team revisits the specifications while assessing the actual technological constraints and the expected production costs. To set the *final specifications,* the team must frequently make hard trade-offs among different desirable characteristics of the product. For simplicity, we present a two-stage process for establishing specifications, but we note that in some organizations specifications are revisited many times throughout the development process.

The two stages in which specifications are established are shown as part of the concept development process in Exhibit 6-3. Note that the final specifications are one of the key elements of the development plan, which is usually documented in the project's *contract book*. The contract book (described in Chapter 19, Project Management) specifies what the team agrees to achieve, the project schedule, the required resources, and the economic implications for the business. The list of product specifications is also one of the key information systems used by the team throughout the development process.

This chapter presents two methods: The first is for establishing the target specifications and the second is for setting the final specifications after the product concept has been selected.

Establishing Target Specifications

As Exhibit 6-3 illustrates, the target specifications are established after the customer needs have been identified but before product concepts have been generated and the most promising one(s) selected. An arbitrary setting of the specifications may not be technically feasible. For example, in designing a suspension fork, the team cannot assume in advance that it will be able to achieve simultaneously a mass of 1 kilogram, a manufacturing cost of $30, and the best descent time on the test track, as these are three quite aggressive specifications. Actually meeting the specifications established at this point is contingent upon the details of the product concept the team eventually selects. For this reason, such preliminary specifications are labeled "target specifications." They are the goals of the development team, describing a product that the team believes would succeed in the marketplace. Later these specifications will be refined based on the limitations of the product concept actually selected.

The process of establishing the target specifications contains four steps:

1. Prepare the list of metrics.
2. Collect competitive benchmarking information.
3. Set ideal and marginally acceptable target values.
4. Reflect on the results and the process.

Step 1: Prepare the List of Metrics

The most useful metrics are those that reflect as directly as possible the degree to which the product satisfies the customer needs. The relationship between needs and metrics is central to the entire concept of specifications. The working assumption is that a translation from customer needs to a set of precise, measurable specifications is possible and that meeting specifications will therefore lead to satisfaction of the associated customer needs.

A list of metrics is shown in Exhibit 6-4. A good way to generate the list of metrics is to contemplate each need in turn and to consider what precise, measurable characteristic of the product will reflect the degree to which the product satisfies that need. In the ideal case, there is one and only one metric for each need. In practice, this is frequently not possible.

For example, consider the need that the suspension be "easy to install." The team may conclude that this need is largely captured by measuring the time required for assembly of the fork to the frame; however, note the possible subtleties in this translation. Is assembly time really identical to ease of installation? The installation could be extremely fast but require an awkward and painful set of finger actions, which ultimately may lead to worker injury or dealer frustration. Because of the imprecise nature of the translation process, those establishing the specifications should have been directly involved in identifying the customer needs. In this way the team can rely on its understanding of the meaning of each need statement derived from firsthand interactions with customers.

The need for the fork to reduce vibration to the user's hands may be even more difficult to translate into a single metric, because there are many different conditions under which vibration can be transmitted, including small bumps on level roads and big bumps on rough trails. The team may conclude that several metrics are required to capture this need, including, for example, the metrics "attenuation from dropout to handlebar at 10 Hz" and "maximum value from the Monster." (The "Monster" is a suspension test developed by *Mountain Bike* magazine.)

A simple needs-metrics matrix represents the relationship between needs and metrics. An example needs-metrics matrix is shown in Exhibit 6-5. The rows of the matrix correspond to the customer needs, and the columns of the matrix correspond to the metrics. A mark in a cell of the matrix means that the need and the metric associated with the cell are related; performance relative to the metric will influence the degree to which the product satisfies the customer need. This matrix is a key element of the *House of Quality,* a graphical technique used in *Quality Function Deployment,* or *QFD* (Hauser and Clausing, 1988). In many cases, we find the information in the needs-metrics matrix is just as easily communicated by listing the numbers of the needs related to each metric alongside the list of metrics (the second column in Exhibit 6-4). There are some cases, however, in which the mapping from needs to metrics is complex, and the matrix can be quite useful for representing this mapping.

Metric No.	Need Nos.	Metric	Imp.	Units
1	1, 3	Attenuation from dropout to handlebar at 10 Hz	3	dB
2	2, 6	Spring preload	3	N
3	1, 3	Maximum value from the Monster	5	g
4	1, 3	Minimum descent time on test track	5	s
5	4	Damping coefficient adjustment range	3	N-s/m
6	5	Maximum travel (26-in. wheel)	3	mm
7	5	Rake offset	3	mm
8	6	Lateral stiffness at the tip	3	kN/m
9	7	Total mass	4	kg
10	8	Lateral stiffness at brake pivots	2	kN/m
11	9	Headset sizes	5	in.
12	9	Steertube length	5	mm
13	9	Wheel sizes	5	List
14	9	Maximum tire width	5	in.
15	10	Time to assemble to frame	1	s
16	11	Fender compatibility	1	List
17	12	Instills pride	5	Subj.
18	13	Unit manufacturing cost	5	US$
19	14	Time in spray chamber without water entry	5	s
20	15	Cycles in mud chamber without contamination	5	k-cycles
21	16, 17	Time to disassemble/assemble for maintenance	3	s
22	17, 18	Special tools required for maintenance	3	List
23	19	UV test duration to degrade rubber parts	5	hr
24	19	Monster cycles to failure	5	Cycles
25	20	Japan Industrial Standards test	5	Binary
26	20	Bending strength (frontal loading)	5	kN

EXHIBIT 6-4 List of metrics for the suspension. The relative importance of each metric and the units for the metric are also shown. "Subj." is an abbreviation indicating that a metric is subjective.

A few guidelines should be considered when constructing the list of metrics:

- ***Metrics should be complete.*** Ideally each customer need would correspond to a single metric, and the value of that metric would correlate perfectly with satisfaction of that need. In practice, several metrics may be necessary to completely reflect a single customer need.
- ***Metrics should be dependent, not independent, variables.*** This guideline is a variant of the *what-not-how principle* introduced in Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs. As do customer needs, specifications also indicate *what* the product must do, but not *how* the

	Need / **Metric**	1 Attenuation from dropout to handlebar at 10 Hz	2 Spring preload	3 Maximum value from the Monster	4 Minimum descent time on test track	5 Damping coefficient adjustment range	6 Maximum travel (26-in. wheel)	7 Rake offset	8 Lateral stiffness at the tip	9 Total mass	10 Lateral stiffness at brake pivots	11 Headset sizes	12 Steertube length	13 Wheel sizes	14 Maximum tire width	15 Time to assemble to frame	16 Fender compatibility	17 Instills pride	18 Unit manufacturing cost	19 Time in spray chamber without water entry	20 Cycles in mud chamber without contamination	21 Time to disassemble/assemble for maintenance	22 Special tools required for maintenance	23 UV test duration to degrade rubber parts	24 Monster cycles to failure	25 Japan Industrial Standards test	26 Bending strength (frontal loading)
1	Reduces vibration to the hands	•		•	•																						
2	Allows easy traversal of slow, difficult terrain		•																								
3	Enables high-speed descents on bumpy trails	•		•	•																						
4	Allows sensitivity adjustment					•																					
5	Preserves the steering characteristics of the bike						•	•																			
6	Remains rigid during hard cornering		•						•																		
7	Is lightweight									•																	
8	Provides stiff mounting points for the brakes										•																
9	Fits a wide variety of bikes, wheels, and tires											•	•	•	•												
10	Is easy to install															•											
11	Works with fenders																•										
12	Instills pride																	•									
13	Is affordable for an amateur enthusiast																		•								
14	Is not contaminated by water																			•							
15	Is not contaminated by grunge																				•						
16	Can be easily accessed for maintenance																					•					
17	Allows easy replacement of worn parts																					•	•				
18	Can be maintained with readily available tools																						•				
19	Lasts a long time																							•	•		
20	Is safe in a crash																									•	•

EXHIBIT 6-5 The needs-metrics matrix.

specifications will be achieved. Designers use many types of variables in product development; some are *dependent,* such as the mass of the fork, and some are *independent,* such as the material used for the fork. In other words, designers cannot control mass directly because it arises from other independent decisions the designers will make, such as dimensions and materials choices. Metrics specify the overall performance of a product and should therefore be the dependent variables (i.e., the performance measures or output variables) in the design problem. By using dependent variables for the specifications, designers are left with the freedom to achieve the specifications using the best approach possible.

- ***Metrics should be practical.*** It does not serve the team to devise a metric for a bicycle suspension that can only be measured by a scientific laboratory at a cost of $100,000. Ideally, metrics will be directly observable or analyzable properties of the product that can be easily evaluated by the team.
- ***Some needs cannot easily be translated into quantifiable metrics.*** The need that the suspension instills pride may be quite critical to success in the fashion-conscious mountain bike market, but how can pride be quantified? In these cases, the team simply repeats the need statement as a specification and notes that the metric is subjective. (We indicate this by entering "Subj." in the units column.) However, the team still has to decide how to confirm that the specification is satisfied; for example, by a panel of customers.
- ***The metrics should include the popular criteria for comparison in the marketplace.*** Many customers in various markets buy products based on independently published evaluations. Such evaluations are found, for example, in *Popular Science, Consumer Reports,* on various Internet sites, or, in our case, in *Bicycling* and *Mountain Bike* magazines. If the team knows that its product will be evaluated by the trade media and knows what the evaluation criteria will be, then it should include metrics corresponding to these criteria. *Mountain Bike* magazine uses a test machine called the Monster, which measures the vertical acceleration (in g's) of the handlebars as a bicycle equipped with the fork runs over a block 50 millimeters tall. For this reason, the team included "maximum value from the Monster" as a metric. If the team cannot find a relationship between the criteria used by the media and the customer needs it has identified, then it should ensure that a need has not been overlooked and/or should work with the media to revise the criteria. In a few cases, the team may conclude that high performance in the media evaluations is in itself a customer need and choose to include a metric used by the media that has little intrinsic technical merit.

In addition to denoting the needs related to each metric, Exhibit 6-4 contains the units of measurement and an importance rating for each metric. The units of measurement are most commonly conventional engineering units such as kilograms and seconds; however, some metrics will not lend themselves to numerical values. The need that the suspension "works with fenders" is best translated into a specification listing the models of fenders with which the fork is compatible. In this case, the value of the metric is actually a list of fenders rather than a number. For the metric involving the standard safety test, the value is pass/fail. (We indicate these two cases by entering "List" and "Binary" in the units column.)

The importance rating of a metric is derived from the importance ratings of the needs it reflects. For cases in which a metric maps directly to a single need, the importance rating of the need becomes the importance rating of the metric. For cases in which a metric is related to more than one need, the importance of the metric is determined by considering the importances of the needs to which it relates and the nature of these relationships. We believe that there are enough subtleties in this process that importance weightings can best be determined through discussion among the team members, rather than through a formal algorithm. When there are relatively few specifications and establishing the relative importance of these specifications is critically important, *conjoint analysis* may be useful. Conjoint analysis is described briefly later in this chapter and publications explaining the technique are referenced at the end of the chapter.

Step 2: Collect Competitive Benchmarking Information

Unless the team expects to enjoy a total monopoly, the relationship of the new product to competitive products is paramount in determining commercial success. While the team will have entered the product development process with some idea of how it wishes to compete in the marketplace, the target specifications are the language the team uses to discuss and agree on the detailed positioning of its product relative to existing products, both its own and competitors'. Information on competing products must be gathered to support these positioning decisions.

An example of a competitive benchmarking chart is shown in Exhibit 6-6. The columns of the chart correspond to the competitive products and the rows are the metrics established in step 1. Note that the competitive benchmarking chart can be constructed as a simple appendage to the spreadsheet containing the list of metrics. (This information is one of the "rooms" in the *House of Quality,* described by Hauser and Clausing.)

The benchmarking chart is conceptually very simple. For each competitive product, the values of the metrics are simply entered down a column. Gathering these data can be very time consuming, involving (at the least) purchasing, testing, disassembling, and estimating the production costs of the most important competitive products; however, this investment of time is essential, as no product development team can expect to succeed without having this type of information. A word of warning: Sometimes the data contained in competitors' catalogs and supporting literature are not accurate. Where possible, values of the key metrics should be verified by independent testing or observation.

An alternative competitive benchmarking chart can be constructed with rows corresponding to the customer needs and columns corresponding to the competitive products (see Exhibit 6-7). This chart is used to compare customers' perceptions of the relative degree to which the products satisfy their needs. Constructing this chart requires collecting customer perception data, which can also be very expensive and time consuming. Some techniques for measuring customers' perceptions of satisfaction of needs are contained in a book by Urban and Hauser (1993). Both charts can be useful and any discrepancies between the two are instructive. At a minimum, a chart showing the competitive values of the metrics (Exhibit 6-6) should be created.

Step 3: Set Ideal and Marginally Acceptable Target Values

In this step, the team synthesizes the available information to actually set the *target values* for the metrics. Two types of target value are useful: an *ideal value* and a *marginally acceptable value*. The ideal value is the best result the team could hope for. The marginally acceptable value is the value of the metric that would just barely make the product commercially viable. Both of these targets are useful in guiding the subsequent stages of concept generation and concept selection, and for refining the specifications after the product concept has been selected.

There are five ways to express the values of the metrics:

- ***At least X:*** These specifications establish targets for the lower bound on a metric, but higher is still better. For example, the value of the brake mounting stiffness is specified to be at least 325 kilonewtons/meter.
- ***At most X:*** These specifications establish targets for the upper bound on a metric, with smaller values being better. For example, the value for the mass of the suspension fork is set to be at most 1.4 kilograms.

Metric No.	Need Nos.	Metric	Imp.	Units	ST Tritrack	Maniray 2	Rox Tahx Quadra	Rox Tahx Ti 21	Tonka Pro	Gunhill Head Shox
1	1, 3	Attenuation from dropout to handlebar at 10 Hz	3	dB	8	15	10	15	9	13
2	2, 6	Spring preload	3	N	550	760	500	710	480	680
3	1, 3	Maximum value from the Monster	5	g	3.6	3.2	3.7	3.3	3.7	3.4
4	1, 3	Minimum descent time on test track	5	s	13	11.3	12.6	11.2	13.2	11
5	4	Damping coefficient adjustment range	3	N-s/m	0	0	0	200	0	0
6	5	Maximum travel (26-in. wheel)	3	mm	28	48	43	46	33	38
7	5	Rake offset	3	mm	41.5	39	38	38	43.2	39
8	6	Lateral stiffness at the tip	3	kN/m	59	110	85	85	65	130
9	7	Total mass	4	kg	1.409	1.385	1.409	1.364	1.222	1.100
10	8	Lateral stiffness at brake pivots	2	kN/m	295	550	425	425	325	650
11	9	Headset sizes	5	in.	1.000 1.125	1.000 1.125 1.250	1.000 1.125	1.000 1.125 1.250	1.000 1.125	NA
12	9	Steertube length	5	mm	150 180 210 230 255	140 165 190 215	150 170 190 210	150 170 190 210 230	150 190 210 220	NA
13	9	Wheel sizes	5	List	26 in.	26 in.	26 in.	26 in. 700C	26 in.	26 in.

EXHIBIT 6-6 Competitive benchmarking chart based on metrics.

- ***Between X and Y:*** These specifications establish both upper and lower bounds for the value of a metric. For example, the value for the spring preload is set to be between 480 and 800 newtons. Any more and the suspension is harsh; any less and the suspension is too bouncy.
- ***Exactly X:*** These specifications establish a target of a particular value of a metric, with any deviation degrading performance. For example, the ideal value for the rake offset metric is set to 38 millimeters. This type of specification is to be avoided if possible because such specifications substantially constrain the design. Often, upon reconsideration, the team realizes that what initially appears as an “exactly X” specification can be expressed as a “between X and Y” specification.
- ***A set of discrete values:*** Some metrics will have values corresponding to several discrete choices. For example, the headset diameters are 1.000, 1.125, or 1.250 inches. (Industry practice is to use English units for these and several other critical bicycle dimensions.)

Metric No.	Need Nos.	Metric	Imp.	Units	ST Tritrack	Maniray 2	Rox Tahx Quadra	Rox Tahx Ti 21	Tonka Pro	Gunhill Head Shox
14	9	Maximum tire width	5	in.	1.5	1.75	1.5	1.75	1.5	1.5
15	10	Time to assemble to frame	1	s	35	35	45	45	35	85
16	11	Fender compatibility	1	List	Zefal	None	None	None	None	All
17	12	Instills pride	5	Subj.	1	4	3	5	3	5
18	13	Unit manufacturing cost	5	US$	65	105	85	115	80	100
19	14	Time in spray chamber without water entry	5	s	1300	2900	> 3600	> 3600	2300	> 3600
20	15	Cycles in mud chamber without contamination	5	k-cycles	15	19	15	25	18	35
21	16, 17	Time to disassemble/assemble for maintenance	3	s	160	245	215	245	200	425
22	17, 18	Special tools required for maintenance	3	List	Hex	Hex	Hex	Hex	Long hex	Hex, pin wrench
23	19	UV test duration to degrade rubber parts	5	hr	400+	250	400+	400+	400+	250
24	19	Monster cycles to failure	5	Cycles	500k+	500k+	500k+	480k	500k+	330k
25	20	Japan Industrial Standards test	5	Binary	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass	Pass
26	20	Bending strength (frontal loading)	5	kN	5.5	8.9	7.5	7.5	6.2	10.2

EXHIBIT 6-6 *Continued*

The desirable range of values for one metric may depend on another. In other words, we may wish to express a target as, for example, "the fork tip lateral stiffness is no more than 20 percent of the lateral stiffness at the brake pivots." In applications where the team feels this level of complexity is warranted, such targets can easily be included, although we recommend that this level of complexity not be introduced until the final phase of the specifications process.

Using these five different types of expressions for values of the metrics, the team sets the target specifications. The team simply proceeds down the list of metrics and assigns both the marginally acceptable and ideal target values for each metric. These decisions are facilitated by the metric-based competitive benchmarking chart shown in Exhibit 6-6. To set the target values, the team has many considerations, including the capability of competing products available at the time, competitors' future product capabilities (if these are predictable), and the product's mission statement and target market segment. Exhibit 6-8 shows the targets assigned for the suspension fork.

No.	Need	Imp.	ST Tritrack	Maniray 2	Rox Tahx Quadra	Rox Tahx Ti 21	Tonka Pro	Gunhill Head Shox
1	Reduces vibration to the hands	3	•	••••	••	•••••	••	•••
2	Allows easy traversal of slow, difficult terrain	2	••	••••	•••	•••••	•••	•••••
3	Enables high-speed descents on bumpy trails	5	•	•••••	••	•••••	••	•••
4	Allows sensitivity adjustment	3	•	••••	••	•••••	••	•••
5	Preserves the steering characteristics of the bike	4	••••	••	•	••	•••••	•••••
6	Remains rigid during hard cornering	4	•	•••	•	•••••	•	•••••
7	Is lightweight	4	•	•••	•	•••	••••	•••••
8	Provides stiff mounting points for the brakes	2	•	••••	•••	•••	•••••	••
9	Fits a wide variety of bikes, wheels, and tires	5	••••	•••••	•••	•••••	•••	•
10	Is easy to install	1	••••	•••••	••••	••••	•••••	•
11	Works with fenders	1	•••	•	•	•	•	•••••
12	Instills pride	5	•	••••	•••	•••••	•••	•••••
13	Is affordable for an amateur enthusiast	5	•••••	•	•••	•	•••	••
14	Is not contaminated by water	5	•	•••	••••	••••	••	•••••
15	Is not contaminated by grunge	5	•	•••	•	••••	••	•••••
16	Can be easily accessed for maintenance	3	••••	•••••	••••	••••	•••••	•
17	Allows easy replacement of worn parts	1	••••	•••••	••••	••••	•••••	•
18	Can be maintained with readily available tools	3	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	••	•
19	Lasts a long time	5	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••	•••••	•
20	Is safe in a crash	5	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••	•••••

EXHIBIT 6-7 Competitive benchmarking chart based on perceived satisfaction of needs. (Scoring more "dots" corresponds to greater perceived satisfaction of the need.)

Because most of the values are expressed in terms of bounds (upper or lower or both), the team is establishing the boundaries of the competitively viable product space. The team hopes that the product will meet some of the ideal targets but is confident that a product can be commercially viable even if it exhibits one or more marginally acceptable characteristics. Note that these specifications are preliminary because until a product concept is chosen and some of the design details are worked out, many of the exact trade-offs are uncertain.

Step 4: Reflect on the Results and the Process

The team may require some iteration to agree on the targets. Reflection after each iteration helps to ensure that the results are consistent with the goals of the project. Questions to consider include:

- Are members of the team "gaming"? For example, is the key marketing representative insisting that an aggressive value is required for a particular metric in the hopes that by setting a high goal, the team will actually achieve more than if his or her true, and more lenient, beliefs were expressed?
- Should the team consider offering multiple products or at least multiple options for the product to best match the particular needs of more than one market segment, or will one "average" product suffice?
- Are any specifications missing? Do the specifications reflect the characteristics that will dictate commercial success?

Once the targets have been set, the team can proceed to generate solution concepts. The target specifications then can be used to help the team select a concept and will help the team know when a concept is commercially viable. (See Chapter 7, Concept Generation, and Chapter 8, Concept Selection.)

Setting the Final Specifications

As the team finalizes the choice of a concept and prepares for subsequent design and development, the specifications are revisited. Specifications that originally were only targets expressed as broad ranges of values are now refined and made more precise.

Finalizing the specifications is difficult because of trade-offs—inverse relationships between two specifications that are inherent in the selected product concept. Trade-offs frequently occur between different technical performance metrics and almost always occur between technical performance metrics and production cost. There may also be trade-offs between product performance and development time or cost. For example, one trade-off is between brake mounting stiffness and mass of the fork. Because of the basic mechanics of the fork structure, these specifications are inversely related, assuming other factors are held constant. Another trade-off is between cost and mass. For a given concept, the team may be able to reduce the mass of the fork by making some parts out of titanium instead of steel. Unfortunately, decreasing the mass in this way will most likely increase the manufacturing cost of the product. The difficult part of refining the specifications is choosing how such trade-offs will be resolved.

Metric No.	Need Nos.	Metric	Imp.	Units	Marginal Value	Ideal Value
1	1, 3	Attenuation from dropout to handlebar at 10 Hz	3	dB	> 10	> 15
2	2, 6	Spring preload	3	N	480–800	650–700
3	1, 3	Maximum value from the Monster	5	g	< 3.5	< 3.2
4	1, 3	Minimum descent time on test track	5	s	< 13.0	< 11.0
5	4	Damping coefficient adjustment range	3	N-s/m	0	> 200
6	5	Maximum travel (26-in. wheel)	3	mm	33–50	45
7	5	Rake offset	3	mm	37–45	38
8	6	Lateral stiffness at the tip	3	kN/m	> 65	> 130
9	7	Total mass	4	kg	< 1.4	< 1.1
10	8	Lateral stiffness at brake pivots	2	kN/m	> 325	> 650
11	9	Headset sizes	5	in.	1.000 1.125	1.000 1.125 1.250
12	9	Steertube length	5	mm	150 170 190 210	150 170 190 210 230
13	9	Wheel sizes	5	List	26 in.	26 in. 700C
14	9	Maximum tire width	5	in.	> 1.5	> 1.75
15	10	Time to assemble to frame	1	s	< 60	< 35
16	11	Fender compatibility	1	List	None	All
17	12	Instills pride	5	Subj.	> 3	> 5
18	13	Unit manufacturing cost	5	US$	< 85	< 65
19	14	Time in spray chamber without water entry	5	s	> 2300	> 3600
20	15	Cycles in mud chamber without contamination	5	k-cycles	> 15	> 35
21	16, 17	Time to disassemble/assemble for maintenance	3	s	< 300	< 160
22	17, 18	Special tools required for maintenance	3	List	Hex	Hex
23	19	UV test duration to degrade rubber parts	5	hr	> 250	> 450
24	19	Monster cycles to failure	5	Cycles	> 300k	> 500k
25	20	Japan Industrial Standards test	5	Binary	Pass	Pass
26	20	Bending strength (frontal loading)	5	kN	> 7.0	> 10.0

EXHIBIT 6-8 The target specifications. Like the other information systems, this one is easily encoded with a spreadsheet as a simple extension to the list of specifications.

Here, we propose a five-step process:

1. Develop technical models of the product.
2. Develop a cost model of the product.
3. Refine the specifications, making trade-offs where necessary.
4. Flow down the specifications as appropriate.
5. Reflect on the results and the process.

Step 1: Develop Technical Models of the Product

A *technical model* of the product is a tool for predicting the values of the metrics for a particular set of design decisions. We intend the term *models* to refer to both analytical and physical approximations of the product. (See Chapter 14, Prototyping, for further discussion of such models.)

At this point, the team had chosen an oil-damped coil spring concept for the suspension fork. The design decisions facing the team included details such as the materials for the structural components, the orifice diameter and oil viscosity for the damper, and the spring constant. Three models linking such design decisions to the performance metrics are shown in conceptual form in Exhibit 6-9. Such models can be used to predict the product's performance along a number of dimensions. The inputs to these models are the independent design variables associated with the product concept, such as oil viscosity, orifice diameter, spring constant, and geometry. The outputs of the model are the values of the metrics, such as attenuation, stiffness, and fatigue life.

Ideally, the team will be able to accurately model the product analytically, perhaps by implementing the model equations in a spreadsheet or computer simulation. Such a model allows the team to predict rapidly what type of performance can be expected from a particular choice of design variables, without costly physical experimentation. In most cases, such analytical models will be available for only a small subset of the metrics. For example, the team was able to model attenuation analytically, based on the engineers' knowledge of dynamic systems.

Several independent models, each corresponding to a subset of the metrics, may be more manageable than one large integrated model. For example, the team developed a separate analytical model for the brake mounting stiffness that was completely independent of the dynamic model used to predict vibration attenuation. In some cases, no analytical models will be available at all. For example, the team was not able to model analytically the fatigue performance of the suspension, so physical models were built and tested. It is generally necessary to actually build a variety of different physical mock-ups or prototypes to explore the implications of several combinations of design variables. To reduce the number of models that must be constructed, it is useful to employ design-of-experiments (DOE) techniques, which can minimize the number of experiments required to explore the design space. (See Chapter 15, Robust Design, for a summary of DOE methods.)

Armed with these technical models, the team can predict whether any particular set of specifications (such as the ideal target values) is technically feasible by exploring different combinations of design variables. This type of modeling and analysis prevents the team from setting a combination of specifications that cannot be achieved using the available latitude in the product concept.

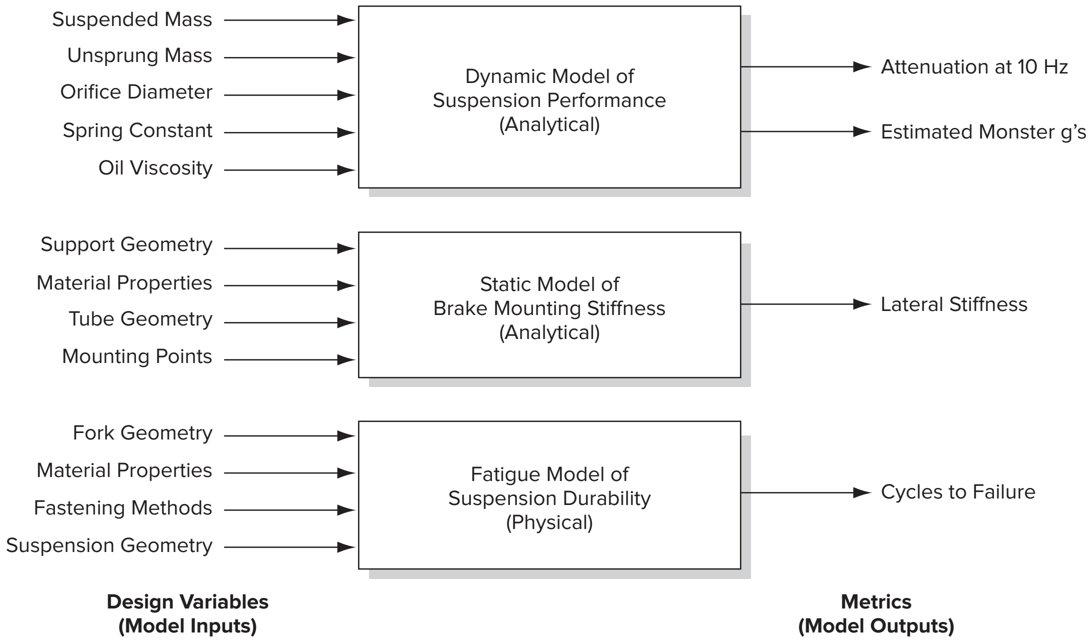


EXHIBIT 6-9 Models used to assess technical feasibility. Technical models may be analytical or physical approximations of the product concept.

Note that a technical model is almost always unique to a particular product concept. One of the models illustrated in Exhibit 6-9 is for an oil-damped suspension system; the model would be substantially different if the team had selected a concept employing a rubber suspension element. Thus, the modeling step can only be performed after the concept has been chosen.

Step 2: Develop a Cost Model of the Product

The goal of this step of the process is to make sure that the product can be produced at the *target cost*. The target cost is the manufacturing cost at which the company and its distribution partners can make adequate profits while still offering the product to the end customer at a competitive price. The appendix to this chapter provides an explanation of target costing. It is at this point that the team attempts to discover, for example, how much it will have to sacrifice in manufacturing cost to save 50 grams of mass.

For most products, the first estimates of manufacturing costs are completed by drafting a *bill of materials* (a list of all the parts) and estimating a purchase price or fabrication cost for each part. At this point in the development process the team does not generally know all of the components that will be in the product, but the team nevertheless makes an attempt to list the components it expects will be required. While early estimates generally focus on the cost of components, the team will usually make a rough estimate of assembly and other manufacturing costs (e.g., overhead) at this point as well. Efforts to develop these early cost estimates involve soliciting cost estimates from vendors and estimating the production costs of the components the firm will make itself. This process is often facilitated by a purchasing expert and a production engineer. A bill-of-materials

Component	Qty/ Fork	High ($ ea.)	Low ($ ea.)	High Total ($/fork)	Low Total ($/fork)
Steertube	1	2.50	2.00	2.50	2.00
Crown	1	4.00	3.00	4.00	3.00
Boot	2	1.00	0.75	2.00	1.50
Lower tube	2	3.00	2.00	6.00	4.00
Lower tube top cover	2	2.00	1.50	4.00	3.00
Main lip seal	2	1.50	1.40	3.00	2.80
Slide bushing	4	0.20	0.18	0.80	0.72
Slide bushing spacer	2	0.50	0.40	1.00	0.80
Lower tube plug	2	0.50	0.35	1.00	0.70
Upper tube	2	5.50	4.00	11.00	8.00
Upper tube top cap	2	3.00	2.50	6.00	5.00
Upper tube adjustment knob	2	2.00	1.75	4.00	3.50
Adjustment shaft	2	4.00	3.00	8.00	6.00
Spring	2	3.00	2.50	6.00	5.00
Upper tube orifice cap	1	3.00	2.25	3.00	2.25
Orifice springs	4	0.50	0.40	2.00	1.60
Brake studs	2	0.40	0.35	0.80	0.70
Brake brace bolt	2	0.25	0.20	0.50	0.40
Brake brace	1	5.00	3.50	5.00	3.50
Oil (liters)	0.1	2.50	2.00	0.25	0.20
Misc. snap rings, o-rings	10	0.15	0.10	1.50	1.00
Decals	4	0.25	0.15	1.00	0.60
Assembly at $20/hr		30 min	20 min	10.00	6.67
Overhead at 25% of direct cost				20.84	15.74
Total				$104.19	$78.68

EXHIBIT 6-10 A bill of materials with cost estimates. This simple cost model allows early cost estimates to facilitate realistic trade-offs in the product specifications.

cost model is shown in Exhibit 6-10 for the suspension fork. (See Chapter 13, Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain, for more details on estimating manufacturing cost.)

A useful way to record cost information is to list figures for the high and low estimates of each item. This helps the team to understand the range of uncertainty in the estimates. The bill of materials is typically used iteratively: The team performs a "what-if" cost analysis for a set of design decisions and then revises these decisions based on what it learns. The bill of materials is itself a kind of performance model, but instead of predicting the value of a technical performance metric, it predicts cost performance. The bill of materials remains useful throughout the development process and is updated regularly (as frequently as once each week) to reflect the current status of the estimated manufacturing cost.

At this point in the development process, teams developing complex products containing hundreds or thousands of parts will not generally be able to include every part in the bill of materials. Instead, the team will list the major components and subsystems and place bounds on their costs based on past experience or on the judgment of suppliers.

Step 3: Refine the Specifications, Making Trade-Offs Where Necessary

Once the team has constructed technical performance models where possible and constructed a preliminary cost model, these tools can be used to develop final specifications. Finalizing specifications can be accomplished in a group session in which feasible combinations of values are determined through the use of the technical models and then the cost implications are explored. In an iterative fashion, the team converges on the specifications that will most favorably position the product relative to the competition, will best satisfy the customer needs, and will ensure adequate profits.

One important tool for supporting this decision-making process is the *competitive map*. An example competitive map is shown in Exhibit 6-11. This map is simply a scatter plot of the competitive products along two dimensions selected from the set of metrics and is sometimes called a trade-off map. The map displayed in Exhibit 6-11 shows estimated manufacturing cost versus score on the Monster test. The regions defined by the marginal and ideal values of the specifications are shown on the map. This map is particularly useful in showing that all of the high-performance suspensions (low Monster scores) have high estimated manufacturing costs. Armed with technical performance models and a cost model, the team can assess whether or not it will be able to "beat the trade-off" exhibited in the competitive map.

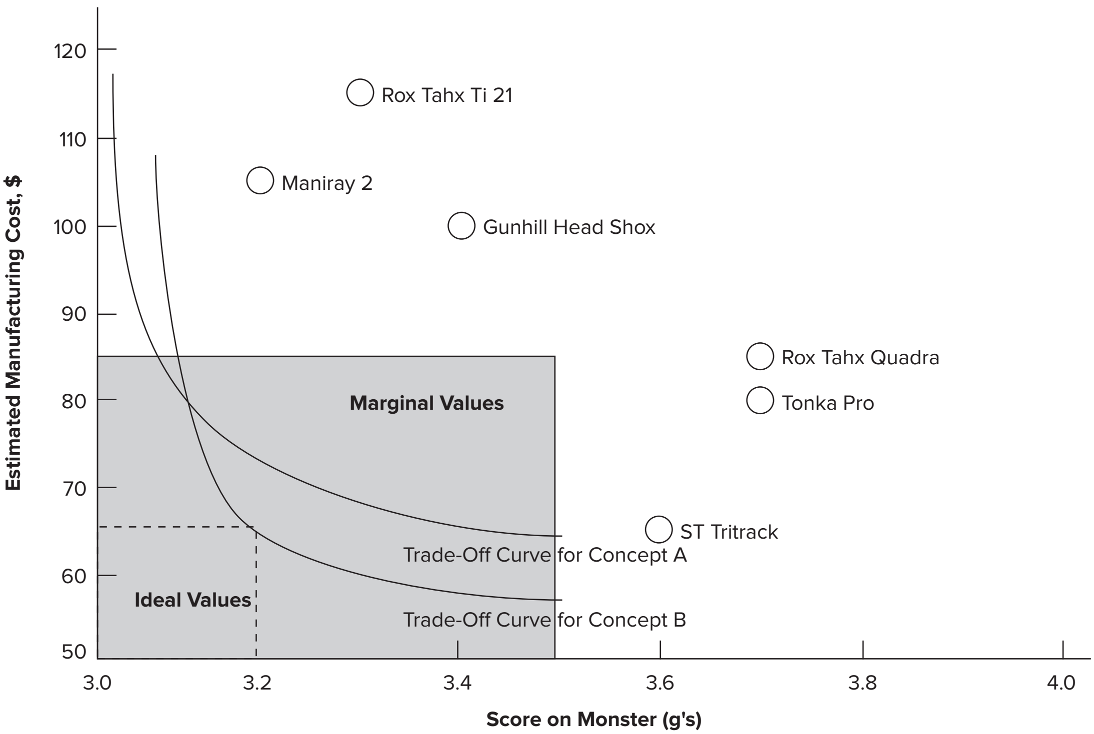


EXHIBIT 6-11 A competitive map showing estimated manufacturing cost versus score on the Monster test. Trade-off curves for two suspension concepts are also drawn on this map.

These maps can be constructed directly from the data contained in the competitive benchmarking chart using the plotting feature of the spreadsheet software. Generally, the team will prepare three or four such maps corresponding to a handful of critical metrics. Additional maps may be created as needed to support subsequent decision making.

The competitive map is used to position the new product relative to the competition. Trade-off curves, showing performance of the product concept for a range of design variables, can be drawn directly on the competitive map, as shown in Exhibit 6-11. Using the technical and cost models of the product and the competitive maps, the team can refine the specifications to both satisfy the inherent constraints of the product concept and make the trade-offs in a way that will provide a performance advantage relative to the competitive products. The final specifications for the suspension fork are shown in Exhibit 6-12.

For relatively mature product categories in which competition is based on performance relative to a handful of well-understood performance metrics, *conjoint analysis* may be useful in refining product specifications. Conjoint analysis uses customer survey data to construct a model of customer preference. Essentially, each respondent in a sample of potential customers is repeatedly asked to evaluate hypothetical products characterized by a set of attributes. These attributes must generally be metrics that are easily understood by customers (e.g., fuel economy and price for automobiles). Subjective attributes (e.g., styling) can be represented graphically. The hypothetical products are constructed using the statistical techniques of experimental design. Using customer responses, conjoint analysis infers the relative importance of each attribute to the customer. These data can then be used to predict which product a customer would choose when offered a hypothetical set of alternatives. By using these predictions for all of the customers in a sample, the market share of each product in the set of alternatives can be forecast. Using this approach, the specification values that maximize market share can be estimated. The details of conjoint analysis are fairly straightforward, but beyond the scope of this chapter. Relevant references are listed at the end of the chapter.

Step 4: Flow Down the Specifications as Appropriate

This chapter focuses on the specifications for a relatively simple component designed by a single, relatively small development team. Establishing specifications takes on additional importance and is substantially more challenging when developing a highly complex product consisting of multiple subsystems designed by multiple development teams. In such a context, specifications are used to define the development objectives of each of the subsystems as well as for the product as a whole. The challenge in this case is to *flow down* the overall specifications to specifications for each subsystem. For example, the overall specifications for an automobile contain metrics like fuel economy, 0–100 kilometer/ hour acceleration time, and turning radius; however, specifications must also be created for the several dozen major subsystems that make up the automobile, including the body, engine, transmission, braking system, and suspension. The specifications for the engine include metrics like peak power, peak torque, and fuel consumption at peak efficiency. One challenge in the flow-down process is to ensure that the subsystem specifications in fact reflect the overall product specifications—that if specifications for the subsystems are achieved, the overall product specifications will be achieved. A second challenge is to ensure that certain specifications for different subsystems are equally

EXHIBIT 6-12
The final specifications.

No.	Metric	Unit	Value
1	Attenuation from dropout to handlebar at 10 Hz	dB	> 12
2	Spring preload	N	600–650
3	Maximum value from the Monster	g	< 3.4
4	Minimum descent time on test track	s	< 11.5
5	Damping coefficient adjustment range	N-s/m	> 100
6	Maximum travel (26-in. wheel)	mm	43
7	Rake offset	mm	38
8	Lateral stiffness at the tip	kN/m	> 75
9	Total mass	kg	< 1.4
10	Lateral stiffness at brake pivots	kN/m	> 425
11	Headset sizes	in.	1.000 1.125
12	Steertube length	mm	150 170 190 210 230
13	Wheel sizes	List	26 in.
14	Maximum tire width	in.	> 1.75
15	Time to assemble to frame	s	< 45
16	Fender compatibility	List	Zefal
17	Instills pride	Subj.	> 4
18	Unit manufacturing cost	US$	< 80
19	Time in spray chamber without water entry	s	> 3600
20	Cycles in mud chamber without contamination	k-cycles	> 25
21	Time to disassemble/assemble for maintenance	s	< 200
22	Special tools required for maintenance	List	Hex
23	UV test duration to degrade rubber parts	hr	> 450
24	Monster cycles to failure	Cycles	> 500k
25	Japan Industrial Standards test	Binary	Pass
26	Bending strength (frontal loading)	kN	> 10.0

difficult to meet. That is, for example, that the mass specification for the engine is not inordinately more difficult to meet than is the mass specification for the body. Otherwise, the cost of the product will likely be higher than necessary.

Some overall component specifications can be established through *budget allocations*. For example, specifications for manufacturing cost, mass, and power consumption can be allocated to subsystems with the confidence that the overall cost, mass, and power consumption of the product will simply be the sum of these quantities for each subsystem.

To some extent, geometric volume can be allocated this way as well. Other component specifications must be established through a more complex understanding of how subsystem performance relates to overall product performance. For example, fuel efficiency is a relatively complex function of vehicle mass, rolling resistance, aerodynamic drag coefficient, frontal area, and engine efficiency. Establishing specifications for the body, tires, and engine requires a model of how these variables relate to overall fuel efficiency.

A comprehensive treatment of flowing down specifications for complex products is beyond the scope of this chapter, and in fact is a major focus of the field of *systems engineering*. We refer the reader to books on this subject in the reference list.

Step 5: Reflect on the Results and the Process

As always, the final step in the method is to reflect on the outcome and the process. Some questions the team may want to consider are:

- Is the product a winner? The product concept should allow the team to actually set the specifications so that the product will meet the customer needs and excel competitively. If not, then the team should return to the concept generation and selection phase or abandon the project.
- How much uncertainty is there in the technical and cost models? If competitive success is dictated by metrics around which much uncertainty remains, the team may wish to refine the technical or cost models to increase confidence in meeting the specifications.
- Is the concept chosen by the team best suited to the target market, or could it be best applied in another market (say, the low end or high end instead of the middle)? The selected concept may actually be too good. If the team has generated a concept that is dramatically superior to the competitive products, it may wish to consider employing the concept in a more demanding, and potentially more profitable, market segment.
- Should the firm initiate a formal effort to develop better technical models of some aspect of the product's performance for future use? Sometimes the team will discover that it does not really understand the underlying product technology well enough to create useful performance models. In such circumstances, an engineering effort to develop better understanding and models may be useful in subsequent development projects.

Summary

Customer needs are generally expressed in the "language of the customer." To provide specific guidance about how to design and engineer a product, development teams establish a set of specifications, which spell out in precise, measurable detail what the product has to do to be commercially successful. The specifications must reflect the customer needs, differentiate the product from the competitive products, and be technically and economically realizable.

- Specifications are typically established at least twice. Immediately after identifying the customer needs, the team sets *target specifications*. After concept selection and testing, the team develops *final specifications*.

- Target specifications represent the hopes and aspirations of the team, but they are established before the team knows the constraints the product technology will place on what can be achieved. The team's efforts may fail to meet some of these specifications and may exceed others, depending on the details of the product concept the team eventually selects.
- The process of establishing the target specifications entails four steps:

  1. Prepare the list of metrics.
  2. Collect competitive benchmarking information.
  3. Set *ideal* and *marginally acceptable* target values.
  4. Reflect on the results and the process.

- Final specifications are developed by assessing the actual technological constraints and the expected production costs using analytical and physical models. During this refinement phase the team must make difficult trade-offs among various desirable characteristics of the product.
- The five-step process for refining the specifications is:

  1. Develop technical models of the product.
  2. Develop a cost model of the product.
  3. Refine the specifications, making trade-offs where necessary.
  4. Flow down the specifications as appropriate.
  5. Reflect on the results and the process.

- The specifications process is facilitated by several simple information systems that can easily be created using conventional spreadsheet software. Tools such as the list of metrics, the needs-metrics matrix, the competitive benchmarking charts, and the competitive maps all support the team's decision making by providing the team with a way to represent and discuss the specifications.
- Because of the need to utilize the best possible knowledge of the market, the customers, the core product technology, and the cost implications of design alternatives, the specifications process requires active participation from team members representing the marketing, design, and manufacturing functions of the enterprise.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

The process of translating customer needs into a set of specifications is also accomplished by the Quality Function Deployment (QFD) method. The key ideas behind QFD and the House of Quality are clearly presented by Hauser and Clausing in a popular article.

Hauser, John, and Don Clausing, "The House of Quality," *Harvard Business Review,* Vol. 66, No. 3, May–June 1988, pp. 63–73.

Ramaswamy and Ulrich treat the use of engineering models in setting specifications in detail. They also identify some of the weaknesses in the conventional House of Quality method.

Ramaswamy, Rajan, and Karl Ulrich, "Augmenting the House of Quality with Engineering Models," *Research in Engineering Design,* Vol. 5, 1994, pp. 70–79.

Most marketing research textbooks discuss conjoint analysis. Here is a reference.

Aaker, David A., V. Kumar, Robert P. Leone, and George S. Day, *Marketing Research,* twelfth edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 2016.

Systems engineering and the flow down of specifications are treated comprehensively in the following books.

Systems Engineering Handbook: A Guide for System Life Cycle Processes and Activities, International Council on Systems Engineering, fourth edition, Wiley, New York, 2015.

Rechtin, Eberhardt, and Mark W. Maier, *The Art of Systems Architecting,* second edition, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2000.

More detail on the use of target costing is available in this article by Cooper and Slagmulder.

Cooper, Robin, and Regine Slagmulder, "Develop Profitable New Products with Target Costing," *Sloan Management Review,* Vol. 40, No. 4, Summer 1999, pp. 23–33.

Exercises

1. List a set of metrics corresponding to the need that a pen write smoothly.
2. Devise a metric and a corresponding test for the need that a roofing material last many years.
3. Some of the same metrics seem to be involved in trade-offs for many different products. What are some examples of such metrics?

Thought Questions

1. How might you establish precise and measurable specifications for intangible needs such as "the front suspension looks great"?
2. Why are some customer needs difficult to map to a single metric?
3. How might you explain a situation in which customers' perceptions of the competitive products (as in Exhibit 6-7) are not consistent with the values of the metrics for those same products (as in Exhibit 6-6)?
4. Can poor performance relative to one specification always be compensated for by high performance on other specifications? If so, how can there ever really be a "marginally acceptable" value for a metric?
5. Why should independent design variables not be used as metrics?

Appendix

Target Costing

Target costing is a simple idea: Set the value of the manufacturing cost specification based on the price the company hopes the end user will pay for the product and on the profit margins that are required for each stage in the distribution channel. For example, assume Specialized wishes to sell its suspension fork to its customers through bicycle shops. If the price it expected the customer to pay was \$250 and if bicycle shops normally expect a gross profit margin of 45 percent on components, then Specialized would have to sell its fork to bicycle shops for $(1 - 0.45) \cdot 250 = \$137.50$. If Specialized wishes to earn a gross margin of at least 40 percent on its components, then its unit manufacturing cost must be less than $(1 - 0.40) \cdot 137.50 = \$82.50$.

Target costing is the reverse of the *cost-plus* approach to pricing. The cost-plus approach begins with what the firm expects its manufacturing costs to be and then sets its prices by adding its expected profit margin to the cost. This approach ignores the realities of competitive markets, in which prices are driven by market and customer factors. Target costing is a mechanism for ensuring that specifications are set in a way that allows the product to be competitively priced in the marketplace.

Some products are sold directly by a manufacturer to end users of the product. Frequently, products are distributed through one or more intermediate stages, such as distributors and retailers. Exhibit 6-13 provides some approximate values of gross profit margins for different product categories.

Let M be the gross profit *margin* of a stage in the distribution channel.

$$M = \frac{(P - C)}{P}$$

where P is the price this stage charges its customers and C is the cost this stage pays for the product it sells. (Note that *mark-up* is similar to margin, but is defined slightly differently as $P/C - 1$, so that a margin of 50 percent is equivalent to a mark-up of 100 percent.)

Target cost, C, is given by the following expression:

$$C = P \prod_{i=1}^{n} (1 - M_i)$$

where P is the price paid by the end user, n is the number of stages in the distribution channel, and M_i is the margin of the ith stage.

EXAMPLE

Assume the end user price, P, equals \$250.

If the product is sold directly to the end user by the manufacturer, and the desired gross profit margin of the manufacturer, M_m, equals 0.40, then the target cost is

$$C = P(1 - M_m) = \$250(1 - 0.40) = \$150$$

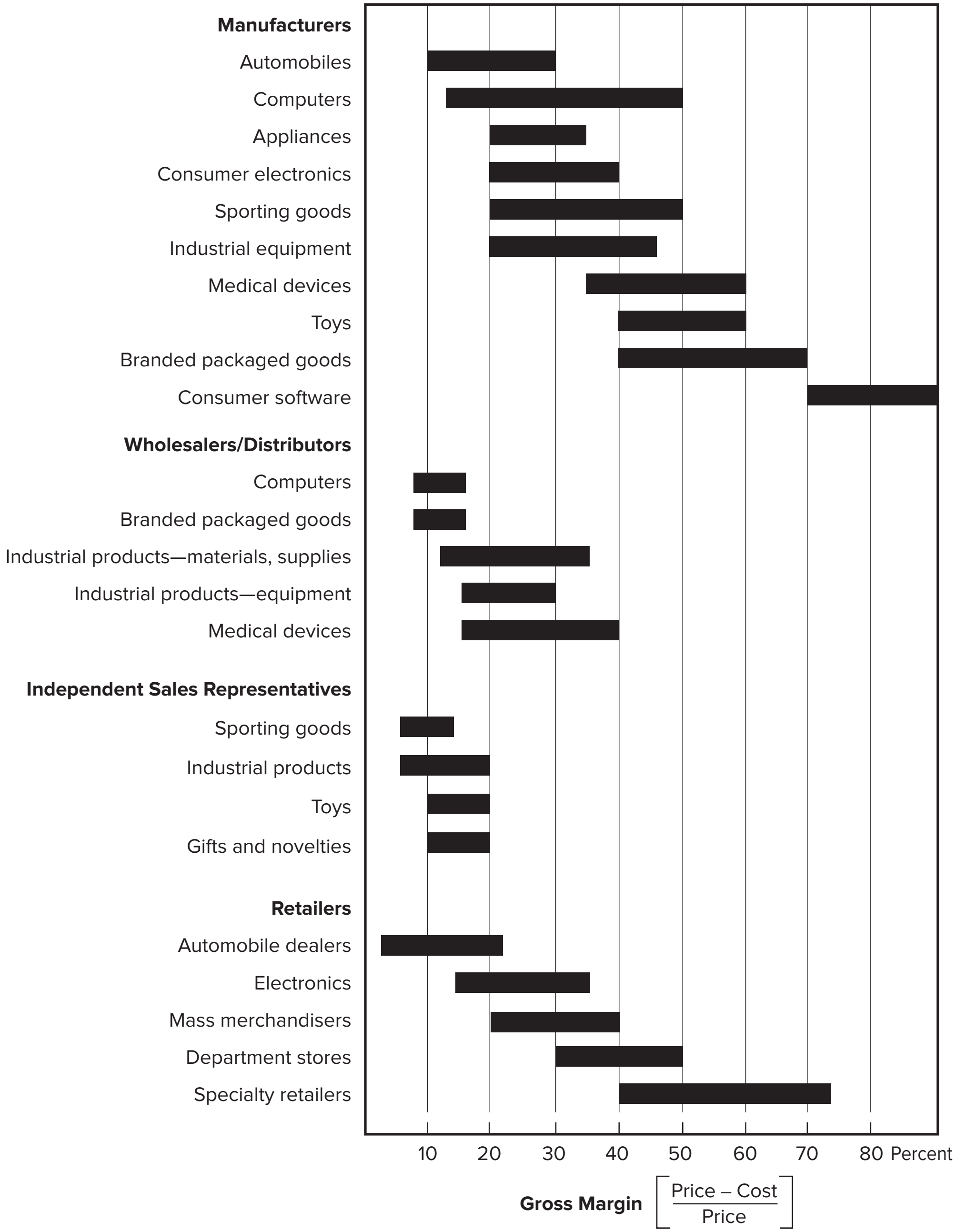


EXHIBIT 6-13 Approximate margins for manufacturers, wholesalers, distributors, sales representatives, and retailers. Note that these values are quite approximate. Actual margins depend on many idiosyncratic factors, including competitive intensity, the volume of units sold, and the level of customer support required. Sales representatives are paid by commission and are not strictly part of the distribution channel; however, the team may wish to account for commissions in its analysis of target cost.

If the product is sold through a retailer, and the desired gross profit margin for the retailer, M_r, equals 0.45, then

$$\begin{aligned} C &= P(1 - M_m)(1 - M_r) \\ &= \$250(1 - 0.40)(1 - 0.45) = \$82.50 \end{aligned}$$

If the product is sold through a distributor and a retailer, and the desired gross profit margin for the distributor, M_d, equals 0.20, then

$$C = P(1 - M_m)(1 - M_d)(1 - M_r) = \$250(1 - 0.40)(1 - 0.20)(1 - 0.45) = \$66.00$$

Concept Generation

Courtesy of Bostitch Fastening Systems

EXHIBIT 7-1
A cordless electric roofing nailer.

The president of Stanley-Bostitch commissioned a team to develop a new handheld nailer for the roofing market. The product that eventually resulted from the effort is shown in Exhibit 7-1. The mission of the team was to consider broadly alternative product concepts, assuming only that the tool would employ conventional nails as the basic fastening technology. After identifying a set of customer needs and establishing target product specifications, the team faced the following questions:

- What existing solution concepts, if any, could be successfully adapted for this application?
- What new concepts might satisfy the established needs and specifications?
- What methods can be used to facilitate the concept generation process?

The Activity of Concept Generation

A product concept is an approximate description of the technology, working principles, and form of the product. It is a concise description of how the product will satisfy the customer needs. A concept is usually expressed as a sketch or as a rough three-dimensional model and is often accompanied by a brief textual description. The degree to which a product satisfies customers and can be successfully commercialized depends to a large measure on the quality of the underlying concept. A good concept is sometimes poorly implemented in subsequent development phases, but a poor concept can rarely be manipulated to achieve commercial success. Fortunately, concept generation is relatively inexpensive and can be done relatively quickly in comparison to the rest of the development process. For example, concept generation had typically consumed less than 5 percent of the budget and 15 percent of the development time in previous nailer development efforts. Because the concept generation activity is not costly, there is no excuse for a lack of diligence and care in executing a sound concept generation method.

The concept generation process begins with a set of customer needs and target specifications and results in a set of product concepts from which the team will make a final selection. The relation of concept generation to the other concept development activities is shown in Exhibit 7-2. In most cases, an effective development team will generate hundreds of concepts, of which 5 to 20 will merit serious consideration during the concept selection activity.

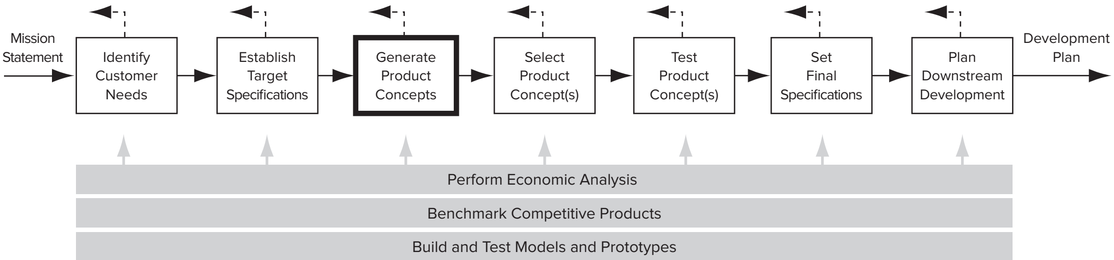


EXHIBIT 7-2 Concept generation is an integral part of the concept development phase.

Good concept generation leaves the team with confidence that the full space of alternatives has been explored. Thorough exploration of alternatives early in the development process greatly reduces the likelihood that the team will stumble upon a superior concept late in the development process or that a competitor will introduce a product with dramatically better performance than the product under development.

Structured Approaches Reduce the Likelihood of Costly Problems

Common dysfunctions exhibited by development teams during concept generation include:

- Consideration of only one or two alternatives, often proposed by the most assertive members of the team.
- Failure to consider carefully the usefulness of concepts employed by other firms in related and unrelated products.
- Involvement of only one or two people in the process, resulting in lack of confidence and commitment by the rest of the team.
- Ineffective integration of promising partial solutions.
- Failure to consider entire categories of solutions.

A structured approach to concept generation reduces the incidence of these problems by encouraging the gathering of information from many disparate information sources, by guiding the team in the thorough exploration of alternatives, and by providing a mechanism for integrating partial solutions. A structured method also provides a step-by-step procedure for those members of the team who may be less experienced in design-intensive activities, allowing them to participate actively in the process.

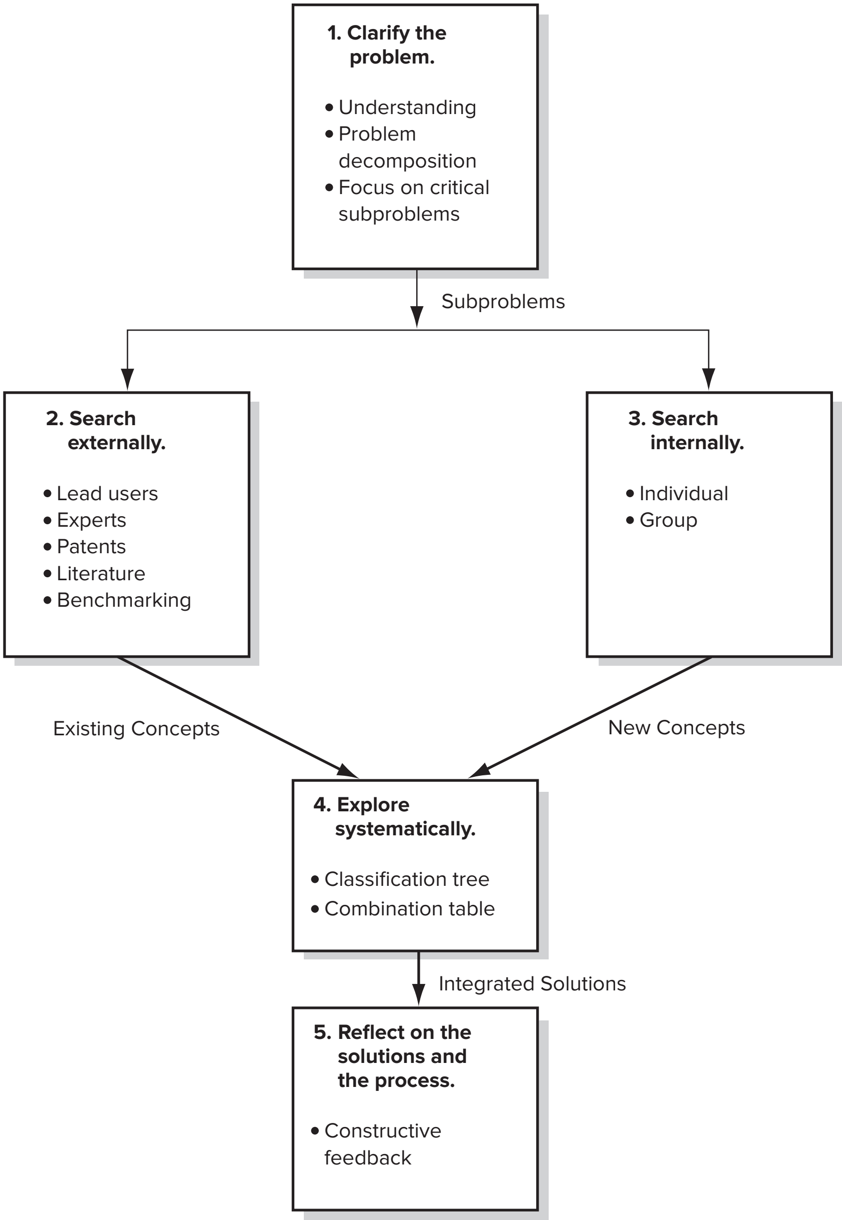
A Five-Step Method

This chapter presents a five-step concept generation method. The method, outlined in Exhibit 7-3, breaks a complex problem into simpler subproblems. Solution concepts are then identified for the subproblems by external and internal search procedures. Classification trees and concept combination tables are then used to systematically explore the space of solution concepts and to integrate the subproblem solutions into a total solution. Finally, the team takes a step back to reflect on the validity and applicability of the results, as well as on the process used.

This chapter will follow the recommended method and will describe each of the five steps in detail. Although we present the method in a linear sequence, concept generation is almost always iterative. Like our other development methods, these steps are intended to be a baseline from which product development teams can develop and refine their own unique problem-solving style.

Our presentation of the method is focused primarily on the overall concept for a new product; however, the method can and should be used at several different points in the development process. The process is useful not only for overall product concepts but also for concepts for subsystems and specific components as well. Also note that while the example in this chapter involves a relatively technical product, the same basic approach can be applied to nearly any product.

EXHIBIT 7-3
The five-step concept generation method.



Step 1: Clarify the Problem

Clarifying the problem consists of developing a general understanding and then breaking the problem down into subproblems if necessary.

The mission statement for the project, the customer needs list, and the preliminary product specification are the ideal inputs to the concept generation process, although often these pieces of information are still being refined as the concept generation phase begins. Ideally the team has been involved both in the identification of the customer needs and in the setting of the target product specifications. Those members of the team who were not involved in these preceding steps should become familiar with the processes used and their results before concept generation activities begin. (See Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs, and Chapter 6, Product Specifications.)

As stated before, the challenge was to "design a better handheld roofing nailer." The scope of the design problem could have been defined more generally (e.g., "fasten roofing materials") or more specifically (e.g., "improve the speed of the existing pneumatic tool concept"). Some of the assumptions in the team's mission statement were:

- The nailer will use nails (as opposed to adhesives, screws, etc.).
- The nailer will be compatible with nail magazines on existing tools.
- The nailer will nail through roofing shingles into wood.
- The nailer will be handheld.

Based on the assumptions, the team had identified the customer needs for a handheld nailer. These included:

- The nailer inserts nails in rapid succession.
- The nailer is lightweight.
- The nailer has no noticeable nailing delay after tripping the tool.

The team gathered supplemental information to clarify and quantify the needs, such as the approximate energy and speed of the nailing. These basic needs were subsequently translated into target product specifications. The target specifications included the following:

- Nail lengths from 25 millimeters to 38 millimeters.
- Maximum nailing energy of 40 joules per nail.
- Nailing forces of up to 2,000 newtons.
- Peak nailing rate of one nail per second.
- Average nailing rate of 12 nails per minute.
- Tool mass less than 4 kilograms.
- Maximum trigger delay of 0.25 second.

Decompose a Complex Problem into Simpler Subproblems

Many design challenges are too complex to solve as a single problem and can be usefully divided into several simpler subproblems. For example, the design of a complex product like a document copier can be thought of as a collection of more focused design problems, including, for example, the design of a document handler, the design of a paper feeder, the design of a printing device, and the design of an image capture device. In some cases, however, the design problem cannot readily be divided into subproblems. For example, the problem of designing a paper clip may be hard to divide into subproblems. As a general rule, we feel that teams should attempt to decompose design problems, but should be aware that such a decomposition may not be very useful for products with extremely simple functions.

Dividing a problem into simpler subproblems is called *problem decomposition.* There are many schemes by which a problem can be decomposed. Here we demonstrate a *functional* decomposition and also list several other approaches that are frequently useful.

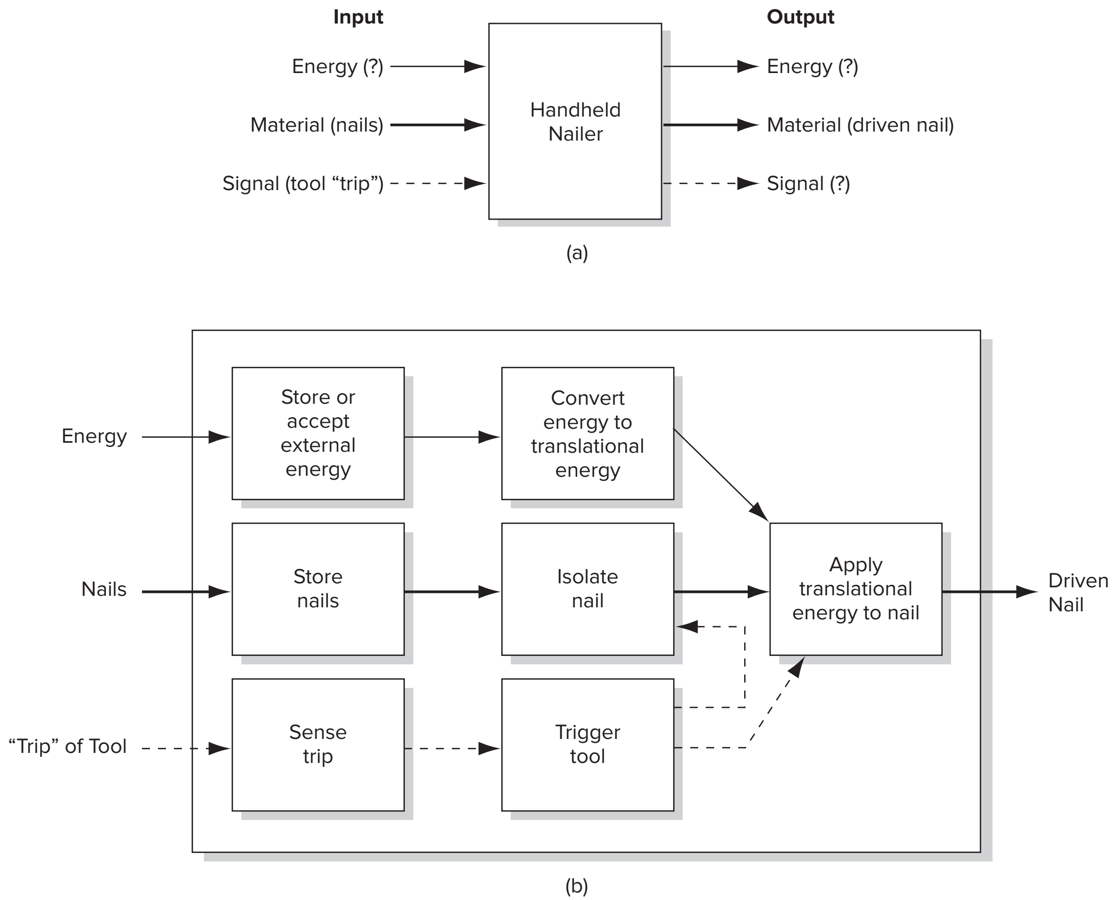


EXHIBIT 7-4 Function diagram of a handheld nailer arising from a functional decomposition: (a) overall "black box"; (b) refinement showing subfunctions.

The first step in decomposing a problem functionally is to represent it as a single *black box* operating on material, energy, and signal flows, as shown in Exhibit 7-4(a). Thin solid lines denote the transfer and conversion of energy, thick solid lines signify the movement of material within the system, and dashed lines represent the flows of control and feedback signals within the system. This black box represents the overall function of the product.

The next step in functional decomposition is to divide the single black box into subfunctions to create a more specific description of what the elements of the product might do to implement the overall function of the product. Each subfunction can generally be further divided into even simpler subfunctions. The division process is repeated until the team members agree that each subfunction is simple enough to work with. A good rule of thumb is to create between 3 and 10 subfunctions in the diagram. The end result, shown in Exhibit 7-4(b), is a function diagram containing subfunctions connected by energy, material, and signal flows.

Note that at this stage the goal is to describe the functional elements of the product without implying a specific technological working principle for the product concept. For example, Exhibit 7-4(b) includes the subfunction "isolate nail." This subfunction is expressed in such a way that it does not imply any particular physical solution concept, such as indexing the coil of nails into a slot or breaking a nail sideways off of the stick. The team should consider each subfunction in turn and ask whether it is expressed in a way that does not imply a particular physical solution principle.

There is no single correct way of creating a function diagram and no single correct functional decomposition of a product. A helpful way to create the diagram is to quickly create several drafts and then work to refine them into a single diagram that the team is comfortable with. Some useful techniques for getting started are:

- Create a function diagram of an existing product.
- Create a function diagram based on an arbitrary product concept already generated by the team or based on a known subfunction technology. Be sure to generalize the diagram to the appropriate level of abstraction.
- Follow one of the flows (e.g., material) and determine what operations are required. The details of the other flows can be derived by thinking about their connections to the initial flow.

Note that the function diagram is typically not unique. In particular, subfunctions can often be ordered in different ways to produce different function diagrams. Also note that in some applications the material, energy, and signal flows are difficult to identify. In these cases, a simple list of the subfunctions of the product, without connections between them, is often sufficient.

Functional decomposition is most applicable to technical products, but it can also be applied to simple and apparently nontechnical products. For example, an ice cream scoop has material flow of ice cream being separated, formed, transported, and deposited. These subfunctions could form the basis of a problem decomposition.

Functional decomposition is only one of several possible ways to divide a problem into simpler subproblems. Two other approaches are:

- ***Decomposition by sequence of user actions:*** For example, the nailer problem might be broken down into three user actions: moving the tool to the gross nailing position, positioning the tool precisely, and triggering the tool. This approach is often useful for products with very simple technical functions involving a lot of user interaction.
- ***Decomposition by key customer needs:*** For the nailer, this decomposition might include the following subproblems: fires nails in rapid succession, is lightweight, and has a large nail capacity. This approach is often useful for products in which form, and not working principles or technology, is the primary problem. Examples of such products include toothbrushes (assuming the basic brush concept is retained) and storage containers.

Focus Initial Efforts on the Critical Subproblems

The goal of all of these decomposition techniques is to divide a complex problem into simpler problems such that these simpler problems can be tackled in a focused way. Once problem decomposition is complete, the team chooses the subproblems that are most critical to the success of the product and that are most likely to benefit from novel or creative solutions. This approach involves a conscious decision to defer the solution of some of the subproblems. For example, the nailer team chose to focus on the subproblems of storing/accepting energy, converting the energy to translational energy, and applying the translational energy to the nail. The team felt confident that the nail handling and triggering issues could be solved after the energy storage and conversion issues were addressed. The team also deferred most of the user interaction issues of the tool. The team believed that the choice of a basic working principle for the tool would so constrain the eventual form of the tool that they had to begin with the core technology and then proceed to consider how to embody that technology in an attractive and user-friendly form. Teams can usually agree after a few minutes of discussion on which subproblems should be addressed first and which should be deferred for later consideration.

Step 2: Search Externally

External search is aimed at finding existing solutions to both the overall problem and the subproblems identified during the problem clarification step. While external search is listed as the second step in the concept generation method, this sequential labeling is deceptive; external search occurs continually throughout the development process. Implementing an existing solution is usually quicker and cheaper than developing a new solution. Liberal use of existing solutions allows the team to focus its creative energy on the critical subproblems for which there are no satisfactory prior solutions. Furthermore, a conventional solution to one subproblem can frequently be combined with a novel solution to another subproblem to yield a superior overall design. For this reason external search includes detailed evaluation not only of directly competitive products but also of technologies used in products with related subfunctions.

The external search for solutions is essentially an information-gathering process. Available time and resources can be optimized by using an expand-and-focus strategy: First *expand* the scope of the search by broadly gathering information that might be related to the problem and then *focus* the scope of the search by exploring the promising directions in more detail. Too much of either approach will make the external search inefficient.

There are at least five good ways to gather information from external sources: lead user interviews, expert consultation, patent searches, literature searches, and competitive benchmarking.

Interview Lead Users

While identifying customer needs, the team may have sought out or encountered lead users. *Lead users* are those users of a product who experience needs months or years before the majority of the market and stand to benefit substantially from a product innovation (von Hippel, 1988). Frequently these lead users will have already invented solutions to meet their needs. This is particularly true among highly technical user communities, such as those in the medical or scientific fields. Lead users may be sought out in the market for which the team is developing the new product, or they may be found in markets for products implementing some of the subfunctions of the product.

In the handheld nailer case, the nailer team consulted with the building contractors from the PBS television series *This Old House* to solicit new concepts. These lead users, who are exposed to tools from many manufacturers, made many interesting observations about the weaknesses in existing tools, but in this case did not provide many new product concepts.

Consult Experts

Experts with knowledge of one or more of the subproblems not only can provide solution concepts directly but also can redirect the search in a more fruitful area. Experts may include professionals at firms manufacturing related products, professional consultants, university faculty, and technical representatives of suppliers. These people can be found by calling universities, by calling companies, and by looking up authors of articles. While finding experts can be hard work, it is almost always less time consuming than re-creating existing knowledge.

Most experts are willing to talk on the telephone or meet in person for an hour or so without charge. In general, consultants will expect to be paid for time they spend on a problem beyond an initial meeting or telephone conversation. Suppliers are usually willing to provide several days of effort without direct compensation if they anticipate that someone will use their product as a component in a design. Of course, experts at directly competing firms are in most cases unwilling to provide proprietary information about their product designs. A good habit to develop is to always ask people consulted to suggest others who should be contacted. The best information often comes from pursuing these “second generation” leads.

The nailer design team consulted dozens of experts, including a rocket fuel specialist, electric motor researchers at MIT, and engineers from a vendor of gas springs. Most of this consultation was done on the telephone, although the engineers from the spring vendor made two trips to visit the team, at their company’s expense.

Search Patents

Patents are a rich and readily available source of technical information containing detailed drawings and explanations of how many products work. The main disadvantage of patent searches is that concepts found in recent patents are protected (generally for 20 years from the date of the patent application), so there may be a royalty involved in using them; however, patents are also useful to see what concepts are already protected and must be avoided or licensed. Concepts contained in foreign patents without global coverage and in expired patents can be used without payment of royalties. See Chapter 16, Patents and Intellectual Property, for an explanation of patent rights and how to understand patent claims.

The formal indexing scheme for patents is difficult for novices to navigate. Fortunately, several online search engines allow users to look up patents and patent applications. Key word searches can be conducted efficiently with only modest practice and are remarkably effective in finding patents relevant to a particular product. Copies of U.S. patents including illustrations can be obtained for a nominal fee from the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and from several suppliers. (See the website www.pdd-resources.net for a current list of online patent databases and suppliers of patent documents.)

A U.S. patent search in the area of nailers revealed several interesting concepts. One of the patents described a motor-driven double-flywheel nailer. One of the illustrations from this patent is shown in Exhibit 7-5. The design in this patent uses the accumulation of rotational kinetic energy in a flywheel, which is then suddenly converted into translational energy by a friction clutch. The energy is then delivered to the nail with a single impact of a drive pin.

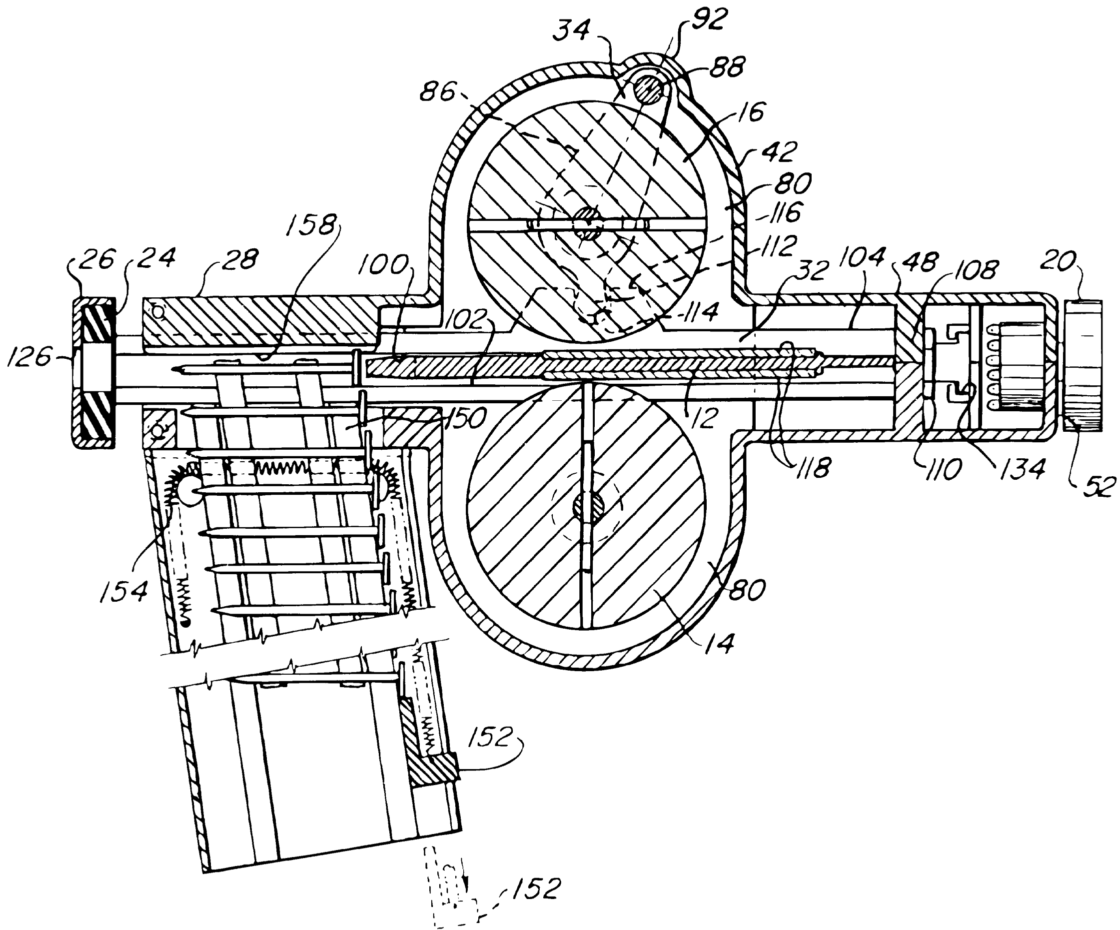


EXHIBIT 7-5 Concept from motor-driven double-flywheel nailer patent (Source: U.S. Patent 4,042,036). The accompanying text describing the patent is nine pages long.

Search Published Literature

Published literature includes journals; conference proceedings; trade magazines; government reports; market, consumer, and product information; and new product announcements. Literature searches are therefore very fertile sources of existing solutions.

Online searches are frequently the most efficient way to gather information from published literature. Searching online is often a good first step, although the quality of the results can be hard to assess. The two main difficulties in conducting good database searches are determining the key words and limiting the scope of the search. There is a trade-off between the need to use more key words for complete coverage and the need to restrict the number of matches to a manageable number.

Handbooks cataloging technical information can also be very useful references for external search. Examples of such engineering references are *Marks' Standard Handbook of Mechanical Engineering, Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook,* and *Mechanisms and Mechanical Devices Sourcebook.*

The nailer team found several useful articles related to the subproblems, including articles on energy storage describing flywheel and battery technologies. In a handbook they found an impact tool mechanism that provided a useful energy conversion concept.

Benchmark-Related Products

In the context of concept generation, *benchmarking* is the study of existing products with functionality similar to that of the product under development or to the subproblems on which the team is focused. Benchmarking can reveal existing concepts that have been implemented to solve a particular problem, as well as information on the strengths and weaknesses of the competition.

At this point the team will likely already be familiar with the competitive and closely related products. Products in other markets, but with related functionality, are more difficult to find. One of the most useful sources of this information is the *Thomas Register,* a directory of manufacturers of industrial products organized by product type. Often the hardest part of using the *Thomas Register* is finding out what related products are actually called and how they are cataloged. The *Thomas Register* database can be accessed online.

For the nailer, the closely related products included a single-shot gunpowder-actuated tool for nailing into concrete, an electrical solenoid-actuated tacker, a pneumatic nailer for factory use, and a palm-held multiblow pneumatic nailer. The products with related functionality (in this case, energy storage and conversion) included air bags and the sodium azide propellant used as an energy source, chemical hand warmers for skiing, air rifles powered by carbon dioxide cartridges, and portable computers and their battery packs. The team obtained and disassembled most of these related products to discover the general concepts on which they were based, as well as other, more detailed information, including, for example, the names of the suppliers of specific components.

External search is an important method of gathering solution concepts. Skill in conducting external searches is therefore a valuable personal and organizational asset. This ability can be developed through careful observation of the world to develop a mental database of technologies and through the development of a network of professional contacts. Even with the aid of personal knowledge and contacts, external search remains "detective work" and is completed most effectively by those who are persistent and resourceful in pursuing leads and opportunities.

Step 3: Search Internally

Internal search is the use of personal and team knowledge and creativity to generate solution concepts. Often called *brainstorming,* and based largely on the creativity methods developed by Osborn in the 1940s, this type of search is *internal* in that all of the ideas to emerge from this step are created from knowledge already in the possession of the team. This activity may be the most open-ended and creative of any task in product development. We find it useful to think of internal search as a process of retrieving a potentially useful piece of information from one's memory and then adapting that information to the problem at hand. This process can be carried out by individuals working in isolation or by a group of people working together.

Five guidelines are useful for improving both individual and group internal search:

1. *Suspend judgment.* In most aspects of daily life, success depends on an ability to quickly evaluate a set of alternatives and take action. For example, none of us would be very productive if deciding what to wear in the morning or what to eat for breakfast involved an extensive period of generating alternatives before making a judgment. Because most decisions in our day-to-day lives have implications of only a few minutes or hours, we are accustomed to making decisions quickly and moving on. Concept generation for product development is fundamentally different. We have to live with the consequences of product concept decisions for years. As a result, suspending evaluation for the days or weeks required to generate a large set of alternatives is critical to success. The imperative to suspend judgment is frequently translated into the rule that during group concept generation sessions no criticism of concepts is allowed. A better approach is for individuals perceiving weaknesses in concepts to channel any judgmental tendencies into suggestions for improvements or alternative concepts.

2. *Generate a lot of ideas.* Most experts believe that the more ideas a team generates, the more likely the team is to explore fully the solution space. Striving for quantity lowers the expectations of quality for any particular idea and therefore may encourage people to share ideas they may otherwise view as not worth mentioning. Further, each idea acts as a stimulus for other ideas, so a large number of ideas has the potential to stimulate even more ideas.

3. *Welcome ideas that may seem infeasible.* Ideas that initially appear infeasible can often be improved, "debugged," or "repaired" by other members of the team. The more infeasible an idea, the more it stretches the boundaries of the solution space and encourages the team to think of the limits of possibility. Therefore, infeasible ideas are quite valuable and their expression should be encouraged.

4. *Make plenty of sketches.* Spatial reasoning about physical objects can be challenging. Text and verbal language are inherently inefficient vehicles for describing physical entities. Whether working as a group or as an individual, abundant sketching materials should be available. Sketch quality is not so critical here; it is the expression of the concept that matters (Yang and Cham, 2007). Moreover, adding key dimensions to concept sketches has been shown to correlate with successful concept development (Yang, 2009).

5. *Build sketch models.* Simple, physical models can quickly be created to express concepts using foam, clay, cardboard, 3-D printing, and other media. Three-dimensional *sketch models* are particularly helpful for problems requiring a deep understanding of form, user interface, and spatial relationships. A study on the fidelity, or realism, of a design representation found that low fidelity models were both faster to create and resulted in designs that were perceived as more novel and more visually pleasing (Häggman et al., 2013). Further research found that parallel development of multiple, alternative sketch models, rather than working on a single prototype at a time, is linked to better concept development performance (Neeley et al., 2013).

Both Individual and Group Sessions Can Be Useful

Formal studies of group and individual problem solving suggest that a set of people working alone for a period of time will generate more and better concepts than the same people working together for the same time period (McGrath, 1984). This finding is contrary to the actual practices of the many firms that perform most of their concept generation activities in group sessions. Our observations confirm the formal studies, and we believe that team members should spend at least some of their concept generation time working alone. This is because each person in the group may excel at a different dimension of creativity. That is, some members may be more fluid (many ideas along a single line of thinking), while others are more flexible (many different types of ideas), and others can be more novel (offering fewer but highly divergent ideas). We also believe that group sessions are critical for building consensus, communicating information, and refining concepts. In an ideal setting, each individual on the team would spend several hours working alone and then the group would get together to discuss and improve the concepts generated by individuals.

However, we also know that there is a practical reason for holding group concept generation sessions: It is one way to guarantee that the individuals in the group will devote a certain amount of time to the task. Especially in very intense and demanding work environments, without scheduling a meeting, few people will allocate several hours for concentrated individual effort on generating new concepts. The phone rings, people interrupt, urgent problems and e-mails demand attention. In certain environments, scheduled group sessions may be the only way to guarantee that enough attention is paid to the concept generation activity.

The nailer team used both individual effort and group sessions for internal search. For example, during one particular week each member was assigned one or two subproblems and was expected to develop at least 10 solution concepts. This divided the concept generation work among all members. The group then met to discuss and expand on the individually generated concepts. The more promising concepts were investigated further.

Hints for Generating Solution Concepts

Experienced individuals and teams can usually just sit down and begin generating good concepts for a subproblem. Often these people have developed a set of techniques they use to stimulate their thinking, and these techniques have become a natural part of their problem-solving process. Novice product development professionals may be aided by a set of hints that stimulate new ideas or encourage relationships among ideas. VanGundy (1988), von Oech (1998), and McKim (1980) give dozens of helpful suggestions. Here are some hints we have found to be helpful:

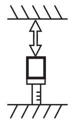
- ***Make analogies.*** Experienced designers always ask themselves what other devices solve a related problem. Frequently they will ask themselves if there is a natural or biological analogy to the problem. They will think about whether their problem exists at a much larger or smaller dimensional scale than that which they are considering. They will ask what devices do something similar in an unrelated area of application. The nailer team, when posing these questions, realized that construction pile drivers are similar to nailers in some respects. In following up on this idea, they developed the concept of a multiblow tool.
- ***Wish and wonder.*** Beginning a thought or comment with "I wish we could . . ." or "I wonder what would happen if . . ." helps to stimulate oneself or the group to consider new possibilities. These questions cause reflection on the boundaries of the problem. For example, a member of the nailer team, when confronted with the required length of a rail gun (an electromagnetic device for accelerating a projectile) for driving a nail, said, "I wish the tool could be 1 meter long." Discussion of this comment led to the idea that perhaps a long tool could be used like a cane for nailing decking, allowing users to remain on their feet.

- ***Distort ideas.*** It is often helpful to modify or rearrange fragments of different solutions to create new ones. Several methods exist to stimulate this type of thinking. For example, the SCAMPER method, derived from Osborn's work, provides stimuli to do this in seven ways that form its acronym: Substitute, combine, adapt, modify/magnify/minimize, put to other uses, eliminate, and reverse/rearrange.
- ***Use related stimuli.*** Most individuals can think of a new idea when presented with a new stimulus. Related stimuli are those stimuli generated in the context of the problem at hand. For example, one way to use related stimuli is for each individual in a group session to generate a list of ideas (working alone) and then pass the list to his or her neighbor. Upon reflection on someone else's ideas, most people are able to generate new ideas. Other related stimuli include customer needs statements and photographs of the use environment of the product.
- ***Use unrelated stimuli.*** Occasionally, random or unrelated stimuli can be effective in encouraging new ideas. An example of such a technique, known as *synectics,* is to choose, at random, one of a collection of photographs of objects, and then to think of some way that the randomly generated object might relate to the problem at hand (Gordon, 1961). In a variant of this idea, individuals can be sent out on the streets with a digital camera to capture random images for subsequent use in stimulating new ideas. (This may also serve as a good change of pace for a tired group.)
- ***Set quantitative goals.*** Generating new ideas can be exhausting. Near the end of a session, individuals and groups may find quantitative goals useful as a motivating force. The nailer team frequently issued individual concept generation assignments with quantitative targets of 10 to 20 concepts.
- ***Use the gallery method.*** The *gallery method* is a way to display a large number of concepts simultaneously for discussion. Sketches, usually one concept to a sheet, are taped or pinned to the walls of the meeting room. Team members circulate and look at each concept. The creator of the concept may offer explanation, and the group subsequently makes suggestions for improving the concept or spontaneously generates related concepts. This method is a good way to merge individual and group efforts.

In the 1990s, a Russian problem-solving methodology called TRIZ (a Russian acronym for *theory of inventive problem solving*) began to be disseminated in Europe and in the United States. The methodology is primarily useful in identifying physical working principles to solve technical problems. The key idea underlying TRIZ is to identify a contradiction that is implicit in a problem. For example, a contradiction in the nailer problem might be that increasing power (a desirable characteristic) would also tend to increase weight (an undesirable characteristic). One of the TRIZ tools is a matrix of 39 by 39 characteristics with each cell corresponding to a particular conflict between two characteristics. In each cell of the matrix, up to four physical principles are suggested as ways of resolving the corresponding conflict. There are 40 basic principles, including, for example, the *periodic action* principle (i.e., replace a continuous action with a periodic action, like an impulse). Using TRIZ, the nailer team might have arrived at the concept of using repeated smaller impacts to drive the nail. The idea of identifying a conflict in the design problem and then thinking about ways to resolve the conflict appears to be a very useful problem-solving heuristic. This approach can be useful in generating concepts even without adopting the entire TRIZ methodology.

Exhibit 7-6 shows some of the solutions the nailer team generated for the subproblems of (1) storing or accepting energy and (2) delivering translational energy to a nail.

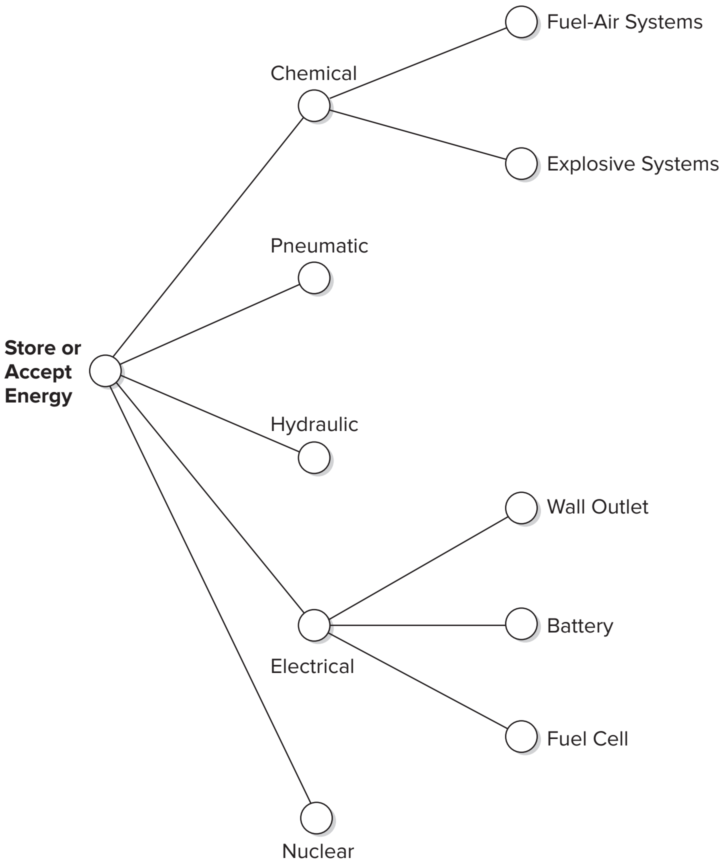
EXHIBIT 7-6
Some of the solutions to the subproblems of (1) storing or accepting energy and (2) delivering translational energy to a nail.

Solutions to Subproblem of Storing or Accepting Energy	**Solutions to Subproblem of Applying Translational Energy to Nail**	
• Self-regulating chemical reaction emitting high-pressure gas		
• Carbide (as for lanterns)		
• Combusting sawdust from job site	Single impact	
• Gun powder		
• Sodium azide (air bag explosive)		
• Fuel-air combustion (butane, propane, acetylene, etc.)		
• Compressed air (in tank or from compressor)		
• Carbon dioxide in tank		
• Electric wall outlet and cord	Multiple impacts (tens or hundreds)	
• High-pressure oil line (hydraulics)		
• Flywheel with charging (spin-up)		
• Battery pack on tool, belt, or floor		
• Fuel cell		
• Human power: arms or legs		
• Methane from decomposing organic materials		
• “Burning” like that of chemical hand warmers	Multiple impacts (hundreds or thousands)	
• Nuclear reactions		
• Cold fusion		
• Solar electric cells	Push	
• Solar-steam conversion		
• Steam supply line		
• Wind		
• Geothermal	Twist-push	

Step 4: Explore Systematically

As a result of the external and internal search activities, the team will have collected tens or hundreds of concept *fragments*—solutions to the subproblems. Systematic exploration is aimed at navigating the space of possibilities by organizing and synthesizing these solution fragments. The nailer team focused on the energy storage, conversion, and delivery subproblems and had generated dozens of concept fragments for each subproblem. One approach to organizing and synthesizing these fragments would be to consider all of the possible combinations of the fragments associated with each subproblem; however, a little arithmetic reveals the impossibility of this approach. Given the three subproblems on which the team focused and an average of 15 fragments for each subproblem, the team would have to consider 3,375 combinations of fragments ($15 \times 15 \times 15$). This would be

EXHIBIT 7-7
A classification tree for the nailer energy source concept fragments.



a daunting task for even the most enthusiastic team. Furthermore, the team would quickly discover that many of the combinations do not even make sense. Fortunately, there are two specific tools for managing this complexity and organizing the thinking of the team: the *concept classification tree* and the *concept combination table.* The classification tree helps the team divide the possible solutions into independent categories. The combination table guides the team in selectively considering combinations of fragments.

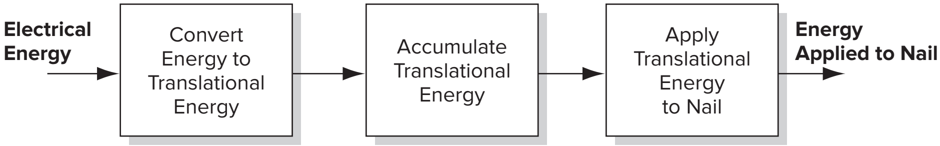
Concept Classification Tree

The concept classification tree is used to divide the entire space of possible solutions into several distinct classes that will facilitate comparison and pruning. An example of a tree for the nailer example is shown in Exhibit 7-7. The branches of this tree correspond to different energy sources.

The classification tree provides at least four important benefits:

1. ***Pruning of less-promising branches:*** If by studying the classification tree the team is able to identify a solution approach that does not appear to have much merit, then this approach can be pruned and the team can focus its attention on the more promising branches of the tree. Pruning a branch of the tree requires some evaluation and judgment and should therefore be done carefully, but the reality of product development is that there are limited

EXHIBIT 7-8
A new problem decomposition assuming an electrical energy source and the accumulation of energy in the mechanical domain.



resources and that focusing the available resources on the most promising directions is an important success factor. For the nailer team, the nuclear energy source was pruned from consideration. Although the team had identified some very intriguing nuclear devices for use in powering artificial hearts, they felt that these devices would not be economically practical for at least a decade and would probably be hampered by regulatory requirements indefinitely.

2. ***Identification of independent approaches to the problem:*** Each branch of the tree can be considered a different approach to solving the overall problem. Some of these approaches may be almost completely independent of each other. In these cases, the team can cleanly divide its efforts among two or more individuals or task forces. When two approaches both look promising, this division of effort can reduce the complexity of the concept generation activities. It also may engender some healthy competition among the approaches under consideration. The nailer team found that both the chemical/explosive branch and the electrical branch appeared quite promising. They assigned these two approaches to two different subteams and pursued them independently for several weeks.

3. ***Exposure of inappropriate emphasis on certain branches:*** Once the tree is constructed, the team is able to reflect quickly on whether the effort applied to each branch has been appropriately allocated. The nailer team recognized that they had applied very little effort to thinking about hydraulic energy sources and conversion technologies. This recognition guided them to focus on this branch of the tree for a few days.

4. ***Refinement of the problem decomposition for a particular branch:*** Sometimes a problem decomposition can be usefully tailored to a particular approach to the problem. Consider the branch of the tree corresponding to the electrical energy source. Based on additional investigation of the nailing process, the team determined that the instantaneous power delivered during the nailing process was about 10,000 watts for a few milliseconds and so exceeds the power that is available from a wall outlet, a battery, or a fuel cell (of reasonable size, cost, and mass). They concluded, therefore, that energy must be accumulated over a substantial period of the nailing cycle (say 100 milliseconds) and then suddenly released to supply the required instantaneous power to drive the nail. This quick analysis led the team to add a subfunction (“accumulate translational energy”) to their function diagram (see Exhibit 7-8). They chose to add the subfunction after the conversion of electrical energy to mechanical energy, but briefly considered the possibility of accumulating the energy in the electrical domain with a capacitor. This kind of refinement of the function diagram is quite common as the team makes more assumptions about the approach and as more information is gathered.

The classification tree in Exhibit 7-7 shows the alternative solutions to the energy source subproblem; however, there are other possible trees. The team might have chosen to use a tree classifying the alternative solutions to the energy delivery subproblem, showing branches for single impact, multiple impacts, or pushing. Trees can be constructed with branches corresponding to the solution fragments of any of the subproblems, but certain classifications are more useful. In general, a subproblem whose solution highly constrains

Convert Electrical Energy to Translational Energy	Accumulate Energy	Apply Translational Energy to Nail
Rotary motor with transmission	Spring	Single impact
Linear motor	Moving mass	Multiple impacts
Solenoid		Push nail
Rail gun		

EXHIBIT 7-9 Concept combination table for the handheld nailer.

the possible solutions to the remaining subproblems is a good candidate for a classification tree. For example, the choice of energy source (electrical, nuclear, pneumatic, etc.) constrains whether a motor or a piston-cylinder can be used to convert the energy to translational energy. In contrast, the choice of energy delivery mechanism (single impact, multiple impacts, etc.) does not greatly constrain the solutions to the other subproblems. Reflection on which subproblem is likely to most highly constrain the solutions to the remaining subproblems will usually lead to one or two clear ways to construct the classification tree.

Concept Combination Table

The concept combination table provides a way to consider combinations of solution fragments systematically. Exhibit 7-9 shows an example of a combination table that the nailer team used to consider the combinations of fragments for the electrical branch of the classification tree. The columns in the table correspond to the subproblems identified in Exhibit 7-8. The entries in each column correspond to the solution fragments for each of these subproblems derived from external and internal search. For example, the subproblem of converting electrical energy to translational energy is the heading for the first column. The entries in this column are a rotary motor with a transmission, a linear motor, a solenoid, and a rail gun.

Potential solutions to the overall problem are formed by combining one fragment from each column. For the nailer example, there are 24 possible combinations ($4 \times 2 \times 3$). Choosing a combination of fragments does not lead spontaneously to a solution to the overall problem. The combination of fragments must usually be developed and refined before an integrated solution emerges. This development may not even be possible or may lead to more than one solution, but at a minimum it involves additional creative thought. In some ways, the combination table is simply a way to make forced associations among

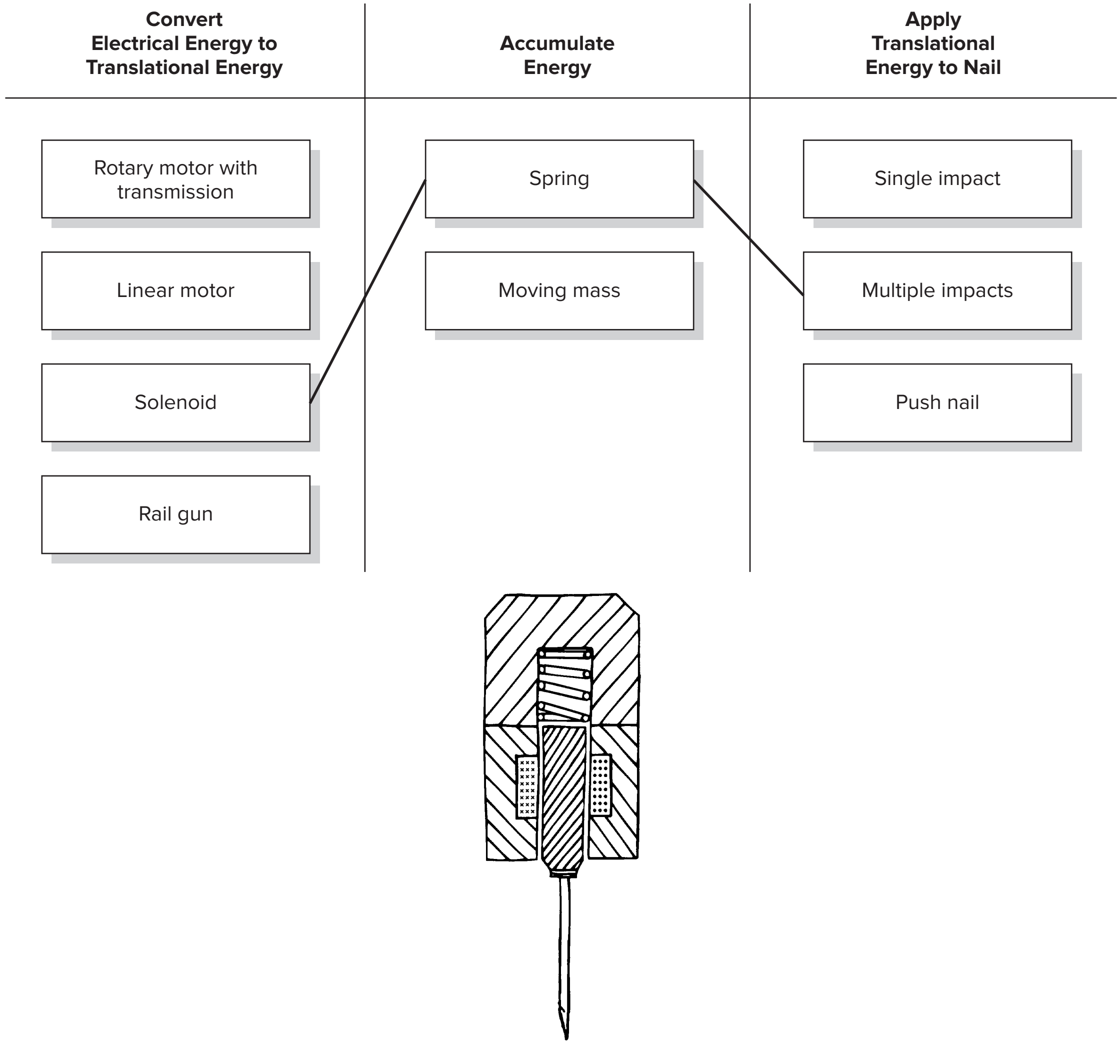


EXHIBIT 7-10 In this solution concept, a solenoid compresses a spring and then releases it repeatedly to drive the nail with multiple impacts.

fragments to stimulate further creative thinking; in no way does the mere act of selecting a combination yield a complete solution.

Exhibit 7-10 shows a sketch of a concept arising from the combination of the fragments “solenoid,” “spring,” and “multiple impacts.” Exhibit 7-11 shows some sketches of concepts arising from the combination of the fragments “rotary motor with transmission,” “spring,” and “single impact.” Exhibit 7-12 shows a sketch of a concept arising from the combination of “rotary motor with transmission,” “spring,” and “multiple impacts.” Exhibit 7-13 shows some sketches of concepts arising from the combination of “linear motor,” “moving mass,” “and single impact.”

Convert Electrical Energy to Translational Energy	Accumulate Energy	Apply Translational Energy to Nail
Rotary motor with transmission	Spring	Single impact
Linear motor	Moving mass	Multiple impacts
Solenoid		Push nail
Rail gun		

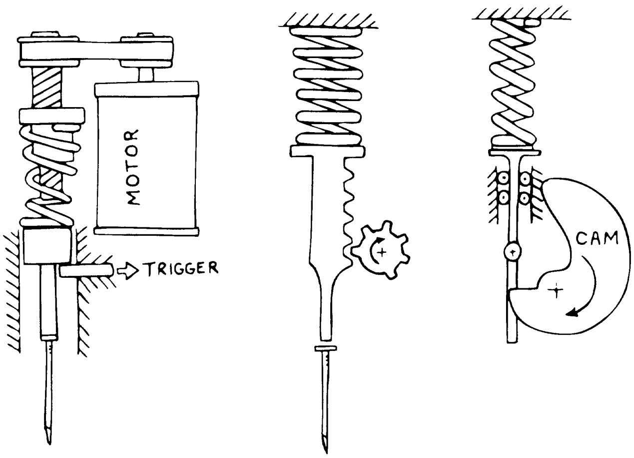


EXHIBIT 7-11 Multiple solutions arising from the combination of a motor with transmission, a spring, and single impact. The motor winds a spring, accumulating potential energy that is then delivered to the nail in a single blow.

Two guidelines make the concept combination process easier. First, if a fragment can be eliminated as being infeasible before combining it with other fragments, then the number of combinations the team needs to consider is dramatically reduced. For example, if the team could determine that the rail gun would not be feasible under any condition, they could reduce the number of combinations from 24 to 18. Second, the concept combination table should be concentrated on the subproblems that are coupled. Coupled subproblems are those whose solutions can be evaluated only in combination with the solutions to other subproblems. For example, the choice of the specific electrical energy source to be used

Convert Electrical Energy to Translational Energy	Accumulate Energy	Apply Translational Energy to Nail
Rotary motor with transmission	Spring	Single impact
Linear motor	Moving mass	Multiple impacts
Solenoid		Push nail
Rail gun		

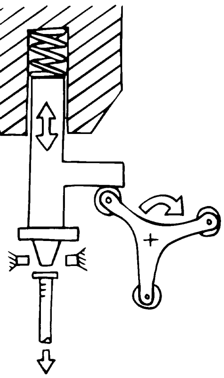


EXHIBIT 7-12 Solution from the combination of a motor with transmission, a spring, and multiple impacts. The motor repeatedly winds and releases the spring, storing and delivering energy over several blows.

(e.g., battery versus wall outlet), although extremely critical, is somewhat independent of the choice of energy conversion (e.g., motor versus solenoid). Therefore, the concept combination table does not need to contain a column for the different types of electrical energy sources. This reduces the number of combinations the team must consider. As a practical matter, concept combination tables lose their usefulness when the number of columns exceeds three or four.

Managing the Exploration Process

The classification tree and combination tables are tools that a team can use somewhat flexibly. They are simple ways to organize thinking and guide the creative energies of the team. Rarely do teams generate only one classification tree and one concept combination table.

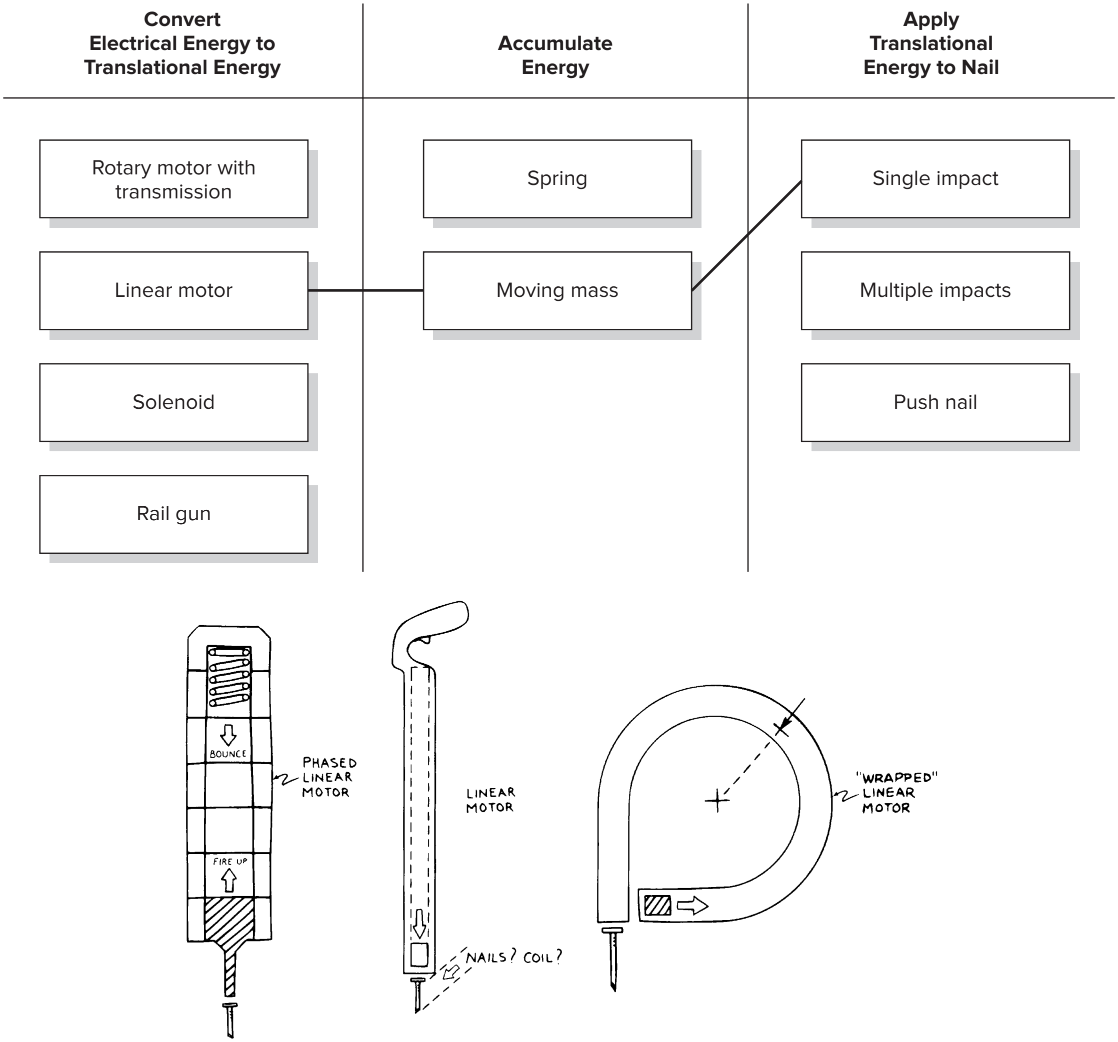
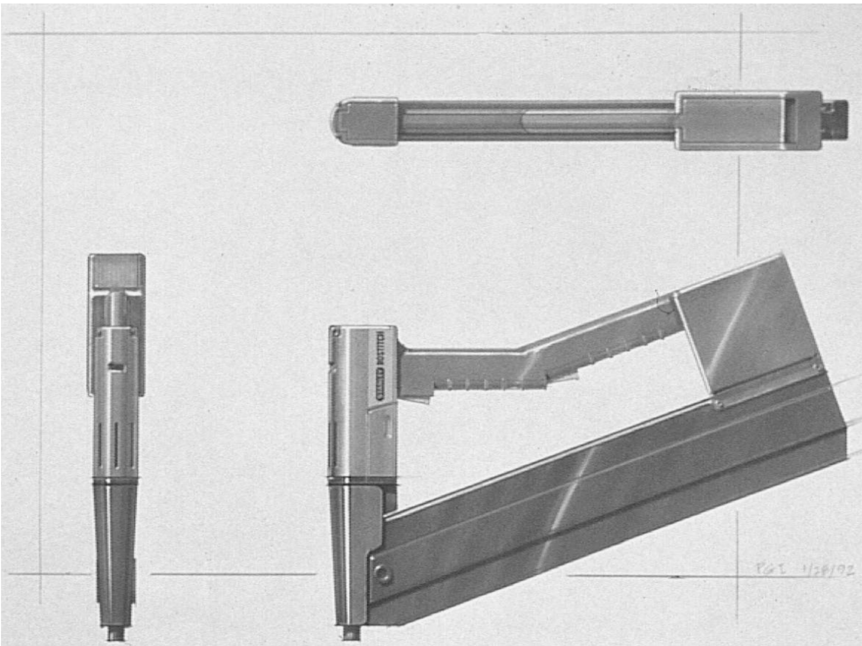


EXHIBIT 7-13 Solutions from the combination of a linear motor, a moving mass, and single impact. A linear motor accelerates a massive hammer, accumulating kinetic energy that is delivered to the nail in a single blow.

More typically the team will create several alternative classification trees and several concept combination tables. Interspersed with this exploratory activity may be a refining of the original problem decomposition or the pursuit of additional internal or external search. The exploration step of concept generation usually acts more as a guide for further creative thinking than as the final step in the process.

Recall that at the beginning of the process the team chooses a few subproblems on which to focus attention. Eventually the team must return to address all of the subproblems. This usually occurs after the team has narrowed the range of alternatives for the

EXHIBIT 7-14
One of several refined solution concepts.



Courtesy of Product Genesis

critical subproblems. The nailer team narrowed its alternatives to a few chemical and a few electric concepts and then refined them by working out the user interface, industrial design, and configuration issues. One of the resulting concept descriptions is shown in Exhibit 7-14.

Step 5: Reflect on the Solutions and the Process

Although the reflection step is placed here at the end for convenience in presentation, reflection should in fact be performed throughout the whole process. Questions to ask include:

- Is the team developing confidence that the solution space has been fully explored?
- Are there alternative function diagrams?
- Are there alternative ways to decompose the problem?
- Have external sources been thoroughly pursued?
- Have ideas from everyone been accepted and integrated in the process?

The nailer team members discussed whether they had focused too much attention on the energy storage and conversion issues in the tool while ignoring the user interface and overall configuration. They decided that the energy issues remained at the core of the problem and that their decision to focus on these issues first was justified. They also wondered if they had pursued too many branches of the classification tree. Initially they had pursued electrical, chemical, and pneumatic concepts before ultimately settling on an electric concept. In hindsight, the chemical approach had some obvious safety and customer perception shortcomings (they were exploring the use of explosives as an energy source). They decided that although they liked some aspects of the chemical solution, they should have eliminated it from consideration earlier in the process, allowing more time to pursue some of the more promising branches in greater detail.

The team explored several of these concepts in more detail and built working prototypes of nailers incorporating two fundamentally different directions: (1) a motor winding a spring with energy released in a single blow, and (2) a motor with a rotating mass that repeatedly hit the nail at a rate of about 10 cycles per second until the nail was fully driven. Ultimately, the multiblow tool proved to be the most technically feasible approach and the final product (Exhibit 7-1) was based on this concept.

Summary

A product concept is an approximate description of the technology, working principles, and form of the product. The degree to which a product satisfies customers and can be successfully commercialized depends to a large measure on the quality of the underlying concept.

- The concept generation process begins with a set of customer needs and target specifications and results in a set of product concepts from which the team will make a final selection.
- In most cases, an effective development team will generate hundreds of concepts, of which 5 to 20 will merit serious consideration during the subsequent concept selection activity.
- The concept generation method presented in this chapter consists of five steps:
  1. ***Clarify the problem.*** Understand the problem and decompose it into simpler subproblems.
  2. ***Search externally.*** Gather information from lead users, experts, patents, published literature, and related products.
  3. ***Search internally.*** Use individual and group methods to retrieve and adapt the knowledge of the team.
  4. ***Explore systematically.*** Use classification trees and combination tables to organize the thinking of the team and to synthesize solution fragments.
  5. ***Reflect on the solutions and the process.*** Identify opportunities for improvement in subsequent iterations or future projects.
- Although concept generation is an inherently creative process, teams can benefit from using a structured method. Such an approach allows full exploration of the design space and reduces the chance of oversight in the types of solution concepts considered. It also acts as a map for those team members who are less experienced in design problem solving.

- Despite the linear presentation of the concept generation process in this chapter, the team will likely return to each step of the process several times. Iteration is particularly common when the team is developing a radically new product.
- Professionals who are good at concept generation seem to always be in great demand as team members. Contrary to popular opinion, we believe concept generation is a skill that can be learned and developed.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Pahl, Beitz, Hubka, and Eder were driving forces behind structured design methods in Europe. We adapt many of their ideas for functional decomposition and systematic concept generation.

Hubka, Vladimir, and W. Ernst Eder, *Theory of Technical Systems: A Total Concept Theory for Engineering Design*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1988.

Pahl, Gerhard, Wolfgang Beitz, Jörg Feldhusen, and Karl-Heinrich Grote, *Engineering Design*, third edition, K. Wallace and L. Blessing, translators, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2007.

Research on creative behavior has shown that people with greater confidence in their own creative problem-solving ability actually do produce more innovative solutions.

Tierney, Pamela, and Steven M. Farmer, “Creative Self-Efficacy: Its Potential Antecedents and Relationship to Creative Performance,” *Academy of Management Journal*, Vol. 45, No. 6, 2002, pp. 1137–1148.

Paulus presents studies comparing the relative performance of groups and individuals in generating new ideas.

Paulus, P., “Groups, Teams, and Creativity: The Creative Potential of Idea Generating Groups,” *Applied Psychology*, Vol. 49, No. 2, 2000, pp. 237–262.

Osborn’s research in the mid twentieth-century first codified the principles of brainstorming, from which many creativity methods have since been derived.

Osborn, Alex F., *Applied Imagination: Principles and Procedures of Creative Thinking*, Scribner, New York, 1953.

Numerous authors have explained a wide variety of methods for ideation and problem solving, many of which are directly applicable to product concept generation.

Terwiesch, Christian, and Karl T. Ulrich, *Innovation Tournaments: Creating and Selecting Exceptional Opportunities*, Harvard Business Press, Boston, May 2009.

Treffinger, Donald J., Scott G. Isaksen, and K. Brian Stead-Dorval, *Creative Problem Solving: An Introduction*, Prufrock Press, Waco TX, 2005.

VanGundy, Arthur B., Jr., *Techniques of Structured Problem Solving*, second edition, Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1988.

Both McKim and von Oech present approaches to developing creative thinking skills in individuals and in groups.

McKim, Robert H., *Experiences in Visual Thinking*, second edition, Brooks/Cole Publishing, Monterey, CA, 1980.

von Oech, Roger, *A Whack on the Side of the Head: How You Can Be More Creative*, revised edition, Warner Books, New York, 1998.

Von Hippel reports on his empirical research on the sources of new product concepts. His central argument is that lead users are the innovators in many markets.

von Hippel, Eric, *The Sources of Innovation*, Oxford University Press, New York, 1988.

Yang and her research team have conducted a range of experiments to explore the timing, quality, and types of sketch modeling used in concept development.

Häggman, A., G. Tsai, C. Elsen, T. Honda and M. C. Yang, "Connections Between the Design Tool, Design Attributes, and User Preferences in Early Stage Design," *Journal of Mechanical Design*, Vol. 137, No. 7, 2015, 071408-071408.

Neeley, W. Lawrence, Kirsten Lim, April Zhu, and Maria C. Yang, "Building Fast to Think Faster: Exploiting Rapid Prototyping to Accelerate Ideation During Early Stage Design," ASME International Design Engineering Technical Conferences, August 2013.

Yang, Maria C., "Observations on Concept Generation and Sketching in Engineering Design." *Research in Engineering Design,* Vol. 20, No. 1, 2009, pp. 1–11.

Yang, Maria C., and Jorge G. Cham, "An Analysis of Sketching Skill and its Role in Early Stage Engineering Design," *Journal of Mechanical Design,* Vol. 129, No. 5, 2007, pp. 476–482.

Goldenberg and Mazursky have done interesting research on a set of standard "templates" for identifying novel product concepts.

Goldenberg, Jacob, and David Mazursky, *Creativity in Product Innovation,* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002.

Some specific methods for creative problem solving mentioned in this chapter (SCAMPER, synectics, and TRIZ) are explained in the following references.

Eberle, Bob, *SCAMPER: Games for Imagination Development,* Prufrock Press, Waco TX, 1996.

Gordon, William J. J., *Synectics: The Development of Creative Capacity,* Harper, New York, 1961.

Altshuller, Genrich, *40 Principles: TRIZ Keys to Technical Innovation,* Technical Innovation Center, Worcester, MA, 1998.

Terninko, John, Alla Zusman, and Boris Zlotin, *Systematic Innovation: An Introduction to TRIZ,* St. Lucie Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1998.

Engineering handbooks are handy sources of information on standard technical solutions. Three good handbooks are:

Avallone, Eugene A., Theodore Baumeister III, and Ali Sadegh (eds.), *Marks' Standard Handbook of Mechanical Engineering,* eleventh edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2006.

Green, Don W., and Robert H. Perry (eds.), *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook,* eighth edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2003.

Sclater, Neil, *Mechanisms and Mechanical Devices Sourcebook,* fifth edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2011.

Exercises

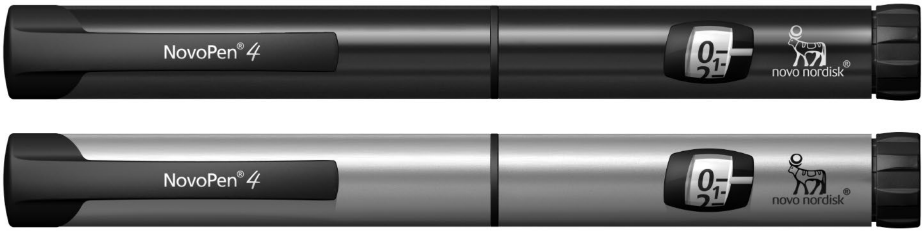
1. Decompose the problem of designing a new barbecue grill. Try a functional decomposition as well as a decomposition based on the user interactions with the product.
2. Generate 20 concepts for the subproblem "prevent fraying of end of rope" as part of a system for cutting lengths of nylon rope from a spool.
3. Prepare an external-search plan for the problem of permanently applying serial numbers to plastic products.

Thought Questions

1. What are the prospects for computer support for concept generation activities? Can you think of any computer tools that would be especially helpful in this process?
2. What would be the relative advantages and disadvantages of involving actual customers in the concept generation process?
3. For what types of products would the initial focus of the concept generation activity be on the form and user interface of the product and not on the core technology? Describe specific examples.
4. Could you apply the five-step method to an everyday problem like choosing the food for a picnic?
5. Consider the task of generating new concepts for the problem of dealing with leaves on a lawn. How would a plastic-bag manufacturer's assumptions and problem decomposition differ from those of a manufacturer of lawn tools and equipment and from those of a company responsible for maintaining golf courses around the world? Should the context of the firm dictate the way concept generation is approached?

CHAPTER EIGHT

Concept Selection



Courtesy of Novo Nordisk A/S

EXHIBIT 8-1
One of the existing outpatient syringes.

A medical supply company retained a product design firm to develop a reusable syringe with precise dosage control for outpatient use. One of the products sold by a competitor is shown in Exhibit 8-1. To focus the development effort, the medical supply company identified two major problems with its current product: cost (the existing model was made of stainless steel) and accuracy of dose metering. The company also requested that the product be tailored to the physical capabilities of the elderly, an important segment of the target market. To summarize the needs of its client and of the intended end users, the team established seven criteria on which the choice of a product concept would be based:

- Ease of handling.
- Ease of use.
- Readability of dose settings.
- Dose metering accuracy.
- Durability.
- Ease of manufacture.
- Portability.

The team described the concepts under consideration with the sketches shown in Exhibit 8-3. Although each concept nominally satisfied the key customer needs, the team was faced with choosing the best concept for further design, refinement, and production. The need to select one syringe concept from many raises several questions:

- How can the team choose the best concept, given that the designs are still quite abstract?
- How can a decision be made that is embraced by the whole team?
- How can desirable attributes of otherwise weak concepts be identified and used?
- How can the decision-making process be documented?

This chapter uses the syringe example to present a concept selection methodology addressing these and other issues.

Concept Selection Is an Integral Part of the Product Development Process

Early in the development process the product development team identifies a set of customer needs. By using a variety of methods, the team then generates alternative solution concepts in response to these needs. (See Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs, and Chapter 7, Concept Generation, for more detail on these activities.) *Concept selection* is the process of evaluating concepts with respect to customer needs and other criteria, comparing the relative strengths and weaknesses of the concepts, and selecting one or more concepts for further investigation, testing, or development. Exhibit 8-2 illustrates how the concept selection activity is related to the other activities that make up the concept development phase of the product development process. Although this chapter focuses on the selection of an overall product concept at the beginning of the development process, the method we present is also useful later in the development process when the team must select subsystem concepts, components, and production processes.

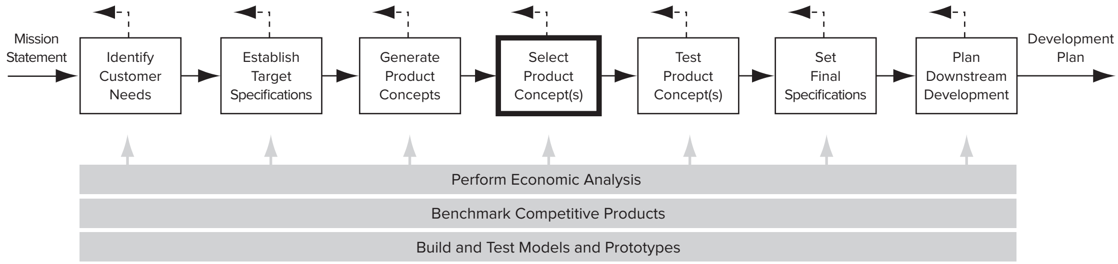


EXHIBIT 8-2 Concept selection is part of the overall concept development phase.

While many stages of the development process benefit from unbounded creativity and divergent thinking, concept selection is the process of narrowing the set of concept alternatives under consideration. Although concept selection is a convergent process, it is frequently iterative and may not produce a dominant concept immediately. A large set of concepts is initially winnowed down to a smaller set, but these concepts may subsequently be combined and improved to temporarily enlarge the set of concepts under consideration. Through several iterations a dominant concept is finally chosen. Exhibit 8-4 illustrates the successive narrowing and temporary widening of the set of options under consideration during the concept selection activity.

All Teams Use Some Method for Choosing a Concept

Whether or not the concept selection process is explicit, all teams use some method to choose among concepts. (Even those teams generating only one concept are using a method: choosing the first concept they think of.) The methods vary in their effectiveness and include the following:

- ***External decision:*** Concepts are turned over to the customer, client, or some other external entity for selection.
- ***Product champion:*** An influential member of the product development team chooses a concept based on personal preference.
- ***Intuition:*** The concept is chosen by its feel. Explicit criteria or trade-offs are not used. The concept just *seems* better.
- ***Multivoting:*** Each member of the team votes for several concepts. The concept with the most votes is selected.
- ***Online survey/crowdsourcing:*** Using an online survey tool, each concept is rated by many people to find the best ones.
- ***Pros and cons:*** The team lists the strengths and weaknesses of each concept and makes a choice based upon group opinion.
- ***Prototype and test:*** The organization builds and tests prototypes of each concept, making a selection based upon test data.
- ***Decision matrices:*** The team rates each concept against prespecified selection criteria, which may be weighted.

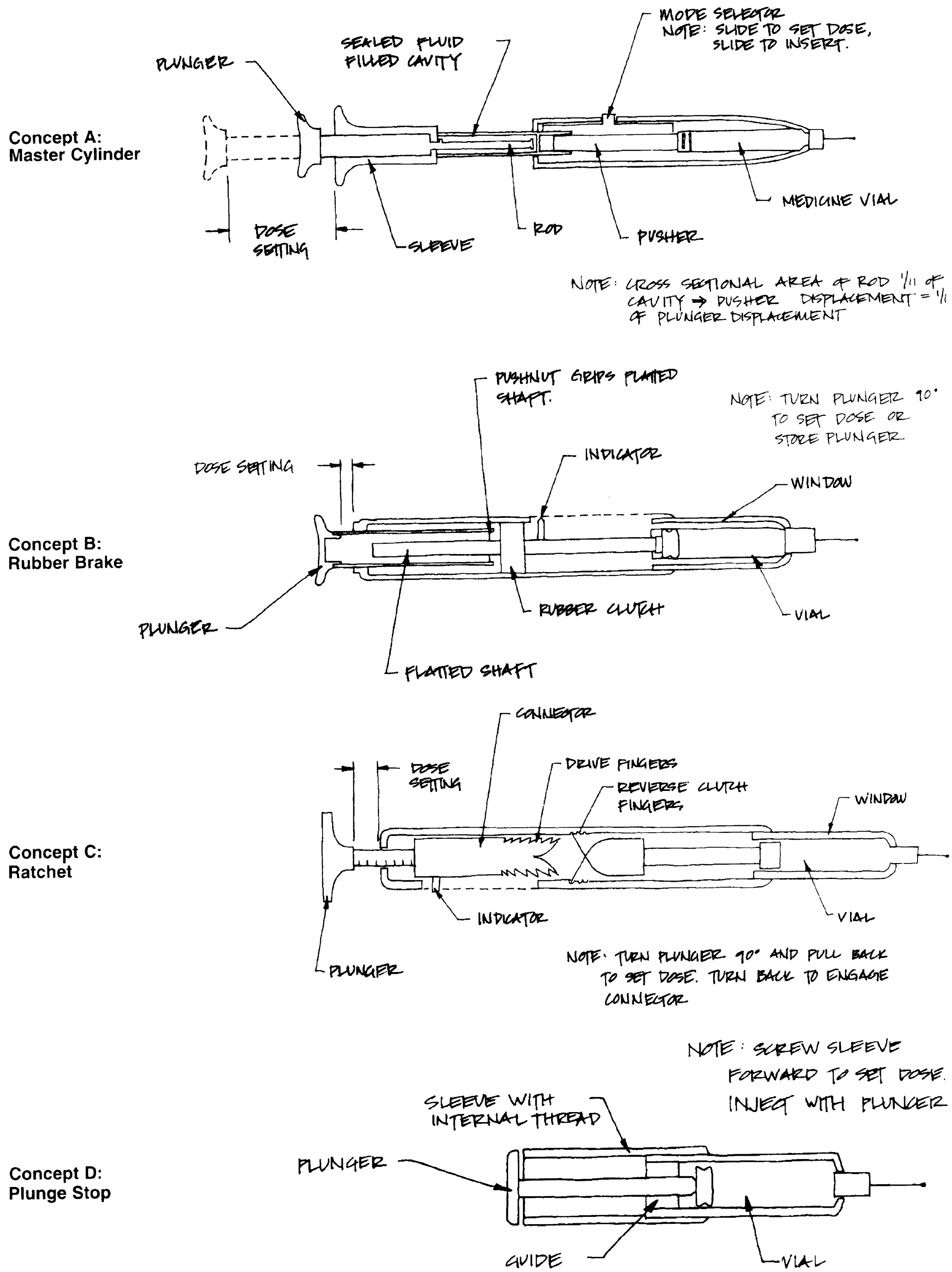
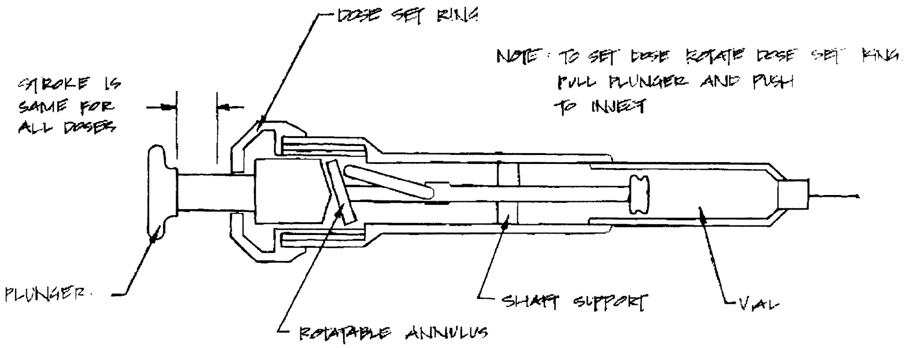
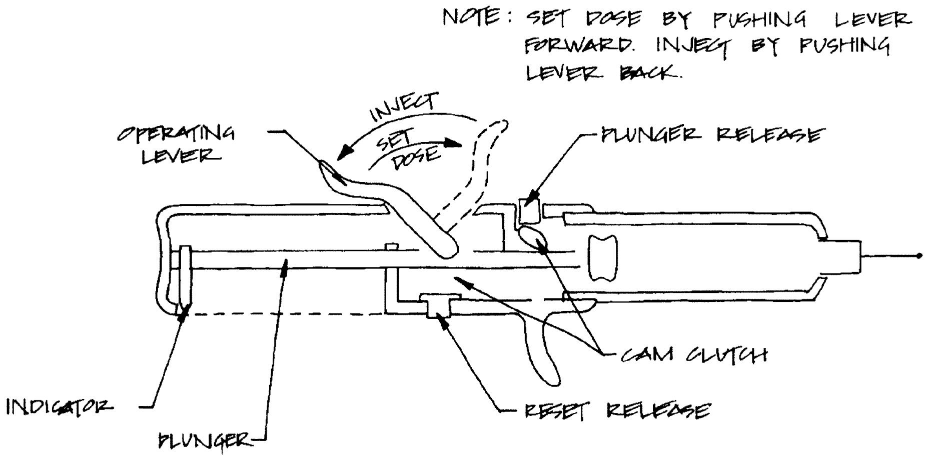


EXHIBIT 8-3 Seven concepts for the outpatient syringe. The product development team generated the seven sketches to describe the basic concepts under consideration.

Concept E:
Swash Ring



Concept F:
Lever Set



Concept G:
Dial Screw

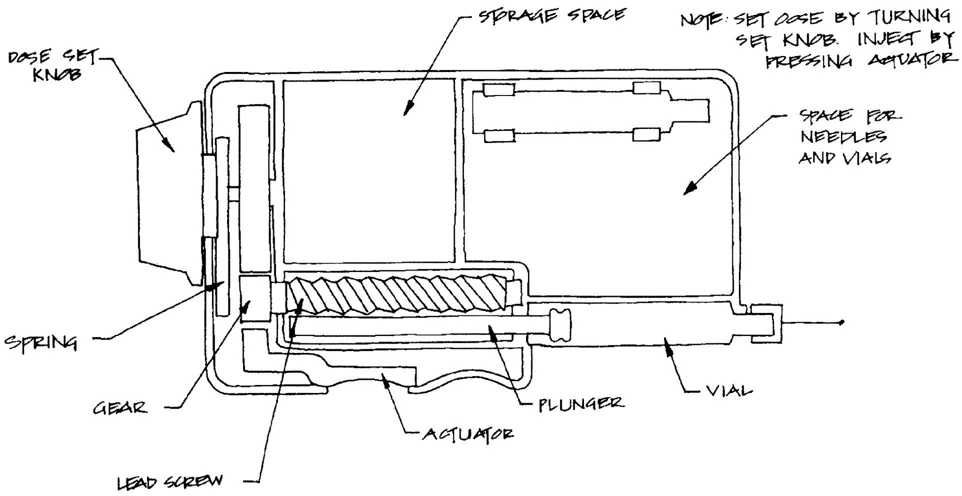


EXHIBIT 8-3 *Continued*

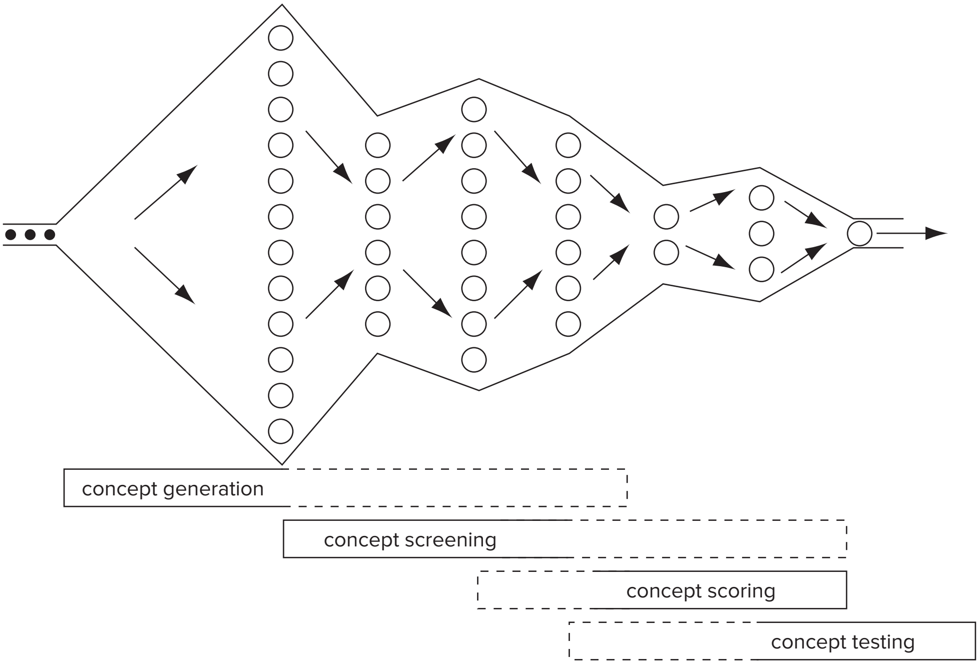


EXHIBIT 8-4 Concept selection is an iterative process closely related to concept generation and testing. The concept screening and scoring methods help the team refine and improve the concepts, leading to one or more promising concepts upon which further testing and development activities will be focused.

The concept selection method in this chapter is built around the use of decision matrices for evaluating each concept with respect to a set of selection criteria.

A Structured Method Offers Several Benefits

All of the front-end activities of product development have tremendous influence on eventual product success. Certainly the response of the market to a product depends critically on the product concept, but many practitioners and researchers also believe that the choice of a product concept dramatically constrains the eventual manufacturing cost of the product. A structured concept selection process helps to maintain objectivity throughout the concept phase of the development process and guides the product development team through a critical, difficult, and sometimes emotional process. Specifically, a structured concept selection method offers the following potential benefits:

- ***A customer-focused product:*** Because concepts are explicitly evaluated against customer-oriented criteria, the selected concept is likely to be focused on the customer.
- ***A competitive design:*** By benchmarking concepts with respect to existing designs, designers push the design to match or exceed their competitors' performance along key dimensions.

- ***Better product-process coordination:*** Explicit evaluation of the product with respect to manufacturing criteria improves the product's manufacturability and helps to match the product with the process capabilities of the firm.
- ***Reduced time to product introduction:*** A structured method becomes a common language among design engineers, manufacturing engineers, industrial designers, marketers, and project managers, resulting in decreased ambiguity, faster communication, and fewer false starts.
- ***Effective group decision making:*** Within the development team, organizational philosophy and guidelines, willingness of members to participate, and team member experience may constrain the concept selection process. A structured method encourages decision making based on objective criteria and minimizes the likelihood that arbitrary or personal factors influence the product concept.
- ***Documentation of the decision process:*** A structured method results in a readily understood archive of the rationale behind concept decisions. This record is useful for assimilating new team members and for quickly assessing the impact of changes in the customer needs or in the available alternatives.

Overview of Methodology

We present a two-stage concept selection methodology, although the first stage may suffice for simple design decisions. The first stage is called *concept screening* and the second stage is called *concept scoring*. Each is supported by a decision matrix that is used by the team to rate, rank, and select the best concept(s). Although the method is structured, we emphasize the role of group insight to improve and combine concepts.

Concept selection is often performed in two stages as a way to manage the complexity of evaluating dozens of product concepts. The application of these two methods is illustrated in Exhibit 8-4. Screening is a quick, approximate evaluation aimed at producing a few viable alternatives. Scoring is a more careful analysis of these relatively few concepts to choose the single concept most likely to lead to product success.

During concept screening, rough initial concepts are evaluated relative to a common reference concept using the *screening matrix*. At this preliminary stage, detailed quantitative comparisons are difficult to obtain and may be misleading, so a coarse comparative rating system is used. After some alternatives are eliminated, the team may choose to move on to concept scoring and conduct more detailed analyses and finer quantitative evaluation of the remaining concepts using the *scoring matrix* as a guide. Throughout the screening and scoring process, several iterations may be performed, with new alternatives arising from the combination of the features of several concepts. Exhibits 8-5 and 8-7 illustrate the screening and scoring matrices, using the selection criteria and concepts from the syringe example.

Both stages, concept screening and concept scoring, follow a six-step process that leads the team through the concept selection activity. The steps are:

1. Prepare the selection matrix.
2. Rate the concepts.
3. Rank the concepts.
4. Combine and improve the concepts.

5. Select one or more concepts.
6. Reflect on the results and the process.

Although we present a well-defined process, the team, not the method, creates the concepts and makes the decisions that determine the quality of the product. Ideally, teams are made up of people from different functional groups within the organization. Each member brings unique views that increase the understanding of the problem and thus facilitate the development of a successful, customer-oriented product. The concept selection method exploits the matrices as visual guides for consensus building among team members. The matrices focus attention on the customer needs and other decision criteria and on the product concepts for explicit evaluation, improvement, and selection.

Concept Screening

Concept screening is based on a method developed by the late Stuart Pugh in the 1980s and is often called *Pugh concept selection* (Pugh, 1990). The purposes of this stage are to narrow the number of concepts quickly and to improve the concepts. Exhibit 8-5 illustrates the screening matrix used during this stage.

Step 1: Prepare the Selection Matrix

To prepare the matrix, the team selects a physical medium appropriate to the problem at hand. Individuals and small groups with a short list of criteria may use matrices on paper similar to Exhibit 8-5 or Appendix A for their selection process. For larger groups a chalkboard or flip chart is desirable to facilitate group discussion.

	Concepts						
Selection Criteria	**A Master Cylinder**	**B Rubber Brake**	**C Ratchet**	**D (Reference) Plunge Stop**	**E Swash Ring**	**F Lever Set**	**G Dial Screw**
Ease of handling	0	0	–	0	0	–	–
Ease of use	0	–	–	0	0	+	0
Readability of settings	0	0	+	0	+	0	+
Dose metering accuracy	0	0	0	0	–	0	0
Durability	0	0	0	0	0	+	0
Ease of manufacture	+	–	–	0	0	–	0
Portability	+	+	0	0	+	0	0
Sum +'s	2	1	1	0	2	2	1
Sum 0's	5	4	3	7	4	3	5
Sum –'s	0	2	3	0	1	2	1
Net Score	2	–1	–2	0	1	0	0
Rank	1	6	7	3	2	3	3
Continue?	Yes	No	No	Combine	Yes	Combine	Revise

EXHIBIT 8-5 The concept-screening matrix. For the syringe example, the team rated the concepts against the reference concept using a simple code (+ for "better than," 0 for "same as," – for "worse than") to identify some concepts for further consideration. Note that the three concepts ranked "3" all received the same net score.

Next, the inputs (concepts and criteria) are entered on the matrix. Although possibly generated by different individuals, concepts should be presented at the same level of detail for meaningful comparison and unbiased selection. The concepts are best portrayed by both a written description and a graphical representation. A simple one-page sketch of each concept greatly facilitates communication of the key features of the concept. The concepts are entered along the top of the matrix, using graphical or textual labels of some kind.

If the team is considering more than about 12 concepts, the *multivoting* technique may be used to quickly choose the dozen or so concepts to be evaluated with the screening matrix. Multivoting is a technique in which members of the team simultaneously vote for three to five concepts by applying "dots" to the sheets describing their preferred concepts. See Chapter 3, Opportunity Identification, for a description of multivoting applied to a broad set of product opportunities. The concepts with the most dots are chosen for concept screening. It is also possible to use the screening matrix method with a large number of concepts. This is facilitated by a spreadsheet and it is then useful to transpose the rows and columns. (Arrange the concepts in this case in the left column and the criteria along the top.)

The selection criteria are listed along the left-hand side of the screening matrix, as shown in Exhibit 8-5. These criteria are chosen based on the customer needs the team has identified, as well as on the needs of the enterprise, such as low manufacturing cost or minimal risk of product liability. The criteria at this stage are usually expressed at a fairly high level of abstraction and typically include from 5 to 10 dimensions. The selection criteria should be chosen to differentiate among the concepts; however, because each criterion is given equal weight in the concept screening method, the team should be careful not to list many relatively unimportant criteria in the screening matrix. Otherwise, the differences among the concepts relative to the more important criteria will not be clearly reflected in the outcome.

After careful consideration, the team chooses a concept to become the benchmark, or *reference concept,* against which all other concepts are rated. The reference is generally either an industry standard or a straightforward concept with which the team members are very familiar. It can be a commercially available product, a best-in-class benchmark product that the team has studied, an earlier generation of the product, any one of the concepts under consideration, or a combination of subsystems assembled to represent the best features of different products.

Step 2: Rate the Concepts

A relative score of "better than" (+), "same as" (0), or "worse than" (−) is placed in each cell of the matrix to represent how each concept rates in comparison to the reference concept relative to the particular criterion. It is generally advisable to rate every concept on one criterion before moving to the next criterion; however, with a large number of concepts, it is faster to use the opposite approach—to rate each concept completely before moving on to the next concept.

Some people find the coarse nature of the relative ratings difficult to work with; however, at this stage in the design process, each concept is only a general notion of the ultimate product, and more detailed ratings are largely meaningless. In fact, given the imprecision of the concept descriptions at this point, it is very difficult to consistently compare concepts to one another unless one concept (the reference) is consistently used as a basis for comparison.

When available, objective metrics can be used as the basis for rating a concept. For example, a good approximation of assembly cost is the number of parts in a design. Similarly, a good approximation of ease of use is the number of operations required to use the device. Such metrics help to minimize the subjective nature of the rating process. Some objective metrics suitable for concept selection may arise from the process of establishing target specifications for the product. (See Chapter 6, Product Specifications, for a discussion of metrics.) Absent objective metrics, ratings are established by team consensus, although secret ballot or other methods may also be useful. At this point the team may also wish to note which selection criteria need further investigation and analysis.

Step 3: Rank the Concepts

After rating all the concepts, the team sums the number of "better than," "same as," and "worse than" scores and enters the sum for each category in the lower rows of the matrix. From our example in Exhibit 8-5, concept A was rated to have two criteria better than, five the same as, and none worse than the reference concept. Next, a net score can be calculated by subtracting the number of "worse than" ratings from the "better than" ratings.

Once the summation is completed, the team rank-orders the concepts. Obviously, in general those concepts with more pluses and fewer minuses are ranked higher. Often at this point the team can identify one or two criteria that really seem to differentiate the concepts.

Step 4: Combine and Improve the Concepts

Having rated and ranked the concepts, the team should verify that the results make sense and then consider if there are ways to combine and improve certain concepts. Two issues to consider are:

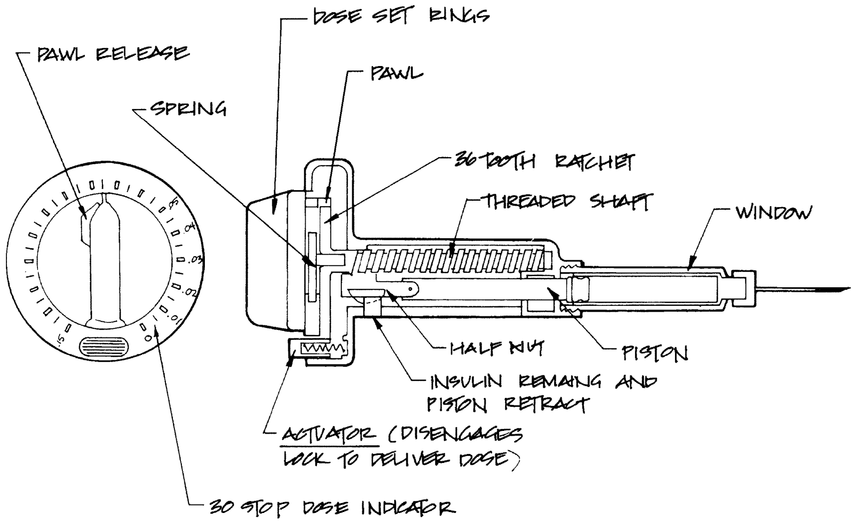
- Is there a generally good concept that is degraded by one bad feature? Can a minor modification improve the overall concept and yet preserve a distinction from the other concepts?
- Are there two concepts that can be combined to preserve the "better than" qualities while annulling the "worse than" qualities?

Combined and improved concepts are then added to the matrix, rated by the team, and ranked along with the original concepts. In our example, the team noticed that concepts D and F could be combined to remove several of the "worse than" ratings to yield a new concept, DF, to be considered in the next round. Concept G was also considered for revision. The team decided that this concept was too bulky, so the excess storage space was removed while retaining the injection technique. These revised concepts are shown in Exhibit 8-6.

Step 5: Select One or More Concepts

Once the team members are satisfied with their understanding of each concept and its relative quality, they decide which concepts are to be selected for further refinement and analysis. Based upon previous steps, the team will likely develop a clear sense of which are the most promising concepts. The number of concepts selected for further review will be limited by team resources (personnel, money, and time). In our example, the team selected concepts A and E to be considered along with the revised concept G+ and the

Concept G+:
Dial Screw+



Concept DF:
Lever Stop

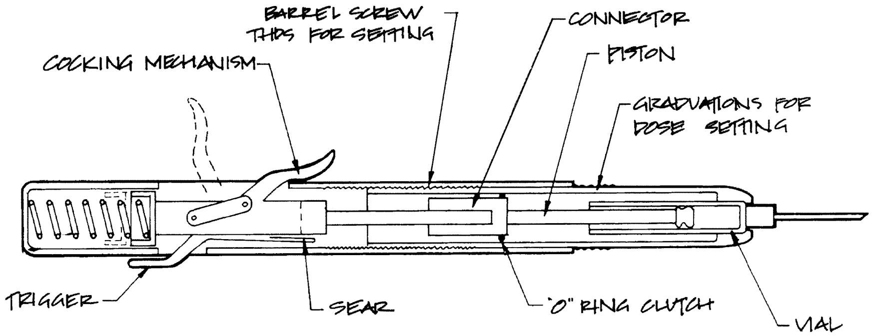


EXHIBIT 8-6 New and revised concepts for the syringe. During the selection process, the syringe team revised concept G and generated a new concept, DF, arising from the combination of concepts D and F.

new concept DF. Having determined the concepts for further analysis, the team must clarify which issues need to be investigated further before a final selection can be made.

The team must also decide whether another round of concept screening will be performed or whether concept scoring will be applied next. If the screening matrix is not seen to provide sufficient resolution for the next step of evaluation and selection, then the concept-scoring stage with its weighted selection criteria and more detailed rating scheme would be used.

Step 6: Reflect on the Results and the Process

All of the team members should be comfortable with the outcome. If an individual is not in agreement with the decision of the team, then perhaps one or more important criteria are missing from the screening matrix, or perhaps a particular rating is in error, or at least is not clear. An explicit consideration of whether the results make sense to everyone reduces the likelihood of making a mistake and increases the likelihood that the entire team will be solidly committed to the subsequent development activities.

		Concept							
		A		DF		E		G+	
		(Reference) Master Cylinder		Lever Stop		Swash Ring		Dial Screw+	
Selection Criteria	**Weight**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**
Ease of handling	5%	**3**	0.15	3	0.15	4	0.2	4	0.2
Ease of use	15%	**3**	0.45	4	0.6	4	0.6	3	0.45
Readability of settings	10%	2	0.2	**3**	0.3	5	0.5	5	0.5
Dose metering accuracy	25%	**3**	0.75	3	0.75	2	0.5	3	0.75
Durability	15%	2	0.3	5	0.75	4	0.6	**3**	0.45
Ease of manufacture	20%	**3**	0.6	3	0.6	2	0.4	2	0.4
Portability	10%	**3**	0.3	3	0.3	3	0.3	3	0.3
	Total Score	2.75		3.45		3.10		3.05	
	Rank	4		1		2		3	
	Continue?	No		Develop		No		No	

EXHIBIT 8-7 The concept-scoring matrix. This method uses a weighted sum of the ratings to determine concept ranking. While concept A serves as the overall reference concept, the separate reference points for each criterion are signified by **bold** rating values.

Concept Scoring

Concept scoring is used when increased resolution will better differentiate among competing concepts. In this stage, the team weighs the relative importance of the selection criteria and focuses on more refined comparisons with respect to each criterion. The concept scores are determined by the weighted sum of the ratings. Exhibit 8-7 illustrates the scoring matrix used in this stage. In describing the concept scoring process, we focus on the differences relative to concept screening.

Step 1: Prepare the Selection Matrix

As in the screening stage, the team prepares a matrix and identifies a reference concept. In most cases a computer spreadsheet is the best format to facilitate ranking and sensitivity analysis. The concepts that have been identified for analysis are entered on the top of the matrix. The concepts have typically been refined to some extent since concept screening and may be expressed in more detail. In conjunction with more detailed concepts, the team may wish to add more detail to the selection criteria. The use of hierarchical relations is a useful way to illuminate the criteria. For the syringe example, suppose the team decided that the criterion "ease of use" did not provide sufficient detail to help distinguish among the remaining concepts. "Ease of use" could be broken down, as shown in Exhibit 8-8, to include "ease of injection," "ease of cleaning," and "ease of loading." The level of criteria detail will depend upon the needs of the team; it may not be necessary to expand the criteria at all. If the team has created a hierarchical list of customer needs, the secondary and tertiary needs are good candidates for more detailed selection criteria. (See Chapter 5,

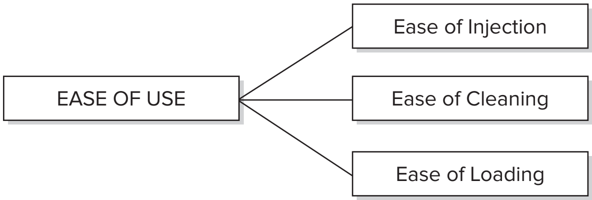


EXHIBIT 8-8 Hierarchical decomposition of selection criteria. In conjunction with more detailed concepts, the team may choose to break down criteria to the level of detail necessary for meaningful comparison.

Identifying Customer Needs, for an explanation of primary, secondary, and tertiary needs, and see Appendixes A and B for examples of hierarchical selection criteria.)

After the criteria are entered, the team adds importance weights to the matrix. Several different schemes can be used to weight the criteria, such as assigning an importance value from 1 to 5, or allocating 100 percentage points among them, as the team has done in Exhibit 8-7. There are marketing techniques for empirically determining weights from customer data, and a thorough process of identifying customer needs may result in such weights (Urban and Hauser, 1993); however, for the purpose of concept selection the weights are often determined subjectively by team consensus.

Step 2: Rate the Concepts

As in the screening stage, it is generally easiest for the team to focus its discussion by rating all of the concepts with respect to one criterion at a time. Because of the need for additional resolution to distinguish among competing concepts, a finer scale is now used. We recommend a scale from 1 to 5:

Relative Performance	Rating
Much worse than reference	1
Worse than reference	2
Same as reference	3
Better than reference	4
Much better than reference	5

Another scale, such as 1 to 9, may certainly be used, but finer scales generally require more time and effort.

A single reference concept can be used for the comparative ratings, as in the screening stage; however, this is not always appropriate. Unless by pure coincidence the reference concept is of average performance relative to all of the criteria, the use of the same reference concept for the evaluation of each criterion will lead to “scale compression” for some of the criteria. For example, if the reference concept happens to be the easiest concept to manufacture, all of the remaining concepts will receive an evaluation of 1, 2, or 3 (“much worse than,” “worse than,” or “same as”) for the ease-of-manufacture criterion, compressing the rating scale from five levels to three levels.

To avoid scale compression, it is possible to use different reference points for the various selection criteria. Reference points may come from several of the concepts under consideration, from comparative benchmarking analysis, from the target values of the product specifications, or other means. It is important that the reference point for each criterion be well understood to facilitate direct one-to-one comparisons. Using multiple reference points does not prevent the team from designating one concept as the overall reference for the purposes of ensuring that the selected concept is competitive relative to this benchmark. Under such conditions the overall reference concept will simply not receive a neutral score.

Exhibit 8-7 shows the scoring matrix for the syringe example. The team believed that the master cylinder concept was not suitable as a reference point for two of the criteria, and other concepts were used as reference points in these cases.

Appendix B illustrates a more detailed scoring matrix for which the team rated the concepts on each criterion with no explicit reference points. These ratings were accomplished by discussing the merits of every concept with respect to one criterion at a time and arranging the scores on a 9-point scale.

Step 3: Rank the Concepts

Once the ratings are entered for each concept, weighted scores are calculated by multiplying the raw scores by the criteria weights. The total score for each concept is the sum of the weighted scores

$$S_j = \sum_{i=1}^{n} r_{ij} w_i$$

where

r_{ij} = raw rating of concept j for the ith criterion
w_i = weighting for ith criterion
n = number of criteria
S_j = total score for concept j

Finally, each concept is given a rank corresponding to its total score, as shown in Exhibit 8-7.

Step 4: Combine and Improve the Concepts

As in the screening stage, the team looks for changes or combinations that improve concepts. Although the formal concept generation process is typically completed before concept selection begins, some of the most creative refinements and improvements occur during the concept selection process as the team realizes the inherent strengths and weaknesses of certain features of the product concepts.

Step 5: Select One or More Concepts

The final selection is not simply a question of choosing the concept that achieves the highest ranking after the first pass through the process. Rather, the team should explore this initial evaluation by conducting a sensitivity analysis. Using a computer spreadsheet, the team can vary weights and ratings to determine their effect on the ranking.

By investigating the sensitivity of the ranking to variations in a particular rating, the team members can assess whether uncertainty about a particular rating has a large impact on their choice. In some cases they may select a lower-scoring concept about which there is little uncertainty instead of a higher-scoring concept that may possibly prove unworkable or less desirable as they learn more about it.

Based on the selection matrix, the team may decide to select the top two or more concepts. These concepts may be further developed, prototyped, and tested to elicit customer feedback. See Chapter 9, Concept Testing, for a discussion of methods to assess customer response to product concepts.

The team may also create two or more scoring matrices with different weightings to yield the concept ranking for various market segments with different customer preferences. It may be that one concept is dominant for several segments. The team should also consider carefully the significance of differences in concept scores. Given the resolution of the scoring system, small differences are generally not significant.

For the syringe example, the team agreed that concept DF was the most promising and would be likely to result in a successful product.

Step 6: Reflect on the Results and the Process

As a final step the team reflects on the selected concept(s) and on the concept selection process. In some ways, this is the "point of no return" for the concept development process, so everyone on the team should feel comfortable that all of the relevant issues have been discussed and that the selected concept(s) have the greatest potential to satisfy customers and be economically successful.

After each stage of concept selection, it is a useful reality check for the team to review each of the concepts that are to be eliminated from further consideration. If the team agrees that any of the dropped concepts is better overall than some of those retained, then the source of this inconsistency should be identified. Perhaps an important criterion is missing, not weighted properly, or inconsistently applied.

The organization can also benefit from reflection on the process itself. Two questions are useful in improving the process for subsequent concept selection activities:

- In what way (if at all) did the concept selection method facilitate team decision making?
- How can the method be modified to improve team performance?

These questions focus the team on the strengths and weaknesses of the methodology in relation to the needs and capabilities of the organization.

Caveats

With experience, users of the concept selection methods will discover several subtleties. Here we discuss some of these subtleties and point out a few areas for caution.

- ***Decomposition of concept quality:*** The basic theory underlying the concept selection method is that selection criteria—and, by implication, customer needs—can be evaluated independently and that concept quality is the sum of the qualities of the concept relative to each criterion. The quality of some product concepts may not be easily decomposed into a set of independent criteria, or the performance of the concept relative to the different criteria may be difficult to relate to overall concept quality. For example, the overall appeal or performance of a tennis racquet design may arise in a highly complex way from its weight, ease of swinging, shock transmission, and energy absorption. Simply choosing a concept based on the sum of performance relative to each criterion may fail to capture complex relationships among these criteria. Keeney and Raiffa (1993) discuss the problem of multiattribute decision making, including the issue of nonlinear relationships among selection criteria.

- ***Subjective criteria:*** Some selection criteria, particularly those related to aesthetics, are highly subjective. Choices among alternatives based solely on subjective criteria must be made carefully. In general, the development team's collective judgment is not the best way to evaluate concepts on subjective dimensions. Rather, the team should narrow the alternatives to three or four and then solicit the opinions of representative customers from the target market for the product, perhaps using mock-ups or models to represent the concepts. (See Chapter 9, Concept Testing.)
- ***To facilitate improvement of concepts:*** While discussing each concept to determine its rating, the team may wish to make note of any outstanding (positive or negative) attributes of the concepts. It is useful to identify any features that could be applied to other concepts, as well as issues that could be addressed to improve the concept. Notes may be placed directly in the cells of the selection matrix. Such notes are particularly useful in step 4, when the team seeks to combine, refine, and improve the concepts before making a selection decision.
- ***Where to include cost:*** Most of the selection criteria are adaptations of the customer needs; however, "ease of manufacturing" and "manufacturing cost" are not customer needs. The only reason customers care about manufacturing cost is that it establishes the lower bound on sale price. Nevertheless, cost is an extremely important factor in choosing a concept, because it is one of the factors determining the economic success of the product. For this reason, we advocate the inclusion of some measure of cost or ease of manufacturing when evaluating concepts, even though these measures are not true customer needs. Similarly, there may be needs of other stakeholders that were not expressed by actual customers but are important for economic success of the product.
- ***Selecting elements of aggregate concepts:*** Some product concepts are really aggregations of several simpler concepts. If all of the concepts under consideration include choices from a set of simpler elements, then the simple elements can be evaluated first and in an independent fashion before the more complex concepts are evaluated. This sort of decomposition may follow partly from the structure used in concept generation. For example, if all of the syringes in our example could be used with all of several different needle types, then the selection of a needle concept could be conducted independently of the selection of an overall syringe concept.
- ***Applying concept selection throughout the development process:*** Although throughout this chapter we have emphasized the application of the method to the selection of a basic product concept, concept selection is used again and again at many levels of detail in the design and development process. For example, in the syringe example, concept selection could be used at the very beginning of the development project to decide between a single-use or multiple-use approach. Once the basic approach had been determined, concept selection could be used to choose the basic product concept, as illustrated in this chapter. Finally, concept selection could be used at the most detailed level of design for resolving decisions such as the choice of colors or materials.

Summary

Concept selection is the process of evaluating concepts with respect to customer needs and other criteria, comparing the relative strengths and weaknesses of the concepts, and selecting one or more concepts for further investigation or development.

- All teams use some method, implicit or explicit, for selecting concepts. Decision techniques employed for selecting concepts range from intuitive approaches to structured methods.
- Successful design is facilitated by structured concept selection. We recommend a two-stage process: concept screening and concept scoring.
- Concept screening uses a reference concept to evaluate concept variants against selection criteria. Concept scoring may use different reference points for each criterion.
- Concept screening uses a coarse comparison system to narrow the range of concepts under consideration.
- Concept scoring uses weighted selection criteria and a finer rating scale. Concept scoring may be skipped if concept screening produces a dominant concept.
- Both screening and scoring use a matrix as the basis of a six-step selection process. The six steps are:

  1. Prepare the selection matrix.
  2. Rate the concepts.
  3. Rank the concepts.
  4. Combine and improve the concepts.
  5. Select one or more concepts.
  6. Reflect on the results and the process.

- Concept selection is applied not only during concept development but throughout the subsequent design and development process.
- Concept selection is a group process that facilitates the selection of a winning concept, helps build team consensus, and creates a record of the decision-making process.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

The concept selection methodology is a decision-making process. Souder outlines other decision techniques.

Souder, William E., *Management Decision Methods for Managers of Engineering and Research,* Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1980.

For a more formal treatment of multiattribute decision making, illustrated with a set of eclectic and interesting case studies, see Keeney and Raiffa.

Keeney, Ralph L., and Howard Raiffa, *Decisions with Multiple Objectives: Preferences and Value Trade-Offs,* Cambridge University Press, New York, 1993.

Pahl and Beitz's influential engineering design textbook contains an excellent set of systematic methods. The book outlines two concept selection methods similar to concept scoring.

Pahl, Gerhard, Wolfgang Beitz, Jörg Feldhusen, and Karl-Heinrich Grote, *Engineering Design: A Systematic Approach,* third edition, K. Wallace and L. Blessing, translators, Springer-Verlag, New York, 2007.

Weighting alternatives for selection is not a new idea. The following is one of the earlier references for using selection matrices with weights.

Alger, J. R., and C. V. Hays, *Creative Synthesis in Design,* Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1964.

The concept-screening method is based upon the concept selection process presented by Stuart Pugh. Pugh was known to criticize more quantitative methods, such as the concept-scoring method presented in this chapter. He cautioned that numbers can be misleading and can reduce the focus on creativity required to develop better concepts.

Pugh, Stuart, *Total Design,* Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA, 1990.

Concept scoring is similar to a method often called the Kepner-Tregoe method. It is described, along with other techniques for problem identification and solution, in their text.

Kepner, Charles H., and Benjamin B. Tregoe, *The Rational Manager,* McGraw-Hill, New York, 1965.

Urban and Hauser describe techniques for determining the relative importance of different product attributes.

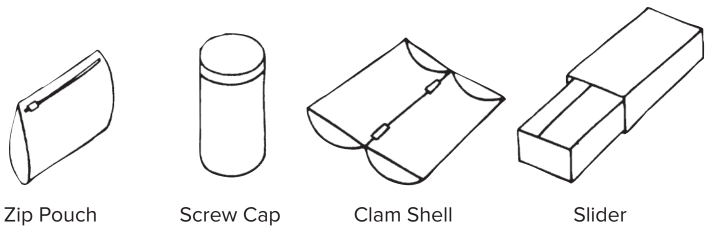
Urban, Glen L., and John R. Hauser, *Design and Marketing of New Products,* second edition, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1993.

Otto and Wood present a method to include certainty bounds with the ratings given to concepts in concept scoring. These can be combined to derive an estimate of the error in selecting the highest-scoring concept and to compute a confidence interval for the results.

Otto, Kevin N., and Kristin L. Wood, "Estimating Errors in Concept Selection," *ASME Design Engineering Technical Conferences,* Vol. DE-83, 1995, pp. 397–412.

Exercises

1. How can the concept selection methods be used to benchmark or evaluate existing products? Perform such an evaluation for five automobiles you might consider purchasing.
2. Propose a set of selection criteria for the choice of a battery technology for use in a laptop computer.
3. Perform concept screening for the four pencil holder concepts shown below. Assume the pencil holders are for a member of a product development team who is continually moving from site to site.
4. Repeat Exercise 3, but use concept scoring.



Thought Questions

1. How might you use the concept selection method to decide whether to offer a single product to the marketplace or to offer several different product options?
2. How might you use the method to determine which product features should be standard and which should be optional or add-ons?
3. Can you imagine an interactive computer tool that would allow a large group (say, 20 or more people) to participate in the concept selection process? How might such a tool work?
4. What could cause a situation in which a development team uses the concept selection method to agree on a concept that then results in commercial failure?

Concept-Screening Matrix Example

This matrix was created and used by a development team designing a collar to hold weights onto a barbell.

Selection Criteria	Handcuff	Master Lock	Velcro Belt	Rubber Belt	Alligator Clip	4-Part Latch (REF)	Torsional Spring	Screw Type	Wing Nut	Clothespin	Hose Clamp	C-Clamp	Spring-Loaded Bar	Magnetic Plates	Threaded Bar
	Concepts														
Functionality															
Lightweight	+	0	+	+	+	0	+	–	–	+	0	0	+	+	0
Fits different bars	+	0	+	+	+	0	0	0	0	+	0	+	0	–	0
Weights secured laterally	0	0	–	–	0	0	0	–	+	–	0	0	–	0	+
Convenience															
Tighten from end/side	0	0	0	0	0	0	–	–	–	0	–	0	+	+	–
Does not roll	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Change weights without removing collar	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	+	+	0
Convenience of placement when changing weights	0	0	+	+	0	0	–	–	–	0	–	0	+	+	–
Ergonomics															
Secure/release (one motion)	+	0	–	–	+	0	–	–	–	0	–	–	+	–	–
Low force to secure/release	0	0	0	0	–	0	–	0	0	0	0	0	+	–	0
RH/LH usage	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	–	–	0	–	–	0	0	–
Not slippery when wet	0	0	+	+	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	+	+	0
Use with one hand	+	0	0	0	+	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	+	+	0
Durability															
Longevity	–	–	–	–	0	0	0	+	0	0	+	+	–	–	+
Other															
Cost of raw materials	0	0	+	+	0	0	0	0	–	+	0	0	–	–	–
Manufacturability	0	–	+	+	0	0	0	+	–	+	+	0	–	–	–
Uses existing weight bars	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	–	0	–
Sum +'s	4	0	6	6	4	0	1	2	1	4	2	2	8	6	2
Sum 0's	11	14	7	7	11	16	11	8	8	11	10	12	3	4	7
Sum –'s	1	2	3	3	1	0	4	6	7	1	4	2	5	6	7
Net Score	3	–2	3	3	3	0	–3	–4	–6	3	–2	0	3	0	–5
Rank	1	10	1	1	1	7	12	13	15	1	10	7	1	7	15

Appendix B

Concept-Scoring Matrix Example

A development team generated this matrix while selecting a new concept for a spillproof beverage holder to be used on boats. Note that in this case the team chose not to define a single concept as the reference for all of the selection criteria.

		Concept A		Concept C		Concept F		Concept I		Concept J		Concept K		Concept O	
Selection Criteria	**Weight**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**	**Rating**	**Weighted Score**
Flexible Use	20														
Use in different locations	15	7	105	7	105	8	120	6	90	6	90	5	75	7	105
Holds different beverages	5	5	25	5	25	3	15	4	20	5	25	3	15	3	15
Maintains Drink Condition	15														
Retains temperature of drink	13	5	65	5	65	5	65	1	13	5	65	5	65	5	65
Prevents water from getting in	2	5	10	7	14	5	10	5	10	5	10	5	10	5	10
Survives Boating Environment	5														
Doesn't break when dropped	1	6	6	6	6	9	9	7	7	5	5	9	9	6	6
Resists corrosion from sea spray	2	7	14	7	14	8	16	8	16	5	10	9	18	7	14
Floats when it falls in water	2	5	10	6	12	8	16	4	8	5	10	8	16	7	14
Keeps Drink Container Stable	20														
Prevents spilling	7	3	21	4	28	3	21	5	35	5	35	3	21	3	21
Prevents bouncing in waves	6	7	42	8	48	7	42	5	30	5	30	7	42	7	42
Will not slide during pitch/roll	7	5	35	5	35	5	35	5	35	5	35	5	35	5	35
Requires Little Maintenance	5														
Easily stored when not in use	1	7	7	6	6	8	8	9	9	4	4	8	8	7	7
Easy to maintain a clean appearance	2	6	12	6	12	3	6	4	8	5	10	5	10	6	12
Allows liquid to drain out bottom	2	5	10	5	10	5	10	5	10	5	10	5	10	5	10
Easy to Use	15														
Usable with one hand	5	7	35	7	35	7	35	6	30	5	25	7	35	7	35
Easy/comfortable to grip	5	8	40	8	40	6	30	5	25	5	25	6	30	8	40
Easy to exchange beverage containers	2	5	10	5	10	5	10	8	16	5	10	5	10	5	10
Works reliably	3	3	9	3	9	3	9	3	9	4	12	4	12	3	9
Attractive in Environment	10														
Doesn't damage boat surface	5	8	40	8	40	8	40	8	40	8	40	6	30	8	40
Attractive to look at	5	7	35	8	40	3	15	4	20	5	25	5	25	8	40
Manufacturing Ease	10														
Low-cost materials	4	5	20	4	16	7	28	8	32	4	16	8	32	6	24
Low complexity of parts	3	4	12	3	9	7	21	4	12	3	9	8	24	5	15
Low number of assembly steps	3	5	15	5	15	8	24	3	9	3	9	8	24	6	18
Total Score			578		594		585		484		510		556		587
Rank			4		1		3		7		6		5		2

Concept Testing

Courtesy of emPower Corporation

EXHIBIT 9-1
A prototype of emPower Corporation's electric scooter product concept.

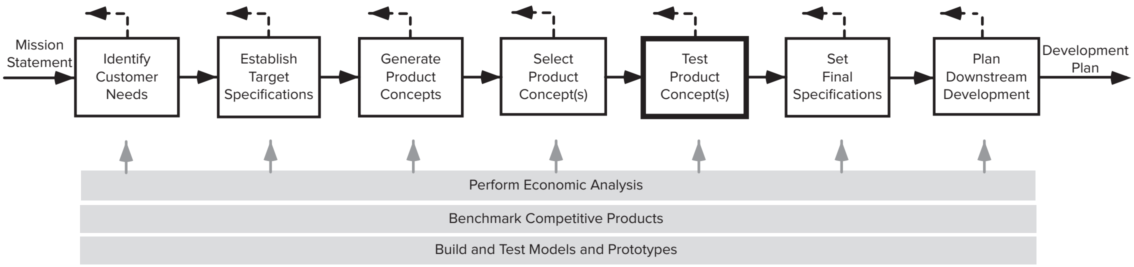


EXHIBIT 9-2 Concept testing in relation to other concept development activities.

The emPower Corporation, a start-up company, had developed a new product concept for the personal transportation market. Exhibit 9-1 shows a photograph of a prototype of the product. The concept was a three-wheeled electric-powered scooter that could be folded up and carried easily. emPower wished to assess the customer response to this concept to decide whether to proceed with its development and to support the company's financing efforts.

In this chapter, we focus primarily on testing done during the concept development phase. In *concept testing,* the development team solicits a response to a description of the product concept from potential customers in the target market. Concept testing may be used to select which of two or more concepts should be pursued, to gather information from potential customers on how to improve a concept, and to estimate the sales potential of the product Concept testing is sometimes called *resonance testing* since it is a way to learn if a product concept "resonates" with customers. Note that various other types of testing with potential customers may be completed at times other than during concept development. For example, some kind of customer test, usually based on only a verbal description of a concept, may be used in identifying the original product opportunity that forms the basis of the mission statement for the project. A test may also be used to refine the demand forecast after the development of a product is nearly complete, but before a firm commits to full production and launch.

Exhibit 9-2 shows concept testing relative to other concept development activities. Concept testing is closely related to concept selection (Chapter 8, Concept Selection) in that both activities aim to further narrow the set of concepts under consideration; however, concept testing is distinct in that it is based on data gathered directly from potential customers and relies to a lesser degree on judgments made by the development team. The reason that concept testing generally follows concept selection is that a team cannot feasibly test more than a few concepts directly with potential customers. As a result, the team must first narrow the set of alternatives under consideration to very few. Concept testing is also closely related to prototyping (Chapter 14, Prototyping), because concept testing invariably involves some kind of representation of the product concept, often a prototype. One of the end results of a concept test may be an estimate of how many units of the product the company is likely to sell. This forecast is a key element of the information used in making an economic analysis of the product (Chapter 18, Product Development Economics).

A team may choose not to do any concept testing at all if the time required to test the concept is large relative to the product life cycles in the product category, or if the cost of testing is large relative to the cost of actually launching the product. For example, in the Internet software business, many practitioners have found that just launching a product and iteratively refining it with subsequent product generations is a better strategy than carefully testing a concept before developing it fully. While perhaps appropriate for some products, this strategy would be foolish in the development of, for example, a new commercial airplane, where development costs and time are huge and failure can be disastrous. Most product categories fall between these extremes, and in most cases some form of concept testing is warranted.

This chapter presents a seven-step method for testing product concepts:

1. Define the purpose of the concept test.
2. Choose a survey population.
3. Choose a survey format.
4. Communicate the concept.
5. Measure customer response.
6. Interpret the results.
7. Reflect on the results and the process.

We illustrate this method with the scooter example.

Step 1: Define the Purpose of the Concept Test

As a first step in concept testing, we recommend that the team explicitly articulate in writing the questions that the team wishes to answer with the test. Concept testing is essentially an experimental activity, and as with any experiment, knowing the purpose of the experiment is essential to designing an effective experimental method. This step is closely analogous to "defining the purpose" in prototyping. (See Chapter 14, Prototyping.) The primary questions addressed in concept testing are typically:

- Do customers like the concept we have developed?
- Does the concept address the customer needs?
- Which of several alternative concepts should be pursued?
- How can the concept be improved to better meet customer needs?
- Approximately how many units are likely to be sold?
- Should development be continued?

Step 2: Choose a Survey Population

An assumption underlying the concept test is that the population of potential customers surveyed reflects that of the target market for the product. If the survey population is either more or less enthusiastic about the product than will be the eventual target audience for the product, then inferences based on the concept test will be biased. As a result, the team should choose a survey population that mirrors the target market in as many ways as possible. In the actual survey, the first few questions are called the *screener questions* and generally are used to verify that the respondent fits the definition of the target market for the product.

Often a product addresses multiple market segments. In such cases, an accurate concept test requires that potential customers from each target segment be surveyed. Surveying every possible segment may be prohibitively expensive in cost or time, and in such cases,

EXHIBIT 9-3
Factors leading to relatively smaller or larger survey sample sizes.

Factors Favoring a Smaller Sample Size	Factors Favoring a Larger Sample Size
• Test occurs early in concept development process. • Test is primarily intended to gather qualitative data. • Surveying potential customers is relatively costly in time or money. • Required investment to develop and launch the product is relatively small. • A relatively large fraction of the target market is expected to value the product (i.e., many positively inclined respondents can be found without a large sample).	• Test occurs later in concept development process. • Test is primarily intended to assess demand quantitatively. • Surveying customers is relatively fast and inexpensive. • Required investment to develop and launch the product is relatively high. • A relatively small fraction of the target market is expected to value the product (i.e., many people have to be sampled to reliably estimate the fraction that values the product).

the team may choose to survey potential customers from only the largest segment; however, when only one segment is sampled, inferences about the response of the entire market are likely to be biased.

For the scooter, there were two primary consumer segments: college students and urban commuters. The team decided to form a survey population from both segments. The team had also identified several smaller secondary segments, including transportation for factory and airport employees.

The sample size of the survey should be large enough that the team's confidence in the results is high enough to guide decision making. Sample sizes for concept testing are sometimes as small as 10 (e.g., when gathering qualitative feedback on a new surgical device for a highly specialized procedure) or as large as 1,000 (e.g., when trying to quantitatively assess the potential demand for a new kitchen appliance that is targeted at a market segment comprising 10 million households). Although there are no simple formulas for determining sample size, some of the factors driving sample size are shown in Exhibit 9-3.

Depending on the desired data to be collected from the concept-testing process, the team may actually structure multiple surveys with different objectives. Each of these surveys may involve a different sample population and a different sample size. The emPower team performed two different concept tests. In early concept testing, the team sampled only a dozen or so potential customers to solicit feedback on the attractiveness of the basic concept. Later, the team performed a purchase-intent survey of 1,000 customers. This survey was used to make a demand forecast on which production and financing decisions were based. Because of the importance of this objective, the team felt that the time and expense associated with such a large sample were justified.

Step 3: Choose a Survey Format

The following formats are commonly used in concept testing:

- ***Face-to-face interaction:*** In this format, an interviewer interacts directly with the respondent. Face-to-face interactions can take the form of *intercepts* (i.e., stopping people at a mall, in a park, or on a city street), interviews prearranged by telephone, interviews with potential customers at a trade-show booth, or focus groups (i.e., prearranged group discussions with 6–12 people).

- ***Telephone:*** Telephone interviews may be prearranged and targeted at very specific individuals (e.g., pediatric dentists) or may be "cold calls" of consumers from a target population.
- ***Postal mail:*** In mail surveys, concept-testing materials are sent and respondents are asked to return a completed form. Postal surveys are rarely used today due to relatively slow and poor response rates. Some kind of incentive—often cash or a gift—is sometimes offered to increase response.
- ***Electronic mail:*** E-mail surveys are very similar to postal mail surveys, except that (as of this writing) respondents seem slightly more likely to reply than via postal mail. With the proliferation of unwanted e-mail, this tendency may not persist. Many people react negatively to unsolicited commercial correspondence. We therefore recommend that e-mail surveys be used only when respondents are likely to perceive a benefit to their participation, or when the team has already established some kind of positive relationship with the target population.
- ***Internet:*** Using the Internet, a team may create a virtual concept-testing site in which survey participants can observe concepts and provide responses. An e-mail or social media message is usually used to recruit respondents to visit the test site.

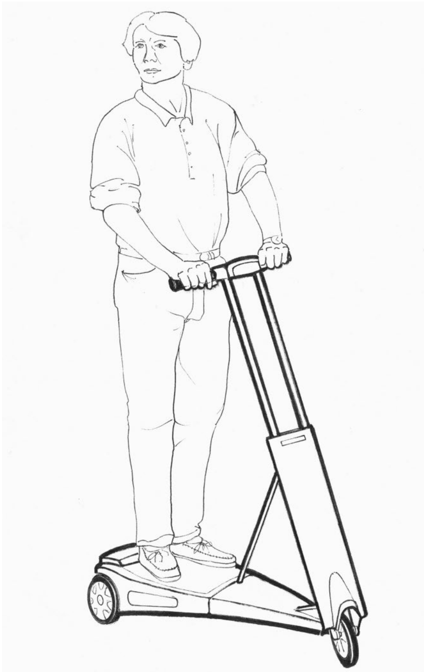
Each of these formats presents risks of sample bias. For example, the use of electronic formats may bias the sample toward those who are technologically sophisticated. For some products, this sophistication is part of the profile of the target market (e.g., the target market for Internet software products is likely to be comfortable with online survey formats). Conversely, an Internet survey might be a particularly bad format for testing a television-based computer concept targeted at people without personal computers.

Exploratory testing, typical in the early phases of concept development, benefits from open-ended interactive formats. We recommend that the team use face-to-face formats when presenting multiple concept alternatives or when soliciting ideas for improving a concept. In these settings, the product developers themselves benefit from performing the interviews because they can directly observe reactions to the product in rich detail. As the purpose of the concept test becomes more focused, more structured formats such as e-mail and telephone become more appropriate. If the questions are very focused, the team can hire a market research firm to implement the concept test. When gathering data intended primarily for use in forecasting demand, third parties are generally used to collect the data in face-to-face formats. This helps to avoid a sympathy bias—respondents indicating that they like the concept to please an anxious product developer.

Step 4: Communicate the Concept

The choice of survey format is closely linked to the way in which the concept will be communicated. Research into the use of sketches to represent concept alternatives finds that respondents react more favorably to representations that are more realistic (e.g., renderings) rather than stylized or rough sketches (Macomber and Yang, 2011). However, most importantly, alternative concepts should be presented in an identical manner—using the same media and the same level of detail—so that respondents can make fair comparisons among

EXHIBIT 9-4
Sketch of scooter concept.



Source: David Wallace

ideas. Concepts can be communicated in any of the following ways, listed in order of increasing richness of the description.

- ***Verbal description:*** A verbal description is generally a short paragraph or a collection of bullet points summarizing the product concept. This description may be read by the respondent or may be read aloud by the person administering the survey. For example, the scooter concept might be described as follows:

> The product is a lightweight electric scooter that can be easily folded and taken with you inside a building or on public transportation. The scooter weighs about 25 pounds. It travels at speeds up to 15 miles per hour and can go about 12 miles on a single charge. The scooter can be recharged in about two hours from a standard electric outlet. The scooter is easy to ride and has simple controls—just an accelerator button and a brake.

- ***Sketch:*** Sketches are usually line drawings showing the product in perspective, perhaps with annotations of key features. Exhibit 9-4 shows a sketch of the scooter concept.
- ***Photos and renderings:*** Photographs can be used to communicate the concept when appearance models exist for the product concept. Renderings are nearly photo-realistic illustrations of the concept. Renderings can be created with pens and markers or using computer-aided design tools. Exhibit 9-5 shows a rendering of the scooter created using computer-aided design software.
- ***Storyboard:*** A storyboard is a series of images that communicates a temporal sequence of actions involving the product. For example, one of the potential benefits of the scooter is that it can be easily stored and transported. This scenario is illustrated in the storyboard in Exhibit 9-6.

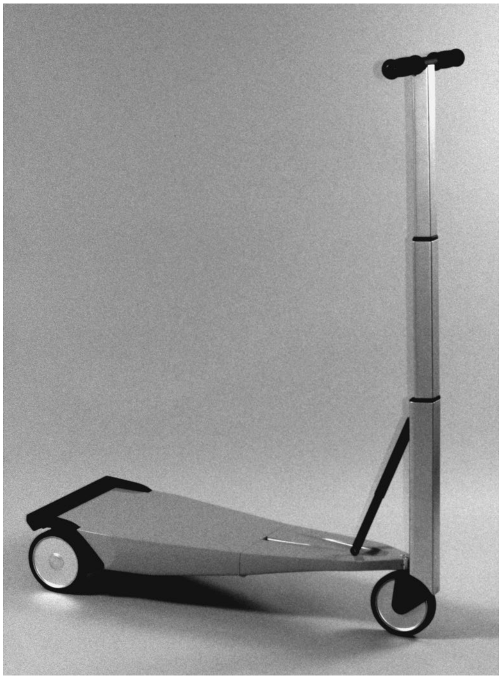
EXHIBIT 9-5
Rendering of the scooter from computer-aided design software.

Courtesy of emPower Corporation

EXHIBIT 9-6
Storyboard illustrating storage, transportation, and use scenarios.

Courtesy of emPower Corporation

EXHIBIT 9-7
Appearance model of the scooter concept.



Courtesy of emPower Corporation

- ***Video:*** Video images allow even more dynamism than the storyboard. With video, the form of the product itself can be clearly communicated, as can the way in which the product is used. The scooter team used a video in its purchase-intent survey. The video showed students and commuters riding prototypes of the product and showed an animation of the folding mechanism.
- ***Simulation:*** Simulation is generally implemented as software that mimics the function or interactive features of the product. Simulation would probably not be the ideal way to communicate the key features of a scooter, but in some other cases simulation can be effective. For example, in testing controls for electronic devices, a visual image of the device can be created on the computer screen, and the user can control the simulated device via a touch screen or mouse clicks and can observe simulated displays and sounds.
- ***Interactive multimedia:*** Interactive multimedia combines the visual richness of video with the interactivity of simulation. Using multimedia, you can display video and still images of the product. The respondent can view verbal and graphical information and can listen to audio information. Interaction allows the respondent to choose from among several sources of available information on the product, and in some cases to experience the controls and displays of a simulated product. Unfortunately, the development of multimedia systems remains expensive and therefore may be justified only for large product development efforts.
- ***Physical appearance models:*** Physical appearance models, also known as “looks-like” models, vividly display the form and appearance of a product. They are often made of wood or polymer foams and are painted to look like real products. In some cases, limited functionality is included in the model. The scooter team built several looks-like models, one of which was articulated so that the folding feature could be demonstrated. Exhibit 9-7 shows a photograph of this model.

EXHIBIT 9-8
Working prototype of the scooter concept.

Courtesy of emPower Corporation

- ***Working prototypes:*** When available, working prototypes, or works-like models, can be useful in concept testing; however, the use of working prototypes is also risky. The primary risk is that the respondents will equate the prototype with the finished product. In some cases, prototypes perform better than the ultimate product (e.g., because the prototype uses better, more expensive components such as motors or batteries). In most cases, the prototype performs worse than the ultimate product and is almost always less visually attractive than the ultimate product. Sometimes separate works-like and looks-like prototypes can be used, one to illustrate how the product will appear in production and the other to illustrate how it would work. Exhibit 9-8 shows a working prototype of the scooter, which was used in some early concept testing.

Matching the Survey Format with the Means of Communicating the Concept

The choice of survey format is tightly linked to the means of communicating the product concept. For example, the team obviously cannot demonstrate the scooter with a working model using a telephone survey. Exhibit 9-9 identifies which means of communicating concepts are appropriate for each survey format.

Issues in Communicating the Concept

When communicating the product concept, the team must decide how aggressively to promote the product and its benefits. The scooter could be described as an "electric-powered personal mobility device" or as an "exciting new electric scooter that provides freedom

EXHIBIT 9-9
Appropriateness of different survey formats for different ways of communicating the product concept.

	Telephone	Electronic Mail	Postal Mail	Internet	Face-to-Face
Verbal description	•	•	•	•	•
Sketch		•	•	•	•
Photo or rendering		•	•	•	•
Storyboard		•	•	•	•
Video				•	•
Simulation				•	•
Interactive multimedia				•	•
Physical appearance model					•
Working prototype					•

from gridlock." In our view, the description of the concept should closely mirror the information that the user is likely to consider when making a purchase decision. If highly promotional information is used, it can be labeled as a "sample advertisement," perhaps supplemented by mock-ups of "magazine articles" or "comments by current owners" providing additional descriptions of the product.

Researchers and practitioners argue endlessly about whether the purchase price of the product should be included as part of the concept description. Price is a very powerful lever on customer response, and, therefore, pricing information can dramatically influence the results of a concept test. We recommend that price be omitted from the concept description unless the price of the product is expected to be unusually high or low. For example, the primary benefit of a concept may be that it provides basic functionality at a very low price. In this case, price must be included as part of the concept description. Conversely, a product may provide extremely high performance or unique features, but only at a relatively high price. In this case, price must also be included as part of the concept description. When the price of the product is likely to be quite similar to existing products and to customer expectations, price can be omitted from the concept description. Instead of including price in the concept description, we suggest that the respondent be asked explicitly what his or her expectation of price would be. If the resulting customer expectations differ substantially from the team's pricing plans, then the team may need to either consider modifications to the concept or repeat the concept test including price as a product attribute. Because the scooter was a new product category, for which customers had not developed clear pricing expectations, the emPower team chose to include their target price as part of the concept description.

Instead of showing a single concept, the team may choose to ask a respondent to select from several alternatives. This approach is attractive when the team is trying to decide among several concepts under consideration. A variant on this approach is to present the concept for the new product along with descriptions and pictures of the most successful existing products. This approach has the advantage of allowing respondents to directly assess attributes of the product concept in comparison to those of competitors. Assuming the products would be equally distributed and promoted, this approach also allows the team to estimate potential market share. Using a forced-choice survey technique is likely to be most effective in cases for which there is a narrowly defined product category with relatively few existing products.

Step 5: Measure Customer Response

Most concept test surveys first communicate the product concept and then measure customer response. When a concept test is performed early in the concept development phase, customer response is usually measured by asking the respondent to choose from two or more alternative concepts. Additional questions focus on why respondents react the way they do and on how the product concepts could be improved. Concept tests also generally attempt to measure *purchase intent*. The most commonly used purchase-intent scale has five response categories:

- Definitely would buy.
- Probably would buy.
- Might or might not buy.
- Probably would not buy.
- Definitely would not buy.

There are many alternatives to this scale, including providing seven or more response categories or asking respondents to indicate a numerical probability of purchase.

Exhibit 9-10 shows an example of a survey form for the scooter. This form was designed to be an interview guide for a face-to-face format in which both an advertisement and a working prototype were used to communicate the product concept.

Step 6: Interpret the Results

If the team is simply interested in comparing two or more concepts, interpretation of the results is straightforward. If one concept dominates the others and the team is confident that the respondents understood the key differences among the concepts, then the team can simply choose the preferred concept. If the results are not conclusive, the team may decide to choose a concept based on cost or other considerations, or may decide to offer multiple versions of the product. Note that care must be applied in making this judgment for cases in which manufacturing costs are dramatically different among the concepts under comparison and in which no price information is communicated to the respondents. In such cases, respondents may be biased to select the most costly alternative.

In many cases the team is also interested in estimating the demand for a product in the period following launch, usually one year. Here we present a model for estimating the sales potential of *durables*. By *durables* we mean products that last several years, and for which there is, therefore, a negligible repeat-purchase rate. These products are in contrast to consumer packaged goods, like razor blades, toothpaste, or frozen food, for which forecasting models must consider rates of trial and subsequent repeat purchase.

Before proceeding with the model, we note that forecasting sales of new products is subject to a great deal of uncertainty and exhibits notoriously high errors. Nevertheless, forecasts do tend to be correlated with actual demand and so provide useful information to the team.

We estimate Q, the quantity of the product expected to be sold during a time period, as

$$Q = N \times A \times P$$

CONCEPT TEST SURVEY— Electric Powered Personal Transportation Device

I am gathering information for a new transportation product and am hoping that you would be willing to share your opinions with me.

Are you a college student?____________

<If the response is no, thank the respondent and end the survey.>

Do you live between one and three miles from campus?______________

Do you travel distances of one to three miles between classes or other activities during your day?__________

*<If the response is no to this **and** the previous question, thank the respondent and end the survey.>*

How do you currently get to campus from your home: ________________

How do you currently get around campus during the day: ________________

Here is an ad for the product. *<Show the advertisement.>*

The product is a lightweight electric scooter that can be easily folded and taken with you inside a building or on public transportation. The scooter weighs about 25 pounds. It travels at speeds of up to 15 miles per hour and can go about 12 miles on a single charge. The scooter can be recharged in about two hours from a standard electric outlet. The scooter is easy to ride and has simple controls—just an accelerator button and a brake.

If the product were priced at $689 and were available from a dealer on or near campus, how likely would you be to purchase the scooter within the next year?

❑	❑	❑	❑	❑
I would **definitely not purchase** the scooter	I would **probably not purchase** the scooter	I **might or might not purchase** the scooter	I would **probably purchase** the scooter	I would **definitely purchase** the scooter

Would you be interested in test riding a prototype of the product?

<Provide operating instructions and fit the helmet.>

Based on your experience with the product, how likely would you be to purchase the product within the next year?

❑	❑	❑	❑	❑
I would **definitely not purchase** the scooter	I would **probably not purchase** the scooter	I **might or might not purchase** the scooter	I would **probably purchase** the scooter	I would **definitely purchase** the scooter

How might this product be improved?

<Ask open-ended questions to elicit feedback on the concept.>

EXHIBIT 9-10 Example interview guide (abridged) for a concept test of the electric scooter.

N is the number of potential customers expected to make purchases during the time period. For an existing and stable product category (e.g., bicycles) *N* is the expected number of purchases to be made of existing products in the category over the time period.

A is the fraction of these potential customers or purchases for which the product is *available* and the customer is *aware* of the product. (In situations where awareness and availability are assumed to be separate independent factors, they are multiplied together to generate *A*.)

P is the probability that the product is purchased if available and if the customer is aware of it. *P* is estimated in turn by

$$P = C_{\text{definitely}} \times F_{\text{definitely}} + C_{\text{probably}} \times F_{\text{probably}}$$

$F_{\text{definitely}}$ is the fraction of survey respondents indicating in the concept test survey that they would *definitely purchase* (often called the "top box" score).

F_{probably} is the fraction of survey respondents indicating that they would *probably purchase* (often called the "second box" score).

$C_{\text{definitely}}$ and C_{probably} are calibration constants usually established based on the experience of a company with similar products in the past. Generally the values of $C_{\text{definitely}}$ and C_{probably} fall in these intervals: $0.10 < C_{\text{definitely}} < 0.50$, $0 < C_{\text{probably}} < 0.25$. Absent prior history, many teams use values of $C_{\text{definitely}} = 0.4$ and $C_{\text{probably}} = 0.2$. Note that these values reflect the typical bias of respondents to *overestimate* the probability that they would actually purchase the product.

Among other possible schemes for estimating P is a function that includes the fraction of respondents in all of the response categories, not just the top two.

For a product associated with an entirely new category (e.g., portable commuter scooters), the interpretation of these variables is slightly different. In this case, N is the number of customers in the target market for the new product, and P is the probability of a target-market customer purchasing the product within a given time period, often a year. Note that this interpretation is reflected in the survey questions in Exhibit 9-10, in which the respondent is asked to indicate the likelihood of purchase "within the next year."

To clarify the model, consider these two numerical examples corresponding to two different market segments and possible product positionings for the scooter concept.

Scooter Sold as Single-Person Transportation in Large Factories This is an existing category. Assume that scooters are currently sold into this market at a rate of 150,000 units per year ($N = 150{,}000$). Assume that the company sells the product through a single distributor that accounts for 25 percent of the sales in this category ($A = 0.25$). Assume that results from a concept test with factory managers responsible for purchasing transportation devices indicate a definitely-would-buy fraction of 0.30 and probably-would-buy fraction of 0.20. If we use a value of 0.4 for $C_{\text{definitely}}$ and 0.2 for C_{probably}, then

$$P = 0.4 \times 0.30 + 0.2 \times 0.20 = 0.16$$

and

$$Q = 150{,}000 \times 0.25 \times 0.16 = 6{,}000 \text{ units/year}$$

Scooter Sold to College Students This is a new category and therefore poses a much more difficult estimation challenge. First, what should be the value of N? Strictly speaking (as of this writing) there are very few existing sales of electric scooters to college students; however, we could define N several other ways. For example, how many students purchase bicycles or motor scooters intended for basic transportation of up to two miles. This number is approximately 1 million per year. Alternatively, how many students must travel distances of between one and three miles either in commuting from home or traveling between classes or other school activities. This number is approximately 2 million. Assume that we sample students in this second group, and that we obtain a definitely-would-buy fraction of 0.10 and a probably-would-buy fraction of 0.05. (Note that these numbers represent the fraction of respondents that indicate intent to purchase within one year.) Further assume that the company plans to sell the scooter through bicycle stores near campuses and advertise in campus newspapers, for the 100 largest college campuses in the

United States. Based on this plan, the company expects that 30 percent of the students in the target market will be aware of the product and have convenient access to a dealer. If we use a value of 0.4 for $C_{\text{definitely}}$ and 0.2 for C_{probably}, then

$$P = 0.4 \times 0.10 + 0.2 \times 0.05 = 0.05$$

and

$$Q = 2{,}000{,}000 \times 0.30 \times 0.05 = 30{,}000 \text{ units in the first year}$$

The results of forecasts based on concept testing should be interpreted with caution. Some firms, mostly after repeated experience with similar products, have achieved impressive levels of accuracy in their forecasts. While forecasts do tend to be correlated with actual sales, most individual forecasts exhibit substantial errors. Some of the factors that can cause actual purchase patterns to differ from the purchase intentions expressed in surveys include:

- ***Importance of word-of-mouth and social media:*** When the benefits of a product are not immediately obvious, the enthusiasm of existing users may be an important factor in generating demand. This factor is not generally captured in concept testing.
- ***Fidelity of the concept description:*** If the actual product differs substantially from the description of the product in the concept test, then actual sales are likely to differ from the forecast.
- ***Pricing:*** If the price of the product deviates substantially from the price indicated in the survey, or from the expectations of survey respondents, then forecasts are likely to be inaccurate.
- ***Level of promotion:*** Spending on advertising and other forms of promotion can increase demand for most products. The influence of promotion is accounted for only weakly in the forecasting model via the awareness/availability term and via the materials used to present the concept(s).

Step 7: Reflect on the Results and the Process

The primary benefit of the concept test is in getting feedback from real potential customers. The qualitative insights gathered through open-ended discussions with respondents about the proposed concepts may be the most important result of concept testing, especially early in the development process. The team should reflect on this evidence as well as on the numerical outcome of its forecast.

The team benefits from thinking about the impact of the three key variables in the forecasting model: (1) the overall size of the market, (2) the availability and awareness of the product, and (3) the fraction of customers who are likely to purchase. Considering alternative markets for the product can sometimes increase the first factor. The second factor can be increased through distribution arrangements and promotion plans. The third factor can be increased through changes to the product design (and possibly advertising) that improve the attractiveness of the product. In considering these factors, a sensitivity analysis can yield useful insights and aids in decision making. For example, what would be the impact on sales if the team were able to secure a partnership with a retailer and therefore increase A by 20 percent?

In reflecting on the results of the concept test, the team should ask two key diagnostic questions. First, was the concept communicated in a way that is likely to elicit customer response that reflects true intent? For example, if one of the primary benefits of the concept is its aesthetic appeal, was the concept presented in a way that this aspect of the product was clear to respondents? Second, is the resulting forecast consistent with observed sales rates of similar products? For example, if only 1,000 gasoline-powered GoPed scooters (a competing product) are currently sold to college students each year, why does the emPower team believe it will sell 30 times as many of its product?

Finally, we note that experience with a new product is likely to be applicable to future, similar products. The team can benefit from its experience by documenting the results of its concept testing and by attempting to reconcile these results with subsequent observations of product success.

Summary

A concept test solicits a direct response to a description of the product concept from potential customers in the target market. Concept testing is distinct from concept selection in that it is based on data gathered directly from potential customers and relies to a lesser degree on judgments made by the development team.

- Concept testing can verify that customer needs have been adequately met by the product concept, assess the sales potential of a product concept, and/or gather customer information for refining the product concept.
- Concept testing is appropriate at several different points in the development process: when identifying the original product opportunity, when selecting which of two or more concepts should be pursued, when assessing the sales potential of a product concept, and/or when deciding whether to continue further development and commercialization of the product.
- We recommend a seven-step method for testing product concepts:

  1. Define the purpose of the concept test.
  2. Choose a survey population.
  3. Choose a survey format.
  4. Communicate the concept.
  5. Measure customer response.
  6. Interpret the results.
  7. Reflect on the results and the process.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Crawford and Di Benedetto examine some forecasting models of frequently purchased goods.
Crawford, C. Merle, and C. Anthony Di Benedetto, *New Products Management,* eleventh edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2015.

Jamieson and Bass review methods for interpreting purchase-intent data and discuss the factors that may explain differences between stated intention and behavior.

Jamieson, Linda F., and Frank M. Bass, "Adjusting Stated Intention Measures to Predict Trial Purchase of New Products: A Comparison of Models and Methods," *Journal of Marketing Research,* Vol. 26, August 1989, pp. 336–345.

When forecasting the growth of a new product category, diffusion models, which are discussed by Mahajan et al., may be useful.

Mahajan, Vijay, Eitan Muller, and Frank M. Bass, "Diffusion of New Products: Empirical Generalizations and Managerial Uses," *Marketing Science,* Vol. 14, No. 3, Part 2 of 2, 1995, pp. G79–G88.

Vriens and his colleagues report on a study of the differences in concept-testing results using verbal descriptions and pictorial descriptions of products.

Vriens, Marco, Gerard H. Loosschilder, Edward Rosbergen, and Dick R. Wittink, "Verbal versus Realistic Pictorial Representations in Conjoint Analysis with Design Attributes," *Journal of Product Innovation Management,* Vol. 15, No. 5, 1998, pp. 455–467.

Macomber and Yang compared various formats used to express concepts to customers and found that respondents prefer more detailed representations and that sketching style can therefore bias concept-testing results.

Macomber, Bryan, and Maria C. Yang, "The Role of Sketch Finish and Style in User Responses to Early Stage Design Concepts," ASME International Design Engineering Technical Conferences, August 2011.

Dahan and Srinivasan show that the results of concept testing using the Internet are very similar to those using physical models of the product concepts.

Dahan, Ely, and V. Srinivasan, "The Predictive Power of Internet-Based Product Concept Testing Using Visual Depiction and Animation," *Journal of Product Innovation Management,* Vol. 17, No. 2, March 2000, pp. 99–109.

Exercises

1. What are some different ways you could communicate a concept for a new user interface for an automobile audio system? What are the strengths and weaknesses of each approach?
2. Roughly estimate *N* for the following products. List your assumptions.
   a. A sleeping pillow for air travelers.
   b. An electronic weather station (monitoring temperature, pressure, humidity, etc.) for homes.

Thought Questions

1. Why do you think respondents typically overestimate the likelihood that they will purchase a product?
2. When might it not be advantageous to communicate the product concept to potential customers using a working prototype? Under what circumstances is it better to use some other format?

Appendix

Estimating Market Sizes

Rough estimates of market size can often be made through comparisons with similar products or with known sizes of demographic groups. Exhibits 9-11 and 9-12 (and many online sources) contain some numbers that may be useful.

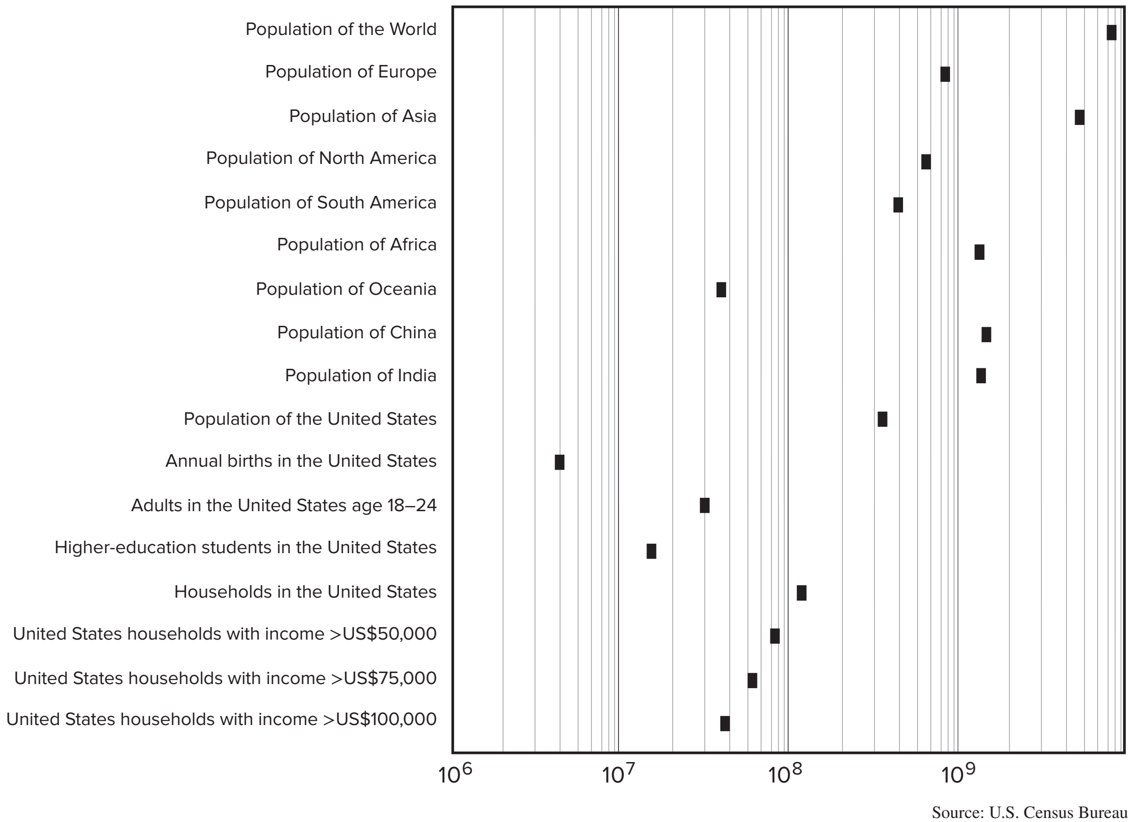
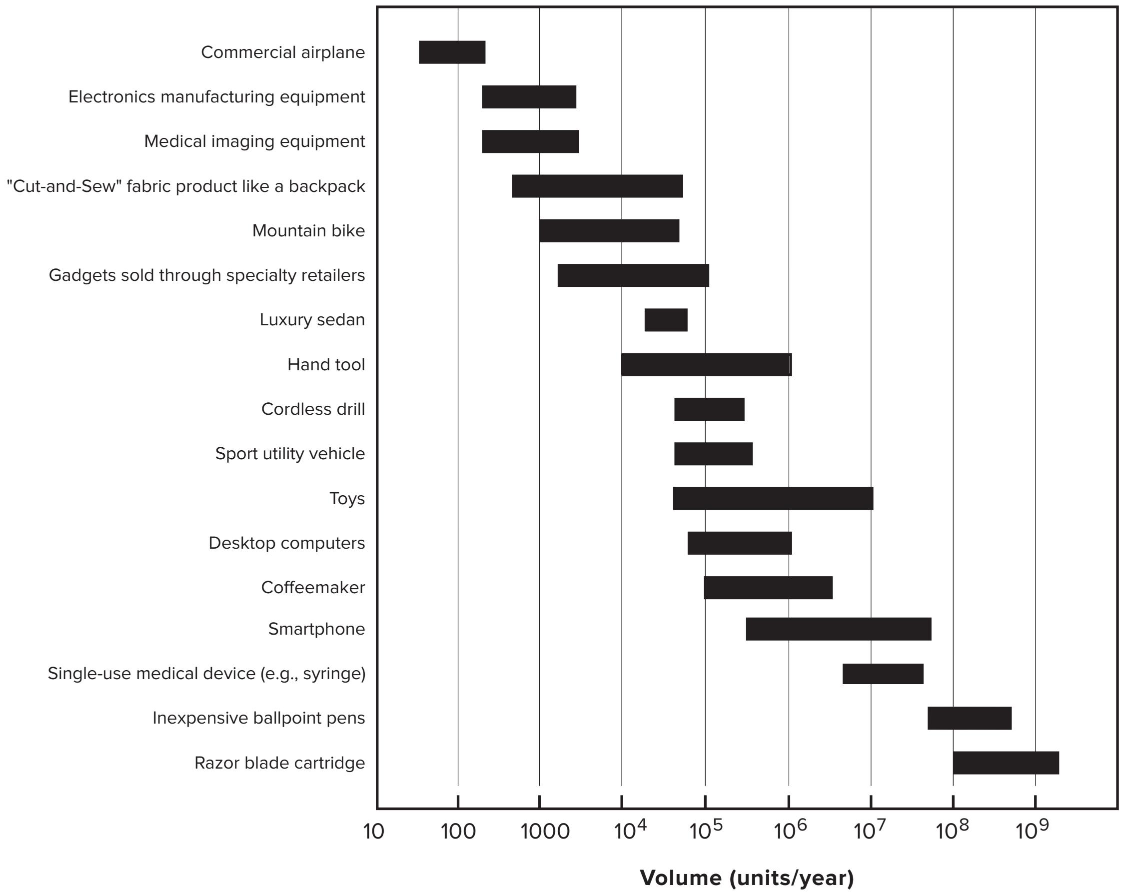


EXHIBIT 9-11 Approximate population and demographic data as of 2019.



Source: Various

EXHIBIT 9-12 Approximate annual sales volume of miscellaneous products. These figures represent the volume of a typical single model produced by a single manufacturer.

CHAPTER TEN

Product Architecture

Courtesy of Hewlett-Packard Company

EXHIBIT 10-1
Three Hewlett-Packard printers from the same product platform: an office model, a photo model, and a model including scanning capability.

A product development team within Hewlett-Packard's home printing division was considering how to respond to the simultaneous pressures to increase product variety and to reduce manufacturing costs. Several of the division's printer products are shown in Exhibit 10-1. Ink jet printing had become the dominant technology for consumer and small-office printing involving color. Excellent black-and-white print quality and near-photographic color print quality could be obtained using a printer costing less than $200. Driven by the increasing value of color ink jet printers, sales of the three leading competitors together were millions of units per year; however, as the market matured, commercial success required that printers be tuned to the subtle needs of more focused market segments and that the manufacturing costs of these products be continually reduced.

In considering their next steps, the team members asked:

- How would the architecture of the product impact their ability to offer product variety?
- What would be the cost implications of different product architectures?
- How would the architecture of the product impact their ability to complete the design within 12 months?
- How would the architecture of the product influence their ability to manage the development process?

Product architecture is the assignment of the functional elements of a product to the physical building blocks of the product. We focus this chapter on the task of establishing the product architecture. The purpose of the product architecture is to define the basic physical building blocks of the product in terms of what they do and what their interfaces are to the rest of the device. Architectural decisions allow the detailed design and testing of these building blocks to be assigned to teams, individuals, and/or suppliers, such that development of different portions of the product can be carried out simultaneously.

In the next two sections of this chapter, we define product architecture and illustrate the profound implications of architectural decisions using, as examples, the Hewlett-Packard printer and several other products. We then present a method for establishing the product architecture and focus on the printer example for illustration. (Note that the details of the printer example have been somewhat disguised to preserve Hewlett-Packard's proprietary product information.) After presenting the method, we discuss the relationships among product architecture, product variety, and supply-chain performance, and we provide guidance for platform planning, an activity closely linked to the product architecture.

What Is Product Architecture?

A product can be thought of in both functional and physical terms. The *functional elements* of a product are the individual operations and transformations that contribute to the overall performance of the product. For a printer, some of the functional elements are "store paper" and "communicate with host computer." Functional elements are usually described in schematic form before they are reduced to specific technologies, components, or physical working principles.

The *physical elements* of a product are the parts, components, and subassemblies that ultimately implement the product's functions. The physical elements become more defined as development progresses. Some physical elements are dictated by the product concept, and others become defined during the detail design phase. For example, the DeskJet embodies a product concept involving a thermal ink delivery device, implemented by a print cartridge. This physical element is inextricably linked to the product concept and was essentially an assumption of the development project.

The physical elements of a product are typically organized into several major physical building blocks, which we call *chunks*. Each chunk is then made up of a collection of components that implement the functions of the product. The *architecture* of a product is the scheme by which the functional elements of the product are arranged into physical chunks and by which the chunks interact.

Perhaps the most important characteristic of a product's architecture is its modularity. Consider the two different designs for bicycle braking and shifting controls shown in Exhibit 10-2. In the traditional design (left), the shift control function and the brake control function are allocated to separate chunks, which in fact are mounted in separate locations on the bicycle. This design exhibits a modular architecture. In the design on the right, the shift and brake control functions are allocated to the same chunk. This design exhibits an integral architecture—in this case motivated by aerodynamic and ergonomic concerns.

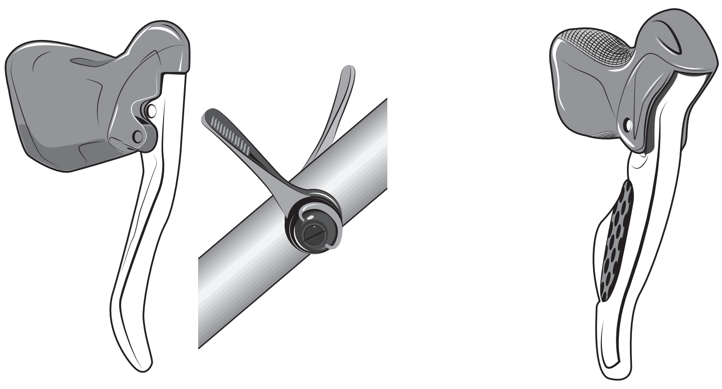
A *modular architecture* has the following two properties:

- Chunks implement one or a few functional elements in their entirety.
- The interactions between chunks are well defined and are generally fundamental to the primary functions of the product.

The most modular architecture is one in which each functional element of the product is implemented by exactly one physical chunk and in which there are a few well-defined interactions between the chunks. Such a modular architecture allows a design change to be made to one chunk without requiring a change to other chunks for the product to function correctly. The chunks may also be designed quite independently of one another.

The opposite of a modular architecture is an *integral architecture*. An integral architecture exhibits one or more of the following properties:

EXHIBIT 10-2
Two designs of bicycle brake and shift controls. The levers on the left exemplify a modular architecture; the lever on the right uses an integral architecture.



- Functional elements of the product are implemented using more than one chunk.
- A single chunk implements many functional elements.
- The interactions between chunks are ill defined and may be incidental to the primary functions of the products.

A product embodying an integral architecture will often be designed with the highest possible performance in mind. Implementation of functional elements may be distributed across multiple chunks. Boundaries between the chunks may be difficult to identify or may be nonexistent. Many functional elements may be combined into a few physical components to optimize certain dimensions of performance; however, modifications to any one particular component or feature may require extensive redesign of the product.

Modularity is a relative property of a product architecture. Products are rarely strictly modular or integral. Rather, we can say that they exhibit either more or less modularity than a comparative product, as in the brake and shift controls example in Exhibit 10-2.

Types of Modularity

Modular architectures comprise three types: slot, bus, and sectional (Ulrich, 1995). Each type embodies a one-to-one mapping from functional elements to chunks and well-defined interfaces. The differences between these types lie in the way the interactions between chunks are organized. Exhibit 10-3 illustrates the conceptual differences among these types of architectures.

- ***Slot-modular architecture:*** Each of the interfaces between chunks in a slot-modular architecture is of a different type from the others, so that the various chunks in the product cannot be interchanged. An automobile radio is an example of a chunk in a slot-modular architecture. The radio implements exactly one function, but its interface is different from any of the other components in the vehicle (e.g., radios and speedometers have different types of interfaces to the instrument panel).
- ***Bus-modular architecture:*** In a bus-modular architecture, there is a common *bus* to which the other chunks connect via the same type of interface. A common example of a chunk in a bus-modular architecture would be an expansion card for a personal computer. Nonelectronic products can also be built around a bus-modular architecture. Track lighting, shelving systems with rails, and adjustable roof racks for automobiles all embody a bus-modular architecture.

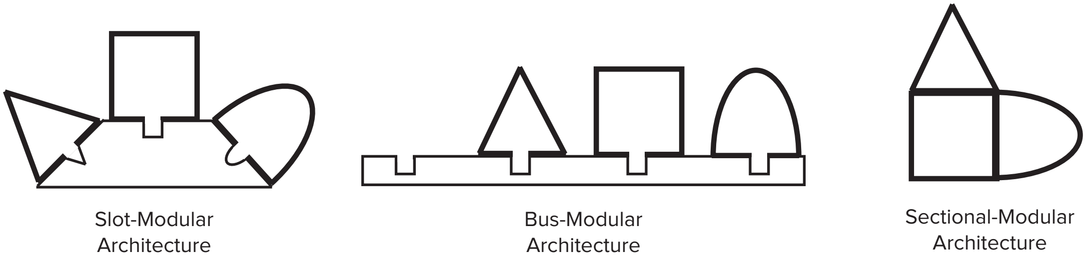


EXHIBIT 10-3 Three types of modular architectures.

- ***Sectional-modular architecture:*** In a sectional-modular architecture, all interfaces are of the same type, but there is no single element to which all the other chunks attach. The assembly is built up by connecting the chunks to each other via identical interfaces. Many piping systems adhere to a sectional-modular architecture, as do sectional sofas, office partitions, and some computer systems.

Slot-modular architectures are the most common of the modular architectures because for most products each chunk requires a different interface to accommodate unique interactions between that chunk and the rest of the product. Bus-modular and sectional-modular architectures are particularly useful for situations in which the overall product must vary widely in configuration, but whose chunks can interact in standard ways with the rest of the product. These situations can arise when all of the chunks can use the same type of power, fluid connection, structural attachment, or exchanges of signals.

When Is the Product Architecture Defined?

A product's architecture begins to emerge during concept development. This happens informally—in the sketches, function diagrams, and early prototypes of the concept development phase. Generally, the maturity of the basic product technology dictates whether the product architecture is fully defined during concept development or during system-level design. When the new product is an incremental improvement on an existing product concept, then the product architecture is defined within the product concept. This is for two reasons. First, the basic technologies and working principles of the product are predefined, and so conceptual-design efforts are generally focused on better ways to embody the given concept. Second, as a product category matures, supply chain (i.e., production and distribution) considerations and issues of product variety begin to become more prominent. Product architecture is one of the development decisions that most impacts a firm's ability to efficiently deliver high product variety. Architecture therefore becomes a central element of the product concept; however, when the new product is the first of its kind, concept development is generally concerned with the basic working principles and technology on which the product will be based. In this case, the product architecture is often the initial focus of the system-level design phase of development.

Implications of the Architecture

Decisions about how to divide the product into chunks and about how much modularity to impose on the architecture are tightly linked to several issues of importance to the entire enterprise: product change, product variety, component standardization, product performance, manufacturability, and product development management. The architecture of the product therefore is closely linked to decisions about marketing strategy, manufacturing capabilities, and product development management.

Product Change

Chunks are the physical building blocks of the product, but the architecture of the product defines how these blocks relate to the function of the product. The architecture therefore also defines how the product can be changed. Modular chunks allow changes to be made to a few isolated functional elements of the product without necessarily affecting the design of other chunks. Changing an integral chunk may influence many functional elements and require changes to several related chunks.

Some of the motives for product change are:

- ***Upgrade:*** As technological capabilities or user needs evolve, some products can accommodate this evolution through upgrades. Examples include changing the processor board in a computer printer or replacing a pump in a cooling system with a more powerful model.
- ***Add-ons:*** Many products are sold by a manufacturer as a basic unit, to which the user adds components, often produced by third parties, as needed. This type of change is common in the personal computer industry (e.g., third-party mass storage devices may be added to a basic computer).
- ***Adaptation:*** Some long-lived products may be used in several different use environments, requiring adaptation. For example, machine tools may need to be converted from 220-volt to 110-volt power. Some engines can be converted from a gasoline to a propane fuel supply.
- ***Wear:*** Physical elements of a product may deteriorate with use, necessitating replacement of the worn components to extend the useful life of the product. For example, many razors allow dull blades to be replaced, tires on vehicles can usually be replaced, most rotational bearings can be replaced, and many appliance motors can be replaced.
- ***Consumption:*** Some products consume materials, which can then be easily replenished. For example, copiers and printers frequently contain print cartridges, cameras take film cartridges, glue guns consume glue sticks, torches have gas cartridges, and watches contain batteries, all of which are generally replaceable.
- ***Flexibility in use:*** Some products can be configured by the user to provide different capabilities. For example, many cameras can be used with different lens and flash options, some boats can be used with several awning options, and fishing rods may accommodate several rod-reel configurations.
- ***Reuse:*** In creating subsequent products, the firm may wish to change only a few functional elements while retaining the rest of the product intact. For example, consumer electronics manufacturers may wish to update a product line by changing only the user interface and enclosure while retaining the inner workings from a previous model.

In each of these cases, a modular architecture allows the firm to minimize the *physical* changes required to achieve a *functional* change.

Product Variety

Variety refers to the range of product models the firm can produce within a particular time period in response to market demand. Products built around modular product architectures can be more easily varied without adding tremendous complexity to the manufacturing system. For example, Swatch produces hundreds of different watch models, but can achieve this variety at relatively low cost by assembling the variants from different combinations of standard chunks (Exhibit 10-4). A large number of different hands, faces, and wristbands can be combined with a relatively small selection of movements and cases to create seemingly endless combinations.

EXHIBIT 10-4
Swatch uses a modular architecture to enable high-variety manufacturing.

Photo by Stuart Cohen

Component Standardization

Component standardization is the use of the same component or chunk in multiple products. If a chunk implements only one or a few widely useful functional elements, then the chunk can be standardized and used in several different products. Such standardization allows the firm to manufacture the chunk in higher volumes than would otherwise be possible. This in turn may lead to lower costs and increased quality. For example, the watch movement shown in Exhibit 10-4 is identical for many Swatch models. Component standardization may also occur outside the firm when several manufacturers' products all use a chunk or component from the same supplier. For example, the watch battery shown in Exhibit 10-4 is made by a supplier and standardized across several manufacturers' product lines.

Product Performance

We define *product performance* as how well a product implements its intended functions. Typical product performance characteristics are speed, efficiency, life, accuracy, and noise. An integral architecture facilitates the optimization of holistic performance characteristics and those that are driven by the size, shape, and mass of a product. Such characteristics include acceleration, energy consumption, aerodynamic drag, noise, and aesthetics. Consider, for example, a motorcycle. A conventional motorcycle architecture assigns the structural-support functional element to a frame chunk and the power-conversion functional element to a transmission chunk. Exhibit 10-5 shows a photograph of the BMW S1000RR. The architecture of this motorcycle assigns both the structural-support function and the power-conversion function to the transmission chunk. This integral architecture allows the motorcycle designers to exploit the secondary structural properties of the transmission casing to eliminate the extra size and mass of a separate frame. The practice of implementing

EXHIBIT 10-5
The BMW S1000RR motorcycle. This product exhibits function sharing and an integral architecture with the design of its transmission chunk.

Courtesy of BMW Motorcycle Group

multiple functions using a single physical element is called *function sharing*. An integral architecture allows for redundancy to be eliminated through function sharing (as in the case of the motorcycle) and allows for geometric nesting of components to minimize the volume a product occupies. Such function sharing and nesting also allow material use to be minimized, potentially reducing the cost of manufacturing the product.

Manufacturability

In addition to the cost implications of product variety and component standardization described above, the product architecture also directly affects the ability of the team to design each chunk to be produced at low cost. One important design-for-manufacturing (DFM) strategy involves the minimization of the number of parts in a product through *component integration;* however, to maintain a given architecture, the integration of physical components can only be easily considered within each of the chunks. Component integration across several chunks is difficult, if not impossible, and would alter the architecture dramatically. Because the product architecture constrains subsequent detail design decisions in this way, the team must consider the manufacturing implications of the architecture. For this reason DFM begins during the system-level design phase while the layout of the chunks is being planned. For details about the implementation of DFM, see Chapter 13, Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain.

Product Development Management

Responsibility for the detail design of each chunk is usually assigned to a relatively small group within the firm or to an outside supplier. Chunks are assigned to a single individual or group because their design requires careful resolution of interactions, geometric and otherwise, among components within the chunk. With a modular architecture, the group assigned to design a chunk deals with known, and relatively limited, functional interactions with other chunks. If a functional element is implemented by two or more chunks, as in some integral architectures, detail design will require close coordination among different groups. This coordination is likely to be substantially more involved and challenging than the limited coordination required among groups designing different chunks in a modular design. For this reason, teams relying on outside suppliers or on a geographically dispersed team often opt for a modular architecture in which development responsibilities can be split according to the chunk boundaries. Another possibility is to have several functional elements allocated to the same chunk. In this case, the work of the group assigned to that chunk involves a great deal of internal coordination across a larger group.

Modular and integral architectures also demand different project management styles. Modular approaches require very careful planning during the system-level design phase, but detail design is largely concerned with ensuring that the teams assigned to chunks are meeting the performance, cost, and schedule requirements for their chunks. An integral architecture may require less planning and specification during system-level design, but such an architecture requires substantially more integration, conflict resolution, and coordination during the detail design phase.

Establishing the Architecture

Because the product architecture will have profound implications for subsequent product development activities and for the manufacturing and marketing of the completed product, it should be established in a cross-functional effort by the development team. The end result of this activity is an approximate geometric layout of the product, descriptions of the major chunks, and documentation of the key interactions among the chunks. We recommend a four-step method to structure the decision process, which is illustrated using the DeskJet printer example. The steps are:

1. Create a schematic of the product.
2. Cluster the elements of the schematic.
3. Create a rough geometric layout.
4. Identify the fundamental and incidental interactions.

Step 1: Create a Schematic of the Product

A *schematic* is a diagram representing the team's understanding of the constituent elements of the product. A schematic for the DeskJet is shown in Exhibit 10-6. At the end of the concept development phase, some of the elements in the schematic are physical concepts, such as the front-in/front-out paper path. Some of the elements correspond to critical components, such as the print cartridge the team expects to use; however, some of the elements remain described only functionally. These are the functional elements of the product that have not yet been reduced to physical concepts or components. For example, "display status" is a functional element required for the printer, but the particular approach of the display has not yet been decided. Those elements that have been reduced

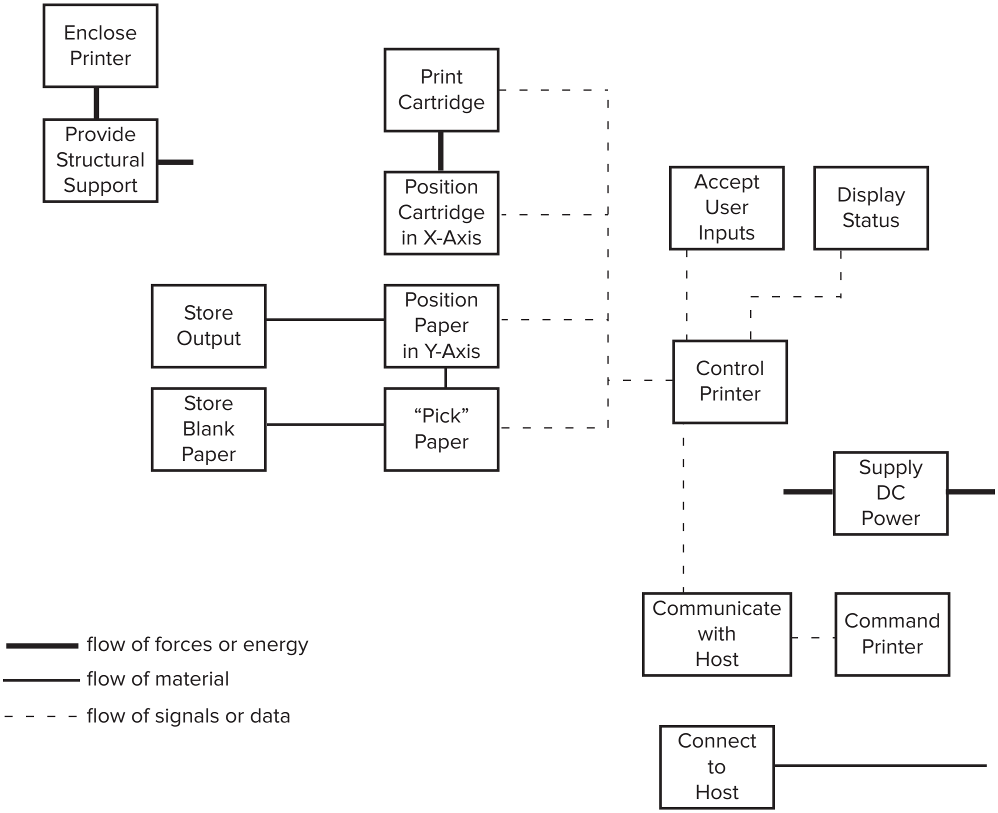


EXHIBIT 10-6 Schematic of the DeskJet printer. Note the presence of both functional elements (e.g., "Store Output") and physical elements (e.g., "Print Cartridge"). For clarity, not all connections among elements are shown.

to physical concepts or components are usually central to the basic product concept the team has generated and selected. Those elements that remain unspecified in physical terms are usually ancillary functions of the product.

The schematic should reflect the team's best understanding of the state of the product, but it does not have to contain every imaginable detail, such as "sense out-of-paper condition" or "shield radio frequency emissions." These and other more detailed functional elements are deferred to a later step. A good rule of thumb is to aim for fewer than 30 elements in the schematic, for the purpose of establishing the product architecture. If the product is a complex system, involving hundreds of functional elements, then it is useful to omit some of the minor ones and to group some others into higher-level functions to be decomposed later. (See Defining Secondary Systems, later in this chapter.)

The schematic created will not be unique. The specific choices made in creating the schematic, such as the choice of functional elements and their arrangement, partly define the product architecture. For example, the functional element "control printer" is represented as a single centralized element in Exhibit 10-6. An alternative would be to distribute the control of each of the other elements of the product throughout the system and

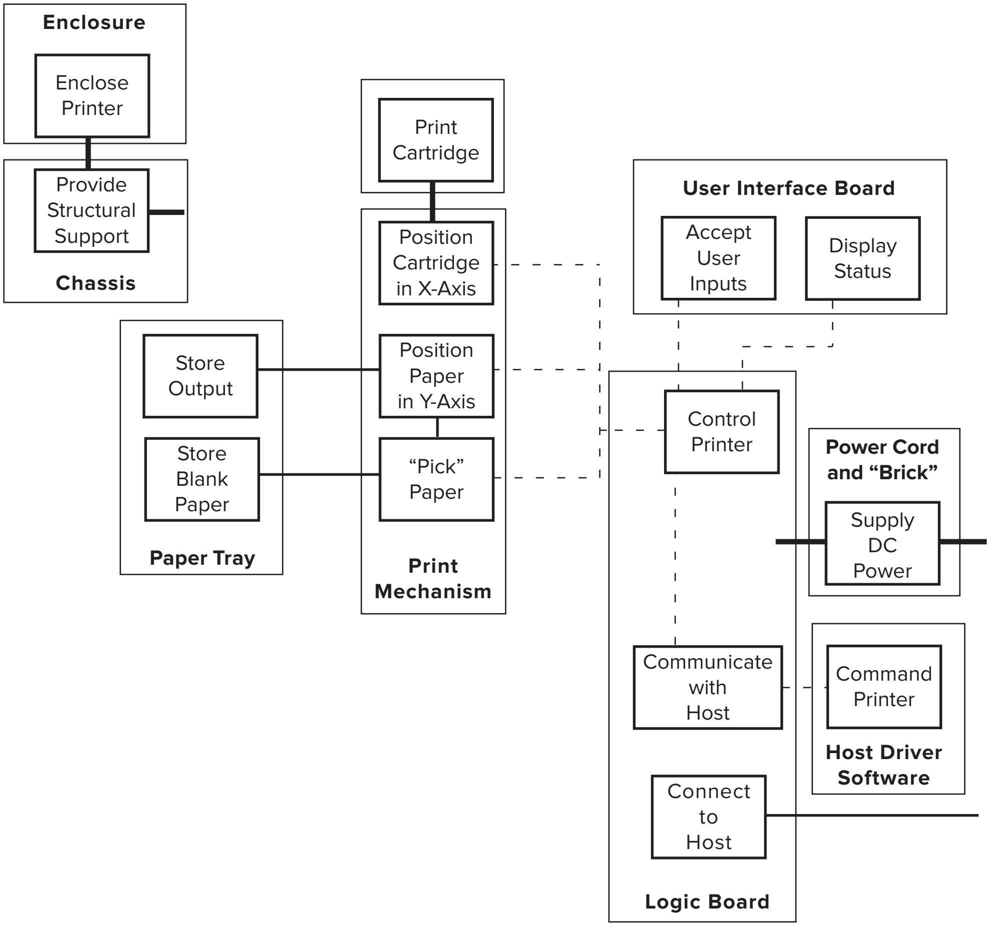


EXHIBIT 10-7 Clustering the elements into chunks. Nine chunks make up this proposed architecture for the DeskJet printer.

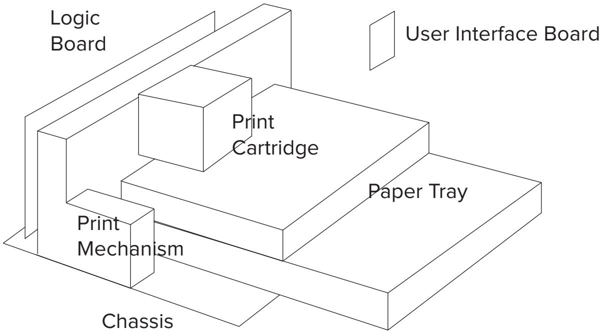
have coordination done by the host computer. Because there is usually substantial latitude in the schematic, the team should generate several alternatives and select an approach that will facilitate the consideration of several architectural options.

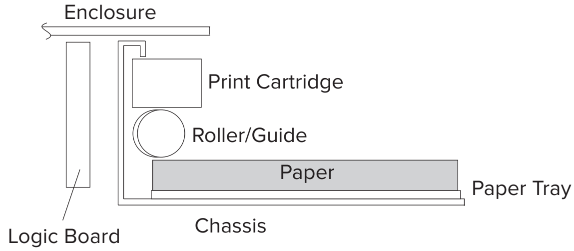
Step 2: Cluster the Elements of the Schematic

The challenge of step 2 is to assign each of the elements of the schematic to a chunk. One possible assignment of elements to chunks is shown in Exhibit 10-7, where nine chunks are used. Although this was the approximate approach taken by the DeskJet team, there are several other viable alternatives. At one extreme, each element could be assigned to its own chunk, yielding 15 chunks. At the other extreme, the team could decide that the product would have only one major chunk and then attempt to physically integrate all of the elements of the product. In fact, consideration of all possible clusterings of elements would yield thousands of alternatives. One procedure for managing the complexity of the alternatives is to begin with the assumption that each element of the schematic will be assigned to its own chunk, and then to successively cluster elements where advantageous. To determine when there are advantages to clustering, consider these factors, which echo the implications discussed in the previous section:

- ***Geometric integration and precision:*** Assigning elements to the same chunk allows a single individual or group to control the physical relationships among the elements. Elements requiring precise location or close geometric integration can often be best designed if they are part of the same chunk. For the DeskJet printer, this would suggest clustering the elements associated with positioning the cartridge in the x-axis and positioning the paper in the y-axis.
- ***Function sharing:*** When a single physical component can implement several functional elements of the product, these functional elements are best clustered together. This is the situation exemplified by the BMW motorcycle transmission (Exhibit 10-5). For the DeskJet printer, the team believed that the status display and the user controls could be incorporated into the same component, and so clustered these two elements together.
- ***Capabilities of vendors:*** A trusted vendor may have specific capabilities related to a project, and to best take advantage of such capabilities a team may choose to cluster those elements about which the vendor has expertise into one chunk. In the case of the DeskJet printer, an internal team did the majority of the engineering design work, and so this was not a major consideration.
- ***Similarity of design or production technology:*** When two or more functional elements are likely to be implemented using the same design and/or production technology, then incorporating these elements into the same chunk may allow for more economical design and/or production. A common strategy, for example, is to combine all functions that are likely to involve electronics in the same chunk. This allows the possibility of implementing all of these functions with a single circuit board.
- ***Localization of change:*** When a team anticipates a great deal of change in some element, it makes sense to isolate that element into its own modular chunk, so that required changes to the element can be carried out without disrupting any of the other chunks. The Hewlett-Packard team anticipated changing the physical appearance of the product over its life cycle, and so chose to isolate the enclosure element into its own chunk.
- ***Accommodating variety:*** Elements should be clustered together to enable the firm to vary the product in ways that will have value for customers. The printer was to be sold around the world in regions with different electrical power standards. As a result, the team created a separate chunk for the element associated with supplying DC power.
- ***Enabling standardization:*** If a set of elements will be useful in other products, they should be clustered together into a single chunk. This allows the physical elements of the chunk to be produced in higher quantities. Hewlett-Packard's internal standardization was a key motive for using an existing print cartridge, and so this element is preserved as its own chunk.
- ***Portability of the interfaces:*** Some interactions are easily transmitted over large distances. For example, electrical signals are much more portable than are mechanical forces and motions. As a result, elements with electronic interactions can be easily

EXHIBIT 10-8
Geometric layout of the printer.





separated from one another. This is also true, but to a lesser extent, for fluid connections. The flexibility of electrical interactions allowed the Hewlett-Packard team to cluster the control and communication functions into the same chunk. Conversely, the elements related to paper handling are much more geometrically constrained by their necessary mechanical interactions.

Step 3: Create a Rough Geometric Layout

A geometric layout can be created in two or three dimensions, using drawings, computer models, or physical models (of cardboard or foam, for example). Exhibit 10-8 shows a geometric layout of the DeskJet printer, positioning the major chunks. Creating a geometric layout forces the team to consider whether the geometric interfaces among the chunks are feasible and to work out the basic dimensional relationships among the chunks. By considering a cross section of the printer, the team realized that there was a fundamental trade-off between how much paper could be stored in the paper tray and the height of the machine. In this step, as in the previous step, the team benefits from generating several alternative layouts and selecting the best one. Layout decision criteria are closely related to the clustering issues in step 2. In some cases, the team may discover that the clustering derived in step 2 is not geometrically feasible and thus some of the elements would have to be reassigned to other chunks. Creating the rough layout should be coordinated with the industrial designers on the team in cases where the aesthetic and human interface issues of the product are important and strongly related to the geometric arrangement of the chunks.

Step 4: Identify the Fundamental and Incidental Interactions

Most likely a different person or group will be assigned to design each chunk. Because the chunks interact with one another in both planned and unintended ways, these different groups will have to coordinate their activities and exchange information. To better manage this coordination process, the team should identify the known interactions between chunks during the system-level design phase.

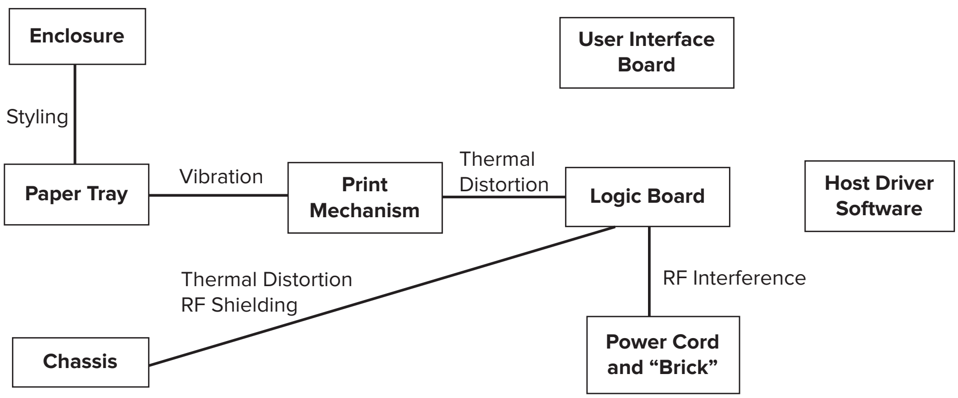
There are two categories of interactions between chunks. First, *fundamental interactions* are those corresponding to the lines on the schematic that connect the chunks to one another. For example, a sheet of paper flows from the paper tray to the print mechanism. This interaction is planned, and it should be well understood, even from the very earliest schematic, as it is fundamental to the system's operation. Second, *incidental interactions* are those that arise because of the particular physical implementation of functional elements or because of the geometric arrangement of the chunks. For example, vibrations induced by the actuators in the paper tray could interfere with the precise location of the print cartridge in the x-axis.

While the fundamental interactions are explicitly represented by the schematic showing the clustering of elements into chunks, the incidental interactions must be documented in some other way. For a small number of interacting chunks (fewer than about 10), an *interaction graph* is a convenient way to represent the incidental interactions. Exhibit 10-9 shows a possible interaction graph for the DeskJet printer, representing the known incidental interactions. For larger systems this type of graph becomes confusing, and an *interaction matrix* is useful instead and can be used to display both fundamental and incidental interactions. See Eppinger (1997) for an example of using such a matrix, which is also used to cluster the functional elements into chunks based on quantification of their interactions.

The interaction graph in Exhibit 10-9 suggests that vibration and thermal distortion are incidental interactions among the chunks that create heat and involve positioning motions. These interactions represent challenges in the development of the system, requiring focused coordination efforts within the team.

We can use the mapping of the interactions between the chunks to provide guidance for structuring and managing the remaining development activities. Chunks with important interactions should be designed by groups with strong communication and coordination

EXHIBIT 10-9
Incidental interaction graph.



between them. Conversely, chunks with little interaction can be designed by groups with less coordination. Eppinger (1997) describes a matrix-based method for prescribing such system-level coordination needs in larger projects.

It is also possible, through careful advance coordination, to develop two interacting chunks in a completely independent fashion. This is facilitated when the interactions between the two chunks can be reduced in advance to a completely specified interface that will be implemented by both chunks. It is relatively straightforward to specify interfaces to handle the fundamental interactions, while it can be difficult to do so for incidental interactions.

Knowledge of the incidental interactions (and sometimes of the fundamental interactions as well) develops as system-level and detail design progress. The schematic and the interaction graph or matrix can be used for documenting this information as it evolves. The network of interactions among subsystems, modules, and components is sometimes called the *system architecture*.

Delayed Differentiation

When a firm offers several variants of a product, the product architecture is a key determinant of the performance of the *supply chain*—the sequence of production and distribution activities that links raw materials and components to finished products in the hands of customers.

Imagine three different versions of the printer, each adapted to a different electrical power standard in three different geographic regions. Consider at what point along the supply chain the product is uniquely defined as one of these three variants. Assume that the supply chain consists of three basic activities: assembly, transportation, and packaging. Exhibit 10-10 illustrates how the number of distinct variants of the product evolves as the product moves through the supply chain. In scenario A, the three versions of the printer are defined during assembly, then transported, and finally packaged. In scenario B, the assembly activity is divided into two stages, most of the product is assembled in the first stage, the product is then transported, assembly is completed, and finally the product is packaged. In scenario B, the components associated with power conversion are assembled after transportation, and so the product is not differentiated until near the end of the supply chain.

Postponing the differentiation of a product until late in the supply chain is called *delayed differentiation* or simply *postponement*, and may offer substantial reductions in the costs of operating the supply chain, primarily through reductions in inventory requirements. For most products, and especially for innovative products, demand for each version of a product is unpredictable. That is, there is a component of demand that varies randomly from one time period to the next. To offer consistently high product availability in the presence of such demand uncertainty requires that inventory be held somewhere near the end of the supply chain. (To understand why this is so, imagine a McDonald's restaurant trying to respond to minute-to-minute fluctuations in demand for french fries if it peeled, cut, and fried potatoes only after an order was placed. Instead, it maintains an inventory of cooked french fries that can be quickly scooped into a package and delivered.) For printers, transportation by ship between production and distribution sites may require several weeks. So to be responsive to fluctuations in demand, substantial inventories

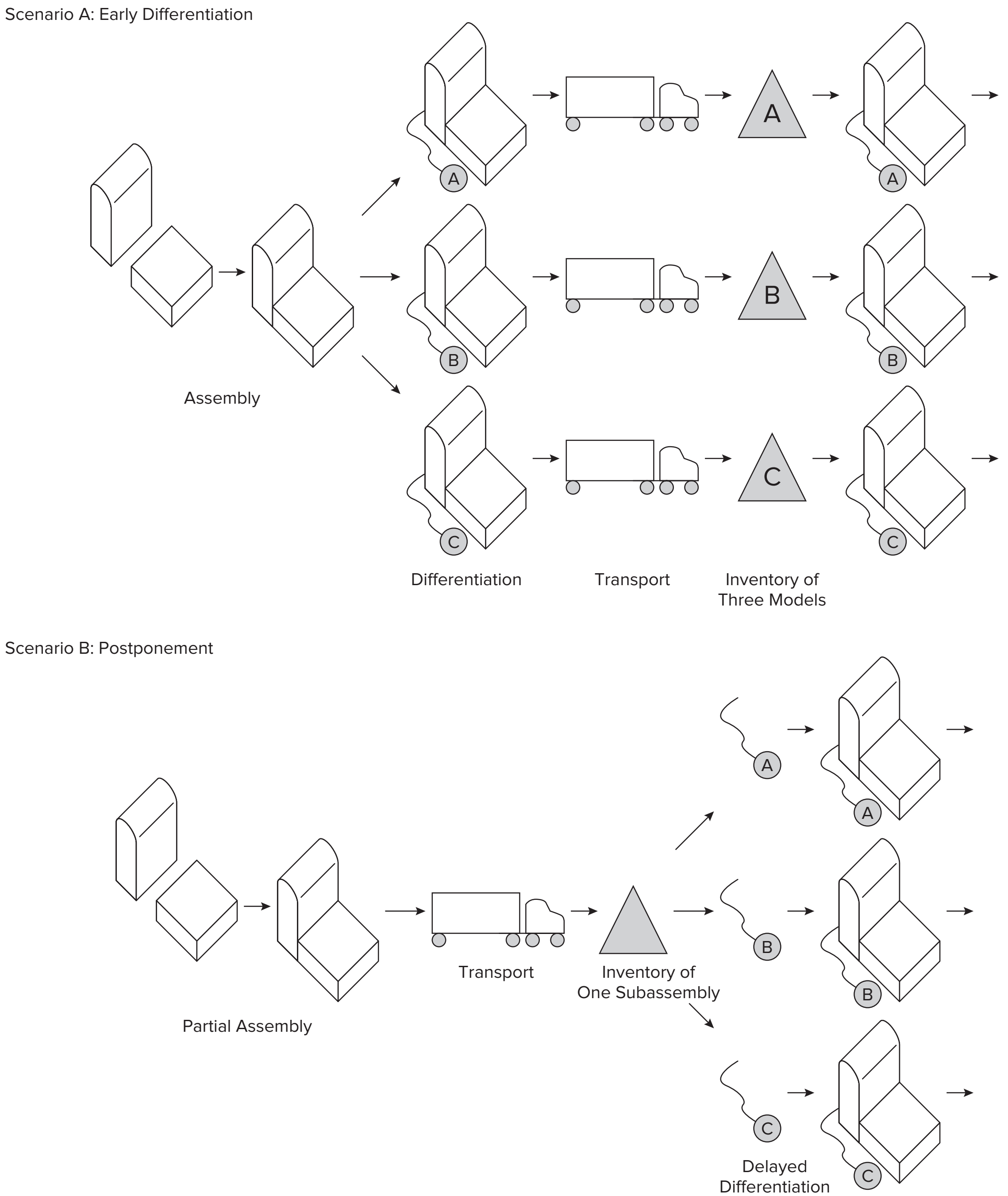


EXHIBIT 10-10 Postponement involves delaying differentiation of the product until late in the supply chain. In scenario A, three versions of the product are created during assembly and before transportation. In scenario B, the three versions of the product are not created until after transportation.

must be held after transportation. The amount of inventory required for a given target level of availability is a function of the magnitude of the variability in demand.

Postponement enables substantial reductions in the cost of inventories because there is substantially less randomness in the demand for the basic elements of the product (e.g., the platform) than there is for the differentiating components of the variants of the product. This is because in most cases demand for different versions of a product is somewhat uncorrelated, so that when demand for one version is high, it is possible that demand for some other version of the product will be low.

Two design principles are necessary conditions for postponement.

1. The differentiating elements of the product must be concentrated in one or a few chunks. To differentiate the product through one or a few simple process steps, the differentiating attributes of the product must be defined by one or a few components of the product. Consider the case of the different electrical power requirements for printers in different geographical regions. If the differences between a product adapted for 120VAC power in the United States and 220VAC power in Europe were associated with several components distributed throughout the product (e.g., power cord, power switch, transformer, rectifier, etc., all in different chunks), there would be no way to delay differentiation of the product without also delaying the assembly of these several chunks. (See Exhibit 10-11, top.) If, however, the only difference between these two models is a single chunk containing a cord and a power supply "brick," then the difference between the two versions of the product requires differences in only one chunk and one assembly operation. (See Exhibit 10-11, bottom.)

2. The product and production process must be designed so that the differentiating chunk(s) can be added to the product near the end of the supply chain. Even if the differentiating attributes of the product correspond to a single chunk, postponement may not be possible. This is because the constraints of the assembly process or product design may require that this chunk be assembled early in the supply chain. For example, one could envision the consumer packaging of the printer (i.e., the printed carton) being a primary differentiating chunk because of different language requirements for different markets. If transporting the product from the factory to the distribution center required that the

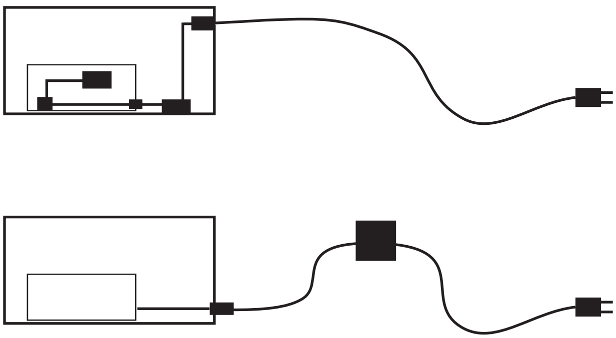


EXHIBIT 10-11 To enable postponement, the differentiating attributes of the product must be concentrated in one or a few chunks. In the top case, the power supply is distributed across the cord, enclosure, chassis, and logic board. In the bottom case, the power supply is confined to the cord and a power supply "brick."

printer be assembled into its carton, then it would be impossible to postpone the differentiation of the product with respect to packaging type. To avoid this problem, Hewlett-Packard devised a clever packaging scheme in which molded trays are used to position several dozen bare assembled printers on each of several layers of a large shipping pallet, which can then be wrapped with plastic film and loaded directly into a shipping container. This approach allows differentiation of the carton to occur after the printers have been transported to the distribution center and the appropriate power supply installed.

Platform Planning

Hewlett-Packard provides DeskJet products to customers with different needs. For illustrative purposes, think of these customers as belonging to three market segments: *family, student,* and *small-office/home-office (SOHO).* To serve these customers, Hewlett-Packard could develop three entirely different products, it could offer only one product to all three segments, or it could differentiate these products through differences in only a subset of the printer components. (See Chapter 4, Product Planning, for discussion of related decisions.)

A desirable property of the product architecture is that it enables a company to offer two or more products that are highly differentiated yet share a substantial fraction of their components. The collection of assets, including component designs, shared by these products is called a product *platform*. Planning the product platform involves managing a basic trade-off between distinctiveness and commonality. On the one hand, there are market benefits to offering several very distinctive versions of a product. On the other hand, there are design and manufacturing benefits to maximizing the extent to which these different products share common components. Two simple information systems allow the team to manage this trade-off: the *differentiation plan* and the *commonality plan*.

Differentiation Plan

The differentiation plan explicitly represents the ways in which multiple versions of a product will be different from the perspective of the customer and the market. Exhibit 10-12 shows an example differentiation plan. The plan consists of a matrix with rows for the differentiating attributes of the printer and with columns for the different versions or models of the product. By *differentiating attributes,* we mean those characteristics of the product that are important to the customer and that are intended to be different across the products. Differentiating attributes are generally expressed in the language of specifications, as described in Chapter 6, Product Specifications. The team uses the differentiation plan to codify its decisions about how the products will be different. Unconstrained, the differentiation plan would exactly match the preferences of the customers in the market segments targeted by each different product. Unfortunately, such plans generally imply products that are prohibitively costly.

Commonality Plan

The commonality plan explicitly represents the ways in which the different versions of the product are the same physically. Exhibit 10-13 shows a commonality plan for the printer example. The plan consists of a matrix with rows representing the chunks of the product. The third, fourth, and fifth columns correspond to the three different versions of the product.

Differentiating Attributes	Family	Student	SOHO (Small Office, Home Office)
Black print quality	"Near Laser" quality 300dpi	"Laser" quality 600dpi	"Laser" quality 600dpi
Color print quality	"Near photo" quality	Equivalent to DJ600	Equivalent to DJ600
Print speed	6 pages/minute	8 pages/minute	10 pages/minute
Footprint	360mm deep × 400mm wide	340mm deep × 360mm wide	400mm deep × 450mm wide
Paper storage	100 sheets	100 sheets	150 sheets
Style	"Consumer"	"Youth consumer"	"Commercial"
Connectivity to computer	USB and parallel port	USB	USB
Operating system compatibility	Macintosh and Windows	Macintosh and Windows	Windows

EXHIBIT 10-12 An example differentiation plan for a family of three printers.

Chunks	Number of Types	Family	Student	SOHO (Small Office, Home Office)
Print cartridge	2	"Manet" cartridge	"Picasso" cartridge	"Picasso" cartridge
Print mechanism	2	"Aurora" series	Narrow "Aurora" series	"Aurora" series
Paper tray	2	Front-in front-out	Front-in front-out	Tall front-in front-out
Logic board	2	"Next gen" board with parallel port	"Next gen" board	"Next gen" board
Enclosure	3	Home style	Youth style	Soft office style
Driver software	5	Version A-PC, Version A-Mac	Version B-PC, Version B-Mac	Version C

EXHIBIT 10-13 An example commonality plan for a family of three printers.

The second column indicates the number of different types of each chunk that are implied by the plan. The team fills each cell in the remaining columns with a label for each different version of a chunk that will be used to make up the product. Unconstrained, most manufacturing engineers would probably choose to use only one version of each chunk in all variants of the product. Unfortunately, this strategy would result in products that are undifferentiated.

Managing the Trade-Off between Differentiation and Commonality

The challenge in platform planning is to resolve the tension between the desire to differentiate the products and the desire for these products to share a substantial fraction of their components. Examination of the differentiation plan and the commonality plan reveals several trade-offs. For example, the student printer has the potential to offer the benefit of a small footprint, which is likely to be important to space-conscious college students; however, this differentiating attribute implies that the student printer would require a different print mechanism chunk, which is likely to add substantially to the investment required to design and produce the printer. This tension between a desire to tailor the benefits of a product to the target market segment and the desire to minimize investment is highlighted when the team attempts to make the differentiation plan and the commonality plan consistent. We offer several guidelines for managing this tension.

- ***Platform planning decisions should be informed by quantitative estimates of cost and revenue implications:*** Estimating the profit contribution from a one-percentage-point increase in market share is a useful benchmark against which to measure the potential increase in manufacturing and supply-chain costs of additional versions of a chunk. In estimating supply-chain costs, the team must consider the extent to which the differentiation implied by the differentiation plan can be postponed or whether it must be created early in the supply chain.
- ***Iteration is beneficial:*** In our experience, teams make better decisions when they make several iterations based on approximate information than when they agonize over the details during relatively fewer iterations.
- ***The product architecture dictates the nature of the trade-off between differentiation and commonality:*** The nature of the trade-off between differentiation and commonality is not fixed. Generally, modular architectures enable a higher proportion of components to be shared than integral architectures. This implies that when confronted with a seemingly intractable conflict between differentiation and commonality, the team should consider alternative architectural approaches, which may provide opportunities to enhance both differentiation and commonality.

For the printer example, the tension between differentiation and commonality might be resolved by a compromise. The revenue benefits of a slightly narrower student printer are not likely to exceed the costs associated with creating an entirely different, and narrower, print mechanism. The costs of different print mechanisms are likely to be especially high given that the print mechanism involves substantial tooling investments. Also, because the print mechanism is created early in the supply chain, postponement of differentiation would be substantially less feasible if it required different print mechanisms. For these reasons, the team would most likely choose to use a single, common print mechanism and forgo the possible revenue benefits of a narrower footprint for the student printer.

Related System-Level Design Issues

The four-step method for establishing the product architecture guides the early system-level design activities, but many more detailed activities remain. Here we discuss some of the issues that frequently arise during subsequent system-level design activities and their implications for the product architecture.

Defining Secondary Systems

The schematic in Exhibit 10-6 shows only the key elements of the product. There are many other functional and physical elements not shown, some of which will only be conceived and detailed as the system-level design evolves. These additional elements make up the secondary systems of the product. Examples include safety systems, power systems, status monitors, and structural supports. Some of these systems, such as safety systems, will span several chunks. Fortunately, secondary systems usually involve flexible connections such as wiring and tubing and can be considered after the major architectural decisions have been made. Secondary systems cutting across the boundaries of chunks present a special management challenge: Should a single group or individual be assigned to design a secondary system even though the system will be made up of components re-siding in several different chunks? Or should the group or individuals responsible for the chunks be responsible for coordinating among themselves to ensure that the secondary systems will work as needed? The former approach is more typical, where specific individuals or subteams are assigned to focus on the secondary systems.

Establishing the Architecture of the Chunks

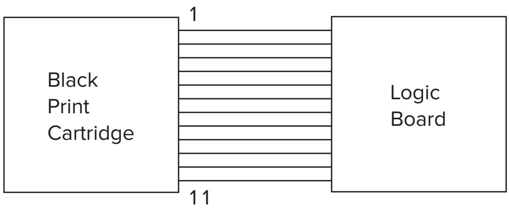
Some of the chunks of a complex product may be very complex systems in their own right. For example, many of the chunks in the DeskJet printer involve dozens of parts. Each of these chunks may have its own architecture—the scheme by which it is divided into smaller chunks. This problem is essentially identical to the architectural challenge posed at the level of the entire product. Careful consideration of the architecture of the chunks is nearly as important as the creation of the architecture of the overall product. For example, the print cartridge consists of the subfunctions *store ink* and *deliver ink* for each of four colors of ink. Several architectural approaches are possible for this chunk, including, for example, the use of independently replaceable reservoirs for each ink color.

Creating Detailed Interface Specifications

As the system-level design progresses, the fundamental interactions indicated by lines on the schematic in Exhibit 10-6 are specified as much more detailed collections of signals, material flows, and exchanges of energy. As this refinement occurs, the specification of the interfaces between chunks should also be clarified. For example, Exhibit 10-14 shows an overview of a possible specification of an interface between a black print cartridge and a logic board for a printer. Such interfaces represent the "contracts" between chunks and are often detailed in formal specification documents.

EXHIBIT 10-14
Specification of interface between black print cartridge and logic board.

Line	Name	Properties
1	PWR-A	+ 12VDC, 5mA
2	PWR-B	+ 5VDC, 10mA
3	STAT	TTL
4	LVL	100KΩ-1MΩ
5	PRNT1	TTL
6	PRNT2	TTL
7	PRNT3	TTL
8	PRNT4	TTL
9	PRNT5	TTL
10	PRNT6	TTL
11	GND	



Summary

Product architecture is the scheme by which the functional elements of the product are arranged into physical chunks. The architecture of the product is established during the concept development and system-level design phases of development.

- Product architecture decisions have far-reaching implications, affecting such things as product change, product variety, component standardization, product performance, manufacturability, and product development management.
- A key characteristic of a product architecture is the degree to which it is modular or integral.
- Modular architectures are those in which each physical chunk implements a specific set of functional elements and has well-defined interactions with the other chunks.
- There are three types of modular architectures: slot-modular, bus-modular, and sectional-modular.
- Integral architectures are those in which the implementation of functional elements is spread across chunks, resulting in ill-defined interactions between the chunks.
- We recommend a four-step method for establishing the product architecture:

  1. Create a schematic of the product.
  2. Cluster the elements of the schematic.
  3. Create a rough geometric layout.
  4. Identify the fundamental and incidental interactions.

- This method leads the team through the preliminary architectural decisions. Subsequent system-level and detail design activities will contribute to a continuing evolution of the architectural details.
- The product architecture can enable postponement, the delayed differentiation of the product, which offers substantial potential cost savings.
- Architectural choices are closely linked to platform planning, the balancing of differentiation and commonality when addressing different market segments with different versions of a product.
- Due to the broad implications of architectural decisions, inputs from marketing, manufacturing, and design are essential in this aspect of product development.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

The basic concepts of product architecture and its implications are developed and discussed in this article.

Ulrich, Karl, "The Role of Product Architecture in the Manufacturing Firm," *Research Policy*, Vol. 24, 1995, pp. 419–440.

Many of the issues involved in establishing a product architecture are treated from a slightly different perspective in the systems engineering literature. Crawley et al. consider many technical issues in system architecture. Hall provides an overview along with many relevant references. Maier and Rechtin discuss the architecture of complex systems.

Crawley, Edward, Bruce Cameron, and Daniel Selva, *Systems Architecture: Strategy and Product Development for Complex Systems*, Pearson, Harlow, UK, 2016.

Hall, Arthur D., III, *Metasystems Methodology: A New Synthesis and Unification,* Pergamon Press, Elmsford, NY, 1989.

Maier, Mark W., and Eberhardt Rechtin, *The Art of Systems Architecting*, third edition, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2009.

The linkage between product variety and product architecture is discussed by Pine in the context of *mass customization,* or very high variety manufacturing.

Pine, B. Joseph, II, *Mass Customization: The New Frontier in Business Competition,* Harvard Business School Press, Boston, 1992.

Alexander and Simon are among the earliest authors to discuss the partitioning of a system into minimally interacting chunks.

Alexander, Christopher, *Notes on the Synthesis of Form,* Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, 1964.

Simon, Herbert, "The Architecture of Complexity," in *The Sciences of the Artificial,* third edition, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 1996. (Based on an article that appeared originally in 1965.)

Eppinger and colleagues have developed matrix-based methods to help analyze system architectures based on documentation of the interactions between chunks and the teams that implement the chunks.

Sosa, Manuel E., Steven D. Eppinger, and Craig M. Rowles, "Identifying Modular and Integrative Systems and Their Impact on Design Team Interactions," *Journal of Mechanical Design,* Vol. 125, June 2003, pp. 240–252.

Further detail on delayed differentiation and supply-chain performance may be found in the work of Swaminathan, Lee, and colleagues.

Swaminathan, Jayashankar M., and Hau L. Lee, "Design for Postponement," in S. C. Graves and A. G. de Kok (editors), "Supply Chain Management: Design, Coordination and Operation," *Handbooks in Operations Research and Management Science,* Vol. 11, Elsevier, Amsterdam, 2003, pp. 199–226.

The platform planning method presented in this chapter is derived in part from Robertson and Ulrich's more comprehensive discussion.

Robertson, David, and Karl Ulrich, "Planning for Product Platforms," *Sloan Management Review,* Vol. 39, No. 4, Summer 1998, pp. 19–31.

Exercises

1. Draw a schematic for a wristwatch, using only functional elements (without assuming any particular physical working principles or components).
2. Describe the architecture of a Swiss army knife. What advantages and disadvantages does this architecture provide?
3. Take apart a small electromechanical product (which you are willing to sacrifice if necessary). Draw a schematic including the essential functional elements. Identify two or three possible clusterings of these elements into chunks. Is there any evidence to suggest which architecture was chosen by the development team?

Thought Questions

1. Do service products, such as bank accounts or insurance policies, have architectures?
2. Can a firm achieve high product variety without a modular product architecture? How (or why not)?
3. The argument for the motorcycle architecture shown in Exhibit 10-5 is that it allows for a lighter motorcycle than the more modular alternative. What are the other advantages and disadvantages? Which approach is likely to cost less to manufacture?
4. There are thousands of architectural decisions to be made in the development of an automobile. Consider all of the likely fundamental and incidental interactions that any one functional element (say, safety restraints) would have with the others. How would you use the documentation of such interactions to guide the decision about what chunk to place this functional element in?
5. The schematic shown in Exhibit 10-6 includes 15 elements. Consider the possibility of assigning each element to its own chunk. What are the strengths and weaknesses of such an architecture?

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Industrial Design

©Koninklijke Philips NV

EXHIBIT 11-1
Launched in 2017, the Philips Sonicare ProtectiveClean electric toothbrush has become one of the most popular products in the Sonicare product line.

The first Sonicare toothbrush was launched in 1992 and soon became one of the best-selling rechargeable electric toothbrushes on the market. Unlike manual toothbrushes, the Sonicare brush head was driven magnetically, vibrating at up to 31,000 strokes per minute. Combined with inductive charging, the Sonicare toothbrush line was a revolutionary technological innovation in oral health products.

After over 25 years of improvements and generations of models, the Sonicare toothbrush line had expanded to hundreds of stock-keeping units (SKUs). The Philips Sonicare team decided to simplify the user experience and clarify the product line by designing a new baseline model, the Philips Sonicare ProtectiveClean electric toothbrush (see Exhibit 11-1). The team wanted to create a low- to mid-range product to replace hundreds of SKUs and, at the same time, reach a broader market. However, they faced the challenge of selecting and designing the features to include while maintaining the successful Sonicare brand identity.

Released in 2017, the ProtectiveClean model has become one of the most popular Sonicare electric brush handles. Its commercial success is at least in part due to several factors the Sonicare team had to take into consideration in their new design:

- ***Technological compatibility:*** Similar to the higher-end Sonicare models, the ProtectiveClean electric toothbrush needed to work with Sonicare click-on replaceable brush heads, which use RFID tracking to let the user know when to replace the brush head based on actual usage. The Philips team also observed that some families use the same handle while switching out the brush head for each individual, so the RFID feature also tracks which brush head is being used and for how long.
- ***Physical interface:*** The design team had to consider manufacturing cost and usability in the design of the handle interface. A single button saves on cost, but combining too many functions in a single button also can be confusing to the user. A third button might not be ergonomically accessible. After testing physical prototypes with users, the team ultimately decided on a single mode and button for the base model with the plan to eventually add a second button to the entire range. This also standardized the button interface across Philips Sonicare electric toothbrush models, making a consistent user interface to encourage brand loyalty and increase ease of use.
- ***Maintenance:*** As a health and hygiene product, the ProtectiveClean toothbrush had to be easy to clean and maintain. Previous models had a screw-on brush head with crevices that allowed water and debris to collect, making it hard to clean. For the ProtectiveClean toothbrush, the team strove to keep surfaces minimalistic and exclude superfluous detail.
- ***Brushing styles:*** The team made sure to design a product that was universally accessible and could accommodate a range of brushing styles. For example, in most of the world, users hold the toothbrush like a handlebar. In Japan, however, user observation found that some users hold the toothbrush quite differently, like a chopstick. The different ways of holding a brush informed the balance, weight, and shape of the housing.
- ***Desirability:*** Market research showed that many Philips Sonicare toothbrushes are given as gifts to family members. The ProtectiveClean toothbrush needed to look and feel premium as a worthy gift item while also having enough visual diversity, sophistication, and appeal to fit in any recipient's bathroom. This included adding multiple color options. Philips wanted to position their products as part of a person's beauty and grooming routine, not as a chore.

- ***Brand consistency:*** The Philips Sonicare form and silhouette were highly recognizable as a brand identity in the United States. The ProtectiveClean toothbrush maintained that visual language. In the past, interfaces and features were inconsistent across the many models, making understanding the differences between options and choosing among them difficult. By simplifying and standardizing features, users would be able to shop for and identify the ProtectiveClean toothbrush as easily as a Sonicare product.
- ***Ergonomics:*** The design team made the ProtectiveClean toothbrush much slimmer than earlier models to make it easier to reach the buttons. It also became slightly asymmetrical with a flat front and rounded back, cuing the user on how to hold the brush and place his or her fingers. The brush handle was also designed to lie horizontally on a table to allow one-handed toothpaste application and brushing.

The Philips Sonicare design team made these decisions through extensive user observation and testing. A multidisciplinary and international team of designers and engineers, including industrial, product, graphics, packaging, communication, usability, and interaction as, designers contributed to the final design. Philips intentionally created a diverse team to represent people who live and work in the different parts of the world where the ProtectiveClean toothbrush would be sold.

Within a multidisciplinary team like the one at Philips Sonicare, industrial designers are primarily responsible for the aspects of a product that relate to the user's experience—the product's aesthetic appeal (how it looks, sounds, feels, and smells) and its functional interfaces (how it is used). For many manufacturers, industrial design has historically been an afterthought. Managers used industrial designers to style, or "gift wrap," a product after its technical features were determined. Companies would then market the product on the merits of its function alone, even though customers certainly evaluate a product using more holistic judgments, including ergonomics and style.

Today, a product's core technology is generally not enough to ensure commercial success. The globalization of markets has resulted in the design and manufacture of a wide array of consumer products. Fierce competition makes it unlikely that a company will enjoy a sustainable competitive advantage through technology alone. Accordingly, companies such as Philips Sonicare have been increasingly using industrial design as an important tool for both satisfying customer needs and differentiating their products from those of their competition.

This chapter introduces engineers and managers to industrial design (ID) and explains how the ID process takes place in relation to other product development activities. We refer to the Sonicare ProtectiveClean example throughout this chapter to explain critical ideas. Specifically, this chapter presents:

- A historical perspective on ID and a working definition of ID.
- Statistics on typical investments in ID.
- A method for determining the importance of ID to a particular product.
- The costs and benefits of investing in ID.
- How ID helps to establish a corporation's identity.
- Specific steps industrial designers follow while designing a product.
- A description of how the ID process changes according to product type.
- A method for assessing the quality of the ID effort for a completed product.

What Is Industrial Design?

Industrial design as a discipline grew out of the Industrial Revolution, which introduced new materials and the mass production of goods. As manufacturing processes and materials advanced, products that were once made by individual craftsmen could now be produced quickly and at a mass scale (Kirkham and Weber, 2013). In order to meet the needs of a large number of people using a product, its design needed to address functionality, aesthetics, ergonomics, durability, manufacturability, cost, and marketability. The Industrial Designers Society of America (IDSA) describes the job of industrial designers as not only the aesthetics of a product, but also "how it functions, is manufactured and ultimately the value and experience it provides for users."

A number of theories and movements have influenced and shaped what is today known as industrial design. From its earliest approaches, industrial design balanced the tensions between form and function, machine and human experience. In the late 1800s, architect Louis Henry Sullivan captured the change from decorative arts to modernism, declaring that "form follows function" (Gorman, 2003). This key tenet of modernism influenced a new design language that emphasized geometry, precision, simplicity, and economy in the design of products. One influential school that developed from modernism was the Bauhaus movement in Europe, which included key architects and designers Ludwig Mies van der Rohe and Marcel Breuer. Bauhaus sought to unify art, craft, and technology, resulting in design principles that could be applied to any product.

Advances in technology drove changes in industrial design in the 20th century. Technological innovation in transportation meant that people and machines could move at speeds never before experienced. In response, industrial designers incorporated scientific principles of streamlining into their designs, creating aerodynamic curves, groove lines, and wing tails that glamorized speed and technological progress. Newly available manufacturing materials such as injection molded plastics and aluminum allowed industrial designers to not only improve on existing functionality but also change how products could be designed.

After World War II, industrial design evolved to encompass a role beyond aesthetic and functional requirements. Industrial designers such as Raymond Loewy and Henry Dreyfuss argued for design that was cross-disciplinary and coordinated with engineering, sales, and marketing. In the 1950s, Loewy described the principle of MAYA, or the Most Advanced Yet Acceptable stage, which details how an industrial designer needs to understand the balance between consumers' attraction to new designs and resistance to the unfamiliar. Modern design, which had prioritized simplicity, clarity, harmony, and unity of form and function, began to emphasize human needs. Dreyfuss believed that "the most efficient machine is the one built around a person" (Gorman, 2003). His work on the scale and relationship of people with objects founded the field of ergonomics and human factors research (Dreyfuss, 1955). German architect and industrial designer Dieter Rams emphasized simplicity as a guiding strategy for design, and offered 10 principles (Rams, 1976), cited here verbatim:

1. **Good design is innovative.** The possibilities for innovation are not, by any means, exhausted. Technological development is always offering new opportunities for innovative design. But innovative design always develops in tandem with innovative technology and can never be an end in itself.

2. **Good design makes a product useful.** A product is bought to be used. It has to satisfy certain criteria, not only functional, but also psychological and aesthetic. Good design emphasizes the usefulness of a product while disregarding anything that could possibly detract from it.
3. **Good design is aesthetic.** The aesthetic quality of a product is integral to its usefulness because products we use every day affect our person and our well-being. But only well-executed objects can be beautiful.
4. **Good design makes a product understandable.** It clarifies the product's structure. Better still, it can make the product talk. At best, it is self-explanatory.
5. **Good design is unobtrusive.** Products fulfilling a purpose are like tools. They are neither decorative objects nor works of art. Their design should therefore be both neutral and restrained, to leave room for the user's self-expression.
6. **Good design is honest.** It does not make a product more innovative, powerful, or valuable than it really is. It does not attempt to manipulate the consumer with promises that cannot be kept.
7. **Good design is long-lasting.** It avoids being fashionable and therefore never appears antiquated. Unlike fashionable design, it lasts many years—even in today's throwaway society.
8. **Good design is thorough down to the last detail.** Nothing must be arbitrary or left to chance. Care and accuracy in the design process show respect toward the consumer.
9. **Good design is environmentally friendly.** Design makes an important contribution to the preservation of the environment. It conserves resources and minimizes physical and visual pollution throughout the life cycle of the product.
10. **Good design is as little design as possible.** Less, but better, because it concentrates on the essential aspects, and the products are not burdened with nonessentials. The direction is back to purity, back to simplicity.

Simplicity is also a principle of user-centered design (Norman, 1988), which has been a key strategy for designing consumer products and continues to be valuable in the design of products and user interfaces (UIs) that are increasingly digital in nature. In more recent years, industrial designers such as Jony Ive at Apple Inc. have designed product ecosystems grounded in user experiences that encompass not just physical devices but also digital experiences. Apple has further influenced the way modern product development approaches design by taking a primarily design-driven, rather than primarily engineering- or technology-driven, approach to creating products.

Assessing the Need for Industrial Design

To assess the importance of ID to a particular product, we first review some investment statistics and then define the dimensions of a product that are dependent upon good ID.

Expenditures for Industrial Design

Exhibit 11-2 shows approximate values of investment in ID for a variety of products. Both the total expenditures on ID and the percentage of the product development budget invested in ID are shown for consumer and industrial products spanning various industries. These statistics should give design teams a rough idea of how much ID investment will be required for a new product.

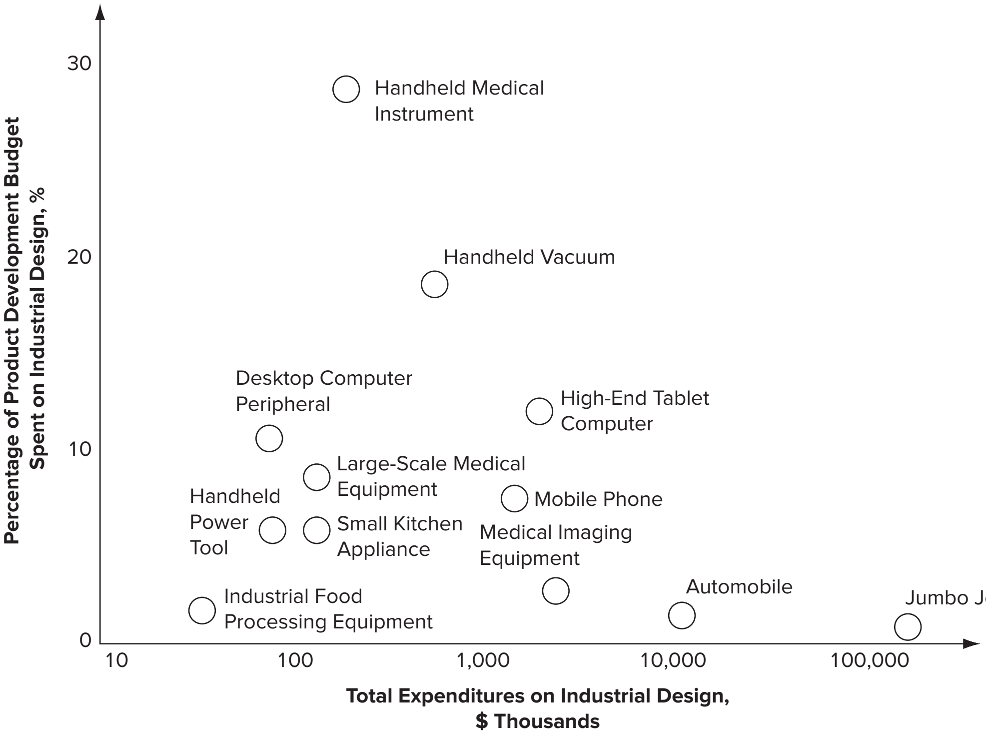


EXHIBIT 11-2 Industrial design expenditures for some consumer and industrial products.

The exhibit shows that the range of expenditures on ID is tremendous. For products with relatively little user interaction such as some types of industrial equipment, the cost of ID is only in the tens of thousands of dollars. On the other hand, the development of an intensely visual and interactive product such as an automobile requires millions of dollars of ID effort. The relative cost of ID as a fraction of the overall development budget also shows a wide range. For a technically sophisticated product, such as a new aircraft, the ID cost can be insignificant relative to the engineering and other development expenditures. This does not suggest, however, that ID is unimportant for such products; it suggests only that the other development functions are more costly. Certainly the success of a new automobile design is highly dependent on its aesthetic appeal and the quality of the user interfaces, two dimensions largely determined by ID; yet the ID expense of $10 million is modest, relative to the entire development budget.

How Important Is Industrial Design to a Product?

Most products on the market can be improved in some way or another by good ID. All products that are used, operated, or seen by people depend critically on ID for commercial success.

With this in mind, a convenient means for assessing the importance of ID to a particular product is to characterize importance along two dimensions: user experience and aesthetics. *User experience* encompasses how comprehensively a product meets all of a user's needs, including emotional as well as functional, and relates to its usability, user interface, human factors, and ergonomics as well as subjective qualities ("Does the product make the user happy when she turns it on?"). Note that "user interface" typically refers to human–computer interactions but can also describe interactions with physical products. The more important each dimension is to the product's success, the more dependent the product is on ID. Therefore, by answering a series of questions along each dimension we can qualitatively assess the importance of ID.

User Experience Needs

- ***How important is usability?*** Ease of use may be extremely important both for frequently used products, such as a mobile phone and for infrequently used products, such as a fire extinguisher. Ease of use is more challenging if the product has multiple features and/or modes of operation that may confuse or frustrate the user. When ease of use is an important criterion, industrial designers will need to ensure that the features of the product effectively communicate their function.
- ***How important is ease of maintenance?*** If the product needs to be serviced or repaired frequently, then ease of maintenance is crucial. For example, a user should be able to clear a paper jam in a printer or photocopier easily. Again, it is critical that the features of the product communicate maintenance/repair procedures to the user. However, in many cases, a more desirable solution is to eliminate the need for maintenance entirely.
- ***How complex are the interactions required for the product's functions?*** In general, the more functions a product has, the more carefully the designer must think about the interactions required to achieve them. For example, a doorknob typically requires only one interaction, whereas a laptop computer may require a dozen or more, all of which the industrial designer must understand in depth. Furthermore, each interaction may require a different design approach and/or additional research.
- ***How familiar are the user interactions to the user?*** A user interface requiring incremental improvements to an established design will be relatively straightforward to design, such as the controls on a next-generation kitchen appliance. A more novel user interface may require substantial research and feasibility studies, such as the multi-touch screen on the first Apple iPhone.
- ***What are the safety issues?*** All products have safety considerations. For some products, these can present significant challenges to the design team. For example, the safety concerns in the design of a child's toy are much more prominent than those for a new tablet computer.

Aesthetic Needs

- ***Is visual product differentiation required?*** Products with stable markets and technology are highly dependent upon ID to create aesthetic appeal and, hence, visual differentiation. New-to-the-world products likewise rely on ID to establish brand recognition. In contrast, a product such as a computer's internal disk drive, which is differentiated by its technological performance, is less dependent on ID.
- ***How important are pride of ownership, image, and style?*** A customer's perception of a product is in part based upon its aesthetic appeal. An attractive product may be associated with a trend-setting image and will likely create a strong sense of pride among its owners. This may similarly be true for a product that looks and feels rugged or conservative. When such characteristics are important, ID will play a critical role in determining the product's ultimate success.

- ***Will an aesthetically appealing product motivate the team?*** A product that is aesthetically appealing can generate a sense of team pride among the design and manufacturing staff. Team pride helps motivate and unify everyone associated with the project. An early ID concept gives the team a concrete vision of the end result of the development effort.

"To demonstrate this method, we can use the above questions to assess the importance of industrial design in the development of the ProtectiveClean toothbrush. Exhibit 11-3 displays the results of such analysis. We find that both ergonomics and aesthetics were extremely important for the ProtectiveClean toothbrush. Accordingly, ID did indeed play a large role in determining many of the product's critical success factors."

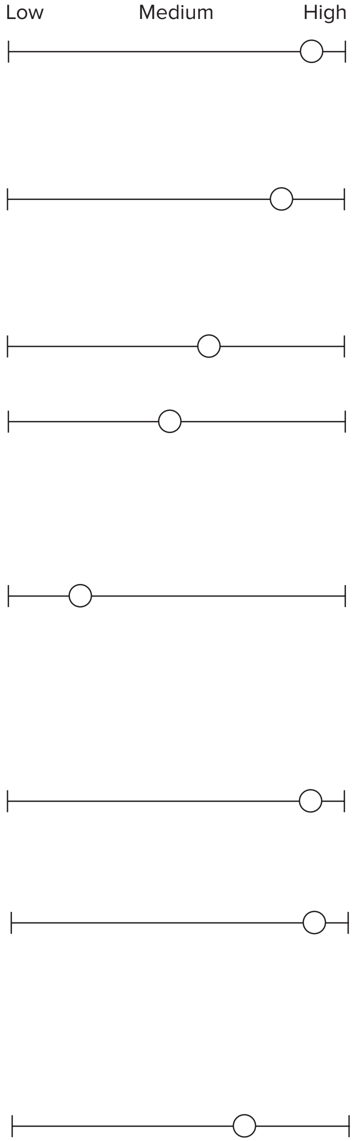
The Impact of Industrial Design

The previous section focused primarily upon the importance of ID in satisfying customer needs. Next we explore both the direct economic impact of investing in ID as well as its impact on corporate identity. In a study of 300 publicly traded companies, McKinsey & Company observed a strong link between a firm's design competency and its business performance. Firms that were in the top 25 percent of design competency were significantly faster than others at increasing revenues (32 percent) and total returns (56 percent) over a five-year period. This trend was noted across the medical field, consumer products, and financial services, implying that "good design matters" regardless of type of firm (Sheppard et al., 2018).

Is Industrial Design Worth the Investment?

Managers will often want to know, for a specific product or for a business operation in general, how much effort should be invested in industrial design. While it is difficult to answer this question precisely, we can offer several insights by considering the costs and benefits. The costs of ID include direct cost, manufacturing cost, and time cost, described next.

- *Direct cost* is the cost of the ID services. This quantity is determined by the number and type of designers used, duration of the project, and number of models required, plus material costs and other related expenses. In 2017, ID consulting services in the United States cost $100 to $400 per hour, with most of the work being done by junior-level designers in the lower half of this price range and senior designers contributing relatively few hours of more strategic work in the higher half of the range. Additional charges include costs for models, photos, and other expenses. The true cost of internal corporate design services is generally about the same.
- *Manufacturing cost* is the expense incurred to implement the product details created through ID. Surface finishes, stylized shapes, and many other design details can increase tooling cost and/or production cost. Note, however, that many ID details can be implemented at practically no cost, particularly if ID is involved early enough in the process (see below). In fact, some ID inputs can actually reduce manufacturing costs—particularly when the industrial designer works closely with the manufacturing engineers.
- *Time cost* is the penalty associated with extended lead time. As industrial designers attempt to refine the ergonomics and aesthetics of a product, multiple design iterations and/or prototypes will be necessary. This may result in a delay in the product's introduction, which will likely have an economic cost.



Needs	Level of Importance (Low — Medium — High)	Explanation of Rating
User experience		
Usability		Though the ProtectiveClean toothbrush incorporates sophisticated technology, it is critical that users from children to the elderly with diverse brushing styles be able to hold it comfortably and easily access the buttons.
Ease of maintenance		Hygiene products must be easy to clean and maintain. The ProtectiveClean toothbrush is free of crevices and other design details that might collect water and other debris.
Complexity of user interactions		The primary user interaction is of brushing, with a number of secondary interactions.
Familiarity of user interactions		The process of brushing teeth is well understood by designers. However, the ProtectiveClean toothbrush incorporated a new, single button for the base model to control multiple functions which required a different user interaction.
Safety		There were few safety issues for ID to consider on the ProtectiveClean toothbrush. However, the safety of using an electrical device near water in a bathroom setting had to be clearly conveyed to users through design as well as engineering.
Aesthetics		
Product differentiation		Electric toothbrushes are a highly competitive market. The product's appearance was key in differentiating it from others.
Pride of ownership, fashion, or image		The ProtectiveClean toothbrush was designed to be a premium product with broad enough appeal to fit in in a wide variety of bathrooms. Its look and feel had to be sophisticated and inviting. At the same time, it had to maintain the Philips Sonicare brand identity.
Team motivation		A unifying goal of the globally dispersed ProtectiveClean toothbrush design team was to create a design that would appeal to a diverse set of international users.

EXHIBIT 11-3 Assessing the importance of industrial design for the Philips ProtectiveClean toothbrush.

The benefits of using ID include increased product appeal and greater customer satisfaction through additional or better features, strong brand identity, and product differentiation. These benefits usually translate into a price premium and/or increased market share (as compared to marketing the product without the ID efforts).

These costs and benefits of ID were estimated as part of a study conducted at MIT that assessed the impact of detail design decisions on product success factors for a set of competing products in the market (automatic drip coffeemakers). Although the relation is difficult to quantify precisely, this study found a significant correlation between product aesthetics (as rated by practicing industrial designers) and the retail price for each product, but no correlation between aesthetics and manufacturing cost. The researchers could not conclude whether the manufacturers had priced their products optimally and could not determine unequivocally if aesthetics of the products enabled manufacturers to garner higher prices. However, the study suggests that an increase in price of $1 per unit for typical sales volumes would be worth several million dollars in profits over the life of these products. Industrial designers asked to price design services for such products gave a range from $75,000 to $250,000, suggesting that if ID could add even one dollar's worth of perceived benefit to the consumer, it would pay back handsomely (Pearson, 1992).

A second study, conducted at the Open University in England, also suggests that investing in ID yields a positive return. This study tracked the commercial impact of investing in engineering and ID for 221 design projects at small and medium-sized manufacturing firms. The study found that investing in industrial design consultants led to profits in over 90 percent of all implemented projects, and when comparisons were possible with previous, less ID-oriented products, sales increased by an average of 41 percent (Roy and Potter, 1993). More recent studies have assessed ID effectiveness and the integration of ID into the product development process and found positive correlations between these ID measures and corporate financial performance (Gemser and Leenders, 2001; Hertenstein et al., 2005).

For a specific project decision, performing simple calculations and sensitivity analyses can help quantify the likely economic returns from ID. For example, if investing in ID will likely result in a price premium of $10 per unit, what will be the net economic benefit when summed over the original market sales projections? Similarly, if investing in ID will likely result in a greater demand for the product—by, say, 1,000 units per year—what will be the net economic benefit when summed at the original unit price? The rough estimates of these benefits can be compared to the expected cost of the ID effort. Spreadsheet models are commonly used for this kind of financial decision making and can easily be applied to estimate the expected payback of ID for a project. (Chapter 18, Product Development Economics, describes a method for developing such a financial model.)

How Does Industrial Design Establish a Corporate Identity?

Corporate identity is derived from "the visual style of an organization," a factor that affects the firm's positioning in the market (Olins, 1989). A company's identity emerges primarily through what people see. Advertising, logos, signage, uniforms, buildings, packaging, and product designs all contribute to creating corporate identity.

In product-based companies, ID plays an important role in determining the company's identity. Industrial design determines a product's style, which is directly related to the public perception of the firm. When a company's products maintain a consistent and recognizable appearance, *visual equity* is established. A consistent look and feel may be associated with the product's color, form, style, or even its features. When a firm enjoys a positive reputation, such visual equity is valuable, as it can create a positive association with quality for future products. Some brands that have effectively used ID to establish visual equity and corporate identity through their product lines include:

- ***Apple:*** The original Macintosh had a small, upright shape and a benign buff coloring. This design purposely gave the product a nonthreatening, user-friendly look that has since been associated with all of Apple's products. More recent Apple designs have rounded rectangular forms, clean lines, and minimal user controls.
- ***OXO:*** The "Good Grips" line of household products was originally designed for use by persons with limited strength and/or mobility but has become commonly sold as better products for any user. The visual equity of many OXO products is derived from their use of nonslip, black rubber grips and rounded forms.
- ***Braun:*** Braun kitchen appliances and shavers have clean lines and basic colors. The Braun name has long been associated with simplicity and quality.
- ***Bang & Olufsen:*** B&O high-fidelity consumer electronics systems are designed to have sleek lines and impressive visual displays, providing an image of technological innovation.
- ***BMW:*** BMW automobiles, known for luxury features and driver-oriented performance, display exterior styling features that have evolved slowly, retaining the equity associated with the brand.

The Industrial Design Process

Many large companies have internal industrial design departments. Small companies tend to use contract ID services provided by consulting firms. In either case, industrial designers should participate fully on cross-functional product development teams. Within these teams, engineers will generally follow a process to generate and evaluate concepts for the technical features of a product. In a similar manner, most industrial designers follow a process for designing the user experience and aesthetics of a product. Although this approach may vary depending on the firm and the nature of the project, industrial designers also generate multiple concepts and then work with engineers to narrow these options down through a series of evaluation steps.

Specifically, the ID process can be thought of as consisting of the following activities:

1. Investigation of customer needs.
2. Conceptualization.
3. Preliminary refinement.
4. Further refinement and final concept selection.
5. Control drawings or models.
6. Coordination with engineering, manufacturing, and external vendors.

This section discusses each of these activities in order, and the following section will discuss the timing of these activities within the overall product development process.

1. Investigation of Customer Needs

The product development team begins by documenting customer needs as described in Chapter 5, Identifying Customer Needs. Because industrial designers are skilled at recognizing issues involving user interactions, ID involvement is crucial in the needs process. For example, in researching customer needs for a new medical instrument, the team would study an operating room, interview physicians, and conduct focus groups. While involvement of marketing, engineering, and ID certainly leads to a common, comprehensive understanding of customer needs for the whole team, it particularly allows the industrial designer to gain an intimate understanding of the interactions between the user and the product.

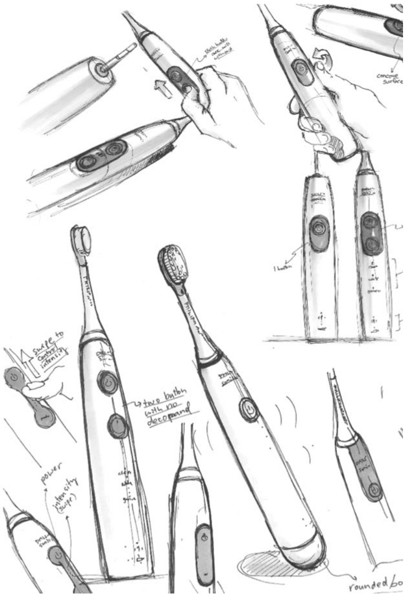
2. Conceptualization

Once the customer needs and constraints are understood, the industrial designers help the team conceptualize the product. During the concept generation stage engineers naturally focus their attention upon finding solutions to the technical subfunctions of the product. (See Chapter 7, Concept Generation.) At this time, the industrial designers concentrate on creating the product's form and user interfaces. Industrial designers make simple sketches of each concept. These initial sketches are a fast and inexpensive medium for expressing ideas and evaluating possibilities. Exhibit 11-4 shows a wide range of concept sketches for the ProtectiveClean toothbrush handle.

The proposed concepts may then be matched and combined with the technical solutions under exploration. Concepts are grouped and evaluated by the team according to the customer needs, technical feasibility, cost, and manufacturing considerations. (See Chapter 8, Concept Selection.)

In many companies, industrial designers work closely with engineers during the concept development phase. ID and engineering both take into consideration the functional and

EXHIBIT 11-4
Concept sketches for the Philips Sonicare ProtectiveClean toothbrush.



stylistic needs of the product's design during initial ideation. By codesigning through sketches and close coordination, ID and engineering are able to accomplish these iterations more quickly and efficiently.

3. Preliminary Refinement

In the preliminary refinement phase, industrial designers build models of the most promising concepts. *Soft models* are typically made in full scale using foam or foam-core board. They are the second-fastest method—only slightly slower than sketches—used to evaluate concepts.

Although generally quite rough, these models are invaluable because they allow the development team to express and visualize product concepts in three dimensions. Concepts are evaluated by industrial designers, engineers, marketing personnel, and (at times) potential customers through the process of touching, feeling, and modifying the models. Typically, designers will build as many models as possible depending on time and financial constraints. Concepts that are particularly difficult to visualize require more models than do simpler ones.

4. Further Refinement and Final Concept Selection

At this stage, industrial designers often switch from soft models and sketches to hard models and information-intensive drawings known as *renderings*. Renderings show the details of the design and often depict the product in use. Drawn in two or three dimensions, they convey a great deal of information about the product. Renderings are often used for color studies and for testing customers' reception to the proposed product's features and functionality. Exhibit 11-5 shows a 3D CAD rendering of alternative button layouts under consideration during the design of the ProtectiveClean toothbrush.

The final refinement step before selecting a concept is to create *hard models*. These models are still technically nonfunctional yet are close replicas of the final design with a very realistic look and feel. They are made from wood, dense foam, plastic, or metal; are painted and textured; and have some "working" features such as buttons that push or sliders that move. Because a hard model can cost thousands of dollars, a product development team usually has the budget to make only a few.

EXHIBIT 11-5
3d CAD images of potential button layouts for the ProtectiveClean toothbrush.

For many types of products, hard models are fabricated to have the intended size, density, weight distribution, surface finish, and color. Hard models can then be used by industrial designers and engineers to further refine the final concept specifications. Furthermore, these models can also be used to gain additional customer feedback in focus groups, to advertise and promote the product at trade shows, and to sell the concept to senior management within an organization.

In Exhibit 11-6, the hard models on the left show the finish and build quality for the preproduction parts of the Philips toothbrush, while the drawings on the right present the industrial designers' feedback for improvement. Exhibit 11-7 shows how a hard model of the toothbrush can be evaluated in various use cases, such as its balance when set on an angle.

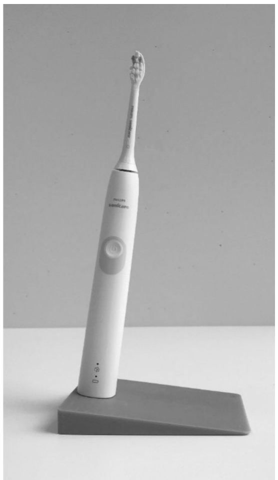
5. Control Drawings or Models

Industrial designers complete their development process by making *control drawings* or *control models* of the final concept. Control drawings or models document functionality,

EXHIBIT 11-6
Feedback on finish and build quality of preproduction part of the Philips Sonicare ProtectiveClean toothbrush.

©Koninklijke Philips NV

EXHIBIT 11-7
Testing the balance of a Philips Sonicare ProtectiveClean toothbrush hard model.



©Koninklijke Philips NV

EXHIBIT 11-8
Control drawings and reference models of colors, materials, and finishes.

©Koninklijke Philips NV

features, sizes, colors, surface finishes, and key dimensions. Although they are not detailed part drawings (known as engineering drawings), they can be used to fabricate final design models and other prototypes. Typically, these drawings or models are given to the engineering team for detailed design of the parts. Exhibit 11-8 presents hard models of the ProtectiveClean toothbrush along with control drawings that serve as a reference for colors, materials, and finishes of the product line.

6. Coordination with Engineering, Manufacturing, and External Vendors

The industrial designers must continue to work closely with engineering and manufacturing personnel throughout the subsequent product development process. Some industrial design consulting firms offer quite comprehensive product development services, including detailed engineering design and the selection and management of outside vendors of materials, tooling, components, and assembly services.

Management of the Industrial Design Process

Industrial design is typically involved in the overall product development process during several different phases. The timing of the ID effort depends upon the nature of the product being designed. To explain the timing of the ID effort it is convenient to classify products as technology-driven products and user-driven products.

- ***Technology-driven products:*** The primary characteristic of a technology-driven product is that its core benefit is based on its technology, or its ability to accomplish a specific technical task. While such a product may have important aesthetic or ergonomic requirements, consumers will most likely purchase the product primarily for its technical performance. For example, a hard disk drive inside a computer is largely technology driven. It follows that for the development team of a technology-driven product, the engineering or technical requirements will be paramount and will dominate development efforts. Accordingly, the role of ID is often limited to packaging the core technology. This entails determining the product's external appearance and ensuring that the product communicates its technological capabilities and modes of interaction to the user.
- ***User-driven products:*** The core benefit of a user-driven product is derived from the functionality of its interface and/or its aesthetic appeal. Typically, there is a high degree of user interaction for these products. Accordingly, the user interfaces must be safe, easy to use, and easy to maintain. The product's external appearance is often important to differentiate the product and to create pride of ownership. For example, an office chair is largely user driven. While these products may be technically sophisticated, the technology does not differentiate the product; thus, for the product development team, the ID considerations will be more important than the technical requirements. The role of engineering may still be important to determine any technical features of the product; however, because the technology is often already established, the development team focuses on the user aspects of the product.

Exhibit 11-9 classifies a variety of familiar products. Rarely does a product belong at one of the two extremes. Instead, most products fall somewhere along the continuum. For modern smartphones, for example, introducing the latest technical features and integrating them into an intuitive user interface are perhaps equally important. These classifications can be dynamic. For example, when a company develops a product based on a new core technology, the company is often interested in bringing the product to market as quickly as possible. Because little emphasis is placed on how the product looks or is used, the initial role of ID is small. However, as competitors enter the market, the product may need to compete more along user or aesthetic dimensions. The product's original classification shifts, and ID assumes an extremely important role in the development process. One example can be seen in electric vehicles. The core benefit of the first electric vehicles was their technology.

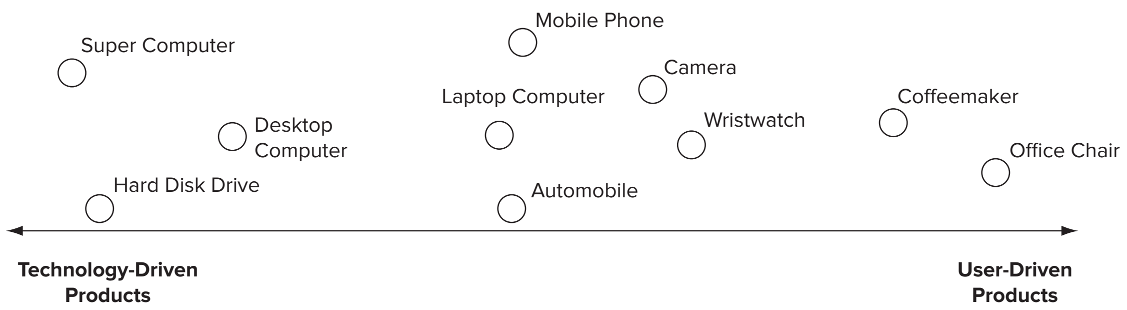


EXHIBIT 11-9 Classification of some common products on the continuum from technology-driven product to user-driven product.

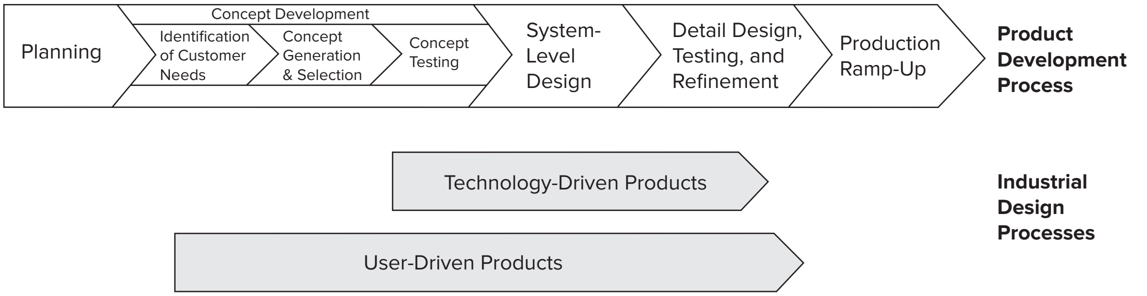


EXHIBIT 11-10 Relative timing of the industrial design process for two types of products.

As competition entered this market, however, electric vehicles such as those produced by Tesla began to rely more heavily on ID to create aesthetic appeal and enhanced utility, adding to the technical advantages of subsequent models.

Timing of Industrial Design Involvement

Typically, ID is incorporated into the product development process during the later phases for a technology-driven product and throughout the entire product development process for a user-driven product. Exhibit 11-10 illustrates these timing differences. Note that the ID process is a subprocess of the product development process; it is parallel but not separate. As shown in the exhibit, the ID process described above may be rapid relative to the overall development process. The technical nature of the problems that confront engineers in their design activities typically demands substantially more development effort than do the issues considered by ID.

Exhibit 11-10 shows that for a technology-driven product, ID activities may begin fairly late in the program. This is because ID for such products is focused primarily on packaging issues. For a user-driven product, ID is involved much more fully. In fact, the ID process may dominate the overall product development process for many user-driven products.

Exhibit 11-11 describes the responsibilities of ID during each phase of the product development process and how they relate to the other activities of the development team. As with the timing of ID involvement, the responsibilities of ID may also change according to product type. For example, the development of a new smartphone generally demands technology and user interface be considered simultaneously.

Assessing the Quality of Industrial Design

Assessing the quality of ID for a finished product is an inherently subjective task. However, we can qualitatively determine whether ID has accomplished its goals by considering each aspect of the product that is influenced by ID. Below are five categories for evaluating a product. We use these categories to develop specific questions, allowing the product to be rated along five dimensions. Exhibit 11-12 demonstrates this method by showing results for the ProtectiveClean toothbrush.

Product Development Activity	Type of Product	
	Technology-Driven	**User-Driven**
Identification of Customer Needs	ID typically has little involvement in the initial technology development but will be brought in later to help identify customer needs.	ID works closely with marketing to identify customer needs. Industrial designers participate in focus groups or one-on-one customer interviews and observations.
Concept Generation and Selection	ID works with marketing and engineering to ensure that human factors and user-interface issues are addressed. Safety and maintenance issues are often of primary importance.	ID generates multiple concepts according to the industrial design process flow described earlier.
Concept Testing	ID helps engineering to create prototypes, which are shown to customers for feedback.	ID leads in the creation of models to be tested with customers by marketing.
System-Level Design	ID typically has little involvement.	ID narrows down the concepts and refines the most promising approaches.
Detail Design, Testing, and Refinement	ID is responsible for packaging the product once most of the engineering details have been addressed. ID receives product specifications and constraints from engineering and marketing.	ID selects a final concept, then coordinates with engineering, manufacturing, and marketing to finalize the design.

EXHIBIT 11-11 The role of industrial design according to product type.

1. Usability

This is a rating of how easy the product is to use, and is related to the product's appearance, feel, and modes of interaction.

- Do the features of the product effectively communicate their operation to the user?
- Is the product's use intuitive?
- Are all features safe?
- Have all potential users and uses of the product been considered?

Examples of product-specific questions include:

- Is the grip comfortable for a wide range of hand sizes?
- Can the buttons be easily reached while holding the product in the same hand?
- Is it easy for the user to determine how to turn the product on and off?
- Is it easy to complete tasks using the screen interface?

2. Emotional Appeal

This is a rating of the overall consumer appeal of the product. Appeal is achieved in part through appearance, feel, sound, and smell.

- Is the product attractive? Is it exciting?
- Does the product express quality?
- What images come to mind when viewing it?

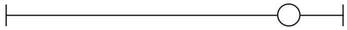
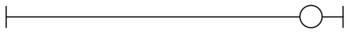
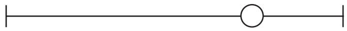
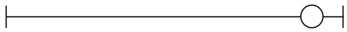
Assessment Category	Performance Rating Low Medium High	Explanation of Rating
1. Usability		The ProtectiveClean toothbrush was easy to use by a range of users. Both children and adults alike could easily grip the handle and operate the toothbrush controls. Since the ProtectiveClean toothbrush is used near water, the chosen material and finish assured that the majority of users did not experience slippage.
2. Emotional Appeal		The ProtectiveClean's sleek, updated form and sophisticated color options connected emotionally with new users and previous Sonicare toothbrush owners by elevating a health and hygiene product into a personal choice and style statement.
3. Ability to Maintain and Repair the Product		The ProtectiveClean toothbrush successfully addressed the issue of earlier models of debris getting trapped between brushhead and handle.
4. Appropriate Use of Resources		The final design included only those features that satisfied real customer needs. Materials were selected for durability and manufacturability, and to create an attractive appearance.
5. Product Differentiation		The visual language and user interaction of the ProtectiveClean toothbrush were clearly built on the heritage of the Sonicare family of electric toothbrushes while also creating a distinctive product compared with previous models.

EXHIBIT 11-12 Assessment of industrial design's role in the ProtectiveClean toothbrush development project.

- Does the product inspire pride of ownership?
- Does the product evoke feelings of pride among the development team and sales staff?

Examples of product-specific questions include:

- How does the car door sound when slammed?
- Does the hand tool feel solid and sturdy?
- Does the appliance look good on the kitchen counter?

3. Ability to Maintain and Repair the Product

This is a rating of the ease of product maintenance and repair. Maintenance and repair should be considered along with the other user interactions.

- Is the maintenance of the product obvious? Is it easy?
- Do product features effectively communicate disassembly and assembly procedures?

Examples of product-specific questions include:

- How easy and obvious is it to clear a paper jam in the printer?
- How difficult is it to disassemble and clean the food processor?
- How long does it take to change the batteries in the remote controller?

4. Appropriate Use of Resources

This is a rating of how well resources were used in satisfying the customer needs. Resources typically refer to the dollar expenditures on ID and other functions. These factors tend to drive costs such as manufacturing. A poorly designed product, one with unnecessary features, or a product made from an exotic material will affect tooling, manufacturing processes, assembly processes, and the like. This category asks whether these investments were well spent.

- How well were resources used to satisfy the customer requirements?
- Is the material selection appropriate (in terms of cost and quality)?
- Is the product over- or underdesigned (does it have features that are unnecessary or neglected)?
- Were environmental/ecological factors considered?

5. Product Differentiation

This is a rating of a product's uniqueness and consistency with the corporate identity. This differentiation arises predominantly from appearance.

- Will a customer who sees the product in a store be able to identify it because of its appearance?
- Will it be remembered by a consumer who has seen it in an advertisement?
- Will it be recognized when seen on the street?
- Does the product fit with or enhance the corporate identity?

Summary

This chapter introduces the topic of industrial design, explains its benefits to product quality, and illustrates how the ID process takes place.

- The primary mission of ID is to design the aspects of a product that relate to the user: aesthetics and ergonomics.
- Most products can benefit in some way or another from ID. The more a product is seen or used by people, the more it will depend on good ID for its success.
- For products that are characterized by a high degree of user interaction and the need for aesthetic appeal, ID should be involved throughout the product development process. Early involvement of industrial designers will ensure that critical aesthetic and user requirements will not be overlooked or ignored by the technical staff.
- When a product's success relies more on technology, ID can be integrated into the development process later.
- Active involvement of ID on the product development team can help to promote good communication between functional groups. Such communication facilitates coordination and ultimately translates into higher-quality products.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

For more information about industrial design—its history, impact, future, and practice—the following books and articles are recommended.

Caplan, Ralph, *By Design: Why There Are No Locks on the Bathroom Doors in the Hotel Louis XIV, and Other Object Lessons,* second edition, Fairchild Books, New York, 2004.

Dreyfuss, Henry, "The Industrial Designer and the Businessman," *Harvard Business Review,* November 1950, pp. 77–85.

Dreyfuss, H., *Designing for People,* Simon and Schuster, New York, 1955.

Fiell, C., and P. Fiell, *Industrial Design A to Z,* second edition, Taschen America LLC, 2016.

Gorman, C., *The Industrial Design Reader,* Allworth Press, 2003.

Harkins, Jack, "The Role of Industrial Design in Developing Medical Devices," *Medical Device and Diagnostic Industry,* September 1992, pp. 51–54, 94–97.

Kirkham, P., and S. Weber, *History of Design: Decorative Arts and Material Culture, 1400–2000,* Yale University Press, 2013.

Lorenz, Christopher, *The Design Dimension: Product Strategy and the Challenge of Global Marketing,* Basil Blackwell, Oxford, UK, 1986.

Lucie-Smith, Edward, *A History of Industrial Design,* Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York, 1983.

Norman discusses good and bad examples of product design across a range of consumer products and provides principles and guidelines for good design practice. In *Emotional Design,* he explains how people connect with and react to the products they buy and use.

Norman, Donald A., *The Design of Everyday Things,* Doubleday, New York, 1990.

Norman, Donald A., *Emotional Design: Why We Love (or Hate) Everyday Things,* Basic Books, New York, 2004.

Norman, D. A., *The Psychology of Everyday Things,* Basic Books, New York, 1988.

Rams, D., *Design by Vitsoe (Speech),* Jack Lenor Larsen New York Showroom, New York, 1976.

Boatwright and Cagan argue that many successful products are designed to connect with customers through strong, positive emotions.

Boatwright, Peter, and Jonathan Cagan, *Built to Love: Creating Products That Captivate Customers,* Berrett-Koehler, San Francisco, 2010.

The following studies are among the very few that have critically assessed the value of ID to products and their manufacturers. A 1994 issue of *Design Management Journal* and a 2005 issue of *Journal of Product Innovation Management* was devoted to this topic.

Design Management Journal, Vol. 5, No. 2, Spring 1994.

Gemser, Gerda, and Mark A. A. M. Leenders, "How Integrating Industrial Design in the Product Development Process Impacts on Company Performance," *Journal of Product Innovation Management,* Vol. 18, No. 1, January 2001, pp. 28–38.

Hertenstein, Julie H., Marjorie B. Platt, and Robert W. Veryzer, "The Impact of Industrial Design Effectiveness on Corporate Financial Performance," *Journal of Product Innovation Management,* Vol. 22, No. 1, January 2005, pp. 3–21.

Journal of Product Innovation Management, Vol. 22, No. 1, January 2005.

Pearson, Scott, "Using Product Archaeology to Understand the Dimensions of Design Decision Making," S. M. Thesis, MIT Sloan School of Management, May 1992.

Roy, Robin, and Stephen Potter, "The Commercial Impacts of Investment in Design," *Design Studies,* Vol. 14, No. 2, April 1993, pp. 171–193.

Sheppard, B., G. Kouyoumjian, H. Sarrazin, and F. Dore, "The Business Value of Design," *McKinsey Quarterly,* McKinsey & Company, 2018.

Olins describes how a firm develops a corporate identity through design and communication.

Olins, Wally, *Corporate Identity: Making Business Strategy Visible through Design,* Harvard Business School Press, Boston, 1989.

The books below describe cases of industrial design and their influence on business success at several major product development firms:

Greene, J., *Design Is How It Works: How the Smartest Companies Turn Products into Icons,* Penguin, 2010.

Merchant, B., *The One Device: The Secret History of the iPhone,* Random House, 2017.

Several excellent case studies involving the ID process and product development issues surrounding ID have been written by the Design Management Institute. Also the publications, *Innovation* (quarterly), and *I.D.* (bimonthly) include case studies, examples, and discussion of ID practices.

Design Management Institute, Boston, www.dmi.org.

I.D. Magazine, F + W Publications, Inc., New York.

Innovation, Industrial Designers Society of America, Dulles, VA.

While industrial designers are best found through personal referral, IDSA publishes a list of ID firms and consultants.

Industrial Designers Society of America, Dulles, VA, www.idsa.org.

Exercises

1. Visit a local specialty store (e.g., kitchen supplies, tools, office supply, and gifts) and photograph (or purchase) a set of competing products. Assess each one in terms of the five ID quality categories defined above in the section "Assessing the Quality of Industrial Design." Which product would you purchase? Would you be willing to pay more for it than for the others?

2. Develop several concept sketches for a common product. Try designing the product form both "from the inside out" and "from the outside in." Which is easier for you? Possible simple products include a stapler, a garlic press, an alarm clock, a reading light, and a telephone.
3. List some firms that you feel have a strong corporate identity. What aspects of their products helped to develop this identity?

Thought Questions

1. By what cause-and-effect mechanism does ID affect a product's manufacturing cost? Under what conditions would ID increase or decrease manufacturing cost?
2. What types of products might not benefit from ID involvement in the development process?
3. The term *visual equity* is sometimes used to refer to the value of the distinctive appearance of a firm's products. How is such equity obtained? Can it be "purchased" over a short time period, or does it accrue slowly?

Design for Environment

Courtesy of Herman Miller, Inc.

EXHIBIT 12-1
Three chairs in Herman Miller's line of office seating products. Shown (from left to right) are the Aeron (1994), Mirra (2004), and Setu (2009).

In June 2009, Herman Miller, Inc., a U.S.-based office furniture manufacturer, launched the Setu multipurpose chair. The Setu (named after the Hindi word for bridge) aims to set new standards of simplicity, adaptability, and comfort for multipurpose seating while being environmentally friendly. The Setu chair is one product in a very successful line of office seating, including also the Aeron and Mirra chairs shown in Exhibit 12-1.

Herman Miller designed the Setu chair in collaboration with Studio 7.5, a design firm based in Germany. Multipurpose chairs, such as the Setu, are used where people sit for relatively short periods, such as conference rooms, temporary workstations, and collaborative spaces. (This is in contrast to a task chair in which the user sits for longer periods.) Studio 7.5 found that many chairs in office spaces where people spend from a few minutes to a few hours at a time were uncomfortable and misadjusted. Moreover, most chairs are made with materials and processes that are harmful to the environment. Studio 7.5 recognized a market need for a new and innovative multipurpose chair—one combining comfort, design for environment, and a compelling price.

The core of Setu is a flexible spine, molded of two polypropylene materials and engineered to achieve comfort for nearly everybody (see Exhibit 12-2). As the user sits and reclines, the spine flexes, providing comfort and back support throughout the full range of tilt. Without any tilt mechanism and with only one adjustment (height), the chair is significantly lighter weight, less complex, and lower cost than the Aeron and Mirra task chairs.

The Setu chair emerged from Herman Miller's commitment to minimizing the environmental impacts of their products and operations, and provides a great example of how to incorporate environmental considerations into the product development process. The Setu is designed for material recycling and is produced using environmentally safe materials and renewable energy. The following factors explain its level of environmental performance:

- ***Environmentally friendly materials:*** The Setu multipurpose chair consists of environmentally safe and nontoxic materials such as 41 percent (by weight) aluminum, 41 percent polypropylene, and 18 percent steel.

EXHIBIT 12-2
The spine of the Setu chair is a combination of two polypropylene materials precisely engineered to flex and support as the user moves in the chair.

Courtesy of Herman Miller, Inc.

- ***Recycled content*:** The Setu is made of 44 percent recycled materials (by weight, comprising 23 percent postconsumer and 21 percent postindustrial recycled content).
- ***Recyclability:*** The Setu is 92 percent recyclable (by weight) at the end of its useful life. Steel and aluminum components are 100 percent recyclable. Polypropylene components are identified with a recycling code whenever possible to aid in returning these materials to the recycling stream. (Of course, recycling of industrial materials depends on the availability of such recycling streams.)
- ***Clean energy:*** Setu is manufactured on a production line that utilizes 100 percent green power (half from wind turbines and half from captured landfill off-gassing).
- ***Emissions:*** No harmful air or water emissions are released during Setu's production.
- ***Returnable and recyclable packaging:*** Setu components are received by Herman Miller from a network of nearby suppliers in molded tote trays that are returned to the suppliers for reuse. Outgoing packaging materials include corrugated cardboard and a polyethylene plastic bag, both materials capable of repeated recycling.

Design for environment (DFE) is a way to include environmental considerations in the product development process. This chapter presents a method for DFE, using the Herman Miller Setu chair as an example to illustrate the successful application of the DFE process.

What Is Design for Environment?

Every product has environmental impacts. DFE provides organizations with a practical method to minimize these impacts in an effort to create a more sustainable society. Just as effective design for manufacturing (DFM) practice has been shown to maintain or improve product quality while reducing costs (see Chapter 13, Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain), practitioners of DFE have also found that effective DFE practice can maintain or improve product quality and cost while reducing environmental impacts.

Environmental impacts of a product may include energy consumption, natural resource depletion, liquid discharges, gaseous emissions, and solid waste generation. These impacts fall into two broad categories—energy and materials—and both represent critical environmental problems that need to be solved. For most products, addressing the energy problem means developing products that use less energy and that use renewable energy. To address the materials problem is not as straightforward; therefore, much of the focus of DFE in this chapter is on choosing the right materials for products and making sure they can be recycled.

During the early stages of the product development process, deliberate decisions about material use, energy efficiency, and waste avoidance can minimize or eliminate environmental impacts; however, once the design concept is established, improving environmental performance generally involves time-consuming design iterations. DFE therefore may involve activities throughout the product development process and requires an interdisciplinary approach. Industrial design, engineering, purchasing, and marketing all work together in the development of environmentally friendly products. In many cases, product development professionals with specialized DFE training lead the DFE efforts within a project; however, all product development team members benefit from understanding the principles of DFE.

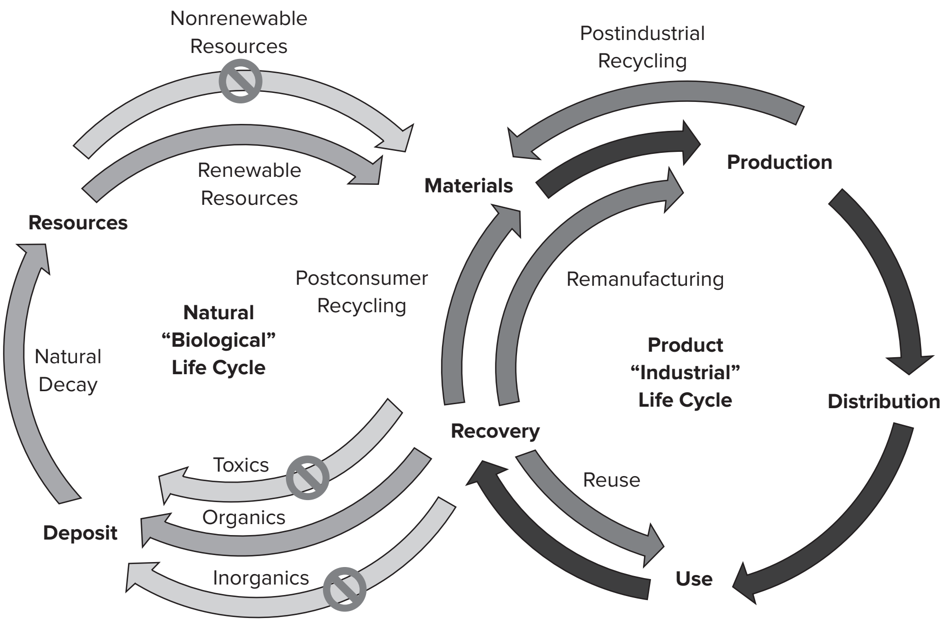
Two Life Cycles

Life cycle thinking is the basis of DFE. This helps to expand the traditional manufacturer's concern with the production and distribution of its products to comprise a closed-loop system relating the product life cycle to the natural life cycle, both of which are illustrated in Exhibit 12-3. The product life cycle begins with the extraction and processing of raw materials from natural resources, followed by production, distribution, and use of the product. Finally, at the end of the product's useful life there are several recovery options—remanufacturing or reuse of components, recycling of materials, or disposal through incineration or deposit in a landfill. The natural life cycle represents the growth and decay of organic materials in a continuous loop. The two life cycles intersect, as shown in the diagram, with the use of natural materials in industrial products and with the reintegration of organic materials back into the natural cycle.

While most product life cycles take place over a few months or years, the natural cycle spans a wider range of time periods. Most organic materials (plant- and animal-based) can decay relatively quickly and become nutrients for new growth of similar materials. However, other natural materials (such as minerals), are created on a much longer time scale, and so are considered to be nonrenewable natural resources; therefore, depositing most mineral-based industrial materials into landfills does not readily recreate similar industrial materials for perhaps thousands of years (and often creating unnatural concentrations of certain harmful wastes).

Each of the product life cycle stages may consume energy and other resources and may generate emissions and waste, all of which have environmental impacts. From this life cycle perspective, to reach conditions of environmental sustainability, the materials in products must be balanced in a sustainable, closed-loop system. This gives rise to three challenges of product design to reach sustainability, which are also represented in the life cycle diagram of Exhibit 12-3.

EXHIBIT 12-3
The natural life cycle and the product life cycle.



1. Eliminate use of nonrenewable natural resources (including nonrenewable sources of energy).
2. Eliminate disposal of synthetic and inorganic materials that do not decay quickly.
3. Eliminate creation of toxic wastes that are not part of natural life cycles.

Organizations committed to DFE intend to work toward achieving these sustainability conditions over time. DFE helps these organizations to create better products by choosing materials carefully and by enabling proper recovery options so that the materials used in products can be reintegrated either into the product life cycle or into the natural life cycle.

Environmental Impacts

Every product may have a number of environmental impacts over its life cycle. The following list explains some of the environmental impacts deriving from the manufacturing sector (adapted from Lewis and Gertsakis, 2001):

- ***Global warming:*** Scientific data and models show that the temperature of the earth is gradually increasing as a result of the accumulation of greenhouse gases, particulates, and water vapor in the upper atmosphere. This effect appears to be accelerating as a result of emissions of carbon dioxide (CO_2), methane (CH_4), chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), black carbon particles, and nitrogen oxides (NO_x) from industrial processes and products.
- ***Resource depletion:*** Many of the raw materials used for production, such as iron ore, gas, oil, and coal, are nonrenewable and supplies are limited.
- ***Solid waste:*** Products may generate solid waste throughout their life cycle. Some of this waste is recycled, but most is disposed in incinerators or landfills. Incinerators generate air pollution and toxic ash (which goes into landfills). Landfills may also create concentrations of toxic substances, generate methane gas (CH_4), and release groundwater pollutants.
- ***Water pollution:*** The most common sources of water pollution are discharges from industrial processes, which may include heavy metals, fertilizers, solvents, oils, synthetic substances, acids, and suspended solids. Waterborne pollutants may affect groundwater, drinking water, and fragile ecosystems.
- ***Air pollution:*** Sources of air pollution include emissions from factories, power-generating plants, incinerators, residential and commercial buildings, and motor vehicles. Typical pollutants include CO_2, NO_x, sulfur dioxide (SO_2), ozone (O_3), and volatile organic compounds (VOCs).
- ***Land degradation:*** Land degradation concerns the adverse effects that raw material extraction and production, such as mining, farming, and forestry, have on the environment. The effects include reduced soil fertility, soil erosion, salinity of land and water, and deforestation.
- ***Biodiversity:*** Biodiversity concerns the variety of plant and animal species, and is affected by land clearing for urban development, mining, and other industrial activities.
- ***Ozone depletion:*** The ozone layer protects the earth against the harmful effects of the sun's radiation. It is degraded by reactions with nitric acid (created by the burning of fossil fuels) and chlorine compounds (such as CFCs).

History of Design for Environment

The birth of DFE is often traced to the early 1970s. Papanek (1971) challenged designers to face their social and environmental responsibilities instead of only commercial interests. The World Commission on Environment and Development's *Brundtland Report* (1987) first defined the term *sustainable development* as "development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs."

In the 1990s, several influential books about environmentally friendly design were published. Burall (1991) argued that there was no longer a conflict between a green approach to design and business success. Fiksel (1996; revised 2009) discussed how DFE integrates life cycle thinking into new product and process development. As the DFE process matured, Brezet and van Hemel (1997) provided a practical guide called *Ecodesign.* Also in the 1990s the Technical University of Delft, Philips Electronics, and the Dutch government collaborated to develop a life cycle analysis software tool providing metrics to assess the overall environmental impact of a product.

Today's sustainable development movement embraces the broader concept of sustainable product design (Bhamra and Lofthouse, 2007), which includes not only DFE but also the social and ethical implications of products. Even though authors have used various terminology for environmentally friendly design approaches, the terms *green design, ecodesign, sustainable design,* and *DFE* are more or less synonymous today.

Herman Miller's Journey toward Design for Environment

Many manufacturing firms have begun to embrace DFE; however, few have done so to the extent of Herman Miller, where DFE is central to its corporate strategy. Herman Miller strives to maintain high product quality standards while incorporating increasingly more environmentally friendly materials, manufacturing processes, and product function into every new product design.

In 1999, Herman Miller formed a design for environment (DFE) team. This team is responsible for developing environmentally sensitive design standards for new and existing Herman Miller products. McDonough Braungart Design Chemistry (MBDC), a product and industrial process design firm based in Virginia, supports the DFE team in its mission. McDonough and Braungart (2002) stated in their book, *Cradle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things,* that the traditional DFE approach—designing products that are merely less harmful to the environment due to incremental improvements such as reduced energy use, waste generation, or use of toxic materials—is not sufficient because such products are still unhealthy for the environment. To advance from less harmful to truly environmentally friendly products, McDonough and Braungart introduced a DFE method that focuses on three key areas of product design:

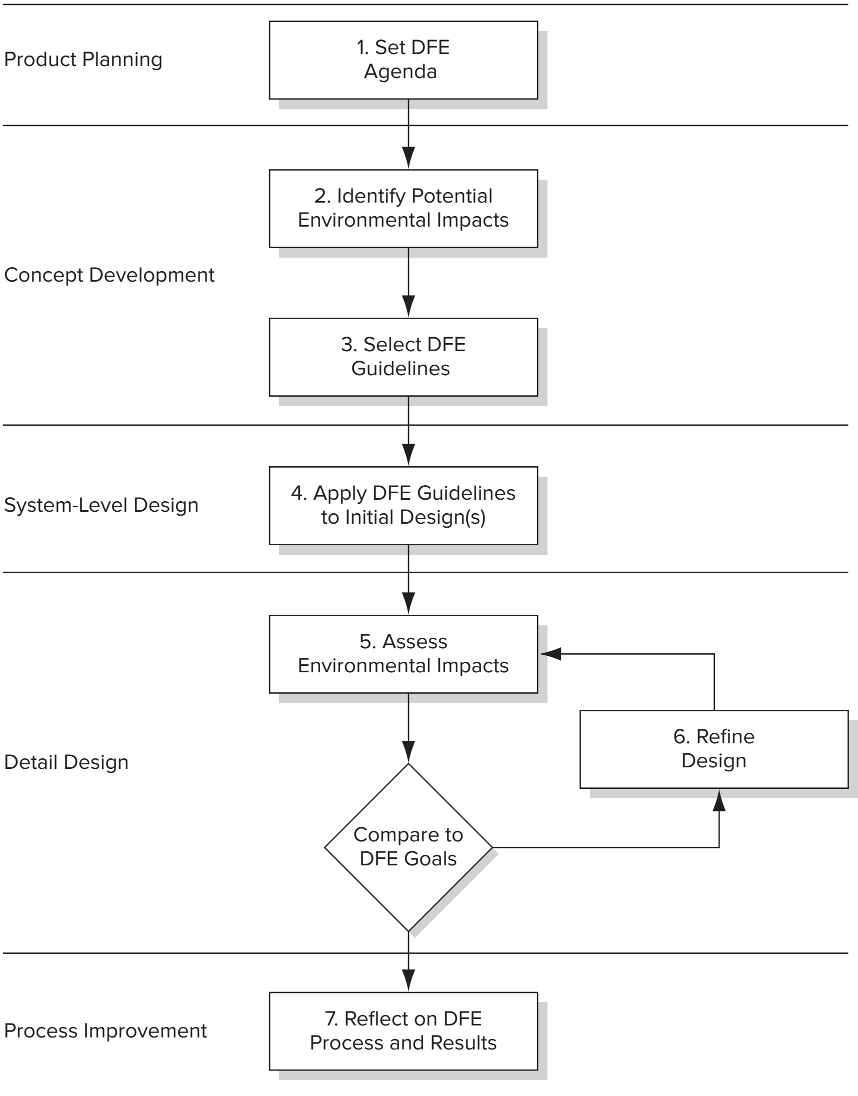
- ***Material chemistry:*** What chemicals comprise the specified materials? Are they safe for humans and the environment?
- ***Disassembly:*** Can the products be taken apart at the end of their useful life to recycle their materials?
- ***Recyclability:*** Do the materials contain recycled content? Are the materials readily separable into recycling categories? Can the materials be recycled at the end of the product's useful life?

To implement DFE, Herman Miller has built a team of DFE experts who work on every new product development team. With MBDC, they have created a materials database and a DFE assessment tool, which provide metrics to guide design decisions throughout the product development process.

The Design for Environment Process

Effective implementation of DFE includes activities throughout the product development process. The steps of the DFE process are shown in Exhibit 12-4. Despite the linear presentation of the steps, product development teams will likely repeat some steps several times, making DFE an iterative process. The following sections describe each step of the DFE process.

EXHIBIT 12-4
The DFE process involves activities throughout the product development process.



Step 1: Set the DFE Agenda: Drivers, Goals, and Team

The DFE process begins as early as the product planning phase with setting the DFE agenda. This step consists of three activities: identifying the internal and external drivers of DFE, setting the environmental goals for the product, and setting up the DFE team. By setting the DFE agenda, the organization identifies a clear and actionable path toward environmentally friendly product design.

Identify the Internal and External Drivers of DFE

The planning phase of DFE begins with a discussion of the reasons why the organization wishes to address the environmental performance of its products. It is useful to document both the internal drivers and the external drivers of DFE. This list may evolve over time, as changes in technology, regulation, experience, stakeholders, and competition each affect the capability and challenges of the organization.

Internal drivers are the DFE objectives within the organization. Typical internal drivers of DFE are (adapted from Brezet and van Hemel, 1997):

- ***Product quality:*** A focus on environmental performance may raise the quality of the product in terms of functionality, reliability in operation, durability, and repairability.
- ***Public image:*** Communicating a high level of environmental quality of a product can improve a company's image.
- ***Cost reduction:*** Using less material and less energy in production can result in considerable cost savings. Generating less waste and eliminating hazardous waste results in lower waste disposal costs.
- ***Innovation:*** Sustainable thinking can lead to radical changes in product design and may foster innovation across the whole company.
- ***Operational safety:*** By eliminating toxic materials, many DFE changes can help improve the occupational health and safety of employees.
- ***Employee motivation:*** Employees can be motivated to contribute in new and creative ways if they are able to help reduce the environmental impacts of the company's products and operations.
- ***Ethical responsibility:*** Interest in sustainable development among managers and product developers may be motivated in part by a moral sense of responsibility for conserving the environment and nature.
- ***Consumer behavior:*** Wider availability of products with positive environmental benefits may accelerate the transition to cleaner lifestyles and demand for greener products.

External drivers of DFE typically include environmental regulations, customer preferences, and the offerings of competitors, such as (from Brezet and van Hemel, 1997):

- ***Environmental legislation:*** Product-oriented environmental policy is developing rapidly. Companies must not only understand the myriad regulations in the various regions where they operate and sell products, but also be able to anticipate future legislation. The focus of recent legislation is shifting from the prohibition of certain materials to broader producer responsibility, including take-back obligations.

- ***Market demand:*** Today, companies operate in a business environment of increasingly well-informed industrial customers and end users who may demand sustainable products. Negative publicity, blogs, and boycotts of products, manufacturers, or retailers can have considerable impact on sales. Of course, the opposite positive effect is becoming more powerful as well.
- ***Competition:*** Sustainability activities undertaken by competitors can lead to pressure for more emphasis on DFE. Setting a high environmental standard may create a first-mover advantage.
- ***Trade organizations:*** Trade or industrial organizations in some branches of industry—such as packaging and automobile manufacturing—encourage companies to take environmental action by sharing technology and establishing codes of conduct.
- ***Suppliers:*** Suppliers influence company behavior by introducing more sustainable materials and processes. Companies may choose to audit and confirm environmental declarations of their suppliers.
- ***Social pressures:*** Through their social and community contacts, managers and employees may be asked about the responsibility that their business takes for the environment.

Key DFE drivers for the Setu chair were market demand, innovation, and Herman Miller's commitment to environmental responsibility. Studio 7.5 and Herman Miller developed the early Setu concepts with these drivers in mind.

Set the DFE Goals

An important activity in the product planning phase is to set the environmental goals for each product development project. Many organizations have established a strategy that includes long-term environmental goals. These goals define how the organization complies with environmental regulations and how the organization reduces the environmental impacts of its products, services, and operations.

In 2005, Herman Miller set its long-term environmental goals for the year 2020:

- Zero landfill.
- Zero hazardous waste generation.
- Zero harmful air emissions.
- Zero process water use.
- All green electrical energy use.
- All buildings certified to meet environmental efficiency standards.
- All sales from products created with the DFE process.

To achieve the long-term goals, specific environmental goals may be set for every product during the planning phase. These individual goals also allow the organization to make progress toward the long-term strategy. Exhibit 12-5 lists examples of DFE goals, arranged according to the product life cycle. On the basis of an understanding of which life cycle stages contribute significant environmental impacts, goals may be developed accordingly.

EXHIBIT 12-5
Example DFE goals, arranged according to the product life cycle stages.

Life Cycle Stage	Example Design for Environment Goals
Materials	• Reduce the use of raw materials. • Choose plentiful, renewable raw materials. • Eliminate toxic materials. • Increase the energy efficiency of material extraction processes. • Reduce discards and waste. • Increase the use of recovered and recycled materials.
Production	• Reduce the use of process materials. • Specify process materials that can be fully recovered and recycled. • Eliminate toxic process materials. • Select processes with high energy efficiency. • Reduce production scrap and waste.
Distribution	• Plan the most energy-efficient shipping. • Reduce emissions from transport. • Eliminate toxic and dangerous packaging materials. • Eliminate or reuse packaging.
Use	• Extend useful product life. • Promote use of products under the intended conditions. • Enable clean and efficient servicing operations. • Eliminate emissions and reduce energy consumption during use.
Recovery	• Facilitate product disassembly to separate materials. • Enable the recovery and remanufacturing of components. • Facilitate material recycling. • Reduce waste volume for incineration and landfill deposit.

Source: Adapted from Giudice, F., G. La Rosa, and A. Risitano, *Product Design for the Environment: A Life Cycle Approach,* CRC Press Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2006.

Herman Miller understands that the primary environmental impacts of their office furniture products are in the materials, production, and recovery stages. For the Setu chair, Herman Miller aimed to use exclusively materials with low environmental impact, facilitate product disassembly, and enable recycling.

Set Up the DFE Team

DFE requires participation by many functional experts on the product development project. The typical composition of a DFE team (often a subteam within the overall project team) consists of a DFE leader, an environmental chemistry and materials expert, a manufacturing engineer, and a representative from the purchasing and supply chain organization. Of course, the DFE team composition depends on the organization and needs of the specific project, and may also include marketing professionals, outside consultants, suppliers, or other experts.

Herman Miller created their DFE team in 1999 to work with the designers and engineers on every product development project to review material chemistry, disassembly, recyclability, incoming and outgoing packaging, energy sources and uses, and waste generation. The DFE team is involved as early as possible to ensure that DFE considerations are taken into account right from the start. By working closely with each product development team, the DFE team provides the tools and knowledge for making environmentally sound design decisions.

Step 2: Identify Potential Environmental Impacts

Within the concept development phase, DFE begins by identifying the potential environmental impacts of the product over its life cycle. This enables the product development team to consider environmental impacts at the concept stage even though little or no specific data (regarding material and energy use, emissions, and waste generation) are yet available for the actual product and a detailed environmental impact assessment is not yet possible. In the case of product redesign, however, relevant data may be provided by impact analysis of some existing products. (See life cycle assessment methods in step 5.)

Exhibit 12-6 shows a chart that can be used to qualitatively assess the environmental impacts over the product life cycle. The chart is an adaption of the LiDS Wheel (Brezet and van Hemel, 1997) and the EcoDesign Web (Bhamra and Lofthouse, 2007). To create this chart, the team asks, "What are the significant sources of potential environmental impact in each life cycle stage?" Specific questions for each stage are given in Exhibit 12-7 and may be helpful in conducting this qualitative analysis.

The team lists for each life cycle stage the anticipated key environmental impacts. The height of each bar in the chart represents the team's judgment about the overall magnitude of the potential environmental impacts and therefore where to focus their DFE efforts. For some products (e.g., automobiles, electronic devices) the most significant impacts are found to be in the use stage. For other products (e.g., clothing, office furniture) the greatest impacts may be in the materials, production, and recovery stages. Exhibit 12-6 shows a qualitative life cycle assessment for office furniture in general. This understanding guided DFE in the Setu chair project.

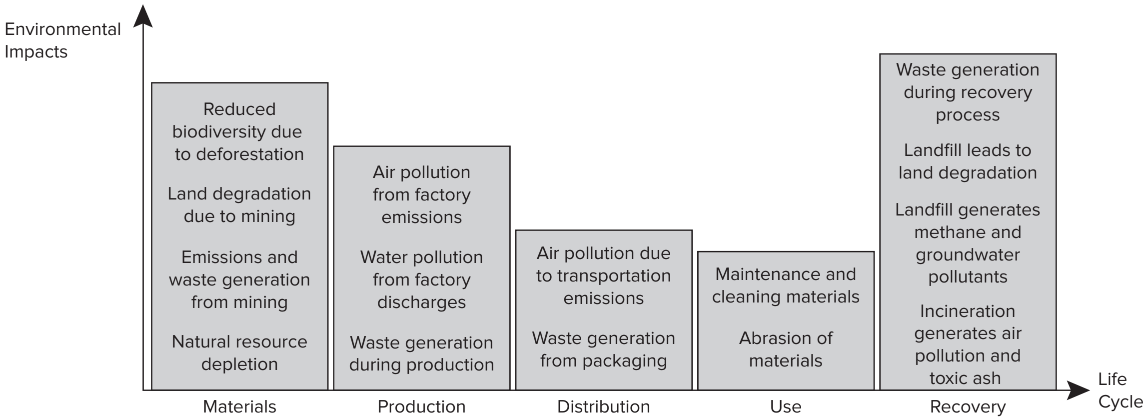


EXHIBIT 12-6 The qualitative life cycle assessment represents the team's estimate of the potential types and magnitudes of environmental impacts of the product over its life cycle. This chart depicts the types of impacts most relevant to office furniture products such as the Setu chair.

Life Cycle Stage	Questions
Materials	• How much, and what types of recyclable materials will be used? • How much, and what types of nonrecyclable materials will be used? • How much, and what types of additives will be used? • What is the environmental profile of the materials? • How much energy will be required to extract these materials? • Which means of transport will be used to procure them?
Production	• How many, and what types of production processes will be used? • How much, and what types of auxiliary materials are needed? • How high will the energy consumption be? • How much waste will be generated? • Can production waste be separated for recycling?
Distribution	• What kind of transport packaging, bulk packaging, and retail packaging will be used (volumes, weights, materials, and reusability)? • Which means of transport will be used?
Use	• How much, and what type of energy will be required? • How much, and what kind of consumables will be needed? • What will be the technical lifetime? • How much maintenance and repairs will be needed? • What and how much auxiliary materials and energy will be required? • What will be the aesthetic lifetime of the product?
Recovery	• How can the product be reused? • Will the components or materials be reused? • Can the product be quickly disassembled using common tools? • What materials will be recyclable? • Will recyclable materials be identifiable? • How will the product be disposed?

Source: Adapted from Brezet, Han, and Caroline van Hemel, *Ecodesign: A Promising Approach to Sustainable Production and Consumption,* TU Delft, The Netherlands, 1997.

EXHIBIT 12-7 Typical questions for consideration of the environmental impacts of each life cycle stage.

Step 3: Select DFE Guidelines

Guidelines help product design teams to make early DFE decisions without the type of detailed environmental impact analysis that is only possible after the design is more fully specified. Relevant guidelines may be selected based in part on the qualitative assessment of life cycle impacts (from step 2). Selecting relevant guidelines during the concept development phase allows the product development team to apply them throughout the product development project.

Exhibit 12-8 shows a compilation of DFE guidelines based on a study by Telenko et al. (2008). Each life cycle stage has its own DFE guidelines that provide product development teams with instructions on how to reduce the environmental impacts of a product. A more detailed list of DFE guidelines is provided in the appendix to this chapter. Many of the guidelines relate to selection of materials. This underscores the central role of materials in DFE.

Life Cycle Stage	Design for Environment Guidelines	
Materials	Sustainability of resources	• Specify renewable and abundant resources.* • Specify recyclable and/or recycled materials.* • Specify renewable forms of energy.*
	Healthy inputs and outputs	• Specify nonhazardous materials.* • Install protection against release of pollutants and hazardous substances. • Include labels and instructions for safe handling of toxic materials.*
Production	Minimal use of resources in production	• Employ as few manufacturing steps as possible.* • Specify materials that do not require surface treatments or coatings.* • Minimize the number of components.* • Design components to minimize raw material usage.*
Distribution	Minimal use of resources in distribution	• Minimize packaging. • Use recyclable and/or reusable packaging materials. • Employ folding, nesting, or disassembly to distribute products in a compact state. • Specify lightweight materials and components.*
Use	Efficiency of resources during use	• Implement default power-down for subsystems that are not in use. • Use feedback mechanisms to indicate how much energy or water is being consumed. • Implement intuitive controls for resource-saving features.
	Appropriate durability	• Consider aesthetics and functionality to ensure the aesthetic life is equal to the technical life. • Facilitate repair and upgrading. • Ensure minimal maintenance. • Minimize failure modes.
Recovery	Disassembly, separation, and purification	• Ensure that joints and fasteners are easily accessible.* • Specify joints and fasteners so that they are separable by hand or with common tools.* • Ensure that incompatible materials are easily separated.*

Source: Based on Telenko, Cassandra, Carolyn C. Seepersad, Michael E. Webber, *A Compilation of Design for Environment Principles and Guidelines*, ASME DETC Design for Manufacturing and the Life Cycle Conference, New York, 2008.

EXHIBIT 12-8 Design for environment guidelines arranged according to the life cycle stage of a product. Guidelines used in the Setu project are identified with an asterisk.

For the Setu project, the DFE experts provided the product development team with several guidelines. These guidelines are identified with an asterisk in Exhibit 12-8.

Step 4: Apply the DFE Guidelines to the Initial Product Design

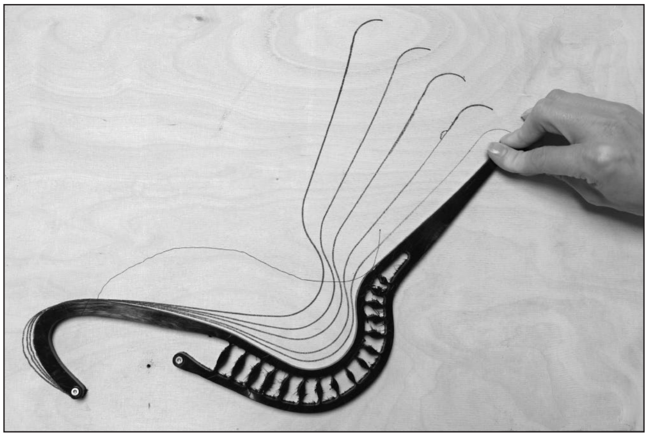
As the product architecture is developed during the system-level design phase (see Chapter 10, Product Architecture), some initial material choices are made along with some of the module design decisions. It is beneficial, therefore, to apply the relevant DFE guidelines (selected in step 3) at this point. In this way, the initial product design may have lower environmental impacts.

The Setu team wanted the chair to be lightweight to reduce materials use and transportation impacts (application of the DFE guideline: Specify lightweight materials and components). They achieved this by developing a concept and product architecture that avoided an under-seat tilt mechanism and other complexities. This helped to reduce the chair's weight by as much as 20 pounds (9 kg). The Setu team also looked for new ways to ease the disassembly of the Setu to facilitate recycling. They placed each joint where it is easily accessible and also ensured that Setu's components are separable by hand or with common tools (application of the DFE guidelines: Ensure that joints and fasteners are easily accessible; Specify joints and fasteners so that they are separable by hand or with common tools).

In the detail-design phase, the exact materials specifications, detailed geometry, and manufacturing processes are determined. Application of the DFE guidelines in detail design is essentially the same as in system-level design; however, at this point many more decisions are being made and environmental factors can be considered with greater precision. By specifying low-impact materials and reducing energy consumption, product development teams create more environmentally friendly products. Furthermore, the DFE guidelines may inspire product development teams to come up with improvement in the functionality and durability of the product, which may lead to significant lower environmental impacts.

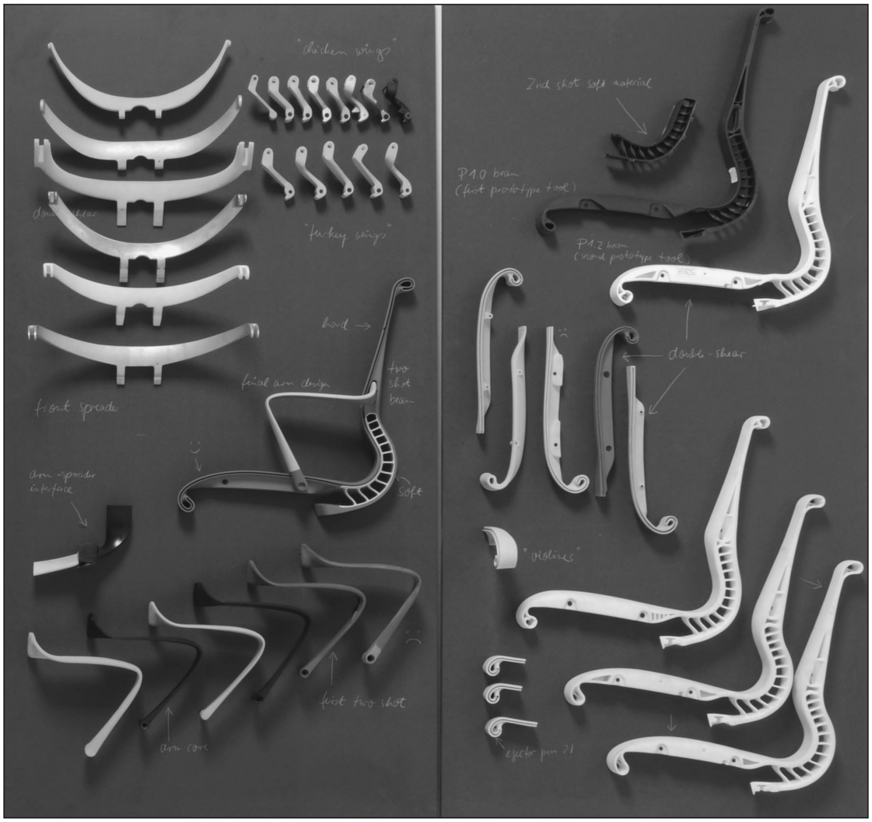
The Setu spine geometry, shown in Exhibit 12-9, was inspired by the human backbone. Studio 7.5 designers prototyped many iterations of the spine to achieve proper support and recline (see Exhibit 12-10). Once the shape of the spine was set, the team had to find materials that suited both the functional and environmental requirements.

EXHIBIT 12-9
The Setu spine was inspired by the human backbone.



Courtesy of Herman Miller, Inc.

EXHIBIT 12-10
The design team prototyped many variations of Setu's spine and related components.



Courtesy of Herman Miller, Inc.

To specify materials that fit the environmental and functional requirements, the development team used Herman Miller's proprietary materials database. The database, maintained together with MBDC, considers the safety and environmental impacts of each material and classifies them into one of four categories: green (little to no hazard), yellow (low to moderate hazard), orange (incomplete data), and red (high hazard). Herman Miller's aim was to use only materials that rank yellow or green for all new products.

For example, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) is classified as a red material. PVC is a polymer that is commonly used in furniture and other products due to its low cost and high strength; however, both the production and the incineration of PVC releases toxic emissions. To avoid using materials that are toxic to humans and the environment (application of the DFE guideline: Specify nonhazardous materials), the engineers specified safer materials such as polypropylene and avoided PVC entirely.

Step 5: Assess the Environmental Impacts

The next step is to assess, to the extent possible, the environmental impacts of the product over its entire life cycle. To do so with precision requires a detailed understanding of how the product is to be produced, distributed, used over its lifetime, and recycled or disposed at the end of its useful life. This assessment is generally done on the basis of the detailed bill of materials (BOM), including sources of energy, component material specifications, suppliers, transportation modes, waste streams, recycling methods, and disposal means. Several quantitative life cycle assessment (LCA) tools are available to conduct such an environmental assessment. These tools range in price and complexity and would be selected based on the types of materials and processes involved, and the precision required of the analysis.

LCA requires a significant amount of time, training, and data. Many LCA analyses are comparative and provide a basis for considering the environmental performance of product design alternatives. Commercial LCA software is becoming widely used in product design, and supporting data are available for common materials, production processes, transport methods, energy generation processes, and disposal scenarios.

Herman Miller uses their own proprietary DFE assessment tool, developed for them by MBDC. The DFE tool consists of a spreadsheet interface and the materials database using the color coding described earlier. The tool considers four factors for each component in the product:

1. ***Material chemistry:*** Fraction of the materials by weight that are the safest possible in terms of human toxicity and environmental concerns.
2. ***Recycled content:*** Fraction of the materials by weight that are postindustrial or post-consumer recycled content.
3. ***Disassembly:*** Fraction of the materials by weight that can be readily disassembled.
4. ***Recyclability:*** Fraction of the materials by weight that are recyclable.

Once the initial Setu design was established, the chair was divided into modules, with different teams assigned to develop each module. As each team designed their module, the DFE team assessed the design using the DFE tool.

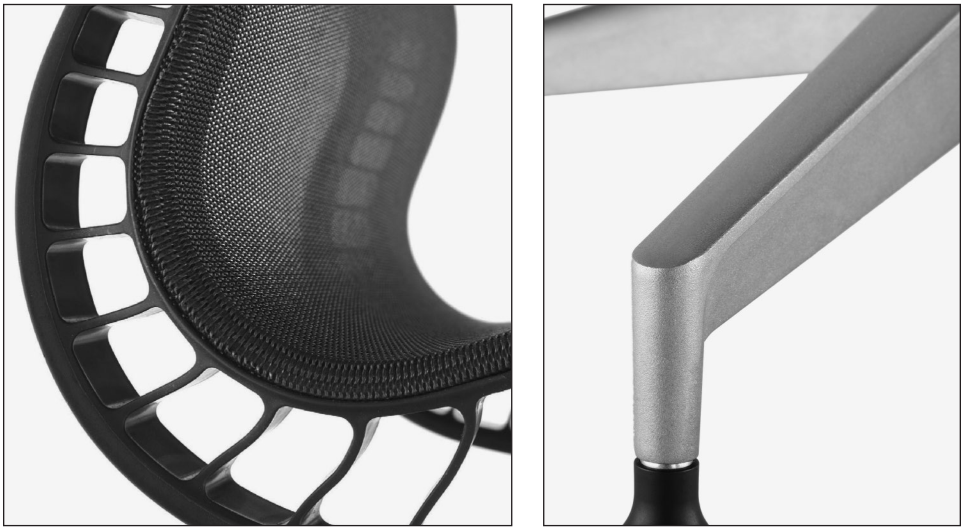
Compare the Environmental Impacts to DFE Goals

This step compares the environmental impacts of the evolving design to the DFE goals established in the planning phase. If several design options were created in the detail-design phase, they may now be compared to judge which one has the lowest environmental impacts. Unless the product development team is very experienced in DFE, the design will generally have much room for improvement. Usually several DFE iterations are required before the team is satisfied that the product is as good as it should be from a DFE perspective.

Step 6: Refine the Product Design to Reduce or Eliminate the Environmental Impacts

The objective of this step and subsequent DFE iterations is to reduce or eliminate any significant environmental impacts through redesign. The process repeats until the environmental impacts have been reduced to an acceptable level and the environmental performance fits the DFE goals. Redesign for ongoing improvement of DFE may also continue after

EXHIBIT 12-11
The final design of the Setu spine (left) and aluminum base (right).



Courtesy of Herman Miller, Inc.

production begins. For the Aeron and Mirra chairs (shown in Exhibit 12-1), Herman Miller made several modifications to materials specifications and sources after the initial release of these products, reducing their environmental impacts.

After several design iterations, the Setu team developed a way to co-mold the spine using two different polypropylene materials that are compatible for recycling without separation. The inner and outer rails of the spine are made of a polypropylene-and-glass composite, while the connecting spokes are molded using a more flexible polypropylene-and-rubber composite (see Exhibit 12-11). Setu's aluminum base is an example of "minimal design." Uncoated and unpolished, with no finishing labor and no harmful toxins, it is durable and has less environmental impacts than traditionally finished chair bases.

One of the difficult trade-offs addressed in the development of Setu was related to selection of materials for the arms of the chair. While they were determined to avoid using PVC, the team was not able to mold the arms using all olefinic materials (such as polypropylene) due to concerns of durability and fatigue failure. The Setu arms, therefore, were molded from nylon and over-molded with a thermoplastic elastomer. Because these materials are not chemically compatible for recycling, this decision limited the chair's overall recyclability.

Step 7: Reflect on the DFE Process and Results

As with every aspect of the product development process, the final activity is to ask:

- How well did we execute the DFE process?
- How can our DFE process be improved?
- What DFE improvements can be made on derivative and future products?

DFE Assessment Factor	Setu Score	Factor Weight	Weighted Score
Material Chemistry	50%	33.3%	16.7%
Recycled Content	44%	8.4%	3.7%
Disassembly	86%	33.3%	28.6%
Recyclability	92%	25.0%	23.0%
Overall Score		**100%**	**72%**

EXHIBIT 12-12 Herman Miller's DFE assessment tool considers four factors and computes the weighted overall score of 72 percent for the Setu chair.

On the basis of Herman Miller's DFE assessment tool, using a scale of 0 to 100 percent, with 100 percent being a truly "cradle-to-cradle" product, the Setu chair achieved a rating of 72 percent, as shown in Exhibit 12-12.

The Setu team was pleased with the chair in terms of ease of disassembly and feasibility of recycling. Over the course of developing the Setu, the chair's recyclability score moved up and down and eventually dropped from 99 percent to 92 percent due to the material selection trade-off in design of the arms. One very important achievement made during the development of the Setu to enable its recyclability was a change in the spine's materials. Early iterations used dissimilar materials bonded together, which could not be recycled. The DFE team challenged the Setu team to innovate further. The resulting solution is constructed of two materials that are compatible for recycling without separation. Unfortunately, such a solution could not be developed for the Setu arms, and incompatible bonded materials were used there.

While highly successful in terms of implementing DFE, the Setu chair still had some negative environmental impacts, particularly in terms of material chemistry and use of recycled content, as shown in Exhibit 12-12. This reflects the reality that creating a perfect product from a DFE perspective is a goal that may take years to achieve. Effective DFE requires a product development team that strives for continuous improvement. The DFE team may be able to further develop the Setu chair to reduce some of the known impacts. For example, molding the Setu arms entirely using polypropylene would likely improve recyclability and reduce cost, but would also require addressing several very challenging technical issues.

To further improve their DFE process, Herman Miller began to use LCA software to monitor their DFE results and to guide further refinement of their products. They next planned to integrate "carbon footprint" into their DFE tool. The carbon footprint of a product is the amount of greenhouse gas emissions caused by the product, usually expressed in terms of the equivalent mass of CO_2 emitted. The consideration of carbon footprint would further affect Herman Miller's material choices. For example, based only on recyclability and environmental toxicity, aluminum is an environmentally friendly material; however, considering the carbon footprint of aluminum, it may be a less favorable choice (e.g., compared to steel) due to the amount of energy required to produce new aluminum. Recycled aluminum, however, uses much less energy, so this analysis also depends upon the sources of the materials and energy used to process the metals.

Summary

Every product has environmental impacts over its life cycle. Design for environment (DFE) provides companies with a practical method to minimize or eliminate these environmental impacts.

- Effective DFE maintains or improves product quality and cost while reducing environmental impacts.
- DFE expands the traditional manufacturer's focus to consider the full product life cycle and its relationship to the environment. It begins with the extraction and processing of raw materials from natural resources, followed by production, distribution, and use of the product. Finally, at the end of the product's useful life are several recovery options: remanufacturing or reuse of components, recycling of materials, or disposal through incineration or deposition in a landfill, to reintegrate the product into a closed-loop cycle.
- DFE may involve activities throughout the product development process and requires an interdisciplinary approach. Industrial design, engineering, purchasing, and marketing all work together in the development of environmentally friendly products.
- The DFE process consists of seven steps. Product development teams will likely repeat some steps several times.

 1. Set the DFE agenda: drivers, goals, and team.
 2. Identify potential environmental impacts.
 3. Select DFE guidelines.
 4. Apply the DFE guidelines to the initial product design.
 5. Assess the environmental impacts.
 6. Refine the product design to reduce or eliminate the environmental impacts.
 7. Reflect on the DFE process and results.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

There are several texts covering the topic of DFE. Bhamra and Lofthouse provide an introduction to design for sustainability and a description of several strategic tools that can be used for DFE such as the EcoDesign Web. Esty and Winston show how leading firms have been able to start on a path toward environmental sustainability. Fiksel's book is a comprehensive guide to DFE as a life cycle approach to new product and process development. Lewis and Gertsakis provide an overview and description of the environmental impacts and several environmental assessment tools.

Bhamra, Tracy, and Vicky Lofthouse, *Design for Sustainability: A Practical Approach,* Gower, UK, 2007.

Esty, Daniel C., and Andrew S. Winston, *Green to Gold: How Smart Companies Use Environmental Strategy to Innovate, Create Value, and Build Competitive Advantage,* Yale University Press, New Haven, CT, 2006.

Fiksel, Joseph, *Design for Environment: A Guide to Sustainable Product Development,* second edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2009.

Lewis, Helen, and John Gertsakis, *Design and Environment: A Global Guide to Designing Greener Goods,* Greenleaf Publishing Limited, Sheffield, UK, 2001.

A number of authors have argued persuasively for due consideration of environmental impacts in design. Burall concluded that there is no longer a conflict between a green approach to design and business success. McDonough and Braungart explain that the conflict between industry and the environment is not an indictment of commerce but rather an outgrowth of purely opportunistic design. Papanek challenged designers to face their social and environmental responsibilities instead of only commercial interests. *The Brundtland Report* (1987) first defined the term *sustainable development.*

Burall, Paul, *Green Design,* Design Council, London, 1991.

McDonough, William, and Michael Braungart, *Cradle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things,* North Point Press, New York, 2002.

Papanek, Victor, *Design for the Real World: Human Ecology and Social Change,* Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York, 1971.

World Commission on Environment and Development, *The Brundtland Report: Our Common Future,* Oxford University Press, London, 1987.

Portions of the DFE method presented in this chapter are derived from various sources. The internal and external drivers for DFE are based on Brezet and van Hemel's Ecodesign work. The DFE goals are adapted from the environmental strategies listed by Giudice et al. The DFE guidelines are derived from the comprehensive compilation by Telenko et al. The materials-based emphasis of DFE reflects the cradle-to-cradle concept explained by McDonough and Braungart.

Brezet, Hans, and Caroline van Hemel, *Ecodesign: A Promising Approach to Sustainable Production and Consumption,* TU Delft, The Netherlands, 1997.

Giudice, Fabio, Guido La Rosa, and Antonio Risitano, *Product Design for the Environment: A Life Cycle Approach,* CRC Press Taylor & Francis Group, Boca Raton, FL, 2006.

Telenko, Cassandra, Carolyn C. Seepersad, and Michael E. Webber, *A Compilation of Design for Environment Principles and Guidelines,* ASME DETC Design for Manufacturing and the Life Cycle Conference, New York, 2008.

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) has developed internationally agreed standards for LCA, known as ISO 14040.

International Organization for Standardization, *Environmental Management: Life Cycle Assessment—Principles and Framework,* European Committee for Standardization, Brussels, 2006.

Exercises

1. List at least 10 types of environmental impacts over the life cycle of your personal computer or mobile phone. Chart these as in Exhibit 12-6, representing your judgment of the relative impact of each life cycle stage.

2. Disassemble a simple product, such as a ballpoint pen. Suggest two ways to reduce its environmental impacts.
3. For the product considered in Exercise 1, compute its environmental impact score using any LCA analysis tool available to you.

Thought Questions

1. What are some of the ways in which you have become more aware of your own environmental impact in recent years?
2. For the Setu chair, what types of environmental impacts would be in the use stage of its life cycle?
3. In what ways can DFE help to improve the quality of a product, in terms of its functionality, reliability, durability, and reparability?
4. For each life cycle stage, identify a product or service that has high environmental impacts during the particular life cycle stage. Then, suggest a new or existing product or service that provides the same functionality with lower (or without any) environmental impacts.
5. How would you explicitly include renewable and nonrenewable energy in the life cycle diagram in Exhibit 12-3? Draw such a diagram and explain it.
6. Explain the relationship between DFE and DFM. Consider, for example, those DFE guidelines related to production in Exhibit 12-8.
7. Consider the DFE assessment tool used by Herman Miller (Exhibit 12-12), which computed the weighted sum of scores for material chemistry, use of recycled content, ease of disassembly, and recyclability. What modifications would you propose to create a DFE assessment tool for a different type of product, such as an automobile or a mobile phone?

Appendix

Design for Environment Guidelines

Telenko et al. (2008) compiled an extensive list of DFE guidelines based on a number of sources covering a range of industries. Each life cycle stage has its own DFE guidelines that provide product development teams with suggestions to reduce environmental impacts. The list that follows is based upon the compilation by Telenko et al.

Life Cycle Stage: Materials

Ensure Sustainability of Resources

1. Specify renewable and abundant resources.
2. Specify recyclable or recycled materials, especially those within the company or for which a market exists or needs to be stimulated.
3. Layer recycled and virgin material where virgin material is necessary.
4. Exploit unique properties of recycled materials.
5. Employ common and remanufactured components across models.
6. Specify mutually compatible materials and fasteners for recycling.
7. Specify one type of material for the product and its subassemblies.
8. Specify noncomposite, nonblended materials and no alloys.
9. Specify renewable forms of energy.

Ensure Healthy Inputs and Outputs

10. Install protection against release of pollutants and hazardous substances.
11. Specify nonhazardous and otherwise environmentally "clean" substances, especially in regard to user health.
12. Ensure that wastes are water-based or biodegradable.
13. Specify the cleanest source of energy.
14. Include labels and instructions for safe handling of toxic materials.
15. Specify clean production processes for the product and in selection of components.
16. Concentrate toxic elements for easy removal and treatment.

Life Cycle Stage: Production

Ensure Minimal Use of Resources in Production

17. Design components to minimize raw material usage.
18. Specify materials that do not require additional surface treatment, coatings, or inks.
19. Structure the product to avoid rejects and minimize material waste in production.
20. Minimize the number of components.
21. Specify materials with low-intensity production and agriculture.

22. Specify clean, high-efficiency production processes.
23. Employ as few manufacturing steps as possible.

Life Cycle Phase: Distribution

Ensure Minimal Use of Resources in Distribution

24. Replace the functions and appeals of packaging through the product's design.
25. Employ folding, nesting, or disassembly to distribute products in a compact state.
26. Specify lightweight materials and components.
27. Apply structural techniques and materials to minimize the total volume of material.

Life Cycle Stage: Use

Ensure Efficiency of Resources During Product Use

28. Implement reusable supplies or ensure the maximum usefulness of consumables.
29. Implement fail-safes against heat and material loss.
30. Minimize the volume and weight of parts and materials to which energy is transferred.
31. Specify best-in-class, energy-efficient components.
32. Implement default power-down for subsystems that are not in use.
33. Ensure rapid warm-up and power-down.
34. Maximize system efficiency for an entire range of usage conditions.
35. Interconnect available flows of energy and materials within the product and between the product and its environment.
36. Incorporate partial operation and permit users to turn off systems partially or completely.
37. Use feedback mechanisms to indicate how much energy or water is being consumed.
38. Incorporate intuitive controls for resource-saving features.
39. Incorporate features that prevent waste of materials by the user.
40. Use default mechanisms to automatically reset the product to its most efficient setting.

Ensure Appropriate Durability of the Product and Components

41. Reutilize high-embedded energy components.
42. Plan for ongoing efficiency improvements.
43. Improve aesthetics and functionality to ensure the aesthetic life is equal to the technical life.
44. Ensure minimal maintenance and minimize failure modes in the product and its components.
45. Specify better materials, surface treatments, or structural arrangements to protect products from dirt, corrosion, and wear.
46. Indicate on the product which parts are to be cleaned/maintained in a specific way.
47. Make wear detectable.

48. Allow easy repair and upgrading, especially for components that experience rapid change.
49. Require few service and inspection tools.
50. Facilitate testing of components.
51. Allow for repetitive disassembly and reassembly.

Life Cycle Stage: Recovery

Enable Disassembly, Separation, and Purification of Materials and Components

52. Indicate on the product how it should be opened and make access points obvious.
53. Ensure that joints and fasteners are easily accessible.
54. Maintain stability and part placement during disassembly.
55. Minimize the number and variety of joining elements.
56. Ensure that destructive disassembly techniques do not harm people or reusable components.
57. Ensure that reusable parts can be cleaned easily and without damage.
58. Ensure that incompatible materials are easily separated.
59. Make component interfaces simple and reversibly separable.
60. Organize a product or system into hierarchical modules by aesthetic, repair, and end-of-life protocol.
61. Implement reusable/swappable platforms, modules, and components.
62. Condense into a minimal number of parts.
63. Specify compatible adhesives, labels, surface coatings, pigments, and the like that do not interfere with cleaning.
64. Employ one disassembly direction without reorientation.
65. Specify all joints so that they are separable by hand or only a few, simple tools.
66. Minimize the number and length of operations for detachment.
67. Mark materials in molds with types and reutilization protocols.
68. Use a shallow or open structure for easy access to subassemblies.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain

©Wazer Inc.

EXHIBIT 13-1
The Wazer desktop water jet cutting machine.

WAZER (Exhibit 13-1) was founded with the mission of providing affordable water jet cutters for individuals and small businesses. Water jet cutting allows computer-controlled fabrication of two-dimensional parts from metal, glass, or ceramic sheets. Water jet cutting machines had previously only been available at prices of $100,000 or more, making the process prohibitive for many applications.

Some of the challenges for the design team were as follows:

- Initial relatively low volumes; hundreds of units per year not thousands.
- Uncertainty of market size and future production quantities because of a lack of directly comparable products in the marketplace.
- Requirement for very low cost to appeal to the target market.
- Limited funding for capital investments in tooling such as molds and dies.
- Anticipated requirement to rapidly iterate the design in response to early market feedback.

This chapter presents a method of design for manufacturing using the Wazer machine as the primary example.

Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain Defined

Customer needs and product specifications are useful for guiding the concept phase of product development. However, during the later development activities, teams often have difficulty linking needs and specifications to the detailed design issues they face. For this reason, many teams practice "design for X" (DFX) methods, where X may correspond to one of dozens of quality criteria such as reliability, robustness, serviceability, environmental impact, or manufacturability. The most common of these methods is *design for manufacturing* (DFM), which is of universal importance because it directly addresses cost. Although the acronym DFM emphasizes manufacturing, we explicitly include in this chapter, the broader implications of design on the entire supply chain, including the logistics associated with getting the product from the factory to the consumer. Most goods today involve supply chains that span several global locations and so the costs of freight and duties are also driven significantly by decisions made during product design and development.

Cost is a key determinant of the economic success of a product. In simple terms, economic success depends on the profit margin earned on each sale of the product and on how many units of the product the firm can sell. Profit margin is the difference between the manufacturer's selling price and the cost of making the product. The number of units sold and the sales price are to a large degree determined by the overall quality of the product. Economically successful design is therefore about ensuring high product quality while minimizing cost. DFM is one method for achieving this goal; effective DFM practice leads to low cost without sacrificing product quality. (See Chapter 18, Product Development Economics, for a more detailed discussion of models relating manufacturing cost to economic success.)

DFM Requires a Cross-Functional Team

Design for manufacturing is one of the most integrative practices involved in product development. DFM uses information of several types, including (1) sketches, drawings, product specifications, and design alternatives; (2) a detailed understanding of production and assembly processes; (3) strategic choices about suppliers and their global configuration; and (4) estimates of manufacturing cost, production volume, and ramp-up timing.

DFM therefore requires the contributions of most members of the development team, and frequently of outside experts as well. DFM efforts commonly draw upon expertise from manufacturing engineers, supply chain managers, cost accountants, and production personnel, in addition to product designers. Many companies use structured, team-based workshops to facilitate the integration and sharing of views required for DFM.

DFM Is Performed throughout the Development Process

DFM begins during the concept development phase, when the product's functions and specifications are being determined. When choosing a product concept, cost is almost always one of the criteria on which the decision is made—even though cost estimates at this phase are highly subjective and approximate. When product specifications are finalized, the team makes trade-offs between desired performance characteristics. For example, weight reduction may increase manufacturing cost. At this point, the team may have an approximate bill of materials (a list of parts) with preliminary cost estimates. During the system-level design phase of development, the team makes decisions about how to break up the product into individual components, based in large measure on the expected cost and manufacturing complexity implications, and on the configuration of suppliers. Accurate cost estimates finally become available during the detail-design phase of development, when many more decisions are driven primarily by manufacturing concerns.

Overview of the DFM Method

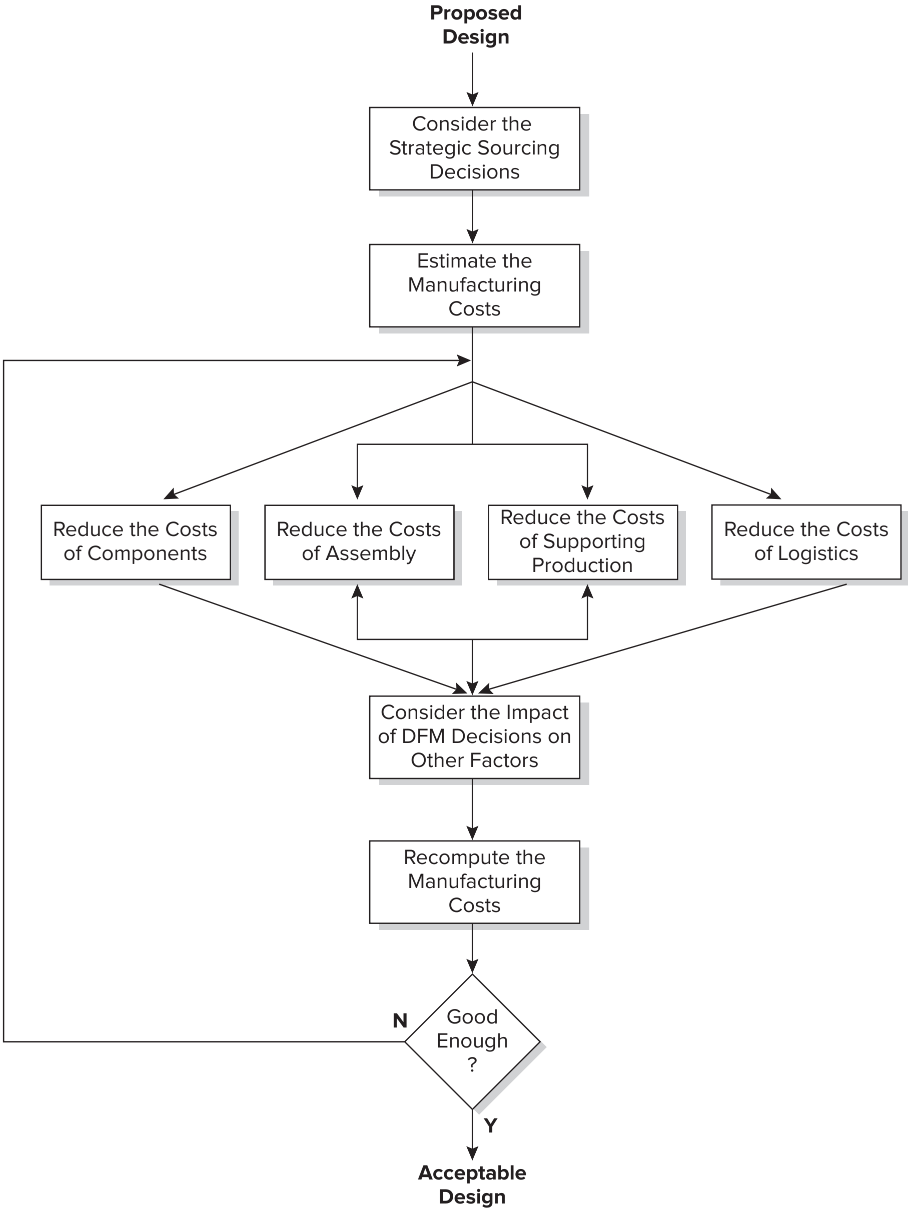
Our DFM method is illustrated in Exhibit 13-2. It consists of seven steps plus iteration:

1. Consider the strategic sourcing decisions.
2. Estimate the manufacturing costs
3. Reduce the costs of components.
4. Reduce the costs of assembly.
5. Reduce the costs of supporting production.
6. Reduce the costs of logistics.
7. Consider the impact of DFM decisions on other factors.

As shown in Exhibit 13-2, the DFM method begins with a consideration of the strategic sourcing decisions—primarily make-versus-buy decisions and supplier selection, including the geographic location of production and assembly. In close conjunction with the sourcing decisions, the team estimates cost. This estimate helps the team to determine at a general level which aspects of the cost structure—components, assembly, support, or logistics—might benefit most from design improvements. The team then directs its attention to the appropriate areas in the subsequent steps. This process is iterative. It is not unusual to recompute the cost estimate and to improve the design of the product dozens of times before agreeing that it is good enough. As long as the product design is improving, these DFM iterations may continue even until pilot production begins. At some point, the design is frozen (or "released"), and any further modifications are considered formal "engineering changes" or become part of the next generation of the product.

In the next section, we first consider the issues underlying strategic sourcing decisions and then explain how cost is determined. Next, we present several useful methods for reducing the costs of components, assembly, production support, and logistics. Finally, we discuss some of the broader implications of DFM decisions.

EXHIBIT 13-2
The design for manufacturing and supply chain (DFM) method.



Step 1: Consider the Strategic Sourcing Decisions

The most fundamental decision made in sourcing a product is what the organization will do itself and for which activities it will rely on suppliers. Here we take the perspective of the brand owner of the product (e.g., Wazer), usually called the *manufacturer*, even if the organization does little or no actual production itself. All manufacturers rely on suppliers, and in some cases, virtually all aspects of production are outsourced to suppliers.

The decision of what to outsource is called the *make-versus-buy* or simply *make-buy* decision. The more an organization makes, the higher its level of *vertical integration.*

Organizations with stable and large demand may choose relatively high levels of vertical integration to take advantage of economies of scale, but an increasing trend, even for very large companies, is to outsource all production. For instance, both Apple and Nike outsource essentially all of the manufacturing of their products. For smaller companies and start-ups most production will likely be arranged through suppliers, as is the case for Wazer. The exception is those production activities that comprise a distinctive source of competitive advantage, say a way of making components that comprise a valuable trade secret. Such activities are often kept in house to prevent the diffusion of proprietary know-how to rival companies.

Supplier arrangements can be categorized as follows:

- ***Full vertical integration***. Most manufacturing activities are done internally by the brand owner, including both component production and assembly.
- ***Final assembly only***. Only the final assembly of components into finished goods is done by the brand owner. All component production is done by suppliers.
- ***Orchestration of suppliers***. All production activities, including final assembly, are outsourced to different suppliers, but the brand owner coordinates the independent parties.
- ***Contract manufacturing***. A supplier coordinates component production and performs final assembly. The product is delivered as finished goods, usually in its final packaging. The brand owner deals only with the contract manufacturer.
- ***Engaging an original design and manufacturer (ODM)***. A single supplier not only coordinates all aspects of component production and assembly, as does a contract manufacturer, but also completes detailed design of the product for the brand owner based on a functional specification of performance. ODMs are common for established and mature product categories like mobile telephones, bicycles, computers, and small appliances.

As a general rule, the more established the product category, the more of the manufacturing can be outsourced to suppliers. For a truly novel product category, the manufacturer may simply have no choice but to vertically integrate and create from scratch the processes for producing components and assembling the finished goods.

The make-buy decision is often made in conjunction with a decision about where to locate production geographically. All else being equal, one generally prefers to produce finished goods as close to the market in which they will be sold as possible, but rarely is all else equal. The issues that drive location decisions include the following:

- ***Factor prices***. What are the costs of the inputs to the manufacturing system, including labor, materials, and energy? Labor prices are lowest in developing economies, and so products with a lot of labor content, such as apparel, tend to be produced in low-wage countries such as Bangladesh, India, and Vietnam.
- ***Capabilities and ecosystem***. Factories typically operate within complex ecosystems that include skilled workers, tooling manufacturers, materials and packaging suppliers, and component suppliers. Thus, clusters of related companies tend to develop in certain regions, giving those regions an advantage for certain categories of products. The greater Shenzhen region in southern China contains a dense ecosystem for consumer electronics, and so, even though wages are not exceptionally low there, most consumer electronics are produced in the region.

- ***Duties***. Most countries impose duties on some imports. Duties for a specific category of goods are called a *tariff*, and are paid to the government via the customs service when the goods enter the country. Because tariffs vary according to the origin of the goods, they are a critical factor in deciding the location of suppliers.
- ***Transport costs***. Most goods that are produced distant from the markets in which they are sold are transported via ocean freight in shipping containers. This means of transport is quite efficient and transport costs are fairly similar from the major ports in Asia. If goods can be transported over land via truck or rail from relatively nearby production locations, transportation savings can be significant.
- ***Other factors***. Several other idiosyncratic factors can influence the location of production. For instance, geopolitical risk can be a factor that inhibits locating production in the very least expensive regions of the world, areas that may face the threat of war or other instability. Consumers may have a direct interest in the location of production, acting out of nationalism or a perception of quality, and that interest may give an advantage to a location (e.g., "Made in U.S.A."). In some cases, national or local governments may offer direct financial incentives to stimulate production within their borders.

Wazer was a new company and had no established production capabilities. It chose to produce components and subassemblies in Shenzhen, China, where it established an office and warehouse for coordinating its activities in China. Wazer chose to perform final assembly and test in its facility in Brooklyn, New York. The company chose Shenzhen primarily because of the vital ecosystem for production of hardware components that has developed there. The company also received some financing and expertise from the start-up accelerator *HAX* located in Shenzhen, and had spent part of a year there completing the product design and identifying and selecting suppliers.

Step 2: Estimate the Manufacturing Costs

Exhibit 13-3 shows a simple–input-output model of a manufacturing and supply chain system. The inputs include raw materials, purchased components, employees' efforts, energy, and equipment. The outputs include finished goods and waste. Most systems also require transport from the location of the manufacturing system to the point of distribution in the target market, often crossing political borders in transit. Cost is the sum of all of the expenditures for the inputs of the system, disposal of waste, transportation, and duties. Firms generally use *unit cost* as the metric of cost for a product, which is computed by dividing the total costs for some period (usually a quarter or a year) by the number of units of the product manufactured during that period.

Cost of Goods

Cost of goods (COGS, pronounced "cogs") is an accounting term referring to all the costs attributable to producing goods available for sale to the consumer. Exhibit 13-4 shows one way of categorizing the elements of cost. Under this scheme, cost of goods comprises factory costs—the cost to manufacture the goods themselves—and logistics costs—the costs associated with getting those goods to the location where they will be sold.

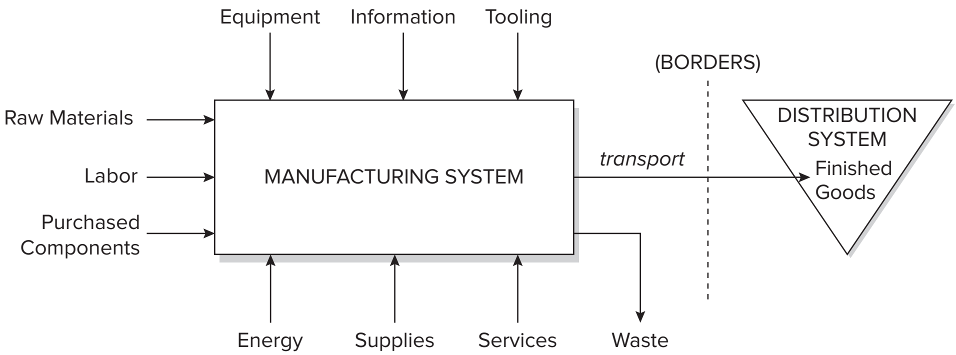


EXHIBIT 13-3 A simple–input-output model of the manufacturing and supply chain system.

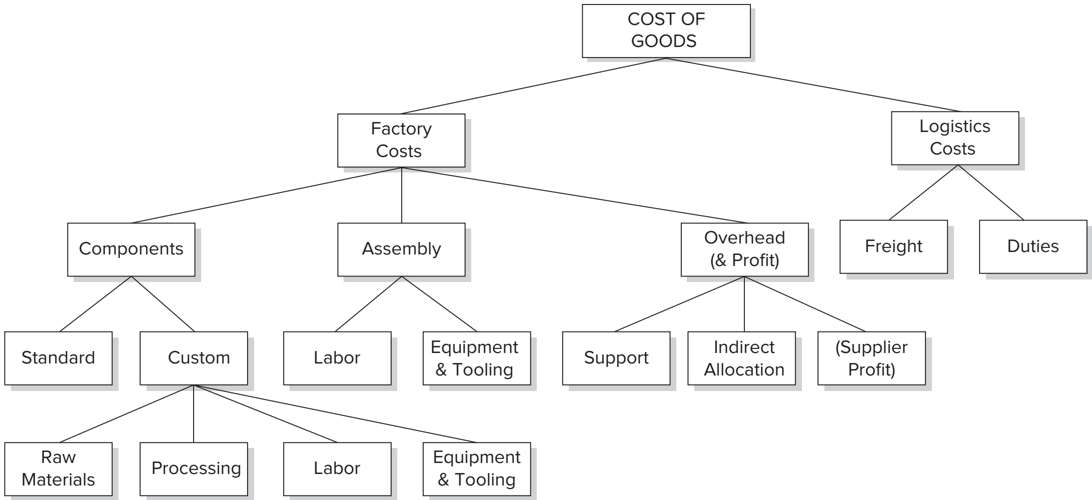


EXHIBIT 13-4 Elements of the cost of goods.

Within the factory, costs can be usefully divided into three further categories:

1. ***Component costs:*** The *components* or *parts* of a product may include *standard parts* purchased from suppliers. Examples of standard components include batteries, motors, switches, electronic chips, and fasteners. Other components are *custom parts*, made according to the manufacturer's design from raw materials, such as sheet steel, plastic pellets, or aluminum bars.

2. ***Assembly costs:*** Discrete goods are generally assembled from parts. The process of assembling almost always incurs labor costs and may also incur costs for equipment and tooling.

3. ***Overhead costs and supplier profit:*** Overhead is the category used to encompass all of the other costs. We find it useful to distinguish between two types of overhead: *support costs* and other *indirect allocations.* Support costs are the costs associated with materials handling, quality assurance, purchasing, shipping, receiving, facilities, and equipment/tooling maintenance (among others). These are the support systems required to manufacture the product, and these costs do greatly depend upon the product design. Nevertheless, because these costs are often shared by more than one product line, they are lumped together in the category of overhead. Indirect allocations are the costs of manufacturing that cannot be directly linked to a particular product but that must be paid for to be in business. For example, the salary of the security guard and the cost of maintenance to the building and grounds are indirect costs because these activities are shared among several different products and are difficult to allocate directly to a specific product. Because indirect costs are not specifically linked to the design of the product, they are not relevant to DFM, even though they do contribute to the cost of the product.

In the event that production is outsourced to a supplier, that supplier must earn a profit for its efforts and investment of capital. Thus, in that case, factory cost will also comprise supplier profit (typically 10 to 30 percent of the total factory cost).

4. *Logistics costs:* Manufacturing often occurs in different locations and/or at a location a great distance from the eventual customer. Estimating freight costs is relatively easy. For instance, most goods are transported overseas using standard shipping containers, which hold about 70 cubic meters of cargo (Exhibit 13-5). Currently the cost of shipping a container between Asia and the United States, including agent fees and the truck or rail freight to the final distribution location is roughly $5,000, resulting in a shipping cost rate of 71 $\$/m^3$. Rates for air freight and trucking, although based on a combination of weight and volume, are also readily available. Domestic trucking costs are approximately 0.10 to 1 $/kg depending on the route and size of shipment. Air freight is much more expensive than ocean or overland freight and may cost 2 to 5 $/kg depending on the route and the volume and density of the shipment. Based on these rates, the product design team can easily include transportation costs in its analysis, and doing so may be warranted when the team faces design decisions influencing the physical volume or weight of the product.

EXHIBIT 13-5
A container ship.

©Songquan Deng/Shutterstock

When goods cross a political border, say from China to the United States, the government customs service may impose an import duty, which is a tax on the value of the goods imported. These duties are used by governments to influence companies' strategic sourcing decisions. For instance, in the United States, while most goods enter duty free, some categories may suffer taxes (called *tariffs*) of 25 percent or more. The highest duties in developed countries tend to be on apparel and footwear, typically 10 percent to 20 percent of the value of the goods imported. Tariffs are based on Harmonized Tariff Schedules (HTS)—a coding system agreed upon by most countries. Tariffs by HTS code are typically available online on the government website of the importing country.

Fixed Costs versus Variable Costs

Another way to divide costs is between *fixed costs* and *variable costs.* Fixed costs are those that are incurred in a predetermined amount, regardless of how many units of the product are manufactured. Purchasing an extrusion die for the frame is an example of a fixed cost. Whether 100 or 10,000 units are produced, the fixed cost of the die is incurred and does not change. Another example is the cost of setting up the factory work area for final assembly. This cost is also fixed, regardless of how many units are produced. Despite the terminology, however, no cost is truly fixed. If we quadruple the production quantity, we may have to build another assembly area. Conversely, we may be able to consolidate two assembly cells if we cannot use all the capacity due to dramatically lower production quantities. When considering a cost as fixed, ranges of production quantities and the assumed time horizon should be specified.

Variable costs are those incurred in direct proportion to the number of units produced. For example, for Wazer, the cost of raw materials is directly proportional to how many water jet cutting machines are produced. Assembly labor is sometimes considered a variable cost as well because many firms can adjust the staffing of assembly operations.

The Bill of Materials

Because cost estimation is fundamental to DFM, it is useful to keep this information well organized. Exhibit 13-6 shows an information system for recording manufacturing cost estimates. It basically consists of a bill of materials (BOM) augmented with cost information. The BOM (usually pronounced *bomb*) is a list of each individual component in the product. Frequently the BOM is created using an indented format in which the assembly "tree structure" is illustrated by the indentation of components and subassembly names. Most companies will have different versions of the BOM for different purposes (e.g., design, production, and service), and several enterprise software solutions are available for managing this complexity. Exhibit 13-6 is a partial bill of materials including two subassemblies, the frame and the abrasive hopper (Exhibit 13-7).

The columns of the BOM show the cost estimates broken down into variable costs and fixed costs. The variable costs may include materials, machine time, and labor. The fixed costs consist of tooling (e.g., molds, dies) and other nonrecurring expenses such as specialized equipment and one-time setup costs. The tooling amortization quantity is used to compute the per-unit tooling cost and is the lesser of (a) the tooling life in units and (b) the expected lifetime production quantity.

Part Number	Description	Rev	Process	Material	Unit Var. Cost	Tooling Cost	Tooling Life	Unit Fixed Cost	Unit Cost	Qty	Total Cost
Several other assemblies omitted for clarity.											
5812A	Frame Assembly										
581204	External Hoop - Upper Bend Left	B	Extrude, Bend, and CNC	571200	3.52	1200	6000	0.20	3.72	1	3.72
581205	External Hoop - Lower Bend	A	Extrude, Bend, and CNC	571200	3.40	<same tool>	6000	0.20	3.60	2	7.20
581206	External Hoop - Upper Bend Right	C	Extrude, Bend, and CNC	571200	3.52	<same tool>	6000	0.20	3.72	1	3.72
581209	Side Trim	A	Extrude and Cut to length	571205	2.18	1100	2000	0.55	2.73	2	5.46
581207	Hoop Connector	B	Extrude and Cut to length	571202	1.81	1400	2000	0.70	2.51	4	10.04
581210	Front/Back Trim	B	Extrude and CNC	571204	5.35	1200	2000	0.60	5.95	2	11.90
5814A	Abrasive Hopper Assembly										
581400	Dry Abrasive - Main Hopper	B	Thermoforming		14.00	3000	2000		14.00	1	14.00
581401	Abrasive Throttle Body	B	Injection Molding		4.00	6000	2000		4.00	2	8.00
581403	Dry Abrasive - Hopper Cap	A	Thermoforming		8.00	3200	2000		8.00	1	8.00
581404	Hopper Door Slide Right	A	Extrude and CNC	571400	1.81	1400	4000	0.35	2.16	1	2.16
581405	Hopper Door Slide Left	A	Extrude and CNC	571400	1.81	<same tool>	4000	0.35	2.16	1	2.16
581406	Vibration Motor Mounts	A	Injection Molding		3.50	4000	2000		3.50	4	14.00

Note: cost of shared tools is shown just once, and then amortized across combined volume of associated parts.

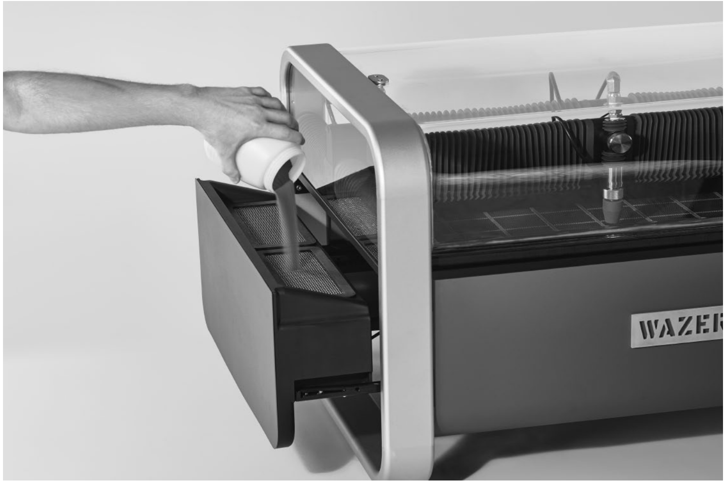
EXHIBIT 13-6 (Partial) Bill of materials showing cost estimates for the Wazer water jet cutting machine. Details provided for the frame and abrasive hopper assembly shown in Exhibit 13-7; other subassemblies have been omitted for clarity.

Estimating the Costs of Standard Components

The costs of standard components are estimated by either (1) comparing each part to a substantially similar part the firm is already producing or purchasing in comparable volumes or (2) soliciting price quotes from vendors or suppliers. The costs of minor components (e.g., fasteners and springs) are usually obtained from the firm's experience with similar components, while the costs of major components are usually obtained from vendor quotes.

In obtaining price quotes, the estimated production quantities are extremely important. For example, the unit price on a purchase of a dozen screws may be 10 times higher than

EXHIBIT 13-7
The Wazer hopper assembly contains the abrasive cutting medium used in the machine and slides out like a drawer. The left side of the Wazer frame, supporting the hopper and other subassemblies, is also visible in this photo.



the unit prices when purchasing 10,000 of these parts every month. Some suppliers will design and fabricate a custom variation to a standard component if production quantities are high enough. For example, small electric motors, such as those found in powered hand tools, are often designed and built specifically for the product application. If the production quantities are high enough (say, 100,000 per year), these custom motors are quite economical ($1 to $5 per unit, depending on the performance characteristics).

Estimating the Costs of Custom Components

Custom components, which are parts designed especially for the product, are made by the manufacturer or by a supplier. Most custom components are produced using the same types of production processes as standard components (e.g., injection molding, stamping, machining); however, custom parts are typically special-purpose parts, useful only in a particular manufacturer's products.

In most cases custom components are made for the manufacturer by a supplier. The most accurate cost estimates come from actual price quotes from the supplier. However, early in the design process, costs can be approximated by adding up the costs of raw materials, processing, tooling, and an estimate of supplier overhead and profit. In cases where the custom component is actually an assembly of several parts delivered as an assembly to the manufacturer, then we must include assembly costs. For the purposes of this explanation, we assume the component is a single part.

The raw materials costs can be estimated by computing the mass of the part, allowing for some scrap (e.g., 5 to 50 percent for an injection molded part, and 25 to 100 percent for a sheet metal part), and multiplying by the cost (per unit mass) of the raw material. A table of raw material costs is given in Appendix A (Exhibit 13-14).

Processing costs include costs for the operator(s) of the processing machinery as well as the cost of using the equipment itself. Most standard processing equipment costs between $25 per hour (a simple stamping press) and $75 per hour (a medium-sized, computer-controlled milling machine) to operate, including depreciation, maintenance, utilities, and labor costs. Estimating the processing time generally requires experience with the type of equipment to be used. However, it is useful to understand the range of typical costs for common production processes. For this purpose, tables of approximate processing times and costs are given in Appendix B for a variety of stampings, castings, injection moldings, and machined parts.

Tooling costs are incurred for the design and fabrication of the cutters, molds, dies, or fixtures required to use certain machinery to fabricate parts. For example, an injection molding machine requires a custom injection mold for every different type of part it produces. These molds can range in cost from $5,000 to $500,000. Approximate tooling costs are also given for the parts listed in Appendix B. Most suppliers quote tooling costs as a separate fixed cost. The unit tooling cost is simply the cost of the tooling divided by the number of units to be made over the life of the tool. A high-quality injection mold or stamping die can usually be used for a few million parts.

Supplier overhead and profit is usually estimated as a percentage of the direct costs, effectively a "mark up" of the materials and processing costs. These costs are usually not directly disclosed by the supplier, but for estimation purposes can be assumed to be an additional 20 to 40 percent of the materials and processing costs. For instance, Wazer part 581400, shown in Exhibit 13-8, is the main hopper that holds the dry abrasive used in the cutter, and it is a thermoformed part requiring a secondary cutting operation to trim edges and form openings. (Thermoforming is a process in which a sheet of plastic is heated up and, through the application of a vacuum, stretched over a convex pattern to impart a complex curved shape to the sheet.) The cost estimate for the hopper is shown in Exhibit 13-9.

Estimating the Costs of Assembly

Products made of more than one part require assembly. For products made in quantities of less than several hundred thousand units per year, this assembly is almost always performed manually. One exception to this generalization is the assembly of electronic circuit boards, which because of the precision required is now almost always done by automatic equipment, even at relatively low volumes.

EXHIBIT 13-8
Part 581400
Dry Abrasive
Main Hopper.

EXHIBIT 13-9
Cost estimate for the Part 581400, a custom part made by thermoforming.

Materials	0.9 kg at 4.00 $/kg	$3.60
Processing (thermoforming)	30 units/hr at $40/hr	$1.33
Processing (CNC cutting)	20 units/hr at $50/hr	$2.50
	Supplier's variable cost	$7.43
Supplier Overhead and Profit	30% of variable cost	$2.23
Tooling Cost (thermoforming pattern)	$3,000	
	Amortization of tooling cost, assuming 2000 units lifetime product volume	$1.50
Total Unit Cost		$11.16

Manual assembly costs can be estimated by summing the estimated time of each assembly operation and multiplying by a labor rate. Assembly operations require from about 4 seconds to about 60 seconds each, depending on the size of the parts, the difficulty of the operation, and the production quantities. At high volumes, workers can specialize in a particular set of operations, and special fixtures and tools can assist the assembly. Appendix C contains a table of approximate times for manual assembly of various products, which is helpful in estimating the range of times required for assembly operations. A popular method for estimating assembly times has been developed over the past few decades by Boothroyd Dewhurst Inc. and is available as a software tool. This system involves a tabular information system for keeping track of the estimated assembly times for each part. The system is supported by a comprehensive database of standard handling and insertion times for a wide range of situations. Special software is also available for estimating the assembly cost of electronic circuit boards.

Assembly labor can cost from less than $1 per hour in low-wage countries to more than $50 per hour in some industrialized nations. In developed economies, assembly labor is likely to cost between $15 and $30 per hour. (Each firm has different assembly labor cost structures, and some industries, such as the automobile and aircraft industries, have substantially higher cost structures.) These figures include an allowance for benefits and other worker-related expenses and are meant to reflect the true cost to the firm of assembly labor.

The Wazer water jet cutter will be produced in modest quantities; however, a lot of time is required to assemble each machine, so assembly labor is an important driver of cost. Based on an estimate of the time required for each subassembly, validated by experience with prototypes, the Wazer team estimated that the machine would require about 10 hours of assembly time, which at a labor rate of $25 per hour for semiskilled labor in the New York City area, results in assembly costs of approximately $250 per machine. This is a large enough number that the team made assembly cost one of the focal points of its DFM efforts.

Estimating the Overhead Costs

Accurately estimating overhead costs for a new product is difficult, and the industry practices are not very satisfying. Nevertheless, we will describe the standard industry practice here and identify some of its problems. Most firms assign overhead charges using *overhead rates* (also called burden rates). Overhead rates are typically applied to one or more *cost drivers.* Cost drivers are parameters of the product that are directly measurable. Overhead charges are added to direct costs in proportion to the drivers. Common cost drivers are the cost of any purchased materials, the cost of assembly labor, and the number of hours of equipment time the product consumes. For example, the overhead rate for purchased materials might be 10 percent and the overhead rate for assembly labor might be 80 percent. Under these conditions, a product containing \$100 of purchased components and \$10 of assembly labor would incur \$18 of overhead costs (10 percent of \$100 plus 80 percent of \$10). Some typical overhead structures are given in Appendix D for different types of products and firms. The problem with this scheme is that it implies that overhead costs are directly proportional to the cost drivers, while the real relationship is much more complex. Overhead rates are a convenient way to account for overhead costs, but keep in mind that this scheme can yield inaccurate estimates of the true costs experienced by the manufacturer to support production.

Step 3: Reduce the Costs of Components

For most engineered assembled goods, the cost of purchased components will be the most significant element of cost. This section presents several strategies for minimizing the cost of components. Many of these strategies can be followed even without the benefit of accurate cost estimates. In this case, these strategies simply become *design rules*, or rules of thumb.

Understand the Process Constraints and Cost Drivers

Some component parts may be costly simply because the designers did not understand the capabilities, cost drivers, and constraints of the production process. For example, a designer may specify a small internal corner radius on a machined part without realizing that physically creating such a feature requires an expensive electro-discharge machining (EDM) operation. A designer may specify dimensions with excessively tight tolerances, without understanding the difficulty of achieving such accuracy in production. Sometimes these costly part features are not even necessary for the component's intended function; they arise out of lack of knowledge. It is often possible to redesign the part to achieve the same performance while avoiding costly manufacturing steps; however, to do this, the design engineer needs to know what types of operations are difficult in production and what drives their costs.

In some cases, the constraints of a process can be concisely communicated to designers in the form of design rules. For example, the capabilities of an automatic laser cutting machine can be concisely communicated in terms of allowable material types, material thicknesses, maximum part dimensions, minimum slot widths, and cutting accuracy. When codification of design rules is possible, part designers can avoid exceeding the normal capabilities of a process and thereby avoid incurring unusually high costs.

For some processes, the cost of producing a part is a simple mathematical function of some attributes of the part, which would be the cost drivers for the process. For example, a welding process could have a cost directly proportional to two attributes of the product: (1) the number of welds and (2) the total length of the welded joints.

For processes whose capabilities are not easily described, the best strategy is to work closely with the people who deeply understand the part production process. These manufacturing experts will generally have plenty of ideas about how to redesign components to reduce production costs.

Redesign Components to Eliminate Processing Steps

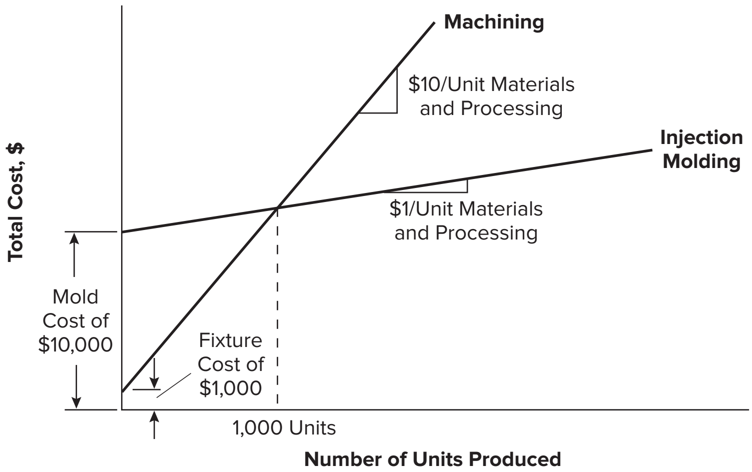
Careful scrutiny of the proposed design may lead to suggestions for redesign that can result in simplification of the production process. Reducing the number of steps in the part fabrication process generally results in reduced costs as well. Some process steps may simply not be necessary. For example, aluminum parts may not need to be painted, especially if they will not be visible to the user of the product. In some cases, several steps may be eliminated through substitution of an alternative process step. A common example of this strategy is "net-shape" fabrication. A net-shape process is one that produces a part with the final intended geometry in a single manufacturing step. Typical examples include molding, casting, forging, and extrusion. Frequently designers are able to use one of the net-shape processes to create a part that is very close to the final requirement (near net shape) and may demand only minor additional processing (e.g., drilling and tapping a hole, cutting to length).

Choose the Appropriate Economic Scale for the Part Process

The manufacturing cost of a product usually drops as the production volume increases. This phenomenon is labeled *economies of scale*. Economies of scale for a fabricated component occur for two basic reasons: (1) fixed costs are divided among more units and (2) variable costs become lower because the firm can justify the use of larger and more efficient processes and equipment. For example, consider an injection-molded plastic part. The part may require a mold that costs $50,000. If the firm produces 50,000 units of the part over the product's lifetime, each part will have to assume $1 of the cost of the mold. If, however, 100,000 units are produced, each part will assume only $0.50 of the cost of the mold. As production volumes increase further, the firm may be able to justify a four-cavity mold, for which each cycle of the molding machine produces four parts instead of one, justifying the somewhat higher mold cost.

Processes with inherently low fixed costs and high variable costs, such as machining, are appropriate when few parts will be made, while processes with inherently high fixed costs and low variable costs, such as injection molding, are appropriate when many parts will be made. This concept is illustrated by the graph in Exhibit 13-10. As shown in the

EXHIBIT 13-10
Total cost of a hypothetical part as a function of the number of units produced for injection molding versus machining.



exhibit, if production volume is expected to be below 1,000 units, machining would be more economical; otherwise, injection molding would incur lower total costs.

The fixed and variable costs of a process are often the definitive economic driver of process section. However, these cost structures are constantly evolving. For instance, *additive manufacturing* or *3D printing* processes now allow net-shape production of parts with complex geometries without incurring the high fixed costs of molds. Historically the material choices have been limited, and unit variable costs relatively high. But, newer processes (e.g., *continuous liquid interface production* or CLIP) now offer the possibility of using high-performance polymers at costs that are competitive with injection molding for quantities of up to 10,000 units.

Standardize Components

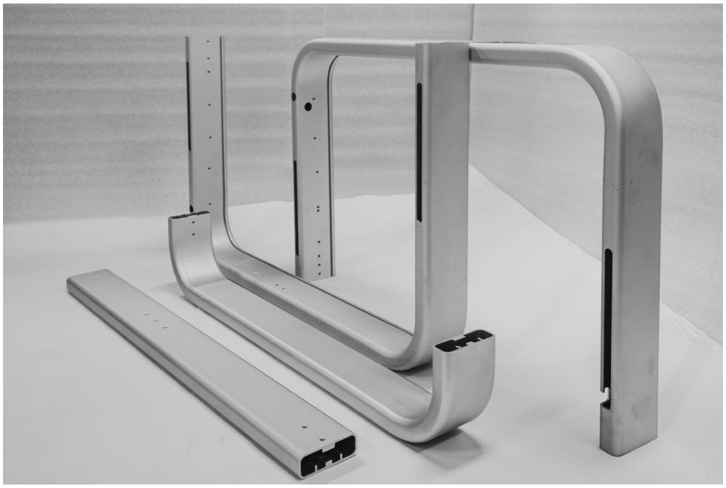
For a given expected product volume, the benefits of substantially higher component volumes can be achieved through the use of standard components. Components are standardized when an identical part is used more than once in a single product or across the product line of an organization. As the production volume of a component increases, the unit cost of the component decreases. Quality and performance often increase as well with increasing production quantities because the producer of the component can invest in learning and improvement of the component's design and its production process.

For example, the Wazer team made use of a single extrusion profile for all of the structural tubes in the frame and stand for the machine (Exhibit 13-11), even though this standardization required the addition of several geometric features on the inside of the extrusion profile that would only be required on one section of the frame (to allow the mounting of a display) and would be unnecessary elsewhere.

Adhere to "Black Box" Component Procurement

Another component cost reduction strategy is called *black box* supplier design, also known as *functional specification.* Under this approach, the team provides a supplier with only a black box description of the component—a description of what the component has to do,

EXHIBIT 13-11
A single extrusion profile is used for all structural elements in the frame and stand.



©Wazer, Inc

not how to achieve it. This kind of specification leaves the vendor with the widest possible latitude to design or select the component for minimum cost. An additional advantage of this approach is that it relieves the internal team of the responsibility to engineer and design the component. Wazer used the black box specification approach for the stepper motors used in its drive system and for the pump used for water recirculation. Successful black box development efforts require careful system-level design and extremely clear definitions of the functions, interfaces, and interactions of each component. (See Chapter 10, Product Architecture.)

Step 4: Reduce the Costs of Assembly

Design for assembly (DFA) is a fairly well-established subset of DFM that involves minimizing the cost of assembly. For many products, assembly contributes a relatively small fraction of the total cost. Nevertheless, focusing attention on assembly costs yields strong indirect benefits. Often as a result of emphasis on DFA, the overall parts count, manufacturing complexity, and support costs are all reduced along with the assembly cost. In this section, we present a few principles useful to guide DFA decisions.

Integrate Parts

If separate adjacent parts do not have to move relative to each other or be different materials for functional reasons, they can theoretically be combined into a single part. The resulting multifunctional component is often quite complex as a result of the integration of several different geometric features that would otherwise be separate parts. Nevertheless, molded or stamped parts can often incorporate additional features at little or no added cost.

Part integration provides several benefits:

- Integrated parts do not have to be assembled. In effect, the "assembly" of the geometric features of the part is accomplished by the part fabrication process.
- Integrated parts are often less expensive to fabricate than are the separate parts they replace. For molded, stamped, and cast parts, this cost savings occurs because a single complex mold or die is usually less expensive than two or more less complex molds or dies and because there is usually less processing time and scrap for the single, integrated part.
- Integrated parts allow the relationships among critical geometric features to be controlled by the part fabrication process (e.g., molding) rather than by an assembly process. This usually means that these dimensions can be more precisely controlled.

Maximize Ease of Assembly

Two products with an identical number of parts may nevertheless differ in required assembly time by a factor of two or three. This is because the actual time to grasp, orient, and insert a part depends on the part geometry and the required trajectory of the part insertion. The ideal characteristics of a part for an assembly are (adapted from Boothroyd and Dewhurst, 2010):

- ***Part is inserted from the top of the assembly.*** This attribute of a part and assembly is called *z-axis assembly.* Using *z*-axis assembly for all parts, the assembly never has to be inverted, gravity helps to stabilize the partial assembly, and the assembly worker can generally see the assembly location.

- ***Part is self-aligning.*** Parts that require fine positioning in order to be assembled require slow, precise movements on the part of the assembly worker. Parts and assembly sites can be designed to be self-aligning so that fine motor control is not required of the worker. The most common self-alignment feature is the *chamfer.* A chamfer can be implemented as a tapered lead on the end of a peg, or a conical widening at the opening of a hole.
- ***Part does not need to be oriented.*** Parts requiring correct orientation, such as a screw, require more assembly time than parts requiring no orientation, such as a sphere. In the worst case, a part must be oriented correctly in three dimensions. For example, the following parts are listed in order of increasing requirements for orientation: sphere, cylinder, capped cylinder, capped and keyed cylinder.
- ***Part requires only one hand for assembly.*** This characteristic relates primarily to the size of the part and the effort required to manipulate the part. All other things being equal, parts requiring one hand to assemble require less time than parts requiring two hands, which in turn require less effort than parts requiring a crane or lift to assemble.
- ***Part requires no tools.*** Assembly operations requiring tools, such as attaching snap rings, springs, or cotter pins, generally require more time than those that do not.
- ***Part is assembled in a single, linear motion.*** Pushing in a pin requires less time than driving a screw. For this reason, numerous fasteners are commercially available that require only a single, linear motion for insertion.
- ***Part is secured immediately upon insertion.*** Some parts require a subsequent securing operation, such as tightening, curing, or the addition of another part. Until the part is secured, the assembly may be unstable, requiring extra care, fixtures, or slower assembly.

One way the Wazer team reduced assembly costs was by significantly reducing the use of sealants. The original Wazer design involved substantial use of liquid silicone sealants at water-resistant joints. These sealants required 20 hours of cure time, which resulted in a bottleneck in the assembly operations. To improve the design, the team replaced the use of liquid sealants with several custom rubber gaskets—in this case, actually adding parts to the BOM to reduce the time and complexity of assembly.

Consider Customer Assembly

Customers may tolerate completing some of the product assembly themselves, especially if doing so provides other benefits, such as making the purchase and handling of the packaged product easier. However, designing a product such that it can be easily and properly assembled by the most inept customers, many of whom will ignore directions, is a substantial challenge in itself.

Step 5: Reduce the Costs of Supporting Production

In working to minimize the cost of components and the cost of assembly, the team may also achieve reductions in the demands placed on the production support functions. For example, a reduction in the number of unique parts reduces the demands on inventory management. A reduction in assembly content reduces the number of workers required for production and therefore reduces the cost of supervision and human resource management.

Standardized components reduce the demands on engineering support and quality control. There are, in addition, some direct actions the team can take to reduce the costs of supporting production.

Minimize Systemic Complexity

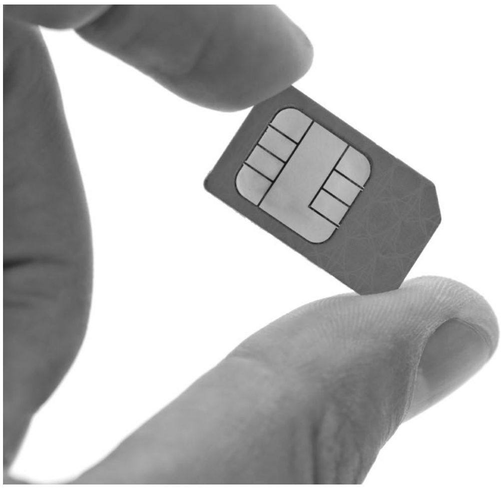
An extremely simple manufacturing system would utilize a single process to transform a single raw material into a single part—perhaps a system extruding a single diameter of plastic rod from plastic pellets. Unfortunately, few such systems exist. Complexity arises from variety in the inputs, outputs, and transforming processes. Many real manufacturing systems involve hundreds of suppliers, thousands of different parts, hundreds of people, dozens of types of products, and dozens of types of production processes. Each variant of suppliers, parts, people, products, and processes introduces complexity to the system. These variants must usually be tracked, monitored, managed, inspected, handled, and inventoried at tremendous cost to the enterprise. Much of this complexity is driven by the design of the product and can therefore be minimized through smart design decisions.

Error Proofing

An important aspect of DFM is to anticipate the possible failure modes of the production system and to take appropriate corrective actions early in the development process. This strategy is known as *error proofing*. For instance, Exhibit 13-12 shows a SIM card, a digital memory device, designed with a bevel on one corner so that it can be assembled in only one orientation.

Another type of failure mode arises from having slightly different parts that can be easily confused. Examples of slightly different parts are screws differing only in the pitch of the threads (e.g., M4 $\times$ 0.70 mm and M4 $\times$ 0.50 mm screws) or in the direction of turning (left- and right-handed threads), parts that are mirror images of each other, and parts differing only in material composition. We recommend either that these subtle differences be eliminated or that slight differences be exaggerated, perhaps by color coding the part.

EXHIBIT 13-12 SIM card with beveled corner allowing insertion in only one orientation.



©Smit/Shutterstock

Step 6: Reduce the Costs of Logistics

Logistics costs are composed of (1) the freight costs required to transport the product from the manufacturing location to the distribution point in the market in which products will be sold, and (2) duties, if any, levied on the complete product or on imported components.

Duties are essentially fully determined once the location of production has been determined, and that production location is one of the strategic decisions made in Step 1. Thus, the primary focus in reducing logistics costs in the detailed design phase is in reducing the cost of freight.

If the product price relative to its size and weight is extremely high, as with semiconductors or pharmaceuticals, then the product may be shipped by air. And indeed, in such cases, freight costs are a very small fraction of the cost of goods and not a critical focus of the DFM process. However, in most cases, ocean, truck, and rail are the primary means of moving goods from the factory to the distribution point. In such cases, design decisions can strongly influence freight costs.

Freight costs are generally determined by a combination of volume and weight. Ocean and rail freight costs are primarily driven by volume, and trucking cost is determined largely by weight. For products that have relatively low density, say bicycle helmets, trucking costs are likely determined by *dimensional weight*—the weight a shipment would have if it were of a minimum density specified by the freight company. Densities of 100 to 200 kg/m^3 are typically used in dimensional weight calculations. Since the weight of the product is likely already minimized to save on materials costs, freight costs can usually be minimized by focusing on minimizing volume.

Here are some guidelines for minimizing volume:

- ***Partial disassembly, folding, or compression:*** Often a protrusion or structural element in a product can dictate its volume. For instance, the handle of a vacuum cleaner, the legs of a table, or the pedals of a bicycle are components that if disassembled can substantially reduce the volume of the product. A small amount of required assembly is usually expected and accepted by the consumer. In a few cases, the product can literally be folded or squeezed to reduce its volume. For instance, consider the innovation in mattress packaging allowing foam mattresses to be squeezed flat, vacuum sealed, and rolled up. This process has enabled mattresses to be shipped by ordinary freight modes directly to the consumer.
- ***Minimum carton size:*** The clearance between the product and its packaging to a large extent determine package size and therefore freight costs. Design of carton inserts that protect the product yet require little clearance allow for smaller outside dimensions and therefore lower freight costs.
- ***Limited or no packaging:*** Does a sauce pan require a carton? How about a bicycle pump? There may be a way to label a product with a tag in a way that no significant packaging is required at all.
- ***Delayed final packaging:*** In some cases, the bare product can be packed densely in bulk, possibly enabled by the use of custom spacers and inserts. Then, the product is inserted into its final consumer packaging at the point of distribution in the target market. The trade-off involved in this strategy is between the cost and complexity of

performing a final packaging operation in a distribution center and the lower freight cost of shipping the product in a densely nested configuration.

Wazer considered using a contract manufacturer in Shenzhen, China, for final assembly, but ultimately chose to ship its machines to the United States as components rather than as fully assembled machines, and to do final assembly in its own facility in New York. Wazer did this in part to reduce logistics costs. For instance, by nesting the thermoformed abrasive hopper components and then assembling them in the United States, the overall volume required for shipping the hopper was reduced by a factor of six. This strategy also allowed final assembly and test to be performed close to its initial target market, giving the company the ability to very closely monitor quality and performance of the product as it was delivering it to customers. Finally, the Wazer team believed that it had to have full control of its final assembly operations to benefit from the knowledge and learning likely to occur with ongoing production.

Step 7: Consider the Impact of DFM Decisions on Other Factors

Minimizing manufacturing cost is not the only objective of the product development process. The economic success of a product also depends on the quality of the product, the timeliness of product introduction, and the cost of developing the product. There may also be situations in which the economic success of a specific project is compromised in order to maximize the economic success of the entire enterprise. In contemplating a DFM decision, these issues should be considered explicitly.

The Impact of DFM on Development Time

Development time can be precious. For example, in the auto industry, time may be worth as much as several hundred thousand dollars per day. For this reason, DFM decisions must be evaluated for their impact on development time as well as for their impact on manufacturing cost. While saving $1 in cost on each automobile would be worth perhaps $200,000 or more in annual cost savings, it would almost certainly not be worth causing even a single month delay in product launch.

The Impact of DFM on Development Cost

Development cost closely mirrors development time. Therefore, the same caution about the relationship between part complexity and development time applies to development cost. In general, however, teams that aggressively pursue low manufacturing costs as an integral part of the development process seem to be able to develop products in about the same time and with about the same budget as teams that do not. Part of this phenomenon certainly arises from the correlation between good project management practices and the application of sound DFM methods.

The Impact of DFM on Product Quality

Before proceeding with a DFM decision, the team should evaluate the impact of the decision on product quality. Under ideal circumstances, actions to decrease manufacturing cost would also improve product quality. These dual goals can often be achieved because of reduced complexity of assemblies. However, in some cases, actions to decrease manufacturing cost can have adverse effects on product quality, as may be the case when material costs are reduced. In most cases, the trade-off between cost and quality is evaluated subjectively, but in some cases, a decision may have enough economic significance that functional or consumer testing of two or more alternatives may be warranted.

The Impact of DFM on the Larger Enterprise

Design decisions may have implications beyond the responsibilities of a single development team. In economic terms, these implications may be viewed as *externalities.* Such externalities include component reuse, life cycle costs, and supply chain responsiveness.

- ***Component reuse:*** Taking time and money to create a low-cost component may be of value to other teams within the organization that are designing similar products. In general, this value is not explicitly accounted for in manufacturing cost estimates. The team may choose to take an action that is actually more costly for its product because of the positive cost implications for other projects.
- ***Life cycle costs:*** Throughout their life cycles, certain products may incur some company or societal costs that are not (or are rarely) accounted for in the manufacturing cost. For example, products may contain toxic materials requiring special handling in disposal. Products may incur service and warranty costs. Although these costs may not appear in the manufacturing cost analysis, they should be considered before adopting a DFM decision. Chapter 12, Design for Environment, provides a detailed method of addressing life cycle costs.
- ***Supply chain responsiveness:*** Decisions about factory location and packaging may have implications for the speed with which the supply chain can respond to changes in demand. If production is located in the target market, the inventory required to deal with variation in demand is much less than if there is a two-month transportation delay between the factory and the distribution system. These inventory costs are not typically accounted for explicitly in cost of goods, yet will be of economic concern to the larger enterprise.

Results

Over the past few decades, design-for-manufacturing practices were put into place in thousands of firms. Today DFM is an essential part of almost every product development effort. No longer can designers "throw the design over the wall" to production engineers. As a result of this emphasis on improved design quality, some manufacturers claim to have reduced cost of goods by up to 50 percent. In fact, comparing current new product designs with earlier generations, one can usually identify fewer parts in the new product, as well as new materials, more integrated and custom parts, higher-volume standard parts and subassemblies, and simpler assembly procedures.

The Wazer team made several major iterations in the design of the abrasive hopper from the initial concept. Three versions of the design and the associated part counts, fixed costs, and total part cost are shown in Exhibit 13-13. One of the main improvements on the last iteration was to both reduce costs and enhance ergonomics through the use of the rounded bottom edge of the hopper, which would serve as the handle for sliding out the hopper to allow the addition of the abrasive medium to the machine. The final design achieves low cost, particularly given the relatively low production quantities assumed, while providing required structural performance and enhanced ergonomics.

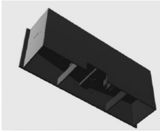
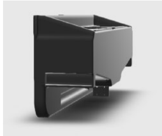
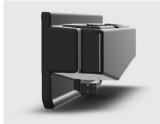
	Initial Design	**Intermediate Iteration**	**Production Design**
	 ©Wazer, Inc	 ©Wazer, Inc	 ©Wazer, Inc
Description	Assembled and glued from 2D parts	Two main parts are thermoformed and glued to form the hopper bin.	Continuous lower front edge is a nested glued joint also serving as a handle.
Key Processes	Laser cutting	Thermoforming, computer-controlled cutting of openings	Thermoforming, computer-controlled cutting of openings
N parts (bin only)	24	2	2
Total Fixed Costs	$0	$6,000	$6,200
Total Part Costs (including amortization of tooling over 2000 units)	$84	$23.25	$19.97

EXHIBIT 13-13 Three versions of design for the hopper, from initial concept through the production design.

Summary

Design for manufacturing (DFM) is aimed at reducing costs while simultaneously improving (or at least not inappropriately compromising) product quality, development time, and development cost.

- DFM begins with the concept development phase and system-level design phase; in these phases, strategic sourcing decisions must be made with the cost implications in mind.
- DFM is an integrative method taking place throughout the development process and requiring inputs from across the development team.
- DFM uses estimates of cost to guide and prioritize cost reduction efforts. Cost estimation requires expertise with the relevant production processes, and thus suppliers and manufacturing experts are often involved in this process.
- Component costs are reduced by understanding what drives these costs. Solutions may involve novel component design concepts or the incremental improvement of existing designs through simplification and standardization.
- Assembly costs can be reduced by following well-established design-for-assembly (DFA) guidelines. Components can be redesigned to simplify assembly operations, or components can be eliminated entirely by integration of their functions into other components.
- Reduction of manufacturing support costs begins with an understanding of the drivers of complexity in the production process. Design decisions have a large impact on the costs of supporting production.

- Reduction of logistics costs, given a production location, generally results from minimizing geometric volume of the product and from careful packaging design.
- DFM decisions can affect product development lead time, product development cost, and product quality. Trade-offs may be necessary between manufacturing cost and these equally important broader issues.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at:
www.pdd-resources.net

Many references are available to aid in component design, materials choice, manufacturing process selection, and understanding of process capabilities. Here are several sources that offer specific guidelines for hundreds of applications, materials, and processes.

Bralla, James G., *Handbook of Manufacturing Processes: How Products, Components and Materials Are Made*, Industrial Press, New York, 2007.

Cubberly, William H., and Ramon Bakerjian, *Tool and Manufacturing Engineers Handbook*, Society of Manufacturing Engineers, Dearborn, MI, 1989.

Farag, Mahmoud M., *Materials Selection for Engineering Design*, third edition, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2013.

Lefteri, Chris, *Making It: Manufacturing Techniques for Product Design*, second edition, Laurence King Publishing, London, 2012.

Thompson, Rob, *Manufacturing Processes for Design Professionals*, Thames & Hudson, High Holborn, UK, 2007.

Trucks, H. E., *Designing for Economical Production*, second edition, Society of Manufacturing Engineers, Dearborn, MI, 1987.

The most popular method for DFA is by Boothroyd and Dewhurst. Software is also available to aid in estimating costs for both manual and automatic assembly, as well as a wide range of component costs.

Boothroyd, Geoffrey, Peter Dewhurst, and Winston A. Knight, *Product Design for Manufacture and Assembly*, third edition, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2010.

Detailed research on automated assembly has resulted in guidelines for designing products suited for assembly automation.

Boothroyd, Geoffrey, *Assembly Automation and Product Design (Manufacturing Engineering and Materials Processing)*, second edition, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2005.

Whitney, Daniel E., *Mechanical Assemblies: Their Design*, *Manufacture*, *and Role in Product Development*, Oxford University Press, New York, 2004.

Exercises

1. Estimate the production cost for a simple product you may have purchased. Try costing a product with fewer than 10 components, such as a pen, a pocket knife, or a baby's toy. Remember that one reasonable upper bound for your estimate, including overhead, is the wholesale price (typically between 40 and 70 percent of the retail price).
2. Suggest some potential cost-reducing modifications you could make to improve the product you considered above.
3. List 10 reasons why reducing the number of parts in a product might reduce production costs. Also list some reasons why costs might increase.

Thought Questions

1. Consider the following 10 "design rules" for electromechanical products. Do these seem like reasonable guidelines? Under what circumstances could one rule conflict with another one? How should such a trade-off be settled?

   a. Minimize parts count.
   b. Use modular assembly.
   c. Stack assemblies.
   d. Eliminate adjustments.
   e. Eliminate cables.
   f. Use self-fastening parts.
   g. Use self-locating parts.
   h. Eliminate reorientation.
   i. Facilitate parts handling.
   j. Specify standard parts.

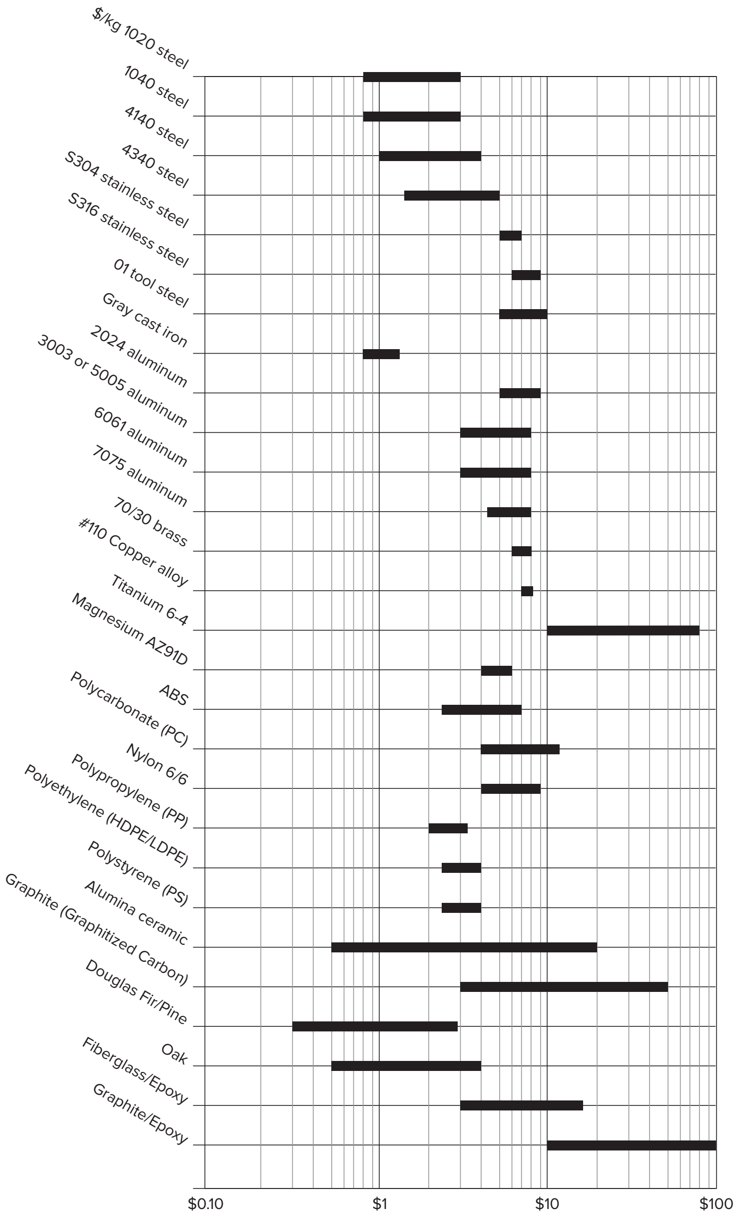
2. Is it possible to determine what a product really costs once it is put into production? If so, how might you do this?
3. Can you propose a set of metrics that would be useful for the team to predict changes in the actual costs of supporting production? To be effective, these metrics must be sensitive to changes in the design that affect indirect costs experienced by the firm. What are some of the barriers to the introduction of such techniques in practice?

Appendix A

Materials Costs

EXHIBIT 13-14
Range of costs for common engineering materials. Price ranges shown correspond to various grades and forms of each material, purchased in bulk quantities (2011 prices).

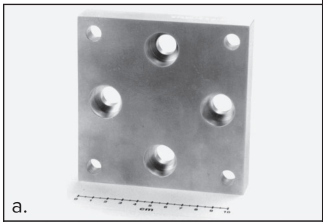
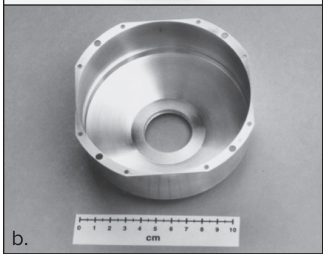
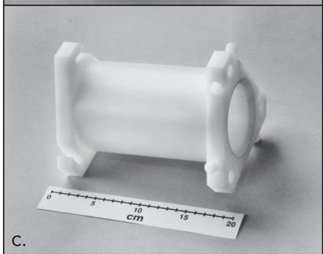
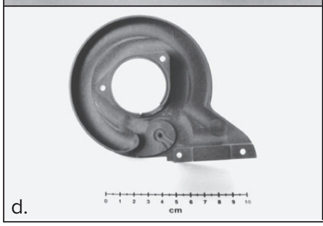
Source: Adapted from David G. Ullman, *The Mechanical Design Process*, sixth edition, David G. Ullman (publisher), 2018.



Appendix B

Component Manufacturing Costs

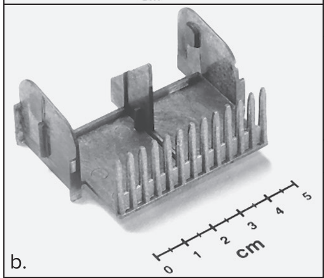
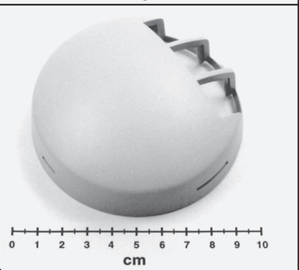
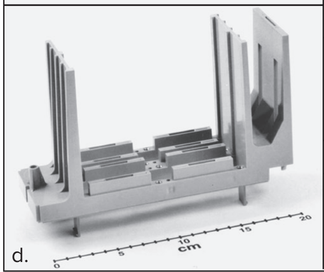
The exhibits in this appendix show example components and their cost data for computer-numerical control (CNC) machining (Exhibit 13-15), injection molding (Exhibit 13-16), progressive die stamping (Exhibit 13-17), and sand casting and investment casting (Exhibit 13-18). The purpose of these examples is to show, in general terms, what typical operations cost and how the cost structure of each process is affected by part complexity.

	Fixed Costs	***Variable Costs***	***Volume***	***Total Unit Cost***
 a.	Setup: 0.75 hr at $60/hr Tooling: Programming: 0.25 hr at $60/hr	Material: $9 ea. Stock: 1.11 kg of 6061 aluminum Processing: 6 min/unit at $60/hr	1 10 100	$75.00 $21.00 $15.50
 b.	Setup: 1.75 hr at $60/hr Tooling: Programming: 1.0 hr at $60/hr Fixtures: $150	Material: $16 ea. Stock: 1.96 kg of 6061 aluminum Processing: 55 min/unit at $60/hr	1 10 100	$386.00 $102.50 $74.15
 c.	Setup: 5.5 hr at $60/hr Tooling: Programming: 2.0 hr at $60/hr	Material: $25 ea. Stock: 4.60 kg of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene Processing: 2.85 hr/unit at $60/hr	1 10 100	$646.00 $241.00 $200.50
 d.	Setup: 2.0 hr at $60/hr Tooling: Programming: 2.0 hr at $60/hr	Material: $12 ea. stock: 1.50 kg of 6061 aluminum Processing: 6 hr/unit at $60/hr	1 10 100	$612.00 $396.00 $374.40

Source: Examples and data from Ramco, Inc. Photos ©Stuart Cohen

Notes: 1. Programming time is a one-time expense and is included here in tooling costs.
2. Material prices assume low volumes and include cutting charges.
3. Processing costs include overhead charges.

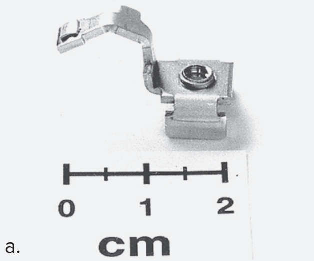
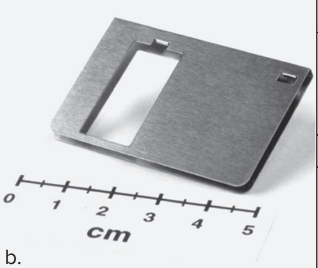
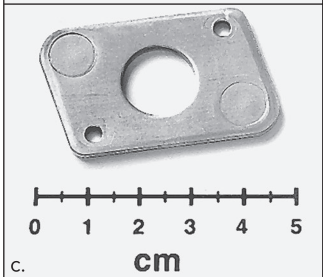
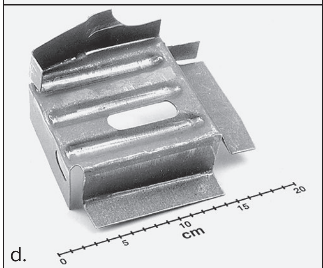
EXHIBIT 13-15 CNC machining cost examples
CNC machining example component and cost data.

	Fixed Costs	***Variable Costs***	***Volume***	***Total Unit Cost***
 a.	Setup: Tooling: $18K 8 cavities/mold no actions	Material: $0.075 ea. 45 g of linear low density polyethylene (LLDPF) Processing: 1,000 pcs/hr on an 1,800 KN press at $40/hr	10K 100K 1M	$1.915 $0.295 $0.133
 b.	Setup: Tooling: $10K 1 cavity/mold no actions	Material: $0.244 ea. 10 g of steel-filled polycarbonate (PC) Processing: 160 pcs/hr on a 900 KN press at $42/hr	10K 100K 1M	$1.507 $0.607 $0.517
 c.	Setup: Tooling: $18K 2 cavities/mold no actions 3 retracting pins	Material: $0.15 ea. 22 g of modified polyphenylene oxide (PPO) Processing: 240 pcs/hr on an 800 KN press at $42/hr	10K 100K 1M	$2.125 $0.505 $0.343
 d.	Setup: Tooling: $80K 1 cavity/mold 1 action 4 retracting pins	Material: $2.58 ea. 227 g of polycarbonate (PC) with 8 brass inserts Processing: 95 pcs/hr on a 2,700 KN press at $48/hr	10K 100K 1M	$11.085 $3.885 $3.165

Source: Examples and data from Lee Plastics, Inc. and Digital Equipment Corporation. Photos ©Stuart Cohen

Notes: 1. Setup costs (only a few hours in each case) are negligible for high-volume injection molding.
2. Processing costs include overhead charges.

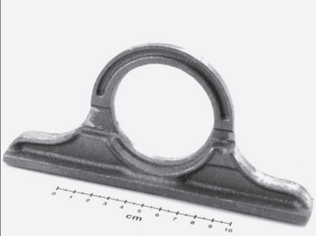
EXHIBIT 13-16 Injection molding cost examples
Injection molding example components and cost data.

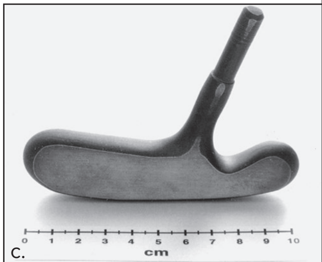
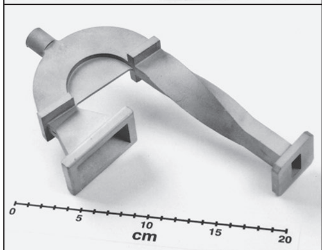
	Fixed Costs	***Variable Costs***	***Volume***	***Total Unit Cost***
 a.	Setup: Tooling: $22K	Material: $0.040 ea. 2.2g 70/30 Brass Processing: 3,000 pcs/hr on a 550 KN press at $63/hr	100K 1M 10M	$0.281 $0.083 $0.063
 b.	Setup: Tooling: $71K	Material: $0.032 ea. 3.5 g 304 SST Processing: 4,300 pcs/hr on a 550 KN press at $140/hr	100K 1M 10M	$0.775 $0.136 $0.072
 c.	Setup: Tooling: $11K	Material: $0.128 ea. 19.2 g 102 copper Processing: 4,800 pcs/hr on a 650 KN press at $50/hr	100K 1M 10M	$0.248 $0.149 $0.140
 d.	Setup: Tooling: $195K	Material: $0.28 ea. 341 g galvanized steel Processing: 700 pcs/hr on a 1,000 KN press at $200/hr	100K 1M 10M	$2.516 $0.761 $0.585

Source: Examples and data from various sources including Brainin Advance Industries. Photos ©Stuart Cohen

Notes: 1. Setup costs (only a few hours in each case) are negligible for high-volume stamping.
2. Material weights represent the finished stampings. Material costs include scrap.
3. Hourly processing costs are not only driven by press size but also can include ancillary processing equipment, such as in-die tapping.
4. Processing costs include overhead charges.

EXHIBIT 13-17 Stamping cost examples
Volume progressive die stamping example components and cost data.

	Fixed Costs	***Variable Costs***	***Volume***	***Total Unit Cost***
 a.	Setup:	Material: $0.53 ea. 570 g of gray cast iron	10 100 1000	$180.91 $18.91 $2.71
	Tooling: $1.8K 8 impressions/pattern no core	Processing: 120 pcs/hr at $46/hr		
 b.	Setup:	Material: $2.42 ea. 2,600 g of gray cast iron	10 100 1000	$243.95 $27.95 $6.35
	Tooling: $2.4K 2 impressions/pattern 1 core	Processing: 30 pcs/hr at $46/hr		

	Fixed Costs	***Variable Costs***	***Volume***	***Total Unit Cost***
 c.	Setup:	Material: $0.713 ea. 260 g of yellow brass	10 100 1000	$163.21 $28.21 $14.71
	Tooling: $1.5K no cores	Processing: 4 pcs/hr at $50/hr		
 d.	Setup:	Material: $0.395 ea. 180 g of 712 aluminum	10 100 1000	$750.40 $120.40 $57.40
	Tooling: $7K 3 cores	Processing: 1 pc/hr at $50/hr		

Source: Examples and data from Cumberland Foundry Co., Inc. (sand casting), and Castronics, Inc. (investment casting). Photos ©Stuart Cohen

Notes: 1. Setup is not generally charged in costing.
2. Processing costs include overhead charges.

EXHIBIT 13-18 **Casting cost examples**

Sand casting (top) and investment casting (bottom) example components and cost data.

Terminology

The following terminology applies to all of the tables in this appendix:

- ***Setup*** is the work required to prepare the equipment for a production run. Setup costs are charged for each run.
- ***Tooling costs*** are incurred in advance of the first production run, and tooling can usually be reused for later production runs. However, in very high-volume production runs, tooling wears out and therefore is a recurring expense. Tooling costs may be spread over the entire production volume or may be charged separately. CNC programming time is generally also a one-time expense, like a tooling cost.
- ***Material types*** are listed for each part. Material weights and costs include processing scrap and waste.
- ***Processing costs*** vary with the type of manufacturing equipment used and include charges for both machine time and labor.

While fixed costs (setup and tooling) are sometimes billed separately from material and processing costs, for these examples, fixed costs are spread over the production volume shown. Unit costs are calculated as

$$\text{Total unit cost} = \frac{\text{Setup costs} + \text{Tooling costs}}{\text{Volume}} + \text{Variable costs}$$

The cost rates given include overhead charges, so these data are representative of custom components purchased from suppliers.

Description of Processes

CNC machining includes computer-controlled milling and turning processes. CNC machines are highly flexible due to automatic tool-changing mechanisms, multiple work axes, and programmable computer control. To produce a particular part, a machinist must first program the cutting tool trajectories and tool selections into the machine's computer. Also, fixtures or other tooling may be used to produce multiple parts more efficiently. Once the program is written and fixtures are made, subsequent production runs can be set up much more quickly.

Injection molding is the process of forcing hot plastic under high pressure into a mold, where it cools and solidifies. When the part is sufficiently cool, the mold is opened, the part is ejected, the mold closes, and the cycle begins again. Mold complexity depends highly on the part geometry; undercuts (features that would prevent the part from ejecting out of the mold) are achieved using mold "actions" or "retracting pins."

Progressive die stamping is the process of passing a sheet or strip of metal through a set of dies to cut and/or form it to a desired size and shape. While some stampings require only cutting, formed stampings are made by bending and stretching the metal beyond its yield point, thereby causing permanent deformation.

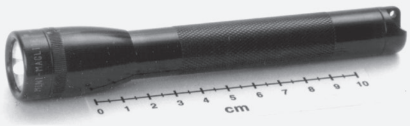
Sand castings are created by forming a sand mold from master patterns (tooling in the shape of the final part). Special binders are mixed with the sand to allow the sand to retain shape when packed around the pattern to create a single-use mold. Internal cavities in a casting can be created using additional sand cores inside the outer mold. Molten metal is then poured into the mold where the metal cools and solidifies. Once cool, the sand is broken off to reveal the metal casting. Sand castings generally require subsequent machining operations to create finished components.

Investment castings are made by first creating a temporary wax pattern, using master tooling. The wax pattern is then dipped or immersed in plaster or ceramic slurry, which is allowed to solidify. The form is then heated, melting out the wax and leaving behind only the thin shell as a mold. Molten metal is then poured into the mold, where it cools and solidifies. When the metal is cool, the mold is broken off to reveal the metal part.

Detailed process descriptions for the aforementioned and numerous other processes, as well as more detailed cost estimating techniques, can be found in the reference books listed for this chapter.

Appendix C

Assembly Costs

Product	***Part Data***		***Assembly Times (Seconds)***	
	No. of Parts	16	Total	125.7
	No. of Unique Parts	12	Slowest Part	9.7
	No. of Fasteners	0	Fastest Part	2.9
	No. of Parts	34	Total	186.5
	No. of Unique Parts	25	Slowest Part	10.7
	No. of Fasteners	5	Fastest Part	2.6
	No. of Parts	49	Total	266.0
	No. of Unique Parts	43	Slowest Part	14.0
	No. of Fasteners	5	Fastest Part	3.5
	No. of Parts	56/17*	Total	277.0/138.0*
	No. of Unique Parts	44/12*	Slowest Part	8.0/8.0*
	No. of Fasteners	0/0*	Fastest Part	0.75/3.0*

Source: Data obtained by using Boothroyd Dewhurst Inc. DFA software. Photos ©Stuart Cohen.

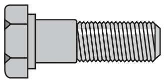
*Data for the mouse are given as total components (including electronic)/mechanical components only.

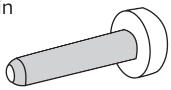
Notes: 1. This table gives manual assembly times, which can be converted to assembly costs using applicable labor rates.

2. Assembly times shown include times for individual part handling and insertion, as well as other operations such as subassembly handling and insertion, reorientations, and heat riveting.

EXHIBIT 13-19 **Assembly Costs**

Assembly data for common products. Obtained using Boothroyd Dewhurst DFA Software.

Component	**Time (Seconds)**		
	Min	*Max*	*Avg*
Screw 	7.5	13.1	10.3
Snap-fit 	3.5	8.0	5.9

Component	**Time (Seconds)**		
	Min	*Max*	*Avg*
Pin 	3.1	10.1	6.6
Spring 	2.6	14.0	8.3

Source: Manual assembly tables from Boothroyd, Geoffrey, and Peter Dewhurst, *Product Design for Assembly*, Boothroyd Dewhurst, Inc., Wakefield, RI, 1989

EXHIBIT 13-20 Typical handling and insertion times for common components.

Appendix D

Cost Structures

EXHIBIT 13-21

Typical cost structures for manufacturing firms

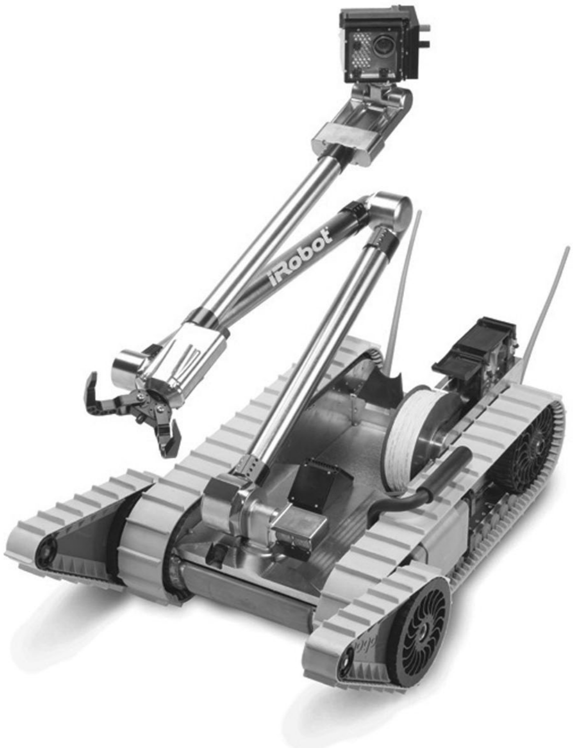
Sources, top to bottom: Unpublished company source; Harvard Business School cases: Destin Brass Products Co., 9-190-089, and John Deere Component Works, 9-187-107

Type of Firm	**Cost Calculation**
Electromechanical products manufacturer (Traditional cost structure)	Cost = (113%) × (Materials cost) + (360%) × (Direct labor cost)
Precision valve manufacturer (Activity-based cost structure)	Cost = (108%) × [(Direct labor cost) + (Setup labor cost) + (160%) × (Materials cost) + ($27.80) × (Machine hours) + ($2,000.00) × (Number of shipments)]
Heavy equipment component manufacturer (Activity-based cost structure)	Cost = (110%) × (Materials cost) + (109%) × [(211%) × (Direct labor cost) + ($16.71) × (Machine hours) + ($33.76) × (Setup hours) + ($114.27) × (Number of production orders) + ($19.42) × (Number of material handling loads) + ($487.00) × (Number of new parts added to the system)]

Notes: 1. This table shows total costs per customer order.
2. Materials costs include costs of raw materials and purchased components.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

Prototyping



Courtesy of iRobot Corporation

EXHIBIT 14-1
PackBot mobile robot by iRobot.

Courtesy of iRobot Corporation

EXHIBIT 14-2 The PackBot ready for deployment in a military search operation.

The iRobot PackBot line of tactical mobile robots was designed by iRobot Corporation to assist law enforcement and military personnel to conduct operations in dangerous environments. For example, PackBot robots were used to help search for survivors in the wreckage of the World Trade Center in September 2001 and were the first robots to enter the damaged Fukushima nuclear power plant after the 2011 earthquake and tsunami. They have assisted military operations around the world, and they are used in highly dangerous situations by police for bomb disposal and by workers for detection of hazardous materials. The mobile chassis of the PackBot accepts a wide range of payloads, including a robotic arm that can be fitted with a gripper, video camera, lighting, acoustic sensors, chemical and radiation detectors, or specialized equipment such as that needed for disarming bombs. Exhibit 14-1 shows the PackBot configured with a robotic arm, camera, gripper, and fiber-optic communications tether. Exhibit 14-2 shows the PackBot ready for use in the field.

The PackBot may be carried by military troops, thrown through a window, or dropped off a fire truck into a wide range of challenging and unpredictable situations. In developing the PackBot, the product development team at iRobot utilized various forms of prototypes throughout the product development process. Prototypes not only helped develop a successful product quickly, but also helped ensure the reliability of the PackBot in the field.

This chapter defines *prototype*, explains why prototypes are built, and then presents several principles of prototyping practice. The chapter also describes a method for planning prototypes before they are built. The PackBot is used as an illustrative example throughout.

Understanding Prototypes

Although dictionaries define *prototype* as a noun only, in product development practice, the word is used as a noun, a verb, and an adjective. For example:

- Industrial designers produce *prototypes* of their concepts.
- Engineers *prototype* a design.
- Software developers write *prototype* programs.

We define *prototype* as "an approximation of the product along one or more dimensions of interest." Under this definition, any entity exhibiting at least one aspect of the product that is of interest to the development team can be viewed as a prototype. This definition deviates from standard usage in that it includes such diverse forms of prototypes as concept sketches, mathematical models, simulations, test components, and fully functional preproduction versions of the product. *Prototyping* is the process of developing such an approximation of the product.

Types of Prototypes

Prototypes can be usefully classified along two dimensions. The first dimension is the degree to which a prototype is *physical* as opposed to *analytical.* Physical prototypes are tangible artifacts created to approximate the product. Aspects of the product of interest to the development team are actually built into an artifact for testing and experimentation. Examples of physical prototypes include models that look and feel like the product, proof-of-concept prototypes used to test an idea quickly, and experimental hardware used to validate the functionality of a product. Exhibit 14-3 shows three forms of physical prototypes used for diverse purposes. Analytical prototypes represent the product in a nontangible, usually mathematical or visual, manner. Interesting aspects of the product are analyzed, rather than built. Examples of analytical prototypes include computer simulations, systems of equations encoded within a spreadsheet, and computer models of three-dimensional geometry. Exhibit 14-4 shows three forms of analytical prototypes used for diverse purposes.

The second dimension is the degree to which a prototype is *comprehensive* as opposed to *focused.* Comprehensive prototypes implement most, if not all, of the attributes of a product. A comprehensive prototype corresponds closely to the everyday use of the word *prototype*, in that it is a full-scale, fully operational version of the product. An example of a comprehensive prototype is one given to customers in order to identify any remaining design flaws before committing to production. In contrast to comprehensive prototypes, focused prototypes implement one, or a few, of the attributes of a product. Examples of focused prototypes include foam models to explore the form of a product and hand-built circuit boards to investigate the electronic performance of a product design. A common practice is to use two or more focused prototypes together to investigate the overall performance of a product. One of these prototypes is often a "looks-like" prototype, and the other is a "works-like" prototype. By building two separate focused prototypes, the team may be able to answer its questions much earlier than if it had to create one integrated, comprehensive prototype.

Exhibit 14-5 displays a plot with axes corresponding to these two dimensions. Several different prototypes from the PackBot example are shown on this plot. Note that focused

EXHIBIT 14-3
Examples of physical prototypes in the PackBot project. (a) Looks-like model for customer communication and approval, (b) wheel prototype under load during creep testing, (c) sand test of the complete system.

Courtesy of iRobot Corporation

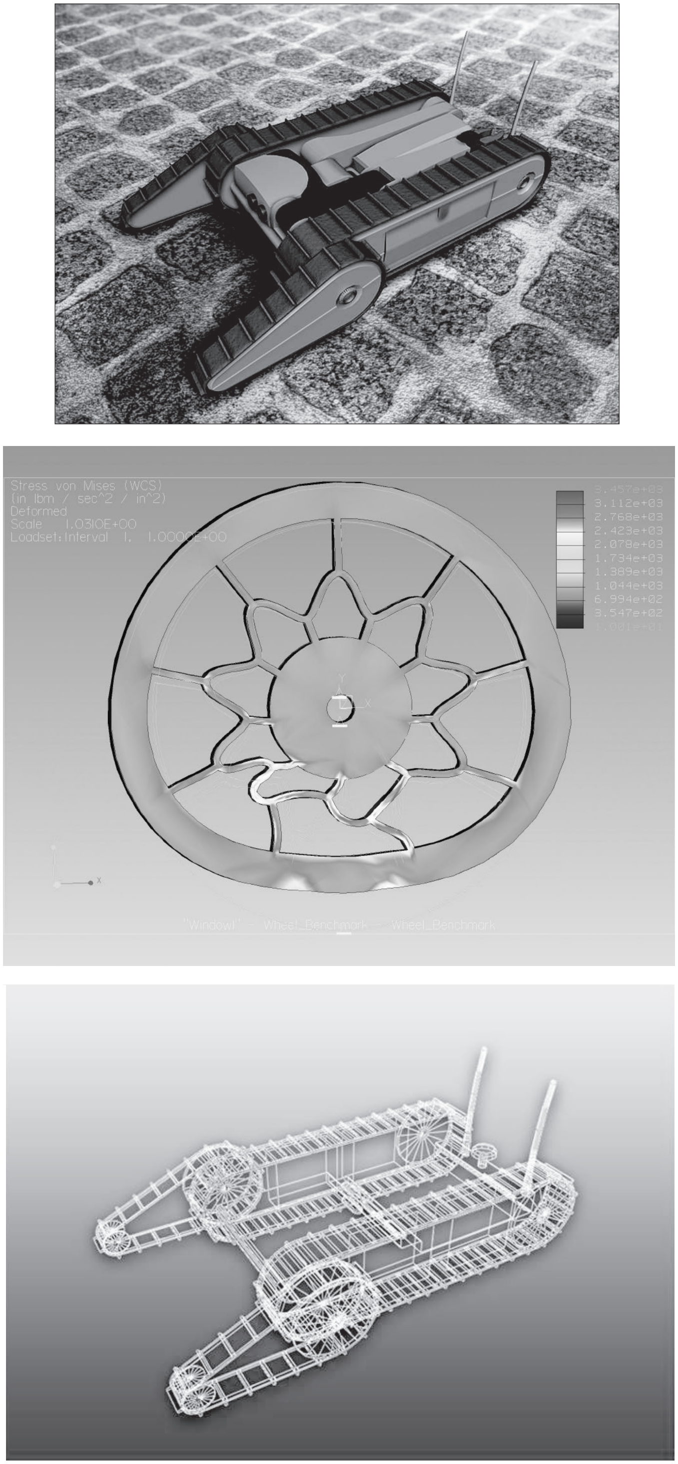
(a)

(b)

(c)

EXHIBIT 14-4
Examples of analytical prototypes of the PackBot. (a) 3D CAD rendering created for a customer proposal, (b) finite-element analysis of wheel spoke geometry, (c) dynamic simulation model.

Courtesy of iRobot Corporation



(a)

(b)

(c)

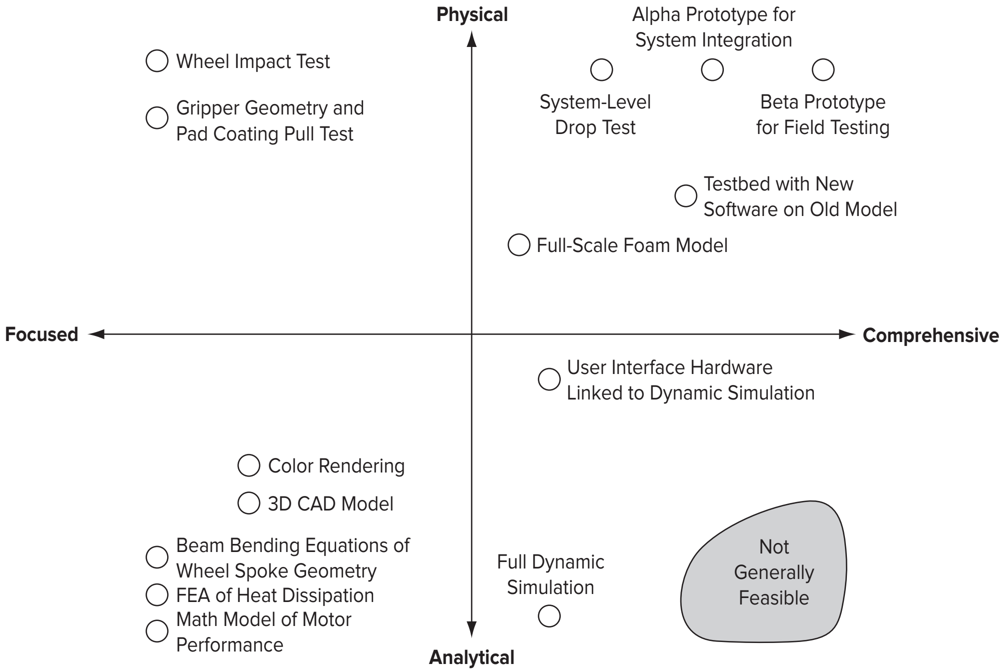


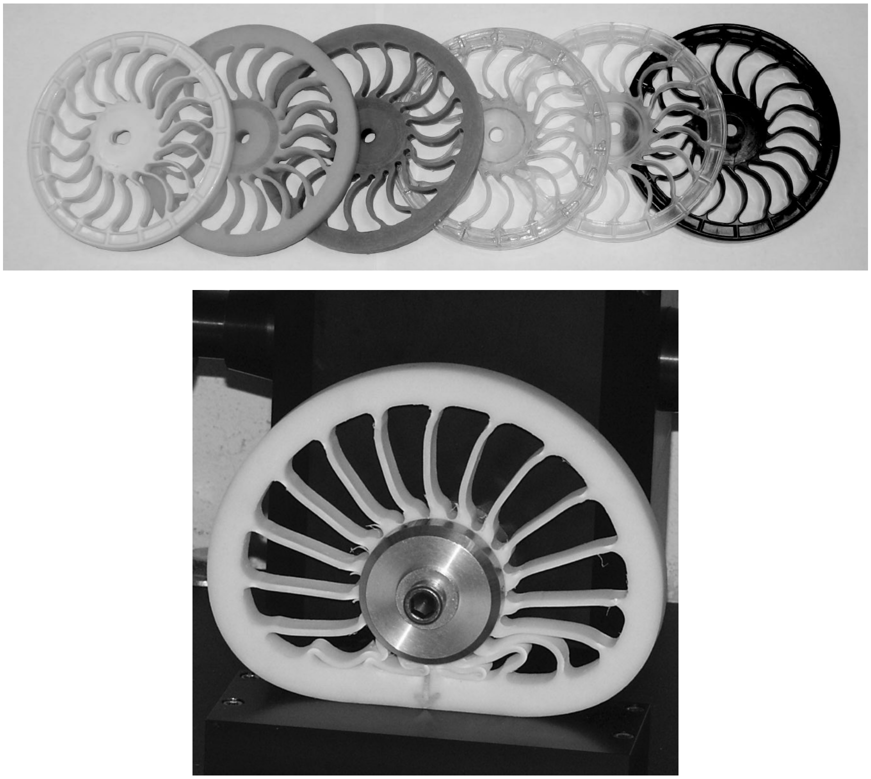
EXHIBIT 14-5 Types of prototypes. Prototypes can be classified according to the degree to which they are physical and the degree to which they implement all of the attributes of the product.

prototypes can be either physical or analytical, but that for tangible manufactured products, fully comprehensive prototypes must generally be physical. Prototypes sometimes contain a combination of analytical and physical elements. For example, control hardware including the user interface for the PackBot could be linked to a software simulation of the PackBot dynamic motion. Some analytical prototypes can be viewed as being more "physical" than others. For example, a video animation of the PackBot's dynamic balance based on simulation of the physical interactions of its components is, in one sense, more physical than a set of equations approximating the overall balance of the same mechanism.

What Are Prototypes Used For?

Within a product development project, prototypes are used for four purposes: learning, communication, integration, and milestones.

Learning Prototypes are often used to answer two types of questions: "Will it work?" and "How well does it meet the customer needs?" When used to answer such questions, prototypes serve as learning tools. In developing the wheels for the PackBot, the team built focused-physical prototypes of the novel spiral spoke geometry of the wheels. The wheels were mounted to a weighted platform and dropped at various heights to test the shock absorption properties and the strength of the wheels. Exhibit 14-6 shows several of the wheel prototypes and one of the impact tests. Also in development of the wheel design, mathematical models of the spokes were analyzed to estimate the stiffness and strength of the wheels. This is an example of a focused-analytical prototype used as a learning tool.



Courtesy of iRobot Corporation

EXHIBIT 14-6 PackBot wheel prototypes (top) and impact testing (bottom).

Communication Prototypes enrich communication with top management, vendors, partners, extended team members, customers, and investors. This is particularly true of physical prototypes: a visual, tactile, three-dimensional representation of a product is much easier to understand than a verbal description or even a sketch of the product. When developing new payload capabilities for the PackBot, communication among engineers, managers, suppliers, and customers is enhanced through the use of "look and feel" prototypes. New customers often fail to appreciate the small size of the "crush zone" into which the PackBot payload must fit; however, a physical model clearly illustrates this space constraint. The rough physical prototype shown in Exhibit 14-3(a) was used to communicate to early customers the physical size of the PackBot and the range of mobility of its camera support arm. This model was constructed from components using stereolithography rapid prototyping technology, assembled, and painted to represent the actual size and appearance of the product.

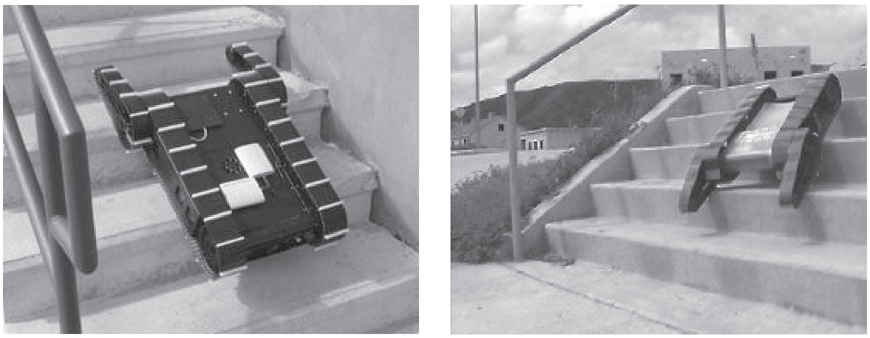
Integration Prototypes are used to ensure that components and subsystems of the product work together as expected. Comprehensive physical prototypes are most effective as integration tools in product development projects because they require the assembly and physical interconnection of all the parts and subassemblies that make up a product. In doing so, the prototype forces coordination between different members of the product development team.

If the combination of any of the components of the product interferes with the overall function of the product, the problem may be detected through physical integration in a comprehensive prototype. Common names for these comprehensive physical prototypes are *testbed*, *alpha*, *beta*, or *preproduction prototypes.* Two such prototypes of the PackBot are shown in Exhibit 14-7. In the alpha prototype, the radios are visible in the center of the robot. In the beta prototype, the radios were integrated into the body for protection from damage. Extensive testing of the alpha prototype helped identify several improvements to the track system, which was redesigned before the beta prototype was built. Further testing of the beta prototype included a wide range of field conditions, such as mud, sand, and water testing.

Prototypes also help integrate the perspectives of the different functions represented on a product development team (Leonard-Barton, 1991). A simple physical model of the form of a product can be used as the medium through which the marketing, design, and manufacturing functions agree on a basic design decision.

Many software development processes use prototypes to integrate the activities of dozens of software developers. Microsoft, for example, employs a "daily build," in which a new version of the product is compiled at the end of every day. Software developers "check in" their code by a fixed time of day (e.g., 5:00 p.m.) and a team compiles the code to create a new prototype version of the software. The most recent version of the software is then tested and used by everyone on the team, in a practice Microsoft calls "eating your own dog food." This practice of creating daily comprehensive prototypes ensures that the efforts of the developers are always synchronized and integrated. Any conflicts are detected immediately and the team can never diverge more than one day from a working version of the product (Cusumano, 1997).

Milestones Particularly in the later stages of product development, prototypes are used to demonstrate that the product has achieved a desired level of functionality. Milestone prototypes provide tangible goals, demonstrate progress, and serve to enforce the schedule. Senior management (and sometimes the customer) often requires a prototype that demonstrates certain functions before allowing the project to proceed. For example, in many government procurements, a prototype must pass a "qualification test" and later



Courtesy of iRobot Corporation

EXHIBIT 14-7 Alpha (left) and beta (right) prototypes of the PackBot.

	Learning	Communication	Integration	Milestones
Focused analytical	●	○	○	○
Focused physical	●	●	○	○
Comprehensive physical	●	●	●	●

EXHIBIT 14-8 Appropriateness of different types of prototypes for different purposes (● = more appropriate, ○ = less appropriate). Note that fully comprehensive analytical prototypes are rarely possible for physical products.

a "first-article test" before a contractor can proceed with production. A major milestone for the PackBot development was a test conducted by the U.S. Army. During this test, the PackBot prototype was thrown out of a moving vehicle and controlled by a soldier with minimal training in an unknown environment. There could be no failures of the PackBot system and its user interface in order to pass this test.

While all types of prototypes are used for all four of these purposes, some types of prototypes are more appropriate than others for some purposes. A summary of the relative appropriateness of different types of prototypes for different purposes is shown in Exhibit 14-8.

Principles of Prototyping

Several principles are useful in guiding decisions about prototypes during product development. These principles inform decisions about what type of prototype to build and about how to incorporate prototypes into the development project plan.

Analytical Prototypes Are Generally More Flexible Than Physical Prototypes

Because an analytical prototype is a mathematical approximation of the product, it will generally contain parameters that can be varied in order to represent a range of design alternatives. In most cases, changing a parameter in an analytical prototype is easier than changing an attribute of a physical prototype. For example, consider an analytical prototype of the PackBot drivetrain that includes a set of equations representing the electric motor. One of the parameters in the mathematical model of the motor is the stall torque. Varying this parameter and then solving the equations is much easier than changing an actual motor in a physical prototype. In most cases, the analytical prototype not only is easier to change than a physical prototype but also allows larger changes than could be made in a physical prototype. For this reason, an analytical prototype frequently precedes a physical prototype. The analytical prototype is used to narrow the range of feasible parameters, and then the physical prototype is used to fine-tune or confirm the design. See Chapter 15, Robust Design, for a detailed example of the use of an analytical prototype to explore several design parameters.

Physical Prototypes Are Required to Detect Unanticipated Phenomena

A physical prototype often exhibits unanticipated phenomena completely unrelated to the original objective of the prototype. One reason for these surprises is that all of the laws of physics are operating when the team experiments with physical prototypes. Physical prototypes intended to investigate purely geometric issues will also have thermal and optical properties. Some of the incidental properties of physical prototypes are irrelevant to the final product and act as annoyances during testing; however, some of these incidental properties of physical prototypes will also manifest themselves in the final product. In these cases, a physical prototype can serve as a tool for detecting unanticipated detrimental phenomena that may arise in the final product. For example, in a pull test of various PackBot gripper finger coatings, the team discovered that some of the coatings with good grip characteristics had poor durability. Analytical prototypes, in contrast, can never reveal phenomena that are not part of the underlying analytical model on which the prototype is based. For this reason, at least one physical prototype is almost always built in a product development effort.

A Prototype May Reduce the Risk of Costly Iterations

Exhibit 14-9 illustrates the role of risk and iteration in product development. In many situations, the outcome of a test may dictate whether a development task will have to be

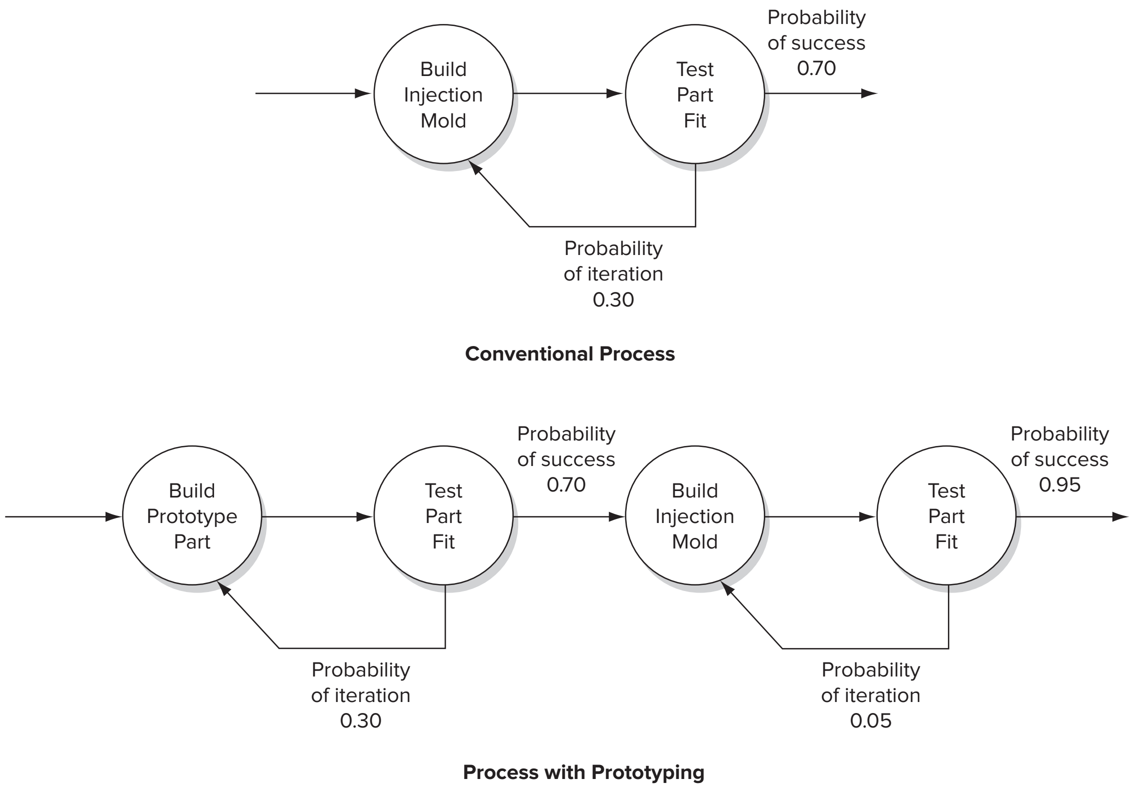


EXHIBIT 14-9 A prototype may reduce the risk of costly iteration. Taking time to build and test a prototype may allow the development team to detect a problem that would otherwise not have been detected until after a costly development activity, such as building an injection mold.

repeated. For example, if a molded part fits poorly with its mating parts, the mold tooling may have to be rebuilt. In Exhibit 14-9, a 30-percent risk of returning to the mold-building activity after testing part fit is represented with an arrow labeled with a probability of 0.30. If building and testing a prototype substantially increases the likelihood that the subsequent activities will proceed without iteration (e.g., from 70 to 95 percent, as indicated in Exhibit 14-9), the prototype phase may be justified.

The anticipated benefits of a prototype in reducing risk must be weighed against the time and money required to build and evaluate the prototype. This is particularly important for comprehensive prototypes. Products that are high in risk or uncertainty, because of the high costs of failure, new technology, or the revolutionary nature of the product, will benefit from such prototypes. On the other hand, products for which failure costs are low and the technology is well known do not derive as much risk-reduction benefit from prototyping. Most products fall between these extremes. Exhibit 14-10 represents the range of situations that can be encountered in different types of development projects.

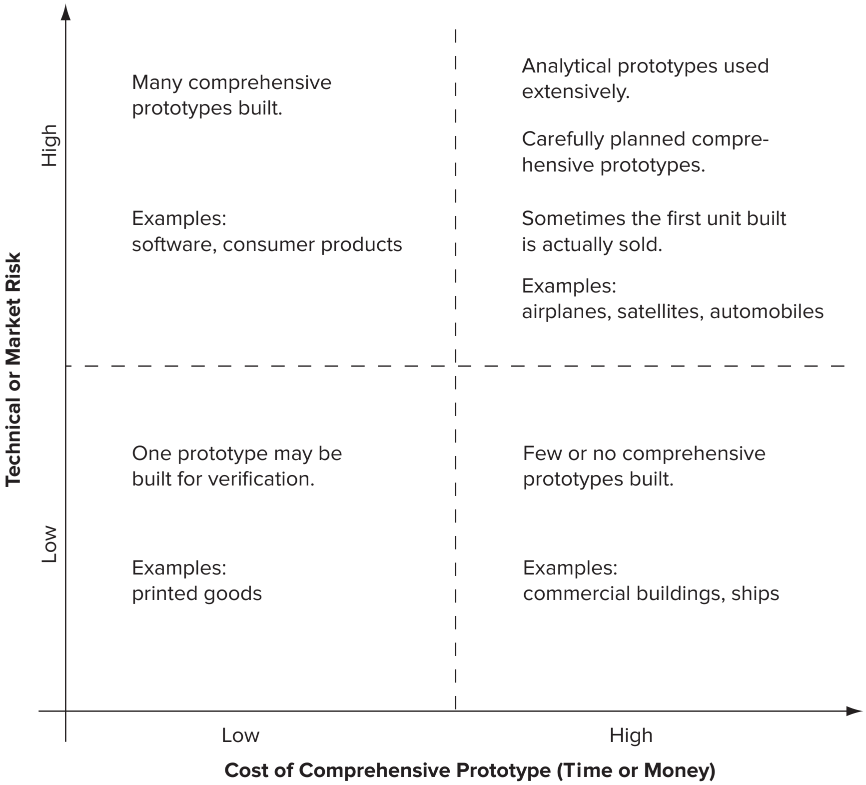


EXHIBIT 14-10 The use of comprehensive prototypes depends on the relative level of technical or market risk and the cost of building a comprehensive prototype.

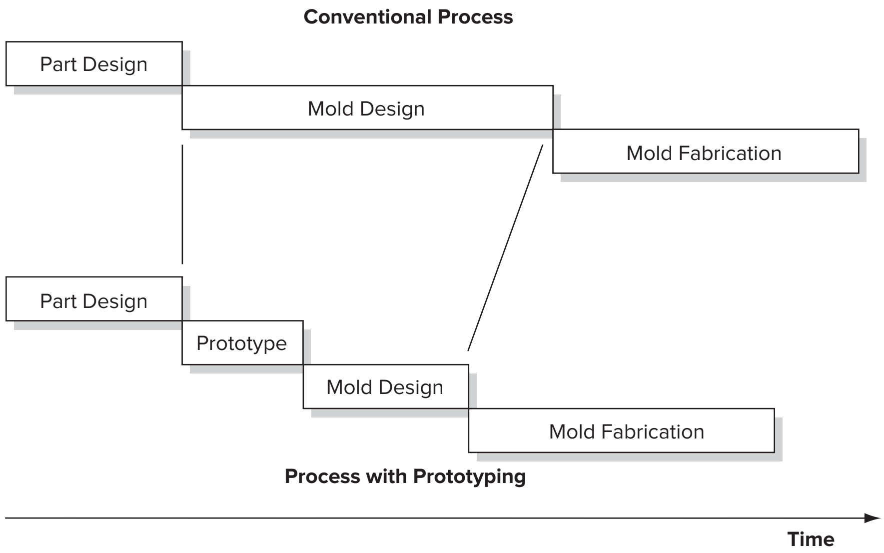


EXHIBIT 14-11 Role of a prototype in expediting another step. Taking time to build a prototype may enable more rapid completion of a subsequent step.

A Prototype May Expedite Other Development Steps

Sometimes the addition of a short prototyping phase may allow a subsequent activity to be completed more quickly than if the prototype were not built. If the required additional time for the prototype phase is less than the savings in duration of the subsequent activity, then this strategy is appropriate. One of the most common occurrences of this situation is in mold design, as illustrated in Exhibit 14-11. The existence of a physical model of a geometrically complex part allows the mold designer to more quickly visualize and design the mold tooling.

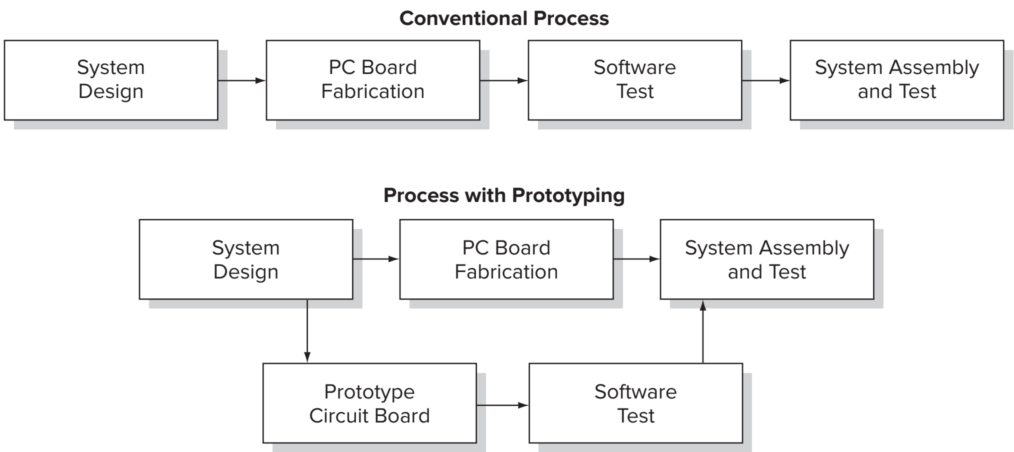


EXHIBIT 14-12 Use of a prototype to remove a task from the critical path.

A Prototype May Restructure Task Dependencies

The top part of Exhibit 14-12 illustrates a set of tasks that are completed sequentially. It may be possible to complete some of the tasks concurrently by building a prototype. For example, a software test may depend on the existence of a physical circuit. Rather than waiting for the production version of the printed circuit board to use in the test, the team may be able to rapidly fabricate a prototype (e.g., a hand-built board) and use it for the test while the production of the printed circuit board proceeds.

Prototyping Technologies

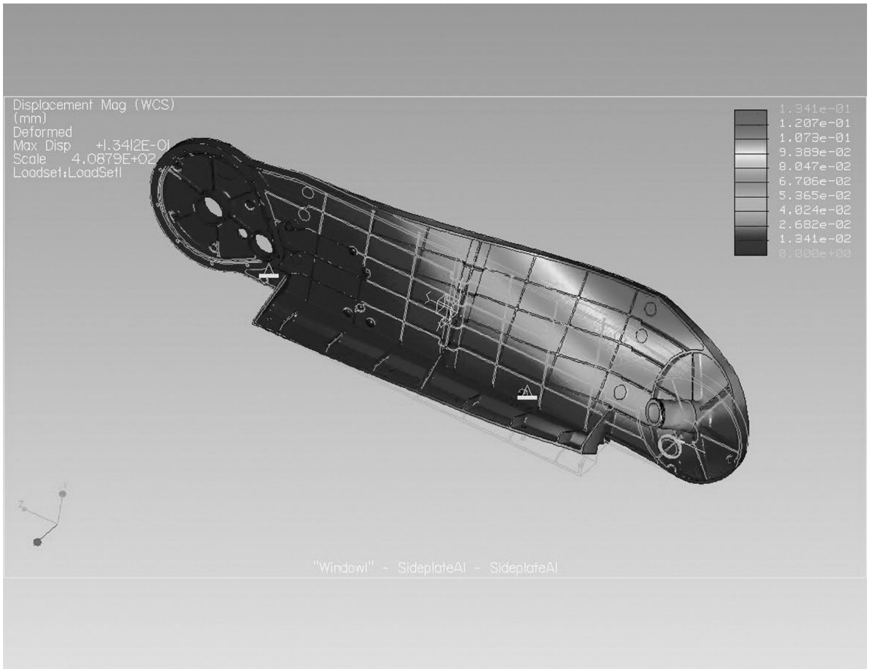
Hundreds of different production technologies are used to create prototypes, particularly physical prototypes. Two technologies have emerged as particularly important in the past 50 years: CAD (computer-aided design) and 3D printing.

CAD Modeling and Analysis

Since the 1990s, the dominant mode of representing designs has shifted dramatically from drawings, often created using a computer, to *computer-aided design.* CAD models represent designs as collections of 3D solid entities, each usually constructed from geometric primitives, such as cylinders, blocks, and holes.

The advantages of CAD modeling include the ability to easily visualize the three-dimensional form of the design; the ability to create photo realistic images for assessment of product appearance; the ability to automatically compute physical properties such as mass and volume; and the efficiency arising from the creation of one and only one canonical description of the design, from which other, more focused descriptions, such as cross-sectional views and fabrication drawings, can be created. CAD models can also serve as analytical prototypes. In some settings, this can eliminate one or more physical prototypes. When CAD models are used to carefully plan the final, integrated assembly of the product and to detect geometric interference among parts, this may indeed eliminate the need for a full-scale prototype. For example, in the development of the Boeing 777 and 787 jets, the development teams were able to avoid building full-scale wooden prototype models of the planes, which had historically been used to detect geometric interferences among structural elements and the components of various other systems, such as hydraulic lines. Using a CAD model of an entire product in this manner is known, depending on the industry setting, as a *digital mock-up*, *digital prototype*, or *virtual prototype.*

CAD models are also the underlying representation for many types of computer-based analyses. Forms of analysis include finite-element analysis of thermal flow or stress distribution, virtual crash testing of automobiles, kinematic and dynamic motion of complex mechanisms, all of which have become more sophisticated every year. In the PackBot development, engineers conducted finite-element analysis of structural integrity to understand impact stresses at various drop and crash angles. Exhibit 14-13 shows one such analytical result, based on a CAD model of the PackBot. Engineers also computed heat flows and thermal dissipation performance using finite-element analysis based on CAD models.



Courtesy of iRobot Corporation

EXHIBIT 14-13 Finite-element analysis of the PackBot side plate based on a CAD model. The image shows the stress distribution upon side impact at the rear wheel.

3D Printing

In 1984, the first commercial free-form fabrication system was introduced by 3D Systems. This technology, called *stereolithography*, and dozens of competing technologies that followed it, create physical objects directly from CAD models, and can be thought of as "3D printing." This collection of technologies is often called *rapid prototyping*. Most of the technologies work by constructing an object, one cross-sectional layer at a time, by depositing a material or using a laser to selectively solidify a liquid or powder. The resulting parts are most often made from plastics, but other materials are available, including wax, paper, ceramics, and metals. In some cases, the parts are used directly for visualization or in working prototypes; however, the parts are often used as patterns to make molds or patterns from which parts with particular material properties can then be molded or cast.

Three-dimensional printing technologies enable realistic 3D prototypes to be created earlier and less expensively than was possible before. When used appropriately, these prototypes can reduce product development time and/or improve the resulting product quality. In addition to enabling the rapid construction of working prototypes, these technologies can be used to embody product concepts quickly and inexpensively, increasing the ease with which concepts can be communicated to other team members, senior managers, development partners, or potential customers. For example, the PackBot prototype shown in Exhibit 14-3(a) was made of components fabricated using stereolithography in only four days.

Planning for Prototypes

A potential pitfall in product development is what Clausing called the "hardware swamp" (Clausing, 1994). The swamp is caused by misguided prototyping efforts; that is, the building and debugging of prototypes (physical or analytical) that do not substantially contribute to the goals of the overall product development project. One way to avoid the swamp is to carefully define each prototype before embarking on an effort to build and test it. This section presents a four-step method for planning each prototype during a product development project. The method applies to all types of prototypes: focused, comprehensive, physical, and analytical. A template for recording the information generated from the method is given in Exhibit 14-14. We use the PackBot wheel prototype and impact test shown in Exhibit 14-6 as an example to illustrate the method.

Step 1: Define the Purpose of the Prototype

Recall the four purposes of prototypes: learning, communication, integration, and milestones. In defining the purpose of a prototype, the team lists its specific learning and communication needs. Team members also list any integration needs and whether or not the prototype is intended to be one of the major milestones of the overall product development project.

For the wheel prototypes, the purpose was to determine the shock absorption characteristics and robustness of the wheels using various geometry and materials. While these learning prototypes were primarily focused on performance, the team was also considering the manufacturing cost of the materials, some of which were not moldable and must be machined.

Name of Prototype	PackBot Wheel Geometry/Impact Test
Purpose(s)	• Select final wheel spoke geometry and materials based on strength and shock absorption characteristics. • Confirm that wheels absorb shock to withstand impact and protect the PackBot and its payload.
Level of Approximation	• Correct wheel spoke geometry, materials, and platform load.
Experimental Plan	• Build 12 test wheels using six different materials, each with two spoke shapes. • Mount the wheels to the test fixture. • Conduct impact tests at a range of drop heights.
Schedule	1 August select wheel designs and materials 7 August complete design of test fixture 14 August wheels and test fixture constructed 15 August assembly completed 23 August testing completed 25 August analysis of test results completed

Source: iRobot Corporation

EXHIBIT 14-14 Planning template for the PackBot wheel geometry/impact test prototypes.

Step 2: Establish the Level of Approximation of the Prototype

Planning a prototype requires definition of the degree to which the final product is to be approximated. The team should consider whether a physical prototype is necessary or whether an analytical prototype would best meet its needs. In most cases, the best prototype is the simplest prototype that will serve the purposes established in step 1. In some cases, an earlier model serves as a testbed and may be modified for the purposes of the prototype. In other cases, an existing prototype or a prototype being built for another purpose can be utilized.

For the wheel prototype, the team decided that materials and geometry of the wheel were critical attributes related to impact performance, so the prototype needed to be constructed carefully with these attributes in mind; however, other aspects of the wheel could be ignored, including the production method (molding versus machining), the attachment to the drive system and the track belt, and the color and overall appearance of the wheel. A member of the team had previously explored an analytical model of the wheel spoke bending performance and felt that the physical prototype was necessary to verify her analysis. She had discovered that there was a basic trade-off between shock absorption, which required more flexible spokes, and strength of the wheel, which required larger spokes. The team used the analytical prototype to determine the wheel spoke dimensions that would be investigated with the physical prototype.

Step 3: Outline an Experimental Plan

In most cases, the use of a prototype in product development can be thought of as an experiment. Good experimental practice helps ensure the extraction of maximum value from the prototyping effort. The experimental plan includes the identification of the variables of the experiment (if any), the test protocol, an indication of what measurements will be performed, and a plan for analyzing the resulting data. When many variables must be explored, efficient experiment design greatly facilitates this process. Chapter 15, Robust Design, discusses design of experiments in detail.

For the wheel prototype tests, the team decided to vary only the materials and web geometry of the spokes. Based on the analytical models, two spoke shapes were selected for testing. Six different materials were also chosen, for a total of 12 test designs. The team designed a weighted platform to which each wheel could be mounted and a test apparatus for dropping the platform at various heights. They decided to instrument the platform to measure the acceleration forces transmitted through the wheels to the PackBot upon impact. After each test, they inspected the wheel for damage in the form of cracks or plastic deformation before increasing the test height. These test results would not only be used to choose the best spoke geometry and material, but also to improve the analytical model for future use, which may eliminate further physical prototyping of modified wheel designs.

Step 4: Create a Schedule for Procurement, Construction, and Testing

Because the building and testing of a prototype can be considered a subproject within the overall development project, the team benefits from a schedule for the prototyping activity. Three dates are particularly important in defining a prototyping effort. First, the team defines when the parts will be ready to assemble. (This is sometimes called the "bucket of parts" date.) Second, the team defines the date when the prototype will first be tested. (This is sometimes called the "smoke test" date, because it is the date the team will first apply power and "look for smoke" in products with electrical systems.) Third, the team defines the date when it expects to have completed testing and produced the final results.

For the wheel prototypes, no assembly was involved, so when parts were available, the prototypes could be assembled and tested rather quickly. The team planned for eight days of testing and two days of analysis.

Planning Milestone Prototypes

The previously metioned method for planning a prototype applies to all prototypes, including those as simple as the wheel geometry and those as complex as the beta prototype of the entire PackBot. Nevertheless, the comprehensive prototypes a team uses as development milestones benefit from additional planning. This planning activity typically occurs in conjunction with the overall product development planning activity at the end of the concept development phase. In fact, planning the milestone dates is an integral part of establishing an overall product development project plan. (See Chapter 19, Project Management.)

All other things being equal, the team would prefer to build as few milestone prototypes as possible because designing, building, and testing comprehensive prototypes consumes a great deal of time and money. However, in reality, few highly engineered products are developed with fewer than two milestone prototypes, and many efforts require four or more.

As a base case, the team should consider using alpha, beta, and preproduction prototypes as milestones. The team should then consider whether any of these milestones can be eliminated or whether in fact additional prototypes are necessary.

Alpha prototypes are typically used to assess whether the product works as intended. The parts in alpha prototypes are usually similar in material and geometry to the parts that will be used in the production version of the product, but they are usually made with prototype production processes. For example, plastic parts in an alpha prototype may be machined or rubber molded instead of injection molded as they would be in production.

Beta prototypes are typically used to assess reliability and to identify remaining bugs in the product. These prototypes are often given to customers for testing in the intended use environment. The parts in beta prototypes are usually made with actual production processes or supplied by the intended component suppliers, but the product is usually not assembled with the intended final assembly facility or tooling. For example, the plastic parts in a beta prototype might be molded with the production injection molds but would probably be assembled by a technician in a prototype shop rather than by production workers or automated equipment.

Preproduction prototypes are the first products produced by the entire production process. At this point, the production process is not yet operating at full capacity but is making limited quantities of the product. These prototypes are used to verify production process capability, are subjected to further testing, and are often supplied to preferred customers. Preproduction prototypes are sometimes called *pilot-production prototypes.*

The most common deviations from the standard prototyping plan are to eliminate one of the standard prototypes or to add additional early prototypes. Eliminating a prototype (usually the alpha) may be possible if the product is very similar to other products the firm has already developed and produced, or if the product is extremely simple. Additional early prototypes are common in situations where the product embodies a new concept or technology. These early prototypes are sometimes called *experimental* or *engineering prototypes.* They usually do not look like the final product, and many of the parts of the prototype are not designed with the intention of eventually being produced in quantity.

Once preliminary decisions have been made about the number of prototypes, their characteristics, and the time required to assemble and test them, the team can place these milestones on the overall time line of the project. When the team attempts to schedule these milestones, the feasibility of the overall product development schedule can be assessed. Frequently a team will discover, when working backward from the target date for the product launch, that the assembly and test of one milestone prototype overlaps or is perilously close to the design and fabrication of the next milestone prototype. If this overlapping happens in practice, it is the worst manifestation of the "hardware swamp." When prototyping phases overlap, there is little transfer of learning from one prototype to the next, and the team should consider omitting one or more of the prototypes to allow the remaining prototypes to be spread out more in time. During project planning, overlapping prototyping phases can be avoided by beginning the project sooner, delaying product launch, eliminating a milestone prototype, or devising a way to accelerate the development activities preceding each prototype. (See Chapter 19, Project Management, for some techniques for achieving this acceleration.)

Summary

Product development almost always requires the building and testing of prototypes. A prototype is an approximation of the product on one or more dimensions of interest.

- Prototypes can be usefully classified along two dimensions: (1) the degree to which they are physical as opposed to analytical and (2) the degree to which they are comprehensive as opposed to focused.
- Prototypes are used for learning, communication, integration, and milestones. While all types of prototypes can be used for all of these purposes, physical prototypes are usually best for communication, and comprehensive prototypes are best for integration and milestones.
- Several principles are useful in guiding decisions about prototypes during product development:
  - Analytical prototypes are generally more flexible than physical prototypes.
  - Physical prototypes are required to detect unanticipated phenomena.
  - A prototype may reduce the risk of costly iterations.
  - A prototype may expedite other development steps.
  - A prototype may restructure task dependencies.
- CAD modeling and 3D printing technologies have reduced the relative cost and time required to create and analyze prototypes.

- A four-step method for planning a prototype is:
  1. Define the purpose of the prototype.
  2. Establish the level of approximation of the prototype.
  3. Outline an experimental plan.
  4. Create a schedule for procurement, construction, and testing.
- Milestone prototypes are defined in the product development project plan. The number of such prototypes and their timing is one of the key elements of the overall development plan.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Clausing describes some of the pitfalls in prototyping, including the "hardware swamp."

Clausing, Don, *Total Quality Development*, ASME Press, New York, 1994.

Leonard-Barton describes how prototypes are used for the integration of different product development functions.

Leonard-Barton, Dorothy, "Inanimate Integrators: A Block of Wood Speaks," *Design Management Journal*, Vol. 2, No. 3, Summer 1991, pp. 61–67.

Cusumano describes Microsoft's use of the "daily build" in its software development process. The daily build is an extreme example of using comprehensive prototypes to force integration.

Cusumano, Michael A., "How Microsoft Makes Large Teams Work Like Small Teams," *Sloan Management Review*, Fall 1997, pp. 9–20.

Lipson and Kurman summarize the methods used for 3D printing and speculate on the impact this technology may have on society.

Lipson, Hod, and Melba Kurman, *Fabricated: The New World of 3D Printing*, John Wiley & Sons, Indianapolis, IN, 2013.

Schrage presents a view of product development centered around the role of prototyping and simulation in the innovation process.

Schrage, Michael, *Serious Play: How the World's Best Companies Simulate to Innovate*, Harvard Business School Press, Boston, 2000.

Thomke explains the relationship between effective prototyping methods and successful innovation. He argues that new technologies are changing the economics of experimentation, leading to greater product development process performance.

Thomke, Stefan H., *Experimentation Matters: Unlocking the Potential of New Technologies for Innovation*, Harvard Business School Press, Boston, 2003.

Kelley and Littman's presentation of IDEO's highly successful product development process includes a description of how IDEO uses prototypes to solve problems (learning), to engage customers (communication), and to move projects forward through an iterative process (milestones).

Kelley, Tom, with Jonathan Littman, *The Art of Innovation: Lessons in Innovation from IDEO*, *America's Leading Design Firm*, Doubleday, New York, 2001.

Two books written for general audiences contain very interesting accounts of prototyping. Sabbagh's book on the development of the Boeing 777 contains riveting accounts of brake system tests and wing strength tests, among others. Walton's book on the development of the 1996 Ford Taurus contains fascinating descriptions of prototyping and testing in the automobile industry. Particularly engaging is the description of testing heaters in northern Minnesota in midwinter, using development engineers as subjects.

Sabbagh, Karl, *Twenty-First-Century Jet: The Making and Marketing of the Boeing 777*, Scribner, New York, 1996.

Walton, Mary, *Car: A Drama of the American Workplace*, Norton, New York, 1997.

A thoughtful review of current prototyping approaches was created by Camburn, et al.:

Camburn, B., V. Viswanathan, J. Linsey, D. Anderson, D. Jensen, R. Crawford, K. Otto, and K. Wood, "Design Prototyping Methods: State of the Art in Strategies, Techniques, and Guidelines." *Design Science*, Vol. 3, No. e13, 2017.

Wall, Ulrich, and Flowers provide a formal definition of the quality of a prototype in terms of its fidelity to the production version of a product. They use this definition to evaluate the prototyping technologies available for plastic parts.

Wall, Matthew B., Karl T. Ulrich, and Woodie C. Flowers, "Evaluating Prototyping Technologies for Product Design," *Research in Engineering Design*, Vol. 3, 1992, pp. 163–177.

Wheelwright and Clark describe the use of prototypes as a managerial tool for major product development programs. Their discussion of periodic prototyping cycles is particularly interesting.

Wheelwright, Stephen C., and Kim B. Clark, *Revolutionizing Product Development: Quantum Leaps in Speed, Efficiency, and Quality*, The Free Press, New York, 1992.

Exercises

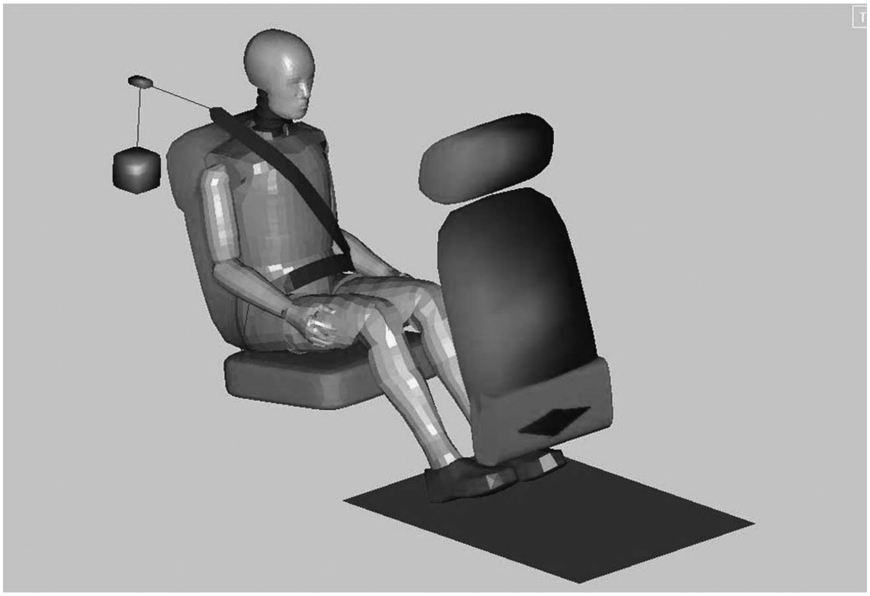
1. A furniture manufacturer is considering a line of seating products to be fabricated by cutting and bending a recycled plastic material available in large sheets. Create a prototype of at least one possible chair design by cutting and bending a sheet of paper or cardboard. (You may wish to design the chair with a sketch first, or just start working with the sheet directly.) What can you learn about the chair design from your prototype? What can't you learn about the chair design from such a prototype?
2. Position the chair prototype described in Exercise 1 on the plot in Exhibit 14-5. For which of the four major purposes would a product development team use such a prototype?
3. Devise a prototyping plan (similar to that in Exhibit 14-14) for investigating the comfort of different types of handles for kitchen knives.
4. Position the prototypes shown in Exhibits 14-3, 14-4, 14-6, 14-7, and 14-13 on the plot in Exhibit 14-5. Briefly explain your reasoning for each placement.

Thought Questions

1. Many product development teams separate the "looks-like" prototype from the "works-like" prototype. They do this because integrating both function and form is difficult in the early phases of development. What are the strengths and weaknesses of this approach? For what types of products might this approach be dangerous?
2. Today there are several 3D printing technologies able to create physical parts directly from CAD files (e.g., stereolithography and selective laser sintering). How might a team use such rapid prototyping technologies during the concept development phase of the product development process? Might these technologies facilitate identifying customer needs, establishing specifications, generating product concepts, selecting product concepts, and/or testing product concepts?
3. Some companies have reportedly abandoned the practice of doing a customer test with the early prototypes of their products, preferring instead to go directly and quickly to market in order to observe the actual customer response. For what types of products and markets might this practice make sense?
4. Is a drawing a physical or an analytical prototype?
5. Microsoft uses frequent comprehensive prototypes in its development of software. In fact, in some projects there is a "daily build," in which a new version of the product is integrated and compiled *every day.* Is this approach only viable for software products, or could it be used for physical products as well? What might be the costs and benefits of such an approach for physical products?

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

Robust Design



Courtesy of Ford Motor Co.

EXHIBIT 15-1

Rear seat belt experiment. This experiment was run on a simulation model to explore many design parameters and noise conditions.

Ford Motor Company safety engineers were working with a supplier to better understand the performance of rear seat belts. In any conventional seat belt system with lap and shoulder belts, if the lap portion of the belt rides upward, the passenger may slide beneath it, potentially resulting in abdominal injury. This phenomenon, called “submarining,” is related to a large number of factors, including the nature of the collision, the design of the vehicle, the properties of the seats and seat belts, and other conditions. Based on experimentation, simulation, and analysis, Ford engineers hoped to determine which of the many factors were most critical to passenger safety and to avoiding submarining. The image shown in Exhibit 15-1 depicts the model used in Ford’s simulation analysis.

This chapter presents a method for designing and conducting experiments to improve the performance of products even in the presence of uncontrollable variations. This method is known as robust design.

What Is Robust Design?

We define a *robust* product (or process) as one that performs as intended even under nonideal conditions such as manufacturing process variations or a range of operating situations. We use the term *noise* to describe uncontrolled variations that may affect performance, and we say that a quality product should be robust to noise factors.

Robust design is the product development activity of improving the desired performance of the product while minimizing the effects of noise. In robust design, we use experiments and data analysis to identify robust setpoints for the design parameters we can control. A *robust setpoint* is a combination of design parameter values for which the product performance is as desired under a range of operating conditions and manufacturing variations.

Conceptually, robust design is simple to understand. For a given performance target (e.g., safely restraining rear-seat passengers), there may be many combinations of parameter values that will yield the desired result; however, some of these combinations are more sensitive to uncontrollable variation than others. Because the product will likely operate in the presence of various noise factors, we would like to choose the combination of parameter values that is least sensitive to uncontrollable variation. The robust design process uses an experimental approach to finding these robust setpoints.

To understand the concept of robust setpoints, consider two hypothetical factors affecting some measure of seat belt performance, as shown in Exhibit 15-2. Assume that factor A has a linear effect, f_A, on performance and factor B has a nonlinear effect, f_B. Further consider that we can choose setpoints for each factor: A1 or A2 for factor A, and B1 or B2 for factor B. Assuming that the effects of f_A and f_B are additive, a combination of A1 and B2 will provide approximately the same level of overall performance as a combination of A2 and B1. Manufacturing variations will be present at any chosen setpoint, so that the actual value may not be exactly as specified. By choosing the value of B1 for factor B, where the sensitivity of the response to factor B is relatively small, unintended variation in factor B has a relatively small influence on overall product performance; therefore, the choice of B1 and A2 is a more robust combination of setpoints than the combination of B2 and A1.

The robust design process can be used at several stages of the product development process. As with most product development issues, the earlier that robustness can be considered in the product development process, the better the robustness results can be. Robust design experiments can be used within the concept development phase as a way to refine

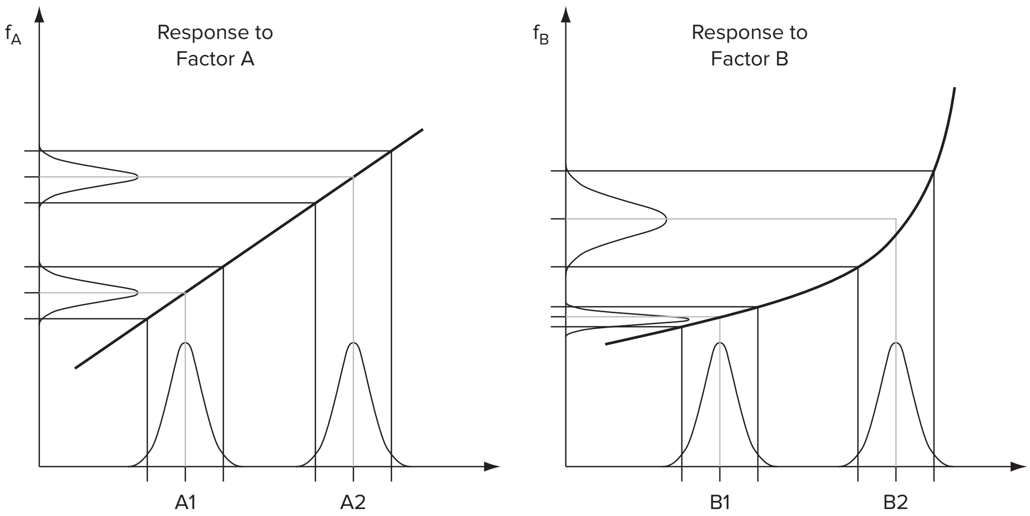


EXHIBIT 15-2 Robust design exploits nonlinear relationships to identify setpoints where the product performance is less sensitive to variations. In this example, the chosen value for the factor A setpoint does not affect robustness, whereas that of factor B does. Choosing B1 minimizes the effect of variation in factor B on overall performance.

the specifications and set realistic performance targets. While it is beneficial to consider product robustness as early as the concept stage, experiments for robust design are used most frequently during the detail-design phase as a way to ensure the desired product performance under a variety of conditions. In detail design, the robust design activity is also known as *parameter design*, as this is a matter of choosing the right setpoints for the design parameters under our control. These include the product's materials, dimensions, tolerances, manufacturing processes, and operating instructions.

For many engineering design problems, equations based on fundamental physical principles can be solved for robust parameter choices; however, engineers generally cannot fully model the kinds of uncertainties, variations, and noise factors that arise under real conditions. Furthermore, the ability to develop accurate mathematical models is limited for many engineering problems. For example, consider the difficulty of accurately modeling the seat belt submarining problem under a wide variety of conditions. In such situations, empirical investigation through designed experiments is necessary. Such experiments can be used to directly support decision making and can also be used to improve the accuracy of mathematical models.

In the case of the seat belt design problem, Ford's engineers wished to test a range of seat belt design parameters and collision conditions; however, crash testing is very expensive, so Ford worked with its seat belt supplier to develop a simulation model, which was calibrated using experimental crash data. Considering the hundreds of possible design parameter combinations, collision conditions, and other factors of interest, the engineers chose to explore the simulation model using a carefully planned experiment. Although simulation requires a great deal of computational effort, the simulation model still allowed Ford engineers to run dozens of experiments under a wide variety of conditions, which would not have been possible using physical crash testing.

For the Ford seat belt design team, the goals of this designed experiment were to learn:

- What combination of seat, seat belt, and attachment parameters minimizes rear-seat passenger submarining during a crash.
- How submarining is affected by uncontrollable conditions. What combination of design parameters is most robust to such noise factors?

Design of Experiments

The approach to robust design presented in this chapter is based on a method called *design of experiments* (DOE). In this method, the team identifies the parameters that can be controlled and the noise factors it wishes to investigate. The team then designs, conducts, and analyzes experiments to help determine the parameter setpoints to achieve robust performance.

In Japan during the 1950s and 1960s, Dr. Genichi Taguchi developed techniques to apply DOE to improve the quality of products and manufacturing processes. Beginning with the quality movement of the 1980s, Taguchi's approach to experimental design started to have an impact on engineering practice in the United States, particularly at Ford Motor Company, Xerox Corporation, AT&T Bell Laboratories, and through the American Supplier Institute (which was created by Ford).

Taguchi receives credit for promoting several key ideas of experimental design for the development of robust products and processes. These contributions include introducing noise factors into experiments to observe these effects and the use of a *signal-to-noise ratio* metric including both the desired performance (signal) and the undesired effects (noise). While statisticians had been showing engineers how to run experiments for decades, it was not until Taguchi's methods were widely explained to the U.S. manufacturing industry during the 1990s that experiments became commonly utilized to achieve robust design.

DOE is not a substitute for technical knowledge of the system under investigation. In fact, the team should use its understanding of the product and how it operates to choose the right parameters to investigate by experiment. The experimental results can be used in conjunction with technical knowledge of the system in order to make the best choices of parameter setpoints. Furthermore, the experimental results can be used to build better mathematical models of the product's function. In this way, experimentation complements technical knowledge. For example, Ford engineers have basic mathematical models of seat belt performance as a function of passenger sizes and collision types. These models allow Ford to size the mechanical elements and to determine the belt attachment geometry. Based on empirical and simulation data, Ford's analytical models and seat belt design guidelines gain precision over time, reducing the need for time-consuming empirical and simulation studies. Eventually, this technical knowledge may improve to the point where only confirming tests of new seat belt configurations are required.

Basic experimental design and analysis for product development can be successfully planned and executed by the development team; however, the field of DOE has many advanced methods to address a number of complicating factors and yield more useful experimental results. Development teams thus can benefit from consulting with a statistician or DOE expert who can assist in designing the experiment and choosing the best analytical approach.

The Robust Design Process

To develop a robust product through DOE, we suggest this seven-step process:

1. Identify control factors, noise factors, and performance metrics.
2. Formulate an objective function.
3. Develop the experimental plan.
4. Run the experiment.
5. Conduct the analysis.
6. Select and confirm factor setpoints.
7. Reflect and repeat.

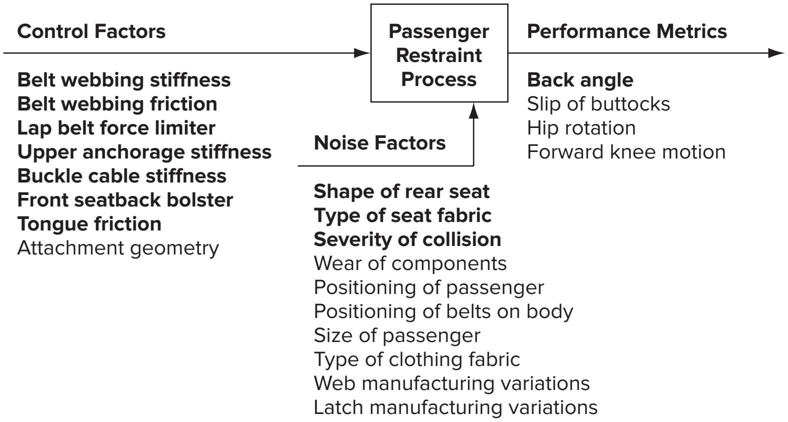
Step 1: Identify Control Factors, Noise Factors, and Performance Metrics

The robust design procedure begins with identification of three lists: control factors, noise factors, and performance metrics for the experiment:

- ***Control factors:*** These are the design variables to be varied in a controlled manner during the experiment, in order to explore the product's performance under the many combinations of parameter setpoints. Experiments are generally run at two or three discrete levels (setpoint values) of each factor. These parameters are called control factors because they are among the variables that can be specified for production and/or operation of the product. For example, the webbing stiffness and coefficient of friction are control factors of interest for the experiment.
- ***Noise factors:*** Noise factors are variables that cannot be explicitly controlled during the manufacturing and operation of the product. Noise factors may include manufacturing variances, changes in materials properties, multiple user scenarios or operating conditions, and even deterioration or misuse of the product. If through special techniques the team can control the noise factors during the experiment (but not in production or operation), then variance can deliberately be induced during the experiment to assess its impact. Otherwise, the team simply lets the noise take place during the experiment, analyzes the results in the presence of typical variation, and seeks to minimize the effects of this variation. For seat belts to be used with a range of seats, the shape of the seat and the seat fabric must be considered noise factors. The goal is to design a seat belt system that works well regardless of the values of these factors.
- ***Performance metrics:*** These are the product specifications of interest in the experiment. Usually, the experiment is analyzed with one or two key product specifications as the performance metrics in order to find control factor setpoints to optimize this performance. These metrics may be derived directly from key specifications where robustness is of critical concern. (See Chapter 6, Product Specifications.) For example, how far the passenger's back or buttocks move forward during the collision would be possible performance metrics for the seat belt experiment.

For the seat belt design problem, the team held a meeting to list the control factors, noise factors, and performance metrics. As Taguchi teaches, they placed these lists into a single graphic, called a *parameter diagram* (or *p-diagram*), as shown in Exhibit 15-3.

EXHIBIT 15-3
Parameter diagram used to design the seat belt experiment. Bold text indicates the performance metric used and the control factors and noise factors chosen for exploration.



After listing the various factors, the team must decide which ones will be explored by experiment. When a large number of parameters are suspected of potentially affecting performance, the selection of critical variables can be substantially narrowed by using analytical models and/or by running a *screening experiment* with two levels for each of many factors. Then a finer experiment is run with two or more levels of the few parameters believed to affect performance.

Ford engineers considered the lists shown in Exhibit 15-3. They chose to focus the experiment on exploration of seven seat belt parameters, holding constant the geometric locations of the three attachment points. They decided to use "back angle at peak" as the output metric, the angle that the passenger's back makes with respect to vertical at the moment of maximum restraint. Back angle is a smaller-is-better performance metric, measured in radians.

A primary concern in this experiment was the effect of three particular noise factors: seat shape, fabric type, and severity of collision. Through preliminary analysis, the team found the best and worst combinations of these noise conditions with respect to the submarining effect. These three noise factors were thereby combined into two extreme noise conditions for the purposes of the experiment. This approach, known as *compounded noise*, can be helpful when many noise factors must be considered. (See Testing Noise Factors in step 3.)

Step 2: Formulate an Objective Function

The experiment's performance metric(s) must be transformed into an *objective function* that relates to the desired robust performance. Several objective functions are useful in robust design for different types of performance concerns. They can be formulated as functions to be either maximized or minimized, and they include:

- ***Maximizing:*** This type of function is used for performance dimensions where larger values are better, such as maximum deceleration before belt slippage. Common forms of this objective function η are $\eta = \mu$ or $\eta = \mu^2$, where μ is the mean of the experimental observations under a given test condition.

- ***Minimizing:*** This type of function is used for performance dimensions where smaller values are better, such as back angle at peak deceleration. Common forms of this objective function are $\eta = \mu$ or $\eta = \sigma^2$, where σ^2 is the variance of the experimental observations under a given test condition. Alternatively, such minimization objectives can be formulated as functions to be maximized, such as $\eta = 1/\mu$ or $\eta = 1/\sigma^2$.
- ***Target value:*** This type of function is used for performance dimensions where values closest to a desired setpoint or target are best, such as amount of belt slackening before restraint. A common maximizing form of this objective function is $\eta = 1/(\mu - t)^2$, where t is the target value.
- ***Signal-to-noise ratio:*** This type of function is used particularly to measure robustness. Taguchi formulates this metric as a ratio with the desired response in the numerator and the variance in the response as the denominator. Generally, the mean value of the desired response, such as the mean back angle at peak, is not difficult to adjust by changing control factors. In the denominator, we place the variance of this response (the noise response), which is to be minimized, such as the variance in back angle resulting from noise conditions. In practice, reducing variance is more difficult than changing the mean. By computing this ratio, we can highlight robust factor settings for which the noise response is relatively low as compared to the signal response. A common maximizing form of this objective function is $\eta = 10 \log (\mu^2/\sigma^2)$.

The Ford statistician consulting with the team suggested two objective functions: the average back angle at peak and the range of the back angle at peak (the difference between the maximum and minimum back angle at peak at the two noise conditions to be tested). Both of these are objectives to be minimized. Together these two metrics would provide deeper insight into the behavior of the system than either one alone.

Step 3: Develop the Experimental Plan

Statisticians have developed many types of efficient experimental plans. These plans lay out how to vary the *factor levels* (values of the control factors and possibly also some of the noise factors) in a series of experiments in order to explore the system's behavior. Some DOE plans are more efficient for characterizing certain types of systems, while others provide more complete analysis.

Experimental Designs

A critical concern in designing experiments is the cost of setting up and running the experimental trials. In situations where this cost is low, running a large number of trials and using an experimental design with resolution high enough to explore more factors, factor combinations, and interactions may be feasible. On the other hand, when the cost of experimentation is high, efficient DOE plans can be used that simultaneously change several factors at once. Some of the most popular experimental designs are listed later and depicted in Exhibit 15-4. Each one has important uses.

- ***Full factorial:*** This design involves the systematic exploration of every combination of levels of each factor. This allows the team to identify all of the multifactor interaction

Full-Factorial Matrix

			A1								A2							
			B1				B2				B1				B2			
			C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2	
			D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2
E1	F1	G1	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
		G2	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	F2	G1	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
		G2	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
E2	F1	G1	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
		G2	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
	F2	G1	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
		G2	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×

1/2 Fractional Factorial Matrix

			A1								A2							
			B1				B2				B1				B2			
			C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2	
			D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2
E1	F1	G1	×			×		×	×			×	×		×			×
		G2		×	×		×			×	×			×		×	×	
	F2	G1		×	×		×			×	×			×		×	×	
		G2	×			×		×	×			×	×		×			×
E2	F1	G1		×	×		×			×	×			×		×	×	
		G2	×			×		×	×			×	×		×			×
	F2	G1	×			×		×	×			×	×		×			×
		G2		×	×		×			×	×			×		×	×	

1/4 Fractional Factorial Matrix

			A1								A2							
			B1				B2				B1				B2			
			C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2	
			D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2
E1	F1	G1	×			×		×	×			×	×		×			×
		G2																
	F2	G1																
		G2	×			×		×	×			×	×		×			×
E2	F1	G1																
		G2		×	×		×			×	×			×		×	×	
	F2	G1		×	×		×			×	×			×		×	×	
		G2																

1/8 Fractional Factorial Matrix

			A1								A2							
			B1				B2				B1				B2			
			C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2	
			D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2
E1	F1	G1	×												×			
		G2				×												×
	F2	G1							×				×					
		G2						×				×						
E2	F1	G1						×				×						
		G2							×				×					
	F2	G1				×												×
		G2	×												×			

L8 Orthogonal Array (1/16 Fractional Factorial Matrix)

			A1								A2							
			B1				B2				B1				B2			
			C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2	
			D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2
E1	F1	G1	×															
		G2														×		
	F2	G1												×				
		G2							×									
E2	F1	G1								×								
		G2											×					
	F2	G1													×			
		G2		×														

One Factor at a Time

			A1								A2							
			B1				B2				B1				B2			
			C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2		C1		C2	
			D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2	D1	D2
E1	F1	G1	×	×	×		×				×							
		G2	×															
	F2	G1	×															
		G2																
E2	F1	G1	×															
		G2																
	F2	G1																
		G2																

Source: Based on Fractional factorial layouts adapted from Ross, Phillip J., *Taguchi Techniques for Quality Engineering*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1996.

EXHIBIT 15-4 Several alternative experimental plans for seven factors (A, B, C, D, E, F, and G) at two levels each. The full-factorial experiment contains $2^7 = 128$ trials, while the L8 orthogonal array design contains only 8 trials, denoted by the × marks in the matrices. The L8 orthogonal array plan is the one used for the seat belt experiment and is shown in conventional row/column format in Exhibit 15-5.

effects, in addition to the primary (main) effect of each factor on performance. This type of experiment is generally practical only for a small number of factors and levels and when experiments are inexpensive (as with fast software-based simulations or very flexible hardware). For an investigation of k factors at n levels each, the number of trials in the full-factorial experiment is n^k. Full factorial experimentation is typically infeasible for an experiment with greater than four to five factors.

- ***Fractional factorial:*** This design uses only a small fraction of the combinations used earlier. In exchange for this efficiency, the ability to compute the magnitudes of all the interaction effects is sacrificed. Instead, the interactions are confounded with other interactions or with some of the main factor effects. Note that the fractional factorial layout still maintains *balance* within the experimental plan. This means that for the several trials at any given factor level, each of the other factors is tested at every level the same number of times.
- ***Orthogonal array:*** This design is the smallest fractional factorial plan that still allows the team to identify the main effects of each factor; however, these main effects are confounded with many interaction effects. Nevertheless, orthogonal array layouts are widely utilized in technical investigations because they are extremely efficient. Taguchi popularized the orthogonal array DOE approach, even though statisticians had developed such plans several decades earlier and the roots of these designs can be traced back many centuries. Orthogonal array plans are named according to the number of rows (experiments) in the array: L4, L8, L9, L27, and so on. The appendix to this chapter shows several orthogonal array experimental plans.
- ***One factor at a time:*** This is an unbalanced experimental plan because each trial is conducted with all but one of the factors at nominal levels (and the first trial having all the factors at the nominal level). This is generally considered to be an ineffective way to explore the factor space, even though the number of trials is small, $1 + k\,(n - 1)$; however, for parameter optimization in systems with significant interactions, an adaptive version of the one-at-a-time experimental plan has been shown to be generally more efficient than orthogonal array plans (Frey et al., 2003).

The Ford team chose to use the L8 orthogonal array experiment design because this plan would be an efficient way to explore seven factors at two levels each. Subsequent rounds of experimentation could later be used to explore additional levels of key parameters as well as interaction effects if necessary. The orthogonal array experimental plan is shown in Exhibit 15-5.

Testing Noise Factors

Several methods are used to explore the effects of noise factors in experiments. If some noise factors can be controlled for the purpose of the experiment, then it may be possible to directly assess the effect of these noise factors. If the noise factors cannot be controlled during the experiment, we allow the noise to vary naturally and simply assess the product's performance in the presence of noise. Some common ways to test noise factors are:

- Assign additional columns in the orthogonal array or fractional factorial layout to the noise factors, essentially treating the noise as another variable. This allows the effects of the noise factors to be determined along with the control factors.

EXHIBIT 15-5 Factor assignments and the L8 orthogonal array experiment design used for the seat belt experiment. This DOE plan tests seven factors at two levels each. Each row was replicated twice, under the two compounded noise conditions, yielding 16 test data points for analysis.

Factor	Description
A	**Belt webbing stiffness:** Compliance characteristic of the webbing measured in a tensile load machine
B	**Belt webbing friction:** Coefficient of friction, which is a function of the belt weave and surface coating
C	**Lap belt force limiter:** Allows controlled release of the seat belt at a certain force level
D	**Upper anchorage stiffness:** Compliance characteristic of the structure to which the upper anchorage (D-loop) is mounted
E	**Buckle cable stiffness:** Compliance characteristic of the cables by which the buckle is attached to the vehicle body
F	**Front seatback bolster:** Profile and stiffness of seatback where the knees may contact
G	**Tongue friction:** Coefficient of friction for the bearing area of the tongue, which slides along the webbing

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	N−	N+
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		
2	1	1	1	2	2	2	2		
3	1	2	2	1	1	2	2		
4	1	2	2	2	2	1	1		
5	2	1	2	1	2	1	2		
6	2	1	2	2	1	2	1		
7	2	2	1	1	2	2	1		
8	2	2	1	2	1	1	2		

- Use an *outer array* for the noise factors. This method tests several combinations of the noise factors for each row in the main (inner) array. An example of this approach is shown in the appendix, where the outer array consists of an L4 design, testing combinations of three noise factors by replicating each row four times.
- Run replicates of each row, allowing the noise to vary in a natural, uncontrolled manner throughout the experiment, resulting in measurable variance in performance for each row. With this approach, it is particularly important to randomize the order of the trials so that any trends in the noise are unlikely to be correlated with the systematic changes in the control factors. (See step 4.)
- Run replicates of each row with *compounded noise*. In this method, selected noise factors are combined to create several representative noise conditions or extreme noise conditions. This approach also yields measurable variance for each row, which can be attributed to the effect of noise.

The Ford team chose to utilize the compounded noise approach in the seat belt experiment. The team tested each row using the two combinations of the three noise factors representing the best- and worst-case conditions. This resulted in 16 experimental runs for the L8 DOE plan, as shown in Exhibit 15-5.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	N−	N+	Avg	Range
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0.3403	0.2915	0.3159	0.0488
2	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	0.4608	0.3984	0.4296	0.0624
3	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	0.3682	0.3627	0.3655	0.0055
4	1	2	2	2	2	1	1	0.2961	0.2647	0.2804	0.0314
5	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	0.4450	0.4398	0.4424	0.0052
6	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	0.3517	0.3538	0.3528	0.0021
7	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	0.3758	0.3580	0.3669	0.0178
8	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	0.4504	0.4076	0.4290	0.0428

EXHIBIT 15-6 Data obtained from the seat belt experiment.

Step 4: Run the Experiment

To execute the experiment, the product is tested under the various treatment conditions described by each row in the experimental plan. Randomizing the sequence of the experimental runs ensures that any systematic trend over the duration of the experiment is not correlated with the systematic changes to the levels of the factors. For example, if the experiments of the L8 plan are not randomized, and the test conditions drift over time, this effect may be incorrectly attributed to factor A because this column changes halfway through the experiment. For some experiments, changing certain factors may be so difficult that all trials at each level of that factor are run together and only partial randomization may be achieved. In practice, randomize the trials whenever practical, and when not possible, validate the results with a confirmation run. (See step 6.)

In the seat belt experiment, each of the eight factor combinations in the L8 design was tested under the two compounded noise conditions. The 16 data points containing the back angle data are shown in Exhibit 15-6 in the columns titled N− and N+.

Step 5: Conduct the Analysis

There are many ways to analyze the experimental data. For all but the most basic analysis, the team benefits from consulting with a DOE expert or from referring to a good book on statistical analysis and experimental design. The basic analytical method is summarized here.

Computing the Objective Function

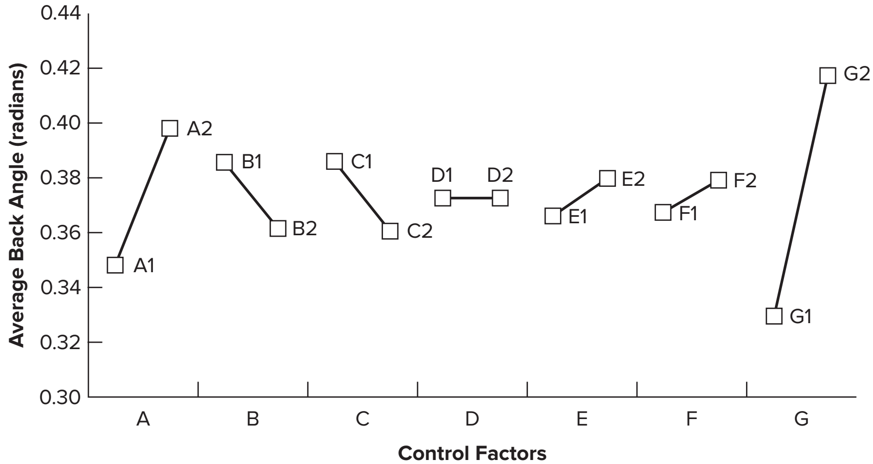
The team will have already devised the objective functions for the experiment and will generally have an objective related to the mean performance and the variance in performance. Sometimes the mean and variance will be combined and expressed as a single objective in the form of a signal-to-noise ratio. The values of the objective function can be computed for each row of the experiment. For the seat belt experiment, the columns on the right side of the table in Exhibit 15-6 show the computed objective function values (average back angle and range of back angle) for each row. Recall that these are both objectives to be minimized.

Computing Factor Effects by Analysis of Means

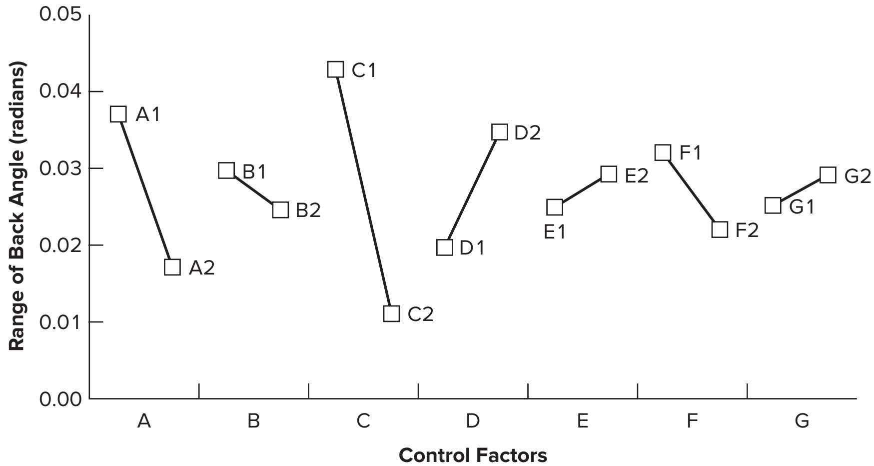
The most straightforward analysis to conduct will simply yield the main effect of each factor assigned to a column in the experiment. These main effects are called the *factor effects*. The *analysis of means* involves simply averaging all the computed objective functions for each factor level. In the L8 DOE example, the effect of factor level A1 (factor A at level 1) is the average of trials 1, 2, 3, and 4. Similarly, the effect of factor level E2 is the average of trials 2, 4, 5, and 7. The results of an analysis of means are conventionally shown on factor effects charts.

Exhibit 15-7 presents the factor effects charts for the seat belt example. These effects are plotted for each of the objective functions. Exhibit 15-7(a) plots the *average performance* at each factor level (the first objective function). This chart shows which factor levels can be used to raise or lower the mean performance. Recall that back angle at peak is to be minimized, and note that the chart suggests that factor levels [A1 B2 C2 E1 F1 G1] will

EXHIBIT 15-7
Factor effects charts for the seat belt experiment.



(a)



(b)

minimize the average back angle metric. (Factor D appears to have no effect upon mean performance.) However, these levels will not necessarily achieve robust performance. Exhibit 15-7(b) is based on the *range of performance* at each factor level (the second objective function). This chart suggests that levels [A2 B2 C2 D1 E1 F2 G1] will minimize the range of back angle at peak.

Taguchi recommends that the signal-to-noise ratio for each factor level be plotted in order to identify robust setpoints. Because the signal-to-noise ratio includes the mean performance in the numerator and the variance in the denominator, it represents a combination of these two objectives or a trade-off between them. Rather than specifically plotting the signal-to-noise ratio, many engineers and statisticians prefer to simply interpret the two objectives together, giving more control over the trade-off. To do so, the factor effects charts shown in Exhibit 15-7 can be compared in order to choose a robust setpoint in the next step.

Step 6: Select and Confirm Factor Setpoints

Analysis of means and the factor effects charts help the team determine which factors have a strong effect on mean performance and variance, and therefore how to achieve robust performance. These charts help to identify which factors are best able to reduce the product's variance (robustness factors) and which factors can be used to improve the performance (scaling factors). By choosing setpoints based on these insights, the team should be able to improve the overall robustness of the product.

For example, consider the effects of factor A on both average and range of back angle in the experiment. The charts in Exhibit 15-7 show that level A1 would minimize back angle, but level A2 would minimize the range of back angle, representing a trade-off between performance and robustness. A similar trade-off is evident in factor F; however, for factors B, C, D, E, and G, there is no such trade-off, and levels B2, C2, D1, E1, and G1 minimize both objectives.

Using factors B, C, D, E, and G to achieve the desired robustness and factors A and F to increase performance, Ford engineers selected the setpoint [A1 B2 C2 D1 E1 F1 G1]. As is usually the case, the chosen setpoint is not one of the eight orthogonal array rows tested in the experiment. Given that this setpoint has never been tested, a confirmation run should be used to ensure that the expected robust performance has been achieved.

Step 7: Reflect and Repeat

One round of experiments may be sufficient to identify appropriately robust setpoints. Sometimes, however, further optimization of the product's performance is worthwhile, and this may require several additional rounds of experimentation.

In subsequent experimentation and testing, the team may choose to:

- Reconsider the setpoints chosen for factors displaying a trade-off of performance versus robustness.
- Explore interactions among some of the factors in order to further improve the performance.
- Fine-tune the parameter setpoints using values between the levels tested or outside this range.
- Investigate other noise and/or control factors that were not included in the initial experiment.

As with all product development activities, the team should take some time to reflect on the DOE process and the robust design result. Did we run the right experiments? Did we achieve an acceptable result? Could it be better? Should we repeat the process and seek further performance/robustness improvement?

Caveats

Design of experiments is a well-established field of expertise. This chapter summarizes only one very basic approach in order to encourage the use of experimentation in product design to achieve more robust product performance. Most product development teams should include team members with DOE training or have access to engineers and/or statisticians with specialized expertise in design and analysis of experiments.

Obviously many assumptions underlie the type of analysis used in DOE. One basic assumption made in interpreting analysis of means is that the factor effects are independent, without interactions across the factors. In fact, most actual systems exhibit many interactions, but these interactions are often smaller than the main effects. Verification of this assumption is another motive for running confirming experiments at the chosen setpoints.

If necessary, experiments can be designed to specifically test interaction effects. This type of experiment is outside the scope of this chapter. DOE texts generally provide a number of ways to explore interactions across the factors, including the following:

- Assign specific interactions to be explored in certain columns of the orthogonal array (instead of using the column for a control factor).
- Execute a larger fractional factorial design.
- Use an adaptive one-at-a-time experimental plan (Frey et al., 2003).

Many advanced graphical and analytical techniques are available to assist in interpretation of the experimental data. Analysis of variance (ANOVA) provides a way to assess the significance of the factor effects results in light of the experimental error observed in the data. ANOVA takes into account the number of observations made of each degree of freedom in the experiment and the scale of the results to determine whether each effect is statistically significant. This helps determine to what extent detailed design decisions should be based on the experimental results. However, ANOVA makes many more assumptions and can be difficult to set up properly, so it is also beyond the scope of this chapter. Refer to a DOE text (Ross, 1996; Montgomery, 2012) or consult with a DOE expert to assist with ANOVA.

Summary

Robust design is a set of engineering design methods used to create robust products and processes.

- A robust product (or process) is one that performs properly even in the presence of noise effects. Noises are due to many kinds of uncontrolled variation that may affect performance, such as manufacturing variations, operating conditions, and product deterioration.

- We suggest an approach to the development of robust products based on design of experiments (DOE). This seven-step process for robust design is:

    1. Identify control factors, noise factors, and performance metrics.
    2. Formulate an objective function.
    3. Develop the experimental plan.
    4. Run the experiment.
    5. Conduct the analysis.
    6. Select and confirm factor setpoints.
    7. Reflect and repeat.

- Orthogonal array experimental plans provide a very efficient method for exploring the main effects of each factor chosen for the experiment.
- To achieve robust performance, use of objective functions helps in capturing both mean performance due to each control factor and variance of performance due to noise factors.
- Analysis of means and factor effects charts facilitate the choice of robust parameter setpoints.
- Because many nuances are involved in successful DOE, most teams applying these methods will benefit from assistance by a DOE expert.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Phadke provides numerous examples and practical advice on application of DOE. Ross emphasizes insights gained through ANOVA analysis. Taguchi's methods for experimental design and details about orthogonal array experimentation plans are explained in several texts, including Taguchi's classic two-volume text translated into English.

Phadke, Madhav S., *Quality Engineering Using Robust Design*, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1989.

Ross, Phillip J., *Taguchi Techniques for Quality Engineering*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1996.

Taguchi, Genichi, *Introduction to Quality Engineering: Designing Quality into Products and Processes*, Asian Productivity Organization (trans. and pub.), Tokyo, 1986.

Taguchi, Genichi, *System of Experimental Design: Engineering Methods to Optimize Quality and Minimize Costs*, two volumes, Louise Watanabe Tung (trans.), White Plains, NY, 1987.

Grove and Davis present a thorough explanation of experimental design techniques in engineering, including planning, running, and analyzing the experiments. A different analysis of Ford's seat belt experiment is included in this text, as well as many more automotive applications of robust design.

Grove, Daniel M., and Timothy P. Davis, *Engineering*, *Quality and Experimental Design*, Addison-Wesley Longman, Edinburgh Gate, UK, 1992.

Several excellent texts provide detailed explanations of the use of statistical methods, fractional factorial experimental plans, analytical and graphical interpretations, and response surface methods.

Box, George E. P., J. Stuart Hunter, and William G. Hunter, *Statistics for Experimenters: Design*, *Innovation*, *and Discovery*, second edition, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 2005.

Box, George E. P., and Norman R. Draper, *Empirical Model Building and Response Surfaces*, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1987.

Montgomery, Douglas C., *Design and Analysis of Experiments*, eighth edition, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 2012.

Recent research has renewed interest in one-at-a-time DOE plans. An adaptive one-factor-at-a-time approach has been shown to yield better performance optimization than the corresponding orthogonal array design for systems where the interaction effects are more significant than the noise and error effects.

Frey, Daniel D., Fredrik Engelhardt, and Edward M. Greitzer, "A Role for One-Factor-at-a-Time Experimentation in Parameter Design," *Research in Engineering Design*, Vol. 14, No. 2, 2003 pp. 65–74.

DOE can be used in many aspects of product development. Almquist and Wyner explain how carefully planned experiments are effective in evaluating and tuning parameters of sales campaigns.

Almquist, Eric, and Gordon Wyner, "Boost Your Marketing ROI with Experimental Design," *Harvard Business Review*, Vol. 79, No. 9, October 2001, pp. 135–141.

Exercises

1. Design an experiment to determine a robust process for making coffee.
2. Explain why the 1/4-fractional-factorial and orthogonal array plans shown in Exhibit 15-4 are balanced.
3. Formulate an appropriate signal-to-noise ratio for the seat belt experiment. Analyze the experimental data using this metric. Is signal-to-noise ratio a useful objective function in this case? Why or why not?

Thought Questions

1. If you are able to afford a larger experiment (with more runs), how might you best utilize the additional runs?
2. When would you choose not to randomize the order of the experiments? How would you guard against bias?
3. Explain the importance of balance in an experimental plan.

Appendix

Orthogonal Arrays

DOE texts provide several orthogonal array plans for experiments. The simplest arrays are for two-level and three-level factor experiments. Using advanced techniques, DOE plans can also be created for mixed two-, three-, and/or four-level factor experiments and many other special situations. This appendix shows some of the basic orthogonal arrays from Taguchi's text *Introduction to Quality Engineering* (1986). These plans are shown in row/column format, with the factor level assignments in the columns and the experimental runs in the rows. The numbers 1, 2, and 3 in each cell indicate the factor levels. (Alternatively, factor levels can be labeled as − and + for two-level factors or −, 0, and + for three levels.) Recall that the orthogonal arrays are named according to the number of rows in the design. Included here are the two-level arrays L4, L8, and L16 and the three-level arrays L9 and L27. Also shown is a DOE plan using the L8 inner array for seven control factors and the L4 outer array for three noise factors. This plan allows analysis of the effects of the three noise factors.

Two-Level Orthogonal Arrays

L4: 3 Factors at 2 Levels Each

	A	B	C
1	1	1	1
2	1	2	2
3	2	1	2
4	2	2	1

L8: 7 Factors at 2 Levels Each

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
3	1	2	2	1	1	2	2
4	1	2	2	2	2	1	1
5	2	1	2	1	2	1	2
6	2	1	2	2	1	2	1
7	2	2	1	1	2	2	1
8	2	2	1	2	1	1	2

L16: 15 Factors at 2 Levels Each

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
3	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2
4	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1
5	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	2	2
6	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1
7	1	2	2	2	2	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	1	1
8	1	2	2	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	1	1	2	2
9	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2
10	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1
11	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	1
12	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	2
13	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	2	2	1
14	2	2	1	1	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	2
15	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	1	2	2	1	2	1	1	2
16	2	2	1	2	1	1	2	2	1	1	2	1	2	2	1

Three-Level Orthogonal Arrays

L9: 4 Factors at 3 Levels Each

	A	B	C	D
1	1	1	1	1
2	1	2	2	2
3	1	3	3	3
4	2	1	2	3
5	2	2	3	1
6	2	3	1	2
7	3	1	3	2
8	3	2	1	3
9	3	3	2	1

L27: 13 Factors at 3 Levels Each

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	1	1	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
3	1	1	1	1	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4	1	2	2	2	1	1	1	2	2	2	3	3	3
5	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	3	3	3	1	1	1
6	1	2	2	2	3	3	3	1	1	1	2	2	2
7	1	3	3	3	1	1	1	3	3	3	2	2	2
8	1	3	3	3	2	2	2	1	1	1	3	3	3
9	1	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	1	1	1
10	2	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3
11	2	1	2	3	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1
12	2	1	2	3	3	1	2	3	1	2	3	1	2
13	2	2	3	1	1	2	3	2	3	1	3	1	2
14	2	2	3	1	2	3	1	3	1	2	1	2	3
15	2	2	3	1	3	1	2	1	2	3	2	3	1
16	2	3	1	2	1	2	3	3	1	2	2	3	1
17	2	3	1	2	2	3	1	1	2	3	3	1	2
18	2	3	1	2	3	1	2	2	3	1	1	2	3
19	3	1	3	2	1	3	2	1	3	2	1	3	2
20	3	1	3	2	2	1	3	2	1	3	2	1	3
21	3	1	3	2	3	2	1	3	2	1	3	2	1
22	3	2	1	3	1	3	2	2	1	3	3	2	1
23	3	2	1	3	2	1	3	3	2	1	1	3	2
24	3	2	1	3	3	2	1	1	3	2	2	1	3
25	3	3	2	1	1	3	2	3	2	1	2	1	3
26	3	3	2	1	2	1	3	1	3	2	3	2	1
27	3	3	2	1	3	2	1	2	1	3	1	3	2

Combined Inner and Outer Arrays

L8 × L4: 7 Control Factors and 3 Noise Factors at 2 Levels Each

								1	**1**	**2**	**2**	**Na**
								1	**2**	**1**	**2**	**Nb**
	A	**B**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**F**	**G**	**1**	**2**	**2**	**1**	**Nc**
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1					
2	1	1	1	2	2	2	2					
3	1	2	2	1	1	2	2					
4	1	2	2	2	2	1	1					
5	2	1	2	1	2	1	2					
6	2	1	2	2	1	2	1					
7	2	2	1	1	2	2	1					
8	2	2	1	2	1	1	2					

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

Patents and Intellectual Property

Source: David W. Coffin Sr.

EXHIBIT 16-1
Hot beverage insulating sleeve by David W. Coffin Sr. (U.S. Patent 5,205,473).

David Coffin, an individual inventor, developed a product concept and prototype for an insulating sleeve that would make a hot beverage cup more comfortable to hold (Exhibit 16-1). The product opportunity arose in the 1980s after many food vendors had abandoned polystyrene foam hot beverage cups in favor of paper cups. The inventor was interested in commercialization and/or licensing his invention and sought protection of the intellectual property that he had created. This chapter provides an overview of intellectual property in the context of product development and provides specific guidance for preparing an invention disclosure or provisional patent application.

Within the context of product development, the term *intellectual property* refers to the legally protectable ideas, concepts, names, designs, and processes associated with a new product. Intellectual property can be one of the most valuable assets of firms. Unlike physical property, intellectual property cannot be secured with lock and key to prevent its unwanted transfer; therefore, legal mechanisms have been developed to protect the rights of intellectual property owners. These mechanisms are intended to provide an incentive and reward to those who create new useful inventions, while at the same time encouraging the dissemination of information for the long-run benefit of society.

What Is Intellectual Property?

Four types of intellectual property are relevant to product design and development. Exhibit 16-2 presents a taxonomy of types of intellectual property. Although some areas overlap, and all four types of intellectual property may be present in a single product, a particular invention usually falls into one of these categories.

- ***Patent:*** A patent is a temporary monopoly granted by a government to an inventor to exclude others from using an invention. In most countries, a patent expires 20 years from the filing date. Most of the balance of this chapter focuses on patents.
- ***Trademark:*** A trademark is an exclusive right granted by a government to a trademark owner to use a specific name or symbol in association with a class of products or services. In the context of product development, trademarks are typically brands or product names. For example, *JavaJacket* is a trademark for an insulated cup holder, and companies other than Java Jacket, Inc. may not make unauthorized use of the word JavaJacket to refer to their own cup-holder products. In the United States, registration of a trademark is possible, but not strictly necessary to preserve the trademark rights. In most other countries, the rights of a trademark are gained through registration.
- ***Trade secret:*** A trade secret is information used in a trade or business that offers its owner a competitive advantage and that can be kept secret. A trade secret is not a right conferred by a government but is the result of vigilance on the part of an organization in preventing the dissemination of its proprietary information. Perhaps the most famous trade secret is the formula for the beverage Coca-Cola.
- ***Copyright:*** A copyright is an exclusive right granted by a government to copy and distribute an original work of expression, whether literature, graphics, music, art, entertainment, or software. Registration of a copyright is possible but not necessary. A copyright comes into being upon the first tangible expression of the work and usually lasts for a period of 70 years beyond the last surviving author's death, or up to 95 years from publication in the case of anonymous and pseudonymous works.

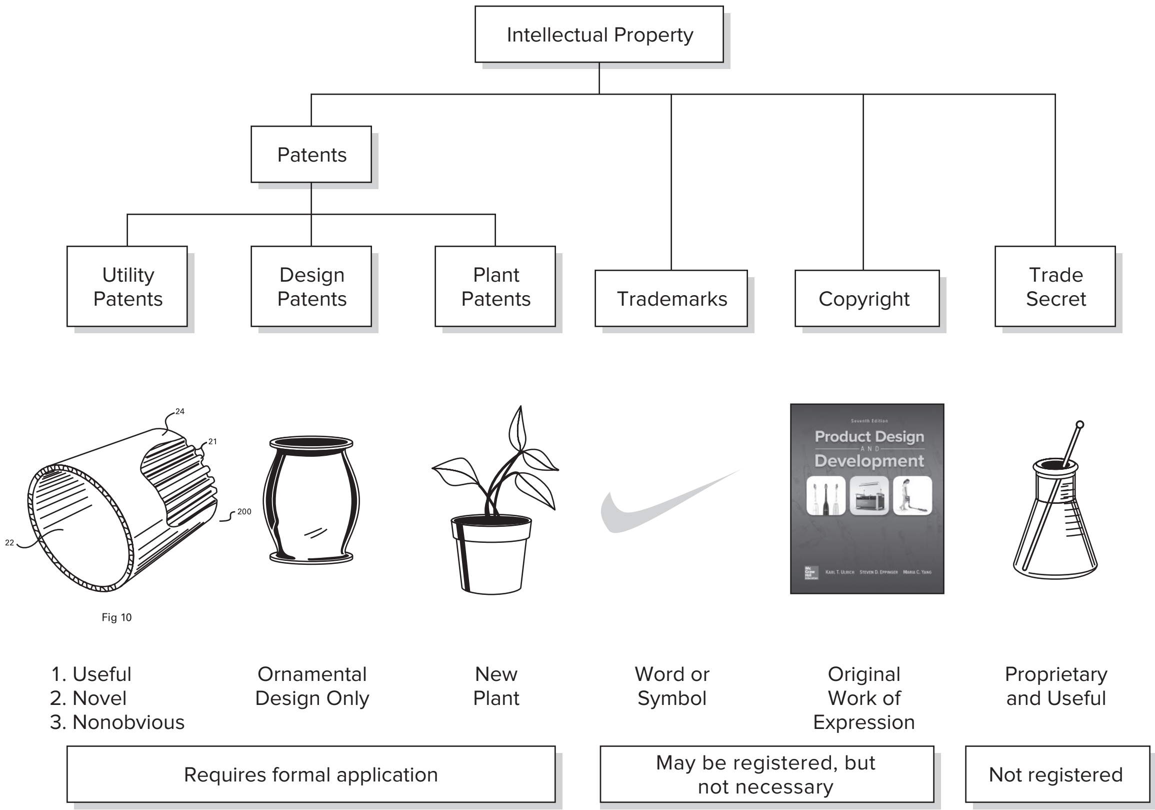


EXHIBIT 16-2 Taxonomy of types of intellectual property relevant to product design and development.

This chapter focuses on patents. Appendix A to this chapter briefly discusses trademarks. We do not devote substantial attention here to copyrights and trade secrets, but several references to other resources appear at the end of the chapter.

Overview of Patents

For most engineered goods, two basic types of patents are relevant: *design patents* and *utility patents.* (A third type of patent covers plants.) Design patents provide the legal right to exclude someone from producing and selling a product with the identical ornamental design described by the design patent. A design patent can be thought of as a "copyright" for the ornamental design of a product. Because design patents must be limited to ornamental design, for most engineered goods, design patents are of very limited value. For this reason, the chapter focuses further on utility patents.

Patent law in most of the world evolved from English law and so patent laws in different countries are somewhat similar. This chapter uses U.S. law as a reference point, and so readers with intentions to obtain patents in other countries should carefully investigate the laws in those countries.

Utility Patents

United States law allows for patenting of an invention that relates to a new process, machine, article of manufacture, composition of matter, or a new and useful improvement of one of these things. Fortunately, these categories include almost all inventions embodied by new products. Note that inventions embodied in software are sometimes patented, but usually the invention is described as a process or machine. Exhibit 16-3 shows the first page of a patent for the insulating sleeve invented by Coffin.

In addition, the law requires that patented inventions be the following:

- ***Useful:*** The patented invention must be useful to someone in some context.
- ***Novel:*** Novel inventions are those that are not known publicly and therefore are not evident in existing products, publications, or prior patents. The definition of novelty relates to disclosures of the actual invention to be patented as well. In the United States, an invention to be patented must not have been revealed to the public more than a year before the patent is filed.
- ***Nonobvious:*** Patent law defines obvious inventions as those that would be clearly evident to those with "ordinary skill in the art" who faced the same problem as the inventor.

Usefulness is rarely a hurdle to obtaining a patent; however, the requirements that an invention be novel and nonobvious are the most common barriers to obtaining a patent.

About two-thirds of applications filed for patents result in issued patents; however, an issued patent is not necessarily *valid.* A patent may be challenged in a government court by a competitor at some point in the future. The validity of a patent is determined by, among other factors, the adequacy of the description in the patent and the novelty of the invention relative to the prior art. A tiny fraction of patents—a few hundred per year in the United States—are ever challenged in court. Of those challenged in recent years, just over half have been found to be valid.

An inventor associated with a patent is a person who actually created the invention individually or in collaboration with other inventors. In some cases, the inventor is also the owner of the intellectual property; however, in most cases, the patent is *assigned* to some other entity, usually the inventor's employer. The actual intellectual property rights associated with a patent belong to the owner of the patent and not necessarily to the inventor. (Appendix B to this chapter provides some advice to individual inventors interested in commercializing their inventions.)

A patent owner has the right to exclude others from using, making, selling, or importing an infringing product. This is an *offensive right*, which requires that the patent owner sue the infringer. There are also *defensive rights* associated with patents. Any invention described in a patent, whether part of the claimed invention or not, is considered by the legal system to be known publicly and forms part of the *prior art.* This disclosure is a defensive act blocking a competitor from patenting the disclosed invention.

Preparing a Disclosure

This chapter is focused on a process for preparing an *invention disclosure*—in essence a detailed description of an invention. This disclosure will be in the form of a patent application, which can serve as a provisional patent application and with relatively little additional work could be a regular patent application. It is possible, even typical, for a patent attorney to do much of the work described in the chapter; however, our belief is that having

US005205473A

United States Patent [19]	[11] **Patent Number:** 5,205,473
Coffin, Sr.	[45] **Date of Patent:** Apr. 27, 1993

[54] RECYCLABLE CORRUGATED BEVERAGE CONTAINER AND HOLDER

[75] Inventor: David W. Coffin, Sr., Fayetteville, N.Y.

[73] Assignee: Design By Us Company, Philadelphia, Pa.

[21] Appl. No.: 854,425

[22] Filed: Mar. 19, 1992

[51] Int. Cl. B65D 3/28

[52] U.S. Cl. .... 229/1.5 B; 206/813; 220/441; 220/DIG. 30; 229/1.5 H; 229/DIG. 2; 493/296; 493/907

[38] Field of Search..... 229/1.5 B, 1.3 H, 4.5, 229/DIG. 2; 220/441, 671, 737–739, DIG. 30; 493/287, 296, 907, 908; 209/8, 47, 215; 206/813

[56] References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

1,732,322	10/1929	Wilson et al.	220/DIG. 30
1,771,765	7/1930	Benson	229/4.5
2,266,828	12/1941	Sykes	229/1.5 B
2,300,473	11/1942	Winkle	229/4.5
2,503,815	3/1950	Harman	
2,617,549	11/1952	Egger	
2,641,402	6/1953	Bruun	229/4.5
2,661,889	12/1953	Phinney	229/4.5
2,969,901	1/1961	Behrens	229/1.3 B
3,237,834	3/1966	Davis et al.	229/1.3 B
3,779,157	12/1973	Ross, Jr. et al.	53/527
3,785,254	1/1974	Mann	
3,890,762	6/1975	Ernst et al.	
3,908,523	9/1975	Shikays	229/1.5 B
4,080,880	3/1978	Shikay	493/296
4,146,660	3/1979	Hall et al.	
4,176,034	11/1979	Kelley	209/8
5,009,326	4/1991	Reaves et al.	
5,092,485	3/1992	Lee	229/1.3 B

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

"The Wiley Encyclopedia of Packaging Technology", John Wiley & Sons, pp. 66–69, 1986.

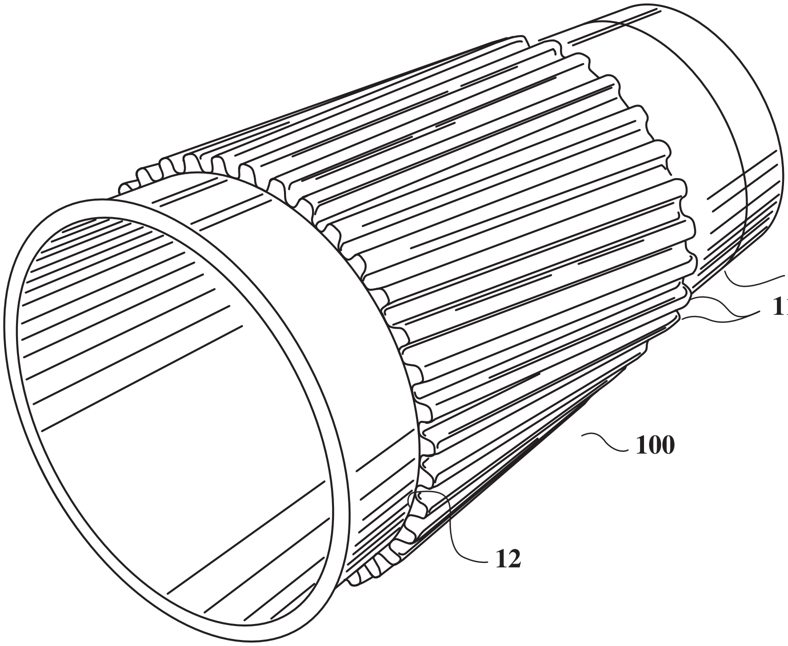
Primary Examiner—Gary E. Elkins
Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Synnestvedt & Lochner

[57] ABSTRACT

Corrugated beverage containers and holders are which employ recyclable materials, but provide fluting structures for containing insulating air. These products are easy to hold and have a lesser impact on the environment than polystyrene containers.

18 Claims, 8 Drawing Sheets

EXHIBIT 16-3
The first page of U.S. Patent 5,205,473.



Source: Coffin, David W., Recyclable Corrugated Beverage Container and Holder, U.S. Patent 5,205,473, April 27, 1993.

the inventor draft a detailed disclosure is the best way to communicate the inventor's knowledge, even though in most cases a patent attorney will revise the disclosure to prepare the formal patent application. Although many readers will be able to complete a provisional patent application from the guidance provided here, this chapter is not a substitute for competent legal advice. Inventors pursuing serious commercial opportunities should consult with a patent attorney after preparing their disclosure.

The steps in the process are:

1. Formulate a strategy and plan.
2. Study prior inventions.
3. Outline claims.
4. Write the description of the invention.
5. Refine claims.
6. Pursue application.
7. Reflect on the results and the process.

Step 1: Formulate a Strategy and Plan

In formulating a patent strategy and plan, a product development team must decide on the timing of the filing of a patent application, the type of application to be filed, and the scope of the application.

Timing of Patent Applications

Legally, a U.S. patent application must be filed within one year of the first public disclosure of an invention. In much of the rest of the world, a patent must be filed before any public disclosure or within one year of filing a U.S. application, so long as the U.S. application is filed before public disclosure. In most cases, public disclosure is a description of the invention to an individual or group of people who are not obligated to keep the invention confidential. Examples of such disclosure include: publication of invention details in a magazine or journal, presentation of a product at a trade show, display of the invention on a publicly accessible Web site, or test marketing of a product. (Most experts agree that a student's class presentation of an invention is not public disclosure, as long as the class members have agreed to preserve the confidentiality of the invention and as long as members of the general public are not present.) We strongly recommend that inventors file patent applications before any public disclosure. This action ensures that the option to file an international patent is preserved for one year. Fortunately, a provisional patent application may be filed at relatively little expense to preserve these rights.

Although we recommend that filing precede public disclosure, the inventor may benefit by delaying the application until just before such disclosure. The principal advantage to waiting as long as possible is that the inventor has as much knowledge as possible about the invention and its commercialization. Very often what the inventor believes are the key features of an invention early in the innovation process turn out to be less important than refinements developed later in the innovation process. By waiting, the inventor can ensure that the most important elements of the invention are captured in the patent application; however, a risk in waiting is that someone else may file a patent for the same invention.

In most countries, including the United States, priority among competing patent applications is based on the filing date not the date of invention. If two inventors are working simultaneously on competing inventions, the first to file is given priority. Historically, U.S. law granted priority based on the date of invention. The current law harmonizes U.S. law with that of most of the rest of the world. A nuance in the law is that if one inventor discloses an invention publicly, then that invention is no longer novel from the perspective of competing inventors and so they may not patent the disclosed invention. This prevents rival inventors from rushing to file patents on newly disclosed inventions. The disclosing inventor preserves the right to file a patent for one year after public disclosure.

Type of Application

A team faces two basic choices about the type of patent application to be pursued. First, the team must decide whether to file a *regular patent application* or a *provisional patent application.* Second, the team must decide whether to pursue domestic and/or foreign patents.

A regular patent application was the only option available to an inventor in the United States until substantial changes were made to patent law in 1995. Under current U.S. patent law, an inventor may file a provisional patent application. A provisional patent application needs only to fully describe the invention. It does not need to contain claims or comply with the formal structure and language of a regular patent application. The principal advantage of a provisional patent application is that it requires less cost and effort to prepare and file than a regular patent application, but it preserves all options to pursue further patent filings for a period of one year. Once a provisional patent application has been filed, a company may label its products "patent pending," and it retains the right to file a foreign patent application and/or a regular patent application. The only fundamental disadvantage of a provisional patent application is that it delays the eventual issuance of a patent by up to one year, as the process of examining a patent application does not begin until a regular patent application is filed. Another possible disadvantage is that the preliminary nature of a provisional patent application may lead to the use of less care in preparing the description of the invention than might be the case with a regular application. The description of the invention must be complete in a provisional patent application, and the regular patent application that follows cannot contain features that were not described in the provisional application.

Filing patents internationally is expensive and somewhat complex. The team should therefore consult with a patent professional about international patent strategy, as patent law varies somewhat from country to country. To obtain foreign patent rights, an application must eventually be filed in each country in which a patent is sought. (The European Community, however, acts as a single entity with respect to patent filing.) Foreign applications can be expensive, costing up to $15,000 per country for filing fees, translation fees, and patent agent fees.

The expense of filing for foreign patents can be delayed, generally by 30 months, by filing a *Patent Cooperation Treaty* (PCT) application. A PCT application is filed in one country (e.g., the United States) but is designated as a PCT application, which is the beginning of a process by which foreign patents can be pursued. A PCT application costs only slightly more than a regular patent application in filing fees, but it allows for a substantial delay before application fees must be paid in the countries in which foreign patents are sought.

The provisional patent application and the PCT application together provide a vehicle for a small company or individual inventor to preserve most patent rights with relatively little cost. A typical strategy is to file a provisional patent application before any public disclosure of the invention; then, within one year, to file a PCT application with the U.S. patent office; then, when forced to act or abandon the application at some point in the future (usually a year or more away), to pursue actual foreign applications. This strategy allows a delay of two or more years before substantial legal and application fees must be paid. During this period, the team can assess the true commercial potential of the products embodying the invention and can estimate the value of more extensive patent protection.

Scope of Application

The team should evaluate the overall product design and decide which elements embody inventions that are likely to be patentable. Typically, the process of reviewing the product design will result in a list of elements that the team considers to be novel and nonobvious. The team should focus on those elements that present substantial barriers to competition, which are typically the elements that in the opinion of the team represent a substantial improvement over the publicly known methods of addressing similar problems.

Complex products often embody several inventions. For example, a printer may embody novel signal processing methods and novel paper handling techniques. Sometimes these inventions fall into very different *classes* within the patent system. As a result, a product development team may need to file multiple applications corresponding to the distinct classes of invention. For simple products or for products that embody a single type of invention, a single patent application usually suffices. The decision about whether to divide an application into multiple parts is complex and is best made in consultation with a patent attorney; however, all intellectual property rights are preserved even if a patent application is filed that contains multiple classes of inventions. In such cases, the patent office will inform the inventor that the application must be divided.

While defining the scope of the patent, the team should also consider who the inventors are. An inventor is a person who contributed substantially to the creation of the invention. The definition of an inventor for the purposes of patent law is subjective. For example, a technician who only ran experiments would not typically be an inventor, but a technician who ran experiments and then devised a solution to an observed problem with the device could be considered an inventor. There is no limit to the number of inventors named in a patent application. We believe that product development and invention are most often team efforts and that many members of the team who participated in concept generation and the subsequent design activities could be considered inventors. Failing to name a person who is an inventor can result in a patent being declared not valid.

Step 2: Study Prior Inventions

There are three key reasons for studying prior inventions, the so-called *prior art.* First, by studying the prior patent literature, design teams can learn whether an invention may infringe on existing unexpired patents. Although there is no legal barrier to patenting an invention that infringes on an existing patent, if anyone manufactures, sells, or uses a product that infringes upon an existing patent without a license, the patent owner may sue for damages. Second, by studying the prior art, the inventors get a sense of how similar their invention is to prior inventions and therefore how likely they are to be granted a broad patent. Third, the team will develop background knowledge enabling the members to craft novel claims.

In the course of product development efforts, most teams accumulate a variety of references to prior inventions. Some of the sources of information on prior inventions include:

- Existing and historical product literature
- Patent searches
- Technical and trade publications

Several good online reference sources can be used for searching patents. Simple keyword searches are often sufficient to find most relevant patents. It is important for the team to keep a file containing the prior art they are aware of. This information must be provided to the patent office shortly after filing the patent application.

In the Coffin patent for the cup holder shown in Exhibit 16-1, references to 19 other U.S. patents are cited along with a reference to a book. (The references cited by the inventor and by the patent examiner are listed on the first page of a patent. The first page of the Coffin patent is reproduced as Exhibit 16-3.) Among the prior art for the Coffin patent, for example, is a 1930 patent by Benson (1,771,765; "Waterproof Paper Receptacle") in which a corrugated holder insulates a paper liner cup. The Benson patent describes a cup holder that fits underneath and into the bottom of the liner cup. This is one reason that the invention in the Coffin patent is described as a tube with an opening at the top and bottom.

Step 3: Outline Claims

Issuance of a patent gives the owner a legal right to exclude others from infringing on the invention specifically described in the patent's claims. Claims describe certain characteristics of the invention; they are written in formal legal language and must adhere to some rules of composition. In step 5, we describe how the formal legal language works; however, at this point in the process of preparing the disclosure, the team benefits from thinking carefully about what it believes is unique about the invention. We therefore recommend that the team outline the claims. Don't worry about legal precision at this point. Instead, make a list of the features and characteristics of the invention that the team believes are unique and valuable. For example, an outline of the claims for the Coffin invention might be:

- Use of corrugations as insulation, in many possible forms
  - Corrugations on the inside surface of the tube
  - Corrugations on the outside surface of the tube
  - Corrugations sandwiched between two flat layers of sheet material
  - Vertical orientation of flutes
    - Flutes open at top and bottom of holder
  - Corrugations with "triangle wave" cross section
  - Corrugations with "sine wave" cross section
- Tubular form with openings at both ends
  - In shape of truncated cone
- Recyclable materials
  - Recyclable adhesive
  - Recyclable sheeting
    - Cellulose material

- Biodegradable adhesive
- Surface to print on
- Holder folds flat along two fold lines

The outline of the claims provides guidance about what must be described in detail in the description.

Step 4: Write the Description of the Invention

The bulk of a patent application is formally known as the *specification.* To avoid confusion with our use of the word *specifications* in this book, we call the body of the patent application the *description* because this is the part of the application that actually describes the invention. The description must present the invention in enough detail that someone with "ordinary skill in the art" (i.e., someone with the skills and capabilities of a typical practitioner working in the same basic field as the invention) could implement the invention. The description should also be a marketing document promoting the value of the invention and the weaknesses in existing solutions. The patent application will be read by a patent examiner, who will search and study prior patents. The description must convince the examiner that the inventors developed something useful that is different from existing inventions and that is nonobvious. In these respects, one can think of the description as essentially a technical report on the invention. There are some formatting conventions for patent applications, although these are not strictly necessary for an invention disclosure or a provisional patent application.

Patent law requires that the application "teach" with sufficient detail that someone "skilled in the art" could practice the invention. For example, in the Coffin patent, the inventor discloses that the adhesive to bond the flutes is "a recyclable, and preferably a biodegradable adhesive, for example, R130 adhesive by Fasson Inc., Grand Rapids, MI (Coffin, 1993)." The requirement to completely teach the invention may be somewhat counterintuitive for someone accustomed to treating inventions confidentially. Patent law requires that inventors disclose what they know about the invention, but in exchange they are granted the right to exclude others from practicing the invention for a limited time period. This requirement reflects the basic tension in the patent system between granting a temporary monopoly to inventors in exchange for publication of information that will eventually be available for use by anyone.

A typical description includes the following elements:

- ***Title:*** Provide a short descriptive label for the invention, for example, "Recyclable Corrugated Beverage Container and Holder."
- ***List of inventors:*** All inventors must be listed. A person should be listed as an inventor if he or she originated any of the inventions claimed in the application. There are no legal limits to the number of inventors and no requirements about the order in which inventors are listed. A failure to list an inventor could result in a patent eventually being declared not valid.
- ***Field of the invention:*** Explain what type of device, product, machine, or method this invention relates to. For example, the Coffin patent reads, "This invention relates to insulating containers, and especially to those which are recyclable and made of cellulosic materials (Coffin, 1993)."

- ***Background of the invention:*** State the problem that the invention solves. Explain the context for the problem, what is wrong with existing solutions, why a new solution is needed, and what advantages are offered by the invention.
- ***Summary of the invention:*** This section should present the substance of the invention in summarized form. The summary may point out the advantages of the invention and how it solves the problems described in the background.
- ***Brief description of the drawings:*** List the figures in the description along with a brief description of each drawing. For example, "Figure 10 is a perspective view of a preferred embodiment illustrating internal flute portions in breakaway views."
- ***Detailed description of the invention:*** This section of the description is usually the most comprehensive and contains detailed descriptions of embodiments of the invention along with an explanation of how these embodiments work. Further discussion of the detailed description is provided later.

Figures

Formal figures for patents must comply with a variety of rules about labeling, line weight, and types of graphical elements; however, for an invention disclosure or provisional patent application, informal figures are sufficient and hand sketches or CAD drawings are perfectly appropriate. At some point after filing a regular patent application, the patent office will request formal figures, at which time a professional drafter may be hired to prepare formal versions of the necessary figures. Prepare enough figures to clearly show the key elements of the invention in the preferred embodiments that have been considered. A simple invention like the cup holder would probably require 5 to 15 figures.

The features shown in the figures may be labeled with words (e.g., "outer layer"), although to facilitate preparation of a regular patent application, the team may wish to use "reference numerals" on the figures right from the beginning. No rule stipulates that reference numerals must be uninterrupted and consecutive, so a convenient numbering scheme uses reference numerals 10, 11, 12, and so on, for features that first appear in Figure 1; reference numerals 20, 21, 22, and so on, for features that first appear in Figure 2; and so on. This way adding numerals to one figure does not influence the use of numerals in another figure. The same feature shown in more than one figure must be labeled with the same reference numeral, so some numerals will be carried over from one figure to another.

Writing the Detailed Description

The detailed description describes *embodiments* of the invention. An embodiment is a physical realization of the claimed invention. Patent law requires that the application describe the *preferred embodiment*—that is, the best way of practicing the invention. Typically, a detailed description is organized as a collection of paragraphs, each describing an embodiment of the invention in terms of its physical structure along with an explanation of how that embodiment works.

A good strategy for writing the detailed description is to first create the figures that show embodiments of the invention. Next, describe the embodiment by labeling each feature of the embodiment in the figure and explaining the arrangement of these features. Finally, explain how the embodiment works and why the features are important to this function. This process is repeated for each of the embodiments described in the detailed description.

EXHIBIT 16-4
Figure 10 from the Coffin patent.

Source: Coffin, David W., Recyclable Corrugated Beverage Container and Holder, U.S. Patent 5,205,473, April 27, 1993.

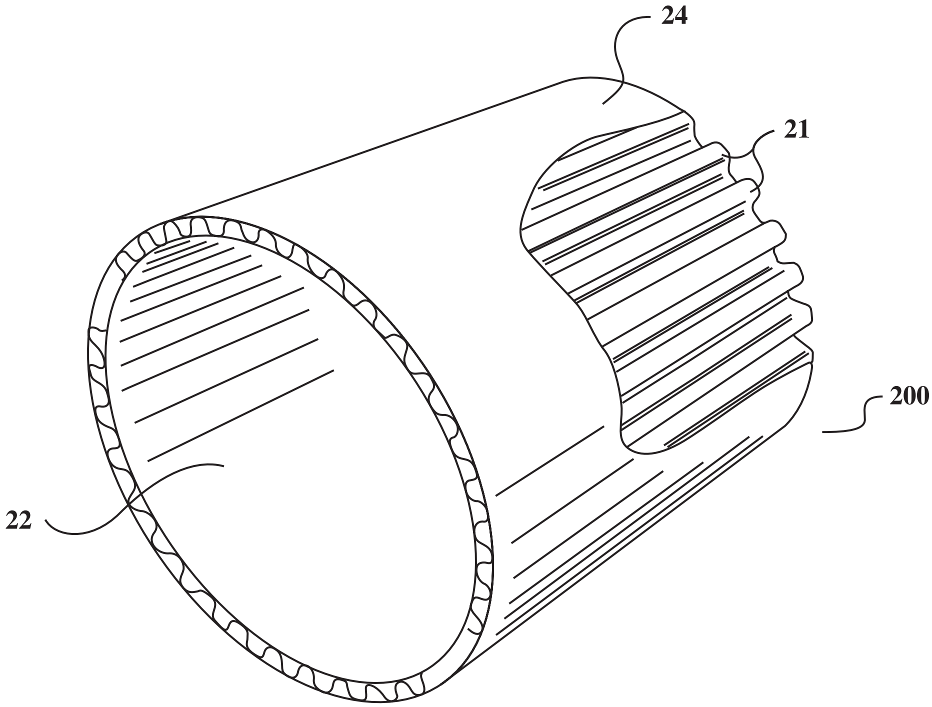


FIG. 10

Consider Figure 10 from the Coffin patent, shown here as Exhibit 16-4. A detailed description might include language like the following:

> A preferred embodiment of the invention is shown in Figure 10. A liner surface 22 and an outer surface 24 sandwich a corrugation 21. The assembly 200 forms a tubular shape whose diameter changes linearly with length so as to form a section of a truncated cone. The smooth outer surface 24 provides a smooth surface onto which graphics may be printed. Corrugation 21 is bonded to outer surface 24 and liner surface 22 with a recyclable adhesive.

The detailed description should show alternative embodiments of the invention. For example, in the Coffin patent, the invention features "flutes" that create an insulating air gap. In a preferred embodiment, these flutes are formed by smooth wavy corrugations, with the smooth surface on the outside to allow for graphics to be easily printed on the sleeve. Alternative embodiments include triangle waves and/or sheet materials on either or both sides of the tube. These alternative embodiments are explained in the detailed description and shown in the figures. (See Exhibit 16-5.)

Defensive Disclosure

The primary benefit of a patent is that it grants the owner *offensive rights*; that is, the owner has the right to prevent others from practicing the invention. However, patents also offer a subtle mechanism for taking *defensive* actions. A patent is considered prior art and so an

EXHIBIT 16-5
Figures 6a, 6b, 7a, and 7b from the Coffin patent showing alternative embodiments of the invention.

Source: Coffin, David W., Recyclable Corrugated Beverage Container and Holder, U.S. Patent 5,205,473, April 27, 1993.

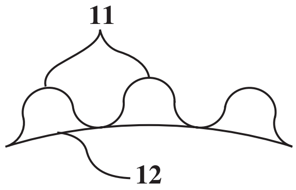


Fig. 6a

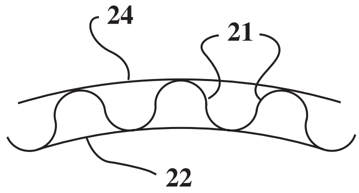


Fig. 6b

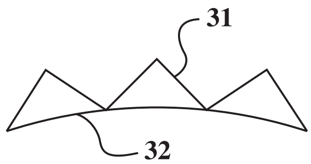


Fig. 7a

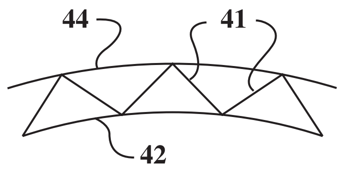


Fig. 7b

invention that appears in a patent may not be patented in the future. For this reason, inventors may benefit from disclosing essentially every invention they considered that relates to the claimed invention no matter how wide ranging. This may be done in the detailed description. Even though these inventions may not actually be reflected in the claims of the patent, their disclosure becomes part of the prior art and therefore prevents others from patenting them. This defensive strategy may offer competitive advantages in fields of emerging technologies.

Step 5: Refine Claims

The claims are a set of numbered phrases that precisely define the essential elements of the invention. The claims are the basis for all offensive patent rights. A patent owner can prevent others from practicing the invention described by the claims only. The rest of the patent application is essentially background and context for the claims.

Writing the Claims

Although claims must be expressed verbally, they adhere to a strict mathematical logic. Almost all claims are formulated as a recursive expression of the form

$$X = A + B + C\ldots, \quad \text{where } A = u + v + w\ldots, \quad B = \ldots$$

This is expressed verbally as:

> An *X* comprising an *A*, a *B*, and a *C*, wherein said *A* is comprised of a *u*, a *v*, and a *w* and wherein said *B* is . . . .

Note that claims comply with some verbal conventions. The word *comprising* means "including but not limited to" and is almost always used as the equal sign in the expression. The first time an element, say a *liner sheet*, is named in a claim, the inventor uses the indefinite article *a* as in "comprises *a* liner sheet." Once this element has been named, it is never referred to as *the* liner sheet, but always as *said* liner sheet. This is true for every subsequent instance in which *liner sheet* is used in the claims. Although these conventions are not difficult to remember once learned, inventors preparing a disclosure for subsequent editing by a patent attorney should not worry too much about formal correctness of the language. The language is easily corrected when the formal patent application is prepared.

Multiple claims are arranged hierarchically into *independent* claims and *dependent* claims. Independent claims stand alone and form the root nodes of a hierarchy of claims. Dependent claims always add further restrictions to an independent claim. Dependent claims are typically written in this form:

> The invention of Claim N, further comprising *Q*, *R*, and *S* . . .

or

> The invention of Claim N, wherein said *A* . . .

Dependent claims essentially inherit all of the properties of the independent claim on which they depend. In fact, a dependent claim can be read as if all of the language of the independent claim on which it depends were inserted as a replacement for the introductory phrase “The invention of Claim N.”

The dependent claims are important in that the patent office may reject the independent claim as obvious or not novel while allowing one or more dependent claims. In such cases, patentable material remains; the original independent claim can be deleted and the original dependent claim can be rewritten as an independent claim.

The elements of a claim form a *logical and* relationship. To infringe on a claim, a device must include each and every element named in the claim. If, for example, a competitive product were to use only three of four elements named in a claim, it would not infringe on the claim.

Consider this example from the Coffin patent (edited slightly for clarity) (Coffin, 1993).

Claim 1

> A beverage container holder, comprising a corrugated tubular member comprising cellulosic material and at least a first opening therein for receiving and retaining a beverage container, said corrugated tubular member comprising fluting means for containing insulating air; said fluting means comprising fluting adhesively attached to a liner with a recyclable adhesive.

Claim 1 is an independent claim. Consider Claim 2, which is dependent on Claim 1.

Claim 2

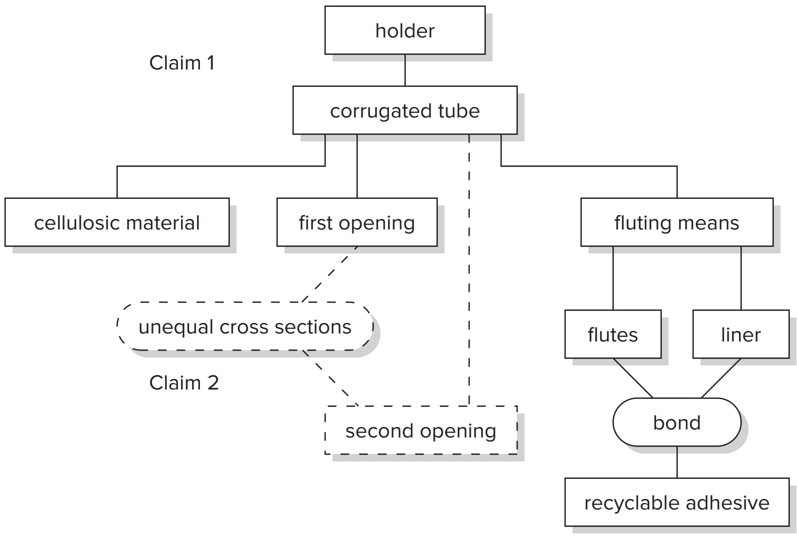
> The holder of claim 1, wherein said tubular member further comprises a second opening wherein said first opening and said second opening are of unequal cross-sectional dimensions.

This claim adheres to the logical structure shown in Exhibit 16-6.

Let us reinforce the idea that a claim is formed of a logical “and” relation among its elements. Claim 1 is for a holder that includes all of these elements:

- Corrugated tube
  - Made of cellulosic material
  - With a first opening
  - With fluting means
    - Made of flutes adhesively attached to a liner
      - Using recyclable adhesive

EXHIBIT 16-6
The logical structure of Claims 1 and 2 from the Coffin patent. Note that Claim 2 is dependent on Claim 1 and simply adds further restrictions, a second opening and a relationship between the first and second openings.

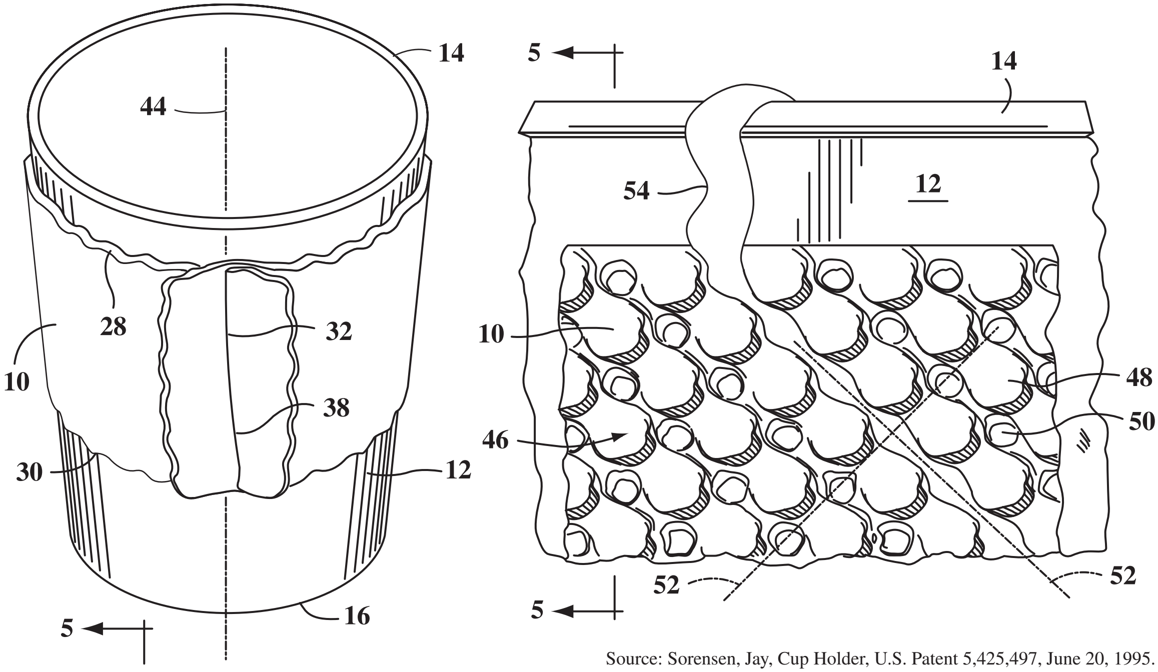


If a competing cup holder does not have every one of these elements, it does not infringe upon this claim. So, for example, if it were made of polystyrene, it would not infringe on this claim (no cellulosic material). Consider a patent by Jay Sorensen filed shortly after the Coffin patent. Sorensen's patent is for a cup holder with a dimpled surface. (See Exhibit 16-7.) Because this invention does not have "fluting means" it does not infringe upon the Coffin patent. Sorensen's claims include the following (edited slightly for clarity):

Claim 4

> A cup holder comprising a band of material formed with an open top and an open bottom through which a cup can extend and an inner surface immediately adjacent to said cup, said band comprising a plurality of discrete, spaced-apart, approximately semi-spherically shaped depressions distributed on substantially the entire inner surface of said band so that each depression defines a non-contacting region of said band creating an air gap between said band and said cup, thereby reducing the rate of heat transfer through said holder (Sorensen, 1995).

At least two lessons can be derived from comparing the Coffin and Sorensen inventions. First, patents often provide relatively limited commercial advantages. In this case, by creating a cup holder with dimples instead of flutes, Sorensen was able to avoid infringing on the Coffin patent. In fact, both inventions are embodied by successful commercial products, but neither patent provides ironclad protection from competition. The second lesson is that the inventor should invest in considering as many ways as possible to achieve the desired function of the invention, in this case an insulating layer. Had Coffin thought of a dimpled surface, then this feature could have been described in his patent application. In the best case, the dimpled invention may have formed the basis for additional claims in the patent. In the worst case, the description of the dimpled embodiment in the patent application would have been prior art and therefore prevented Sorensen from obtaining his patent. (It would not prevent Sorensen and others from practicing the dimpled invention unless it were claimed.)



Source: Sorensen, Jay, Cup Holder, U.S. Patent 5,425,497, June 20, 1995.

EXHIBIT 16-7 Figure from the Sorensen patent (U.S. Patent 5,425,497, "dimpled cup holder").

Guidelines for Crafting Claims

Several guidelines are helpful in crafting claims. Writing great claims is tricky, so we advise inventors to seek the help of an experienced patent attorney in refining a patent application.

- Always try to make a claim as general as possible. When a specific descriptor is used, try making it general. For example, Coffin's patent speaks of a "tubular member" and not a "tube."
- Avoid absolute definitions by using modifiers like "substantially," "essentially," and "approximately."
- Attempt to create an invention that does not infringe on the draft claim, and then try to rewrite the claim or add an additional claim such that the hypothetical invention would infringe.

Step 6: Pursue Application

In most cases, the inventor will deliver the draft application to a patent attorney or other intellectual property professional for refinement and formal application. It is possible to file a patent application as an individual if severely budget constrained. Pressman provides detailed guidelines for doing this (Pressman, 2018). Note that the statutory requirements are administratively complex, and so we highly recommend that commercial product development teams retain a competent specialist to pursue any application to the patent office.

Once an invention disclosure is prepared, the team can proceed in four different ways, with the specific course of action dictated by the business context.

- ***The team can file a provisional patent application.*** An individual or small company can file a provisional patent application for less than $100 in filing fees. The application need contain only a description of the invention and need not comply with the formalities of a regular patent application. Once a provisional application is filed, a product may be labeled "patent pending." If the team wishes to pursue a regular patent application, this application must be filed within one year of the filing of the provisional patent application. A provisional patent therefore acts as an option to pursue a regular patent application and allows the team time to pursue licensing or further investigation before incurring the expense of a regular patent application.
- ***The team may file a regular patent application in the United States.*** This process costs about $500 in filing fees for a small company or individual, in addition to the legal fees for a patent attorney.
- ***The team may file a patent cooperation treaty or PCT application.*** A PCT application allows a single patent application in a single country, say the United States, to initiate the process of pursuing international patent protection. Eventually, the inventor must pursue patent protection in individual countries or collections of countries (e.g., European Union); however, the PCT process allows the first steps of the process to be carried out relatively efficiently and with a single point of contact. The entire process of pursuing foreign patent rights is beyond the scope of this chapter. Consult a patent attorney for details.
- ***The team can defer application indefinitely.*** The team may delay in hope that future information will make a course of action obvious. In some cases, the team may decide not to pursue the invention and therefore may decide to abandon the patent application process. The consequences of delay may be substantial. If the invention is disclosed publicly, then all international patent rights are forgone. If a year passes after public disclosure without filing a regular patent application, then U.S. patent rights are also forgone. Nevertheless, the team may be able to defer any action for several months before these eventualities are realized.

At some point after the team files a regular patent application or a PTO application, the patent office will issue an *office action* responding to the application. In almost all cases, a patent examiner will reject many or all of the claims as either obvious or not novel. This is the norm and it is part of a back-and-forth exchange between the patent office and inventor that should eventually result in claims that are patentable. Next, the inventor and patent attorney sharpen arguments, edit claims to reflect comments from the examiner, and respond to the office action with an amended application. Most applications eventually result in an issued patent, although the claims rarely remain exactly as originally written.

The patent office does not review or act on provisional patent applications. It merely records their filing and stores the application for review when and if a regular application is filed.

Step 7: Reflect on the Results and the Process

In reflecting on the patent application or invention disclosure, the team should consider at least the following questions:

- What are the essential and distinctive features of the product concept, and therefore the invention? Are these features reflected in the description of the invention and in the claims? Does the description communicate the best way of practicing the invention?
- What is the timing of future required actions? The team's patent attorney will typically maintain a *docket*—essentially a calendar indicating when further actions must be taken to preserve patent rights; however, the inventor or someone within the team's company should also be responsible for thinking about the actions that must be taken in the coming months.
- Which aspects of the process of preparing the patent application or invention disclosure went smoothly and which aspects require further efforts in the future?
- What did the team learn about the prior art that may inform future product development efforts? For example, are there valuable technologies that might be licensed from existing patent holders? Are competitors' patents expiring, possibly allowing the team to use a convenient solution to a long-standing problem?
- How strong an intellectual property position does the team have? Are the features of the invention in the patent application so novel and valuable that they really prevent competitors from direct competition, or is the patent likely to be merely a deterrent to the most direct copies of the products that embody the invention?
- Did the team begin the process too early or too late? Was the effort rushed? What is the ideal timing for the next effort to prepare a patent application?

Summary

- A patent is a temporary monopoly granted by a government to exclude others from using, making, or selling an invention. Patent law is intended to balance an incentive for invention with the free dissemination of information.
- Utility patents are the central element of the intellectual property for most technology-based product development efforts.
- An invention can be patented if it is useful, novel, and nonobvious.
- The final invention that is patented is defined by the patent claims. The rest of the patent application essentially serves as background and explanation in support of the claims.
- We recommend a seven-step process for pursuing a patent:

  1. Formulate a strategy and plan.
  2. Study prior inventions.
  3. Outline claims.
  4. Write the description of the invention.
  5. Refine claims.

6. Pursue application.
7. Reflect on the results and the process.

- Provisional patent applications and patent cooperation treaty (PCT) applications can be used to minimize the costs of pursuing patent protection while preserving all future options.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

The examples in the chapter are derived from the Coffin and Sorensen patents.

Coffin, David W., *Recyclable Corrugated Beverage Container and Holder*, U.S. Patent 5,205,473, April 27, 1993.

Sorensen, Jay, *Cup Holder*, U.S. Patent 5,425,497, June 20, 1995.

Pressman's book is a comprehensive guide to the details of patent law and provides a step-by-step process for writing a patent application and pursuing the application with the patent office. The book also contains valuable related information on licensing inventions.

Pressman, David, *Patent It Yourself*, edited by, Thomas J. Tuytschaevers, nineteenth edition, Nolo Press, Berkeley, CA, 2018.

Stim provides an in-depth discussion of most aspects of intellectual property, including trademarks and copyrights.

Stim, Richard, *Patent*, *Copyright & Trademark: An Intellectual Property Desk Reference*, fifteenth edition, Nolo Press, Berkeley, CA, 2018.

Exercises

1. Find a patent number on a product that interests you. Look up the patent using an online reference tool.
2. Draft a claim for the self-stick notepad invention marketed by 3M Corporation as the Post-it Note.
3. Draw a logic diagram of two claims for the patent in Exercise 1.
4. Generate one or more product concepts that are very different from the Coffin and Sorensen inventions to address the problem of handling a hot coffee cup and that don't infringe the Coffin and Sorensen patents.

Thought Questions

1. Controversy erupted in 1999 when the J.M. Smucker Company sued a Michigan bakery, Albie's, for infringing on its patent by marketing a crustless peanut butter and jelly sandwich crimped on the edges. (See U.S. patent 6,004,596.) Albie's argued that the patent was issued in error because the invention was obvious. Look up the Smucker patent. Do you believe that the Smucker's invention is nonobvious? Why or why not?
2. Why might an inventor describe but not claim an invention in a patent?

Appendix A

Trademarks

A trademark is a word or symbol associated with the products of a particular manufacturer. Trademarks can form an important element of the portfolio of intellectual property owned by a company. Trademarks can be words, "word marks" (stylized graphics spelling out words), and/or symbols. Trademarks usually correspond to brands, product names, and sometimes to company names.

Trademark law is intended to prevent unfair competition, which could result if one manufacturer named its products like those of another in an attempt to confuse the public. In fact, to avoid confusion, when a manufacturer uses a competitor's trademark in advertising, say for the purposes of comparison, it must by law indicate that the name is a trademark of the competitor.

Trademarks must not be purely descriptive. For example, although a company could not obtain a trademark on "Insulating Sleeve," it could for names that are suggestive but not purely descriptive such as "Insleev," "ThermaJo," or "CupPup."

In the United States, a federal trademark may be established merely by using the mark in interstate commerce. This is done by attaching "TM" to the word or symbol when used in advertising or labeling the product (e.g., JavaJacket™). Trademarks may also be registered at modest cost through the United States Patent and Trademark Office using a simple process. When registered, a trademark is denoted with the symbol ® (e.g., Coke®).

Given the importance of the Internet for communicating with customers, when creating new product names, the team should strive to create trademarks that correspond exactly to domain names on the Internet.

Appendix B

Advice to Individual Inventors

Most students of product development and product development professionals have at some point had an idea for a novel product. Often further thought results in a product concept, which sometimes embodies a patentable invention. A common misconception among inventors is that a raw idea or even a product concept is highly valuable. Here is some advice based on observations of many inventors and product commercialization efforts.

- A patent can be a useful element of a plan for developing and commercializing a product; however, it is not really a central element of that activity. Patenting an invention can usually wait until many of the technical and market risks have been addressed.
- A patent by itself rarely has any commercial value. (An idea by itself has even less value.) To extract value from a product opportunity, an inventor must typically complete a product design, resolving the difficult trade-offs associated with addressing customer needs while minimizing production costs. Once this hard work is completed, a product design may have substantial value. In most cases, pursuing a patent is not worth the

effort except as part of a larger effort to take a product concept through to a substantial development milestone such as a working prototype. If the design is proven through prototyping and testing, a patent can be an important mechanism for increasing the value of this intellectual property.

- Licensing a patent to a manufacturer as an individual inventor is very difficult. If you are serious about your product opportunity, be prepared to pursue commercialization of your product on your own or in partnership with a smaller company. Once you have demonstrated a market for the product, licensing to a larger entity becomes much more likely.
- File a provisional patent application. For very little money, an individual using the guidelines in this chapter can file a provisional application. This action provides patent protection for a year, while you evaluate whether your idea is worth pursuing.

Service Design

EXHIBIT 17-1
A Zipcar vehicle.

In June 2000, Zipcar launched a new vehicle-sharing service in Cambridge, Massachusetts. The service provides customers with vehicles that are rented on an hourly basis (Exhibit 17-1). Zipcar helped to redefine the way many people think about automobile ownership and transportation by giving them the freedom to use a vehicle whenever they want and making the process of renting a vehicle as simple, convenient, and reliable as possible. From the very start, Zipcar's aim was to provide "wheels when you want them." By 2012, Zipcar had become the world's largest vehicle-sharing service, providing over 10,000 vehicles to more than 750,000 members in 50 cities in the United States and Europe. While the vehicles used by Zipcar are the tangible products of automobile manufacturers, what Zipcar offers to its customers is a *service*. Zipcar's success as a service business may be attributed to at least these factors:

- ***Easy reservations:*** Zipcar members could browse and reserve available vehicles online or by smartphone at any time, immediately or in advance. Rentals could be as short as one hour or as long as four days.
- ***Convenient parking:*** Vehicles were parked in designated spaces throughout the metropolitan areas where Zipcar operated: on-street locations, neighborhood parking lots, and parking garages. Members returned the vehicle to the same location after using it.
- ***Automated check-in and return:*** Members could use their smartphone or a card containing an RFID (radio frequency identification) chip to unlock the vehicle only during the time of their reservation. Each vehicle recorded the mileage driven and communicated wirelessly to a central computer for automated billing.
- ***Attractive brand associations:*** Members perceived Zipcar to be associated with low environmental impact, financial intelligence, and innovation.
- ***A culture of continuous improvement:*** Zipcar strived to learn from its customers to provide additional features and to improve operations.

While most producers of physical goods have a defined product development process, many service-based businesses are only recently implementing formal methods for the development of their offerings. The focus of this chapter is the development of new services. It describes product-service systems and some of the differences between physical products and services. It then introduces a method of representing services as process flow diagrams. This method makes explicit the design of the service and can help to identify opportunities for innovation and improvement. We use the Zipcar example throughout to illustrate the successful design and development of a new service.

Product-Service Systems

Physical products are tangible goods produced by manufacturing operations and used by customers; their benefits derive from the material properties and geometry of components and assemblies. For instance, Toyota is primarily a manufacturer, producing automobiles, which are owned and used by its customers. Services are largely intangible, even if often associated with physical goods. For instance, automobile insurance is an intangible financial service provided to owners of automobiles to reduce the magnitude of the loss the insured suffers in an accident. Most services have some associated physical products and most physical products have some associated services. For example, automobile

Category	Physical Product Elements	Service Elements
Mobile communications	Handsets, transmission towers	Network connectivity
Enterprise computing	Computing hardware, switches, servers	Information processing, storage, back-up
Desktop printers	Printer hardware	Cartridge recycling
Auto rental	Vehicles	Reservation, insurance, maintenance, billing
Restaurants	Food	Reservations, food preparation, wait service, ambiance
Airlines	Aircraft	Ticketing, in-flight entertainment, piloting, baggage handling, loyalty programs
Healthcare	Drugs, medical devices	Diagnosis, procedures, advice

EXHIBIT 17-2 Examples of product-service systems.

rental companies provide short-term use of a vehicle without requiring the user to own the vehicle, yet the actual physical vehicle is critical to the service; and while Toyota is primarily in the business of making vehicles, it also provides vehicle financing and roadside assistance, and its dealers provide maintenance and repair services. This bundle of the physical and intangible is known as a *product-service system*. Other examples of product-service systems are listed in Exhibit 17-2.

For the purposes of this chapter, we will refer to *physical products* simply as *products,* and to intangible products as *services,* with the recognition that the more general use of the economic term *product* refers to both physical products and services.

In What Ways Are Services and Products Different?

In most ways, services and products are similar enough that they can be developed using the familiar product development process described throughout this book. Like products, services address customer needs, are based on concepts, exhibit an architecture, require testing, and are provided by organizations adhering to economic principles; however, certain characteristics of services are more prominent than for products:

- ***Customer involvement:*** The customer is generally an integral part of the service delivery process, providing information inputs, making choices, interacting with the service provider, and consuming the service during its delivery. Because the customer interaction is somewhat unpredictable, services are often designed to adapt dynamically to the customer. Given that many services are interactive, they also may comprise many *touch points*—each one representing an opportunity to succeed or fail, and a potential focus of innovation.
- ***Timing:*** A service usually includes a prominent time dimension. Customers are generally concerned with waiting for service, the timing of key touch points, and the overall elapsed time in the service experience.
- ***Matching capacity and demand:*** Many service products are consumed quite close to the time at which they are produced. For instance, restaurant meals are usually consumed within minutes of production. Air travel is consumed simultaneously with its production.

Because of this close coupling of production and consumption, inventory is of limited use in buffering variability; therefore, either capacity and demand must be closely matched, or excess capacity must be provided. Otherwise, waiting times will grow or customers will be lost.

- ***Modular architecture:*** Service processes are usually collections of activities arranged in sequential and parallel process flows. Many processes are essentially modular—process steps map closely to features and functions of the service. With this type of modular architecture, services are easily modified, refined, and extended.
- ***Repeated use cycles:*** Although some services may be experienced just once or infrequently (e.g., laser vision correction surgery), more typically a customer uses a service repeatedly (e.g., automobile rental, hotels, gyms). As a result, customer acquisition and relationship management are critical elements of the service.
- ***Customization:*** Because of the customer involvement in services and the modular process flow of most services, the experience can often be readily customized to the needs of individual customers with more limited investment than is typically required to customize products.

The Service Design Process

Most chapters in this book and their associated methods apply as well to services as to products. Specifically, for both products and services, these tools and methods are important: opportunity identification, identifying customer needs, generating concepts, selecting concepts, establishing specifications, concept testing, economics, project management, and product planning.

An exception is Chapter 13, Design for Manufacturing and Supply Chain, which mostly describes methods for dealing with physical component production and assembly. Chapter 16, Patents and Intellectual Property, is possibly more relevant to products than services, although some of the most famous patents are associated with services (e.g., Amazon's one-click patent). The specific guidelines in Chapter 12, Design for Environment, are more relevant to products than to services, although the principles still apply very well to service operations.

On the whole, the design and development processes for services and products are more alike than different. Still, some differences in tools and techniques are worth highlighting. Here we discuss the idea of a *service concept*. Then, we introduce a tool for representing the system-level design of the service, the *service process flow diagram*. We illustrate each of these with the Zipcar example.

The Service Concept

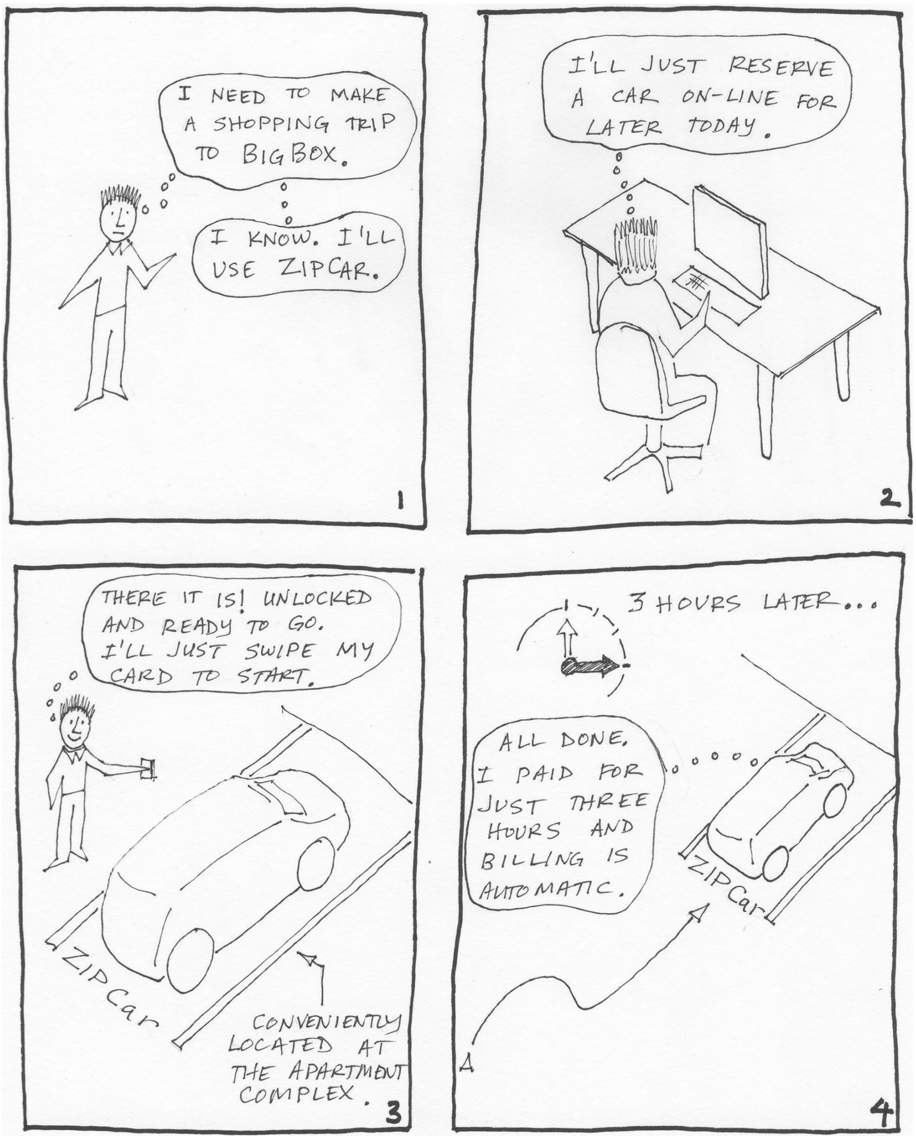
Recall from Chapter 7, Concept Generation, that the concept is the approach and working principles the product will embody to deliver the basic function of the product and satisfy the customer needs. With physical goods, the product concept is best represented with a sketch of the geometry and configuration of physical elements; however, services include intangibles and information processing activities, and so a sketch of physical components will be a limited and incomplete description of a service. For services, the concept is more typically a textual description of the big idea—a narrative of how the service works. The big idea of a service concept can usually be conveyed in a few words, often with a description of the sequence of events and key features.

For instance, the concept for Zipcar is

Zipcar provides automobile rental for periods of 30 minutes to 4 hours. Zipcar vehicles are parked in specially marked spaces in convenient locations, such as adjacent to apartment and office buildings. Users join the Zipcar service and receive a membership card. They reserve vehicles online, use their card to access the vehicle, and then drive away. They simply return the vehicle to the same spot within the reserved rental period. Billing to the customer's account is automatic.

A service concept can be further elaborated with a *storyboard*. A storyboard is a sequence of graphical illustrations that show the key steps in a service experience. For instance, a storyboard for the Zipcar concept is shown in Exhibit 17-3.

EXHIBIT 17-3
Zipcar storyboard.



The techniques described in Chapter 7, Concept Generation, can be used to generate service concepts as well as product concepts. For instance, the problem can be decomposed by sequence of user actions, by considering the key functions of the service, or by key customer needs. For example, Exhibit 17-4 shows a decomposition of the car rental service by sequence of user action. A new service concept can be constructed by selecting a solution concept (or perhaps more than one concept) from each of the columns and integrating them into an overall service offering.

Concept Development at Zipcar

The Zipcar team developed several solution concepts. Each solution presented different technical, logistical, and financial challenges and would also provide a different customer experience.

Zipcar was a startup company, so the team knew that their resource constraints would not allow them to immediately deploy all of their innovative ideas, such as an RFID-based lock system or a wireless mileage tracking system, at once. The team realized that providing the highly sophisticated service for the original concept would require several more months of development, testing, and implementation of features and operational procedures. Initially, they decided to launch the minimally viable vehicle-sharing service as quickly as possible. Because services can generally be easily modified, beginning with the minimally viable service is an effective strategy to get started, begin learning, and improve incrementally.

They asked themselves: Which steps of the cycle can we deliver with the least cost and the least time? Which features should we implement first and which in future iterations of the service? For example, the team defined a concept in which each vehicle would be equipped with a communication system to wirelessly transfer data between the vehicle and a server to transmit mileage data for billing. In the first offering of the service, however, this communication system was not ready to be implemented. Instead, the mileage data was logged in the vehicle by the member, and employees would collect the driving records from each vehicle for billing on a monthly basis.

Join	Reserve	Obtain Vehicle	Use Vehicle	Return Vehicle	Pay
Register	No reservation–first-come, first-served	Delivered to your location	Optional driver provided	Any location	Automatic billing
Pre-Register	Mobile app	Distributed locations		Same as pick-up	Checkout sequence on mobile device
Use service as “guest” with no registration	Website	Central hub in each region		Different location	Checkout sequence on onboard system in vehicle
Join using existing credentials (e.g., Facebook)	Call center	Partnership with gas stations or convenience stores			Kiosk at drop-off location
Employer registers in bulk	Commit to return time				
	Open-ended reservation				

EXHIBIT 17-4 Decomposition of car rental service by sequence of user actions. Alternative approaches to each action are listed in the columns.

The Service Process Flow Diagram

Recall some attributes that make services distinctive from products: the role of time, customer interactivity, modularity of process, and close matching of capacity and demand. These distinctive attributes can be dealt with explicitly by representing a service with a process flow diagram.

Exhibit 17-5 shows a process flow diagram for the Zipcar service. Process steps are shown as labeled boxes. Precedent relations between steps are shown as regular weight lines and arrows. Material flows are shown with heavy lines and arrows. Information flows are shown with dashed lines and arrows. The human figures in the diagram represent the customer touch points.

The service process flow diagram is created by listing the process steps and then by arranging them graphically to show precedence, material flows, and information flows. Typically, this is an iterative process done at a whiteboard or with pencil and paper and then captured more formally with an illustration tool such as PowerPoint.

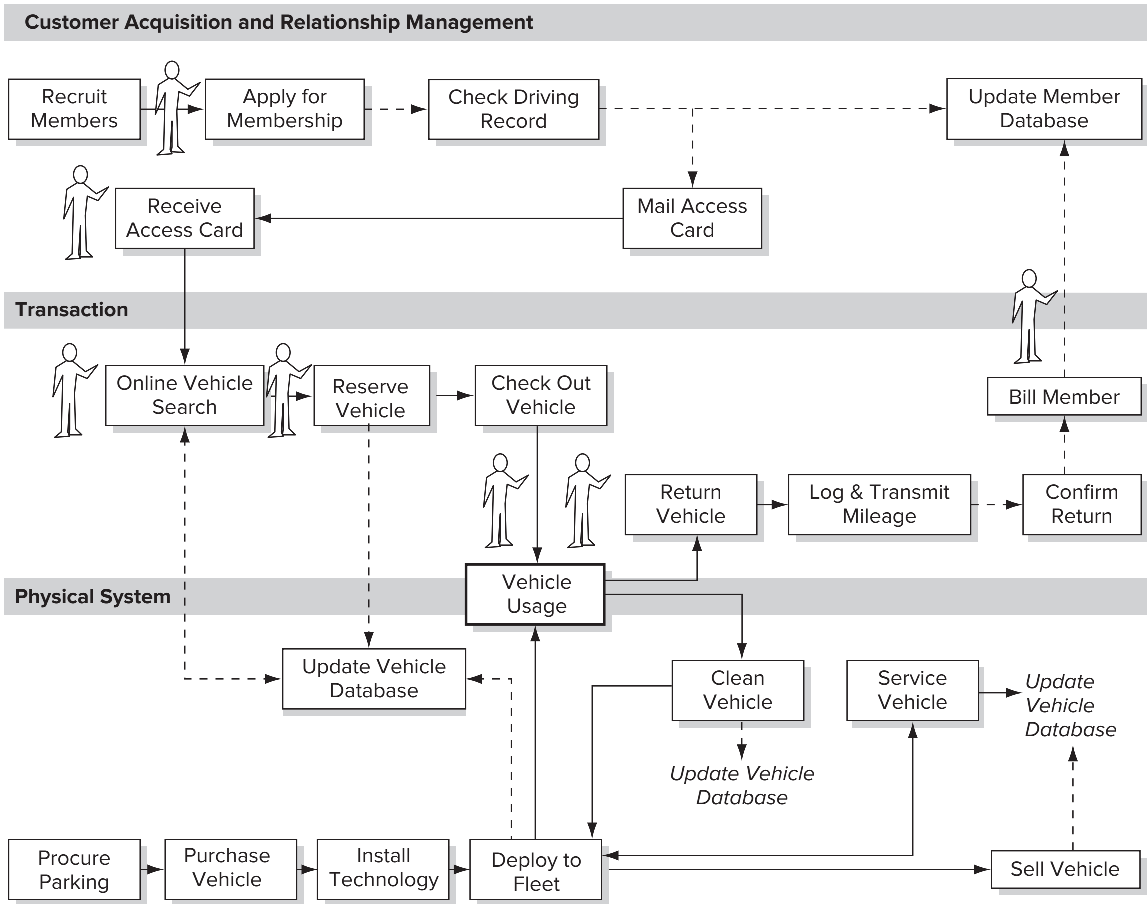


EXHIBIT 17-5 Service process flow diagram for the Zipcar service.

Many processes are quite complex, in the sense that they involve many process steps and interactions. To organize the diagram, the designer may benefit from separating the process steps into categories. Three categories used in Exhibit 17-5 and useful generally are:

1. Customer acquisition and relationship management (e.g., creating awareness and enrolling members).
2. Transaction processing (e.g., reserving, checking out, and returning a rental).
3. Physical process flow (e.g., the procurement and provisioning of vehicles).

The usefulness of the service process flow diagram derives from the ways services are distinctive from products. Because of the intrinsic modularity of services, the process flow diagram is essentially a diagram of the *functional elements* of the service, as in the function diagram in Chapter 7, Concept Generation. Given how modular services are, the process flow diagram nearly completely describes the actual embodiment of the service.

Subsequent Refinement

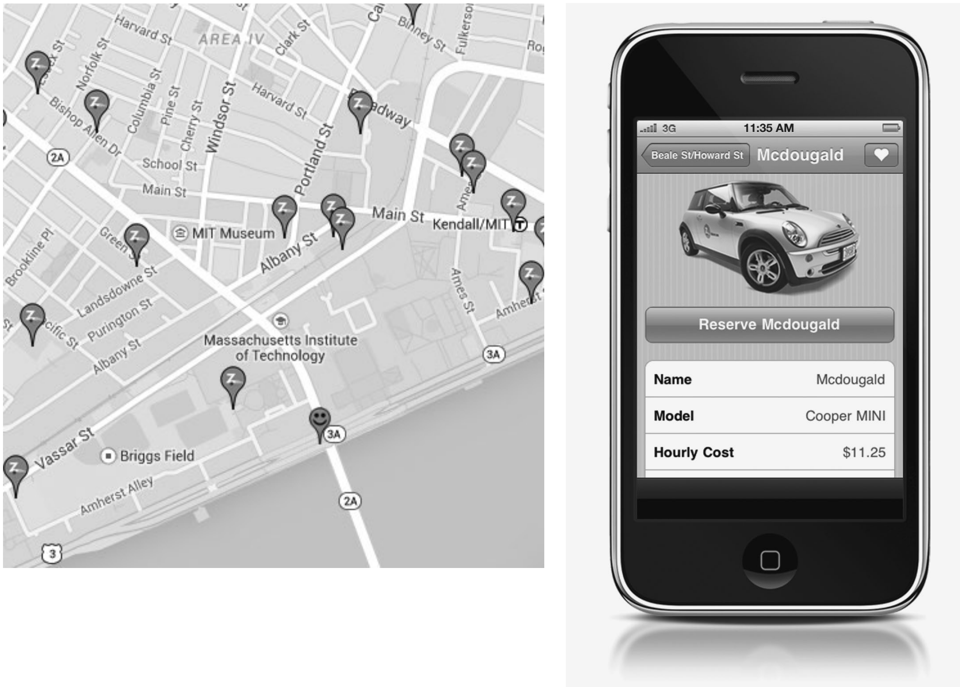
Zipcar started with a minimal version of each process flow and subsequently added functions and enhancements over time. For example, in the membership process flow, Zipcar started business development with specific institutions (universities, hospitals, large businesses), a small marketing campaign based on word-of-mouth promotion, and some public relations activities. When they expanded the business to other cities, they enhanced the marketing functions to include more print and online advertising campaigns. The membership process also became more streamlined over time, as Zipcar learned that customers didn't need an in-person orientation. The team also implemented a faster procedure to check the applicant's driving records, allowing Zipcar to send the access cards within two days.

A major influence in designing the service architecture was the company's goal to expand their business beyond Cambridge to other cities in the United States and Europe; therefore, the team decided which activities of the process flows needed to be deployed locally and which could be built as a shared infrastructure. Necessary local infrastructure would be established in each market, consisting of the vehicle fleet, parking spaces, equipment and staff for vehicle maintenance, local management, and sales representatives. Local staff arrange for parking spaces and recruit new members by establishing contracts with local businesses, universities, hospitals, and government institutions. Every element of the local infrastructure must be appropriate and specific to the local environment. The shared infrastructure consists of elements that would be set up in Zipcar's headquarters in Cambridge, such as the hardware, software, and support for the online reservation system and mobile application (see Exhibit 17-6).

Downstream Development Activities in Services

As in any development process, refining, testing, and implementing a new service requires significant resources and coordination among many individuals. Although most service-development tasks are quite similar to those for products, here we draw some further distinctions related to the downstream development activities.

EXHIBIT 17-6
The Zipcar vehicle locator and mobile phone application.



Prototyping a Service

As a service is typically a process, creating a prototype of a service requires creating an approximation of the intended process. For an online service, this prototype may be a website. For a service involving physical process steps (e.g., a restaurant or retailer), a prototype may be a pilot facility, perhaps even set up in a temporary location.

As with physical products, service prototypes are often labeled *alpha* and *beta*. Indeed, Google's Gmail service was "in beta" for several years, suggesting to users that changes, experiments, and refinements would be common.

The standard approaches to design of experiments (see Chapter 15, Robust Design) apply also to service experimentation. In many cases (particularly for established operations implementing new or modified services), service experiments may be conducted with real customers in the actual service setting. In other cases, a pilot test environment can be built to approximate the real setting. On one hand, the closer that service experiments and test can represent the intended service operation, the better. On the other hand, testing the service with real customers can be risky, particularly for an established business, for if anything goes wrong, customers can be lost.

Zipcar conducted a pilot study with one vehicle and 22 participants for two months before launch. The pilot study allowed the team to evaluate customers' responses to each step of the service, such as applying for membership, using the reservation system, and accessing the vehicle. Based on the results of the pilot, the team gained important insights.

For example, some participants lost the access card or loaned their card to friends. Also, many customers forgot to leave the keys inside the vehicle when returning it. The Zipcar team developed a solution to tether the keys to the steering wheel rather than hiding them in the glove box as initially envisioned.

Growing Services

In many instances, services are launched only locally, although a Web-based service can sometimes be easily deployed in a large geographic region. Location often plays a key role because of the geographic distribution of potential customers. Restaurants, hotels, and auto rental companies all serve customers in particular geographic regions. As a result, the ramping-up and growth of a service usually requires geographic expansion. The pattern of geographic expansion allows a service to be established in one location (e.g., the home location of the development team) and then expanded region by region.

During its ramp-up, the Zipcar team finalized all operational elements and made the service publicly available. Zipcar was officially launched in Cambridge in June 2000. By the end of September, the company had deployed 15 vehicles across the city and nearly 400 members had joined.

In September 2001, Zipcar expanded the service to Washington, D.C. The team chose Washington because the market size is similar to Cambridge, and a high fraction of residents used public transportation to commute to work and did not own a car. The second launch allowed Zipcar to try a modified pricing model in which no security deposit was required. By comparing accident frequency in the two cities, they determined that Zipcar drivers are equally careful in both cities. As a result, Zipcar dropped the requirement for the security deposit.

The Washington experience allowed Zipcar to further improve and scale their service operations before deploying the service in larger cities, such as New York City, where Zipcar launched in February 2002. Over the next few years, Zipcar expanded to many other cities in the United States and Europe. Eventually, Zipcar became the world's largest vehicle-sharing organization.

Expanding the service to different cities also challenged the team to make sure that its operations ran properly. Events that were infrequent when operating on a smaller scale, such as collisions, speeding tickets, and lost access cards, became more frequent as Zipcar expanded further. The team was required to implement new operational processes to handle the increasing volume of these events.

Continuous Improvement

Because customers and service employees are simultaneously involved in a service operation, obtaining helpful feedback from customers is relatively easy. According to its founders, a major factor in Zipcar's success has been the ongoing enhancement of the service with new features and improved operational procedures. Zipcar created a close relationship between its employees and members to build better understanding of customer needs and to foster innovation. For the first two years of operations, every employee was required to take customer calls and to answer online customer inquires. By offering Zipcar employees a discount, they were encouraged to use the service themselves to get firsthand experience and to identify potential improvements.

Changes are inevitable, and some may be unpopular with users. For instance, the team adjusted the service pricing after six months of operations. They found that the daily charge was too low and that they needed to increase it by 25%. They sent a personal message to every member explaining that they needed to increase prices to stay in business. Members appreciated the personal message and Zipcar lost only a few members due to the higher prices.

Over time, the Zipcar team tested and incorporated several new technologies into the service. The reservation system, for example, initially provided a list of the few available vehicles. In the next iteration, the system displayed an appropriate selection of the increasing number of vehicles, filtered by price and/or location. In a later iteration, the system displayed the member's previous reservations, facilitating a faster transaction for most customers. For smartphones, the team developed an application allowing members to reserve and access vehicles using their phone. The application also helps members to locate the right vehicle by providing real-time directions using GPS on the phone (and even to sound the horn when nearby).

Avis, one of the largest vehicle rental and leasing companies, acquired Zipcar in 2013. Avis intended to use its existing infrastructure, scale, and experience in managing a worldwide vehicle rental system to increase the growth and profitability of Zipcar. In particular, Avis wanted to provide Zipcar with additional vehicles to satisfy the high customer demand for vehicles on weekends. The acquisition by Avis provided the Zipcar team with several new technical and logistical challenges, but more importantly, it provided the team with many new opportunities to innovate and take their service to a new level of sophistication.

Summary

- Services are largely intangible, while physical products are tangible goods produced by manufacturing operations.
- Most services have some associated physical products and most physical products have some associated services. Together they form product-service systems.
- Distinctions between products and services include a high degree of customer involvement, a prominent time dimension, a requirement for close matching of capacity and demand, modular architecture usually in the form of a process, repeated purchase and use cycles by customers, and at least some customization or adaptation to the needs of individuals.
- The service concept is typically a textual description of the big idea—a narrative of how the service works. The service concept is sometimes illustrated with a storyboard.
- The design of a service is often represented with a process flow diagram. The service process flow diagram is created by listing the process steps and then by arranging them graphically to show precedence, material flows, and information flows.
- While some distinctions between services and products are useful, most aspects of the development process are essentially similar.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

Thomke describes the challenges of applying the discipline of formal R&D processes to services. He explains the process that Bank of America used to create new services for retail banking.

Thomke, S., "R&D Comes to Services: Bank of America's Pathbreaking Experiments," *Harvard Business Review,* Vol. 81, No. 4, 2003.

Cusumano discusses the importance of services to product-based firms and the emergence of product-service systems.

Cusumano, M. A., *Staying Power: Six Enduring Principles for Managing Strategy & Innovation in an Uncertain World,* Oxford University Press, Oxford, 2010.

Many new services are based on innovative business models. Osterwalder, Clark, and Pigneur present a comprehensive compilation of proven and modern business models.

Osterwalder, A., T. Clark, and Y. Pigneur, *Business Model Generation*. Wiley, Hoboken, NJ, 2010.

Girotra and Netessine provide a process for developing new business models.

Girotra, K., and S. Netessine, *The Risk-Driven Business Model: Four Questions That Will Define Your Company*. Harvard Business Press, Boston, 2014.

Heskett et al. discuss how leading companies achieve profit and growth through the customer-oriented design of services.

Heskett, J. L., W. E. Sasser, and L. A. Schlesinger, *The Service Profit Chain,* Simon & Schuster, New York, 1997.

Bitner et al. describe the service blueprinting method, which is closely related to the service process flow diagram.

Bitner, M. J., A. L. Ostrom, and F. N. Morgan, "Service Blueprinting: A Practical Technique for Service Innovation," *California Management Review,* Spring 2008, Vol. 50, No. 3, 2008, pp. 66–94.

Sampson presents the process chain networks (PCN) analysis method for documenting, analyzing, and innovating provider-customer interactions using detailed flow charts.

Sampson, S. E., *"Visualizing Service Operations," Journal of Service Research,* Vol. 15, No. 2, 2012.

Exercises

1. Define the service process flow for a service of interest to you. Some suggestions are purchasing a new automobile, going to a coffee shop, booking a vacation, buying a new computer, purchasing music, dining in a restaurant, going to the movies, staying at a hotel, applying to graduate school, or shopping for clothing.

2. Identify opportunities for innovation or areas of recent innovation in the service process described in Exercise 1.
3. List five products that benefitted from the introduction of necessary or complementary services in terms of market success and customer satisfaction.

Thought Questions

1. What are the differences and similarities between the product development process and the process of designing services? Illustrate your answer with representative development process diagrams.
2. Draw the Zipcar process flow diagram in a way that explicitly delineates process flows for customer actions, visible employee actions, back-office employee activities, and IT-based systems. What is the relationship between the company's service process flow and the customer's service experience?
3. For a product-service system such as a smartphone or an automobile, consider the relative pricing of the product and the service. How would you optimize pricing to maximize profits? What are some of the challenges that make this very difficult to do in practice?

CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

Product Development Economics

©Niels Poulsen std/Alamy

EXHIBIT 18-1
A home coffee maker using single-serving capsules.

A product development team working for a manufacturer of kitchen appliances was in the midst of developing a new coffee maker, referred to by the project name AB-100. The new coffee maker would provide high-quality coffee using an existing capsule system and would compete in the market against products by Nespresso, Illy, Keurig, and others. Exhibit 18-1 shows a coffee maker and coffee capsule by Nespresso.

During the AB-100 development, the product development team was faced with several decisions that it knew could have a significant impact on the product's profitability. For example:

- Should the team increase development spending and production cost to add an additional feature that could lead to greater sales volume?
- Would the project be profitable if the retail price is reduced by 10% due to competitive pricing pressure?

The team used the financial analysis tools presented in this chapter to help answer these and other questions relating to the project's ability to generate profit for the manufacturer. The emphasis in this chapter is on fairly quick, approximate methods for supporting decision making within the project team. This analysis is generally referred to as product development economics, financial modeling, or break-even analysis. It is essentially a prediction of the expected payback and profitability deriving from a specific project, in this case the development and production of a new product.

Elements of Economic Analysis

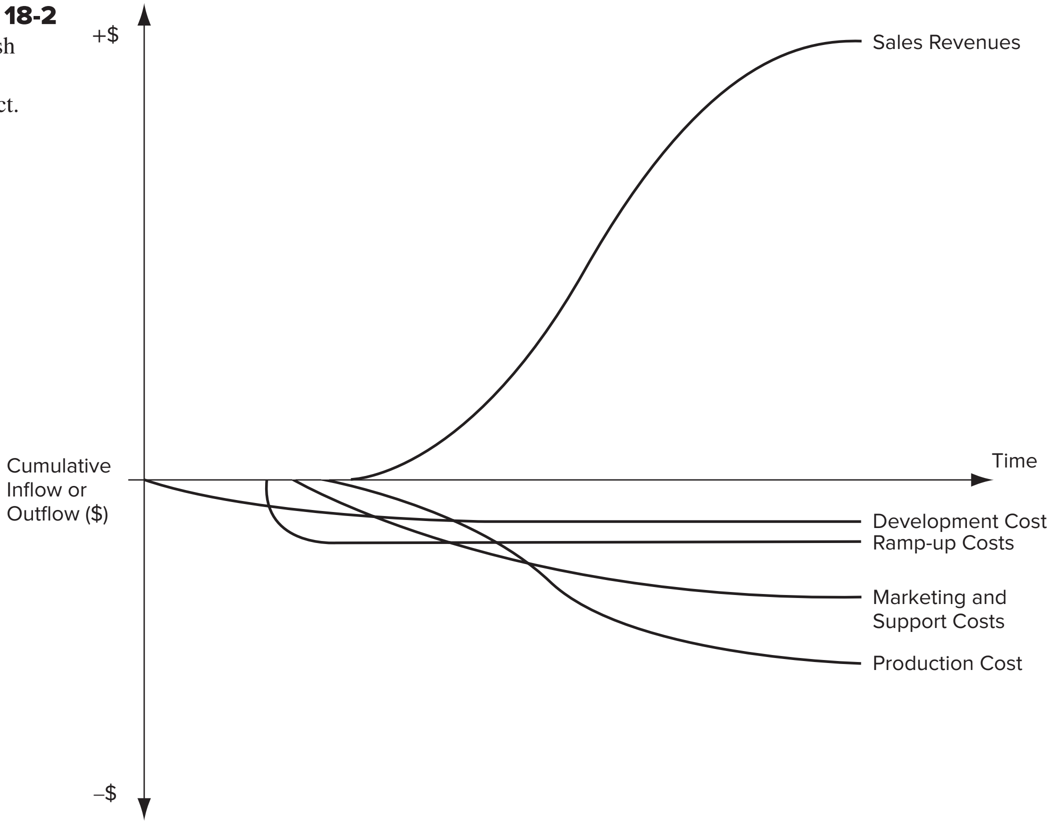
This chapter describes a method consisting of two types of analysis, *quantitative* and *qualitative.* We will see in this chapter that this analysis supports a wide variety of project decisions in the product development context.

Quantitative Analysis

There are several basic cash inflows (revenues) and cash outflows (costs) over the life cycle of a successful new product. Cash inflows come from sales of the product and related goods and services. Cash outflows include spending on product and process development; costs of production ramp-up such as equipment purchases and tooling; costs of marketing and supporting the product; and ongoing production costs such as raw materials, components, and labor. The cumulative cash inflows and outflows over the life cycle of a typical successful product are presented schematically in Exhibit 18-2.

Economically successful products are profitable; that is, they generate more cumulative inflows than cumulative outflows. A measure of the degree to which inflows are greater than outflows is the *net present value* (NPV) of the project, or the value in today's dollars of all of the expected future cash flows. The quantitative part of the economic analysis method described in this chapter estimates the NPV of a project's expected cash flows. The method uses NPV techniques because they are easily understood and used widely in business. (Appendix A at the end of this chapter provides a brief tutorial on NPV.) The purpose of quantitative analysis is not only to provide objective evaluations of projects and alternatives but also to bring a measure of structure and discipline to the assessment of product development projects.

EXHIBIT 18-2
Typical cash flows for a new product.



Qualitative Analysis

Quantitative analysis can capture only those factors that are measurable, yet projects often have both positive and negative implications that are difficult to quantify. Also, quantitative analysis rarely captures the characteristics of a dynamic and competitive environment. In fact, a product development project with negative NPV may be a worthwhile investment in certain circumstances; for example, where the expenditure (loss) on one project enables valuable learning that can lead to profitable future products. The method in this chapter uses qualitative analysis to capture some of these issues. Our approach to qualitative analysis is to consider specifically the interactions between the project and (1) the firm, (2) the market, and (3) the macroeconomic environment.

When Should Economic Analysis Be Performed?

Economic analysis, including both quantitative and qualitative approaches, is useful in various circumstances:

- ***Choice of business model:*** Considering the pricing and timing of various product offerings constitutes selection of a *business model.* Business model decisions may include such questions as: Should we offer the product at a low introductory price (or free) in the hope that many customers purchase upgrades or premium options? What sequence of high-, medium-, and low-priced product models do we wish to release?

- ***Go/no-go milestones:*** Go/no-go decisions are typically made at the end of each phase of development. These decisions may involve questions such as: Should we try to develop a product to address this market opportunity? Should we proceed with the implementation of the selected concept? Should we launch the product we have developed?
- ***Operational design and development decisions:*** Operational decisions involve questions such as: Should we spend $100,000 to hire an outside firm to develop this component to save two months of development time? Should we launch the product in one year at a unit price of $260 or wait another quarter when we can reduce the price to $240?

The financial modeling done at the beginning of a project can usually be updated with current information so that it does not have to be re-created in its entirety each time. Used in this way, the analysis becomes one of the information systems the team uses to manage the development project. Economic analysis can be carried out by any member of the development team. In small companies, the project leader or one of the members of the core project team will implement the details of the analysis. In larger companies, a representative from a finance or planning group may be appointed to assist the development team in performing the analysis. We emphasize that even when someone with formal training in financial modeling takes responsibility for this analysis, the core team should fully understand the analysis and be involved in its formulation and use.

Economic Analysis Process

We recommend the following four-step method for the economic analysis of a product development project. The balance of this chapter is organized around these four steps.

1. Build a base-case financial model to compute expected profit.
2. Perform sensitivity analysis to understand the key assumptions of the model.
3. Use sensitivity analysis to understand project trade-offs.
4. Consider the influence of qualitative factors on project success.

Step 1: Build a Base-Case Financial Model

Constructing the base-case model consists of estimating the future cash flows and then computing the NPV of those cash flows.

Estimate the Timing and Magnitude of Future Cash Inflows and Outflows

The timing and magnitude of the cash flows is estimated by merging the project schedule with the project budget and estimates of ongoing revenues and expenses. The level of detail of cash flows should be coarse enough to be convenient to work with, yet it should contain enough resolution to facilitate effective decision making. The most basic categories of cash flow for a typical new product development project are:

- Sales revenues
- Development and testing cost
- Equipment and tooling cost
- Production and distribution ramp-up cost

- Market launch, ongoing marketing, and product support costs
- Production direct and indirect costs

Depending on the types of decisions the model will support, greater levels of detail for one or more areas may be required. More detailed modeling may consider these same types of cash flows in greater detail, or it may consider other flows. Typical refinements include:

- Breakdown of seasonal sales by quarter
- Inclusion of growth or decline of sales volume and/or pricing
- Breakdown of development cost into design, testing, and refinement costs
- Breakdown of production costs into direct costs and indirect costs (overhead)
- Breakdown of marketing and support costs into launch costs, promotion costs, direct sales costs, and service costs
- Inclusion of tax effects, including depreciation and investment tax credits
- Inclusion of cannibalization (the impact of the new product on existing product sales), salvage costs, and opportunity costs
- Inclusion of working capital cash flows and interest on accounts

The financial model we use in this chapter is simplified to include only the major cash flows that are typically considered in practice, but conceptually it is identical to more complex models. The numerical values of the cash flows generally come from budgets and other estimates made by the development team, the manufacturing organization, and the marketing organization. Note that all revenues and expenses to date are *sunk costs* and are irrelevant to NPV calculations. (The concept of sunk costs is reviewed in Appendix A.) Exhibit 18-3 shows the relevant financial estimates for the new coffee maker AB-100.

To complete the model, the financial estimates must be merged with timing information. This can be done by considering the project schedule and sales plan. (For most projects, quarter-year time increments are used.) Exhibit 18-4 shows the AB-100 project timing information in Gantt chart form. The remaining time to market is estimated to be four quarters, and product sales are anticipated to last 12 quarters.

EXHIBIT 18-3
AB-100 project expenses, sales forecasts, marketing and production costs used to create the base-case model.

Model Parameter	Base-Case Value
Product development	$5M over 1 year
Equipment and tooling	$4M over 1/2 year
Production ramp-up	$2M over 1/2 year
Market launch	$10M over 1/2 year
Marketing and support	$5M/year after launch
Production direct cost	$55/unit
Production overhead	$1M/year
Initial sales and production volume	200,000 units/year
Quarterly sales profile	Q1 20%, Q2 25%, Q3 25%, Q4 30%
Sales volume growth	15%/year after first year
Initial retail sale price	$260/unit
Retail price growth	−10%/year after first year
Distributor and retail margin	40% combined
Discount rate	7%/year

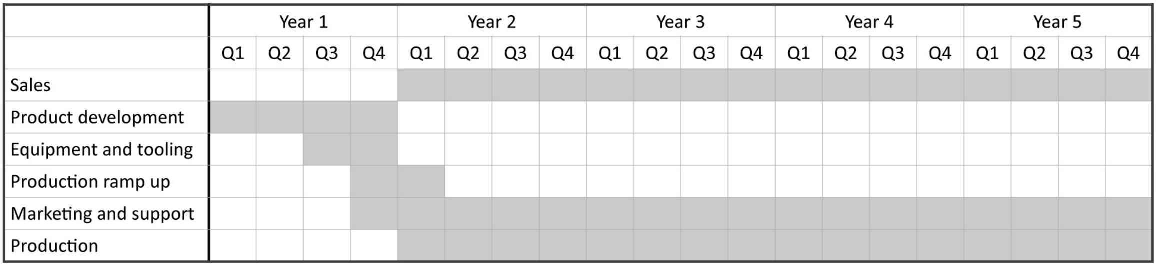


EXHIBIT 18-4 AB-100 project schedule from inception through production and sales.

A common method of representing project cash flow is a table in a spreadsheet. The rows of the table are the different cash flow categories, while the columns represent successive time periods. For this model, the product development team made several assumptions based on experience with their earlier projects and their products already in the market. Based on recent industry trends, the team assumed an annual sales growth of 15%, but that the unit retail price would decline by 10% annually after the first year of sales. We multiply the unit sales quantity by the net wholesale price to find the total product revenues in each period. We also multiply the unit production quantity (assumed same as sales volume) by the unit direct production cost and add the overhead cost to find the total production cost in each period. Exhibit 18-5 illustrates the resulting table.

Compute the Net Present Value of the Cash Flows

Computing the NPV involves simply summing the cash flow for each period and then converting (discounting) this cash flow to its *present value* (its value in today's dollars) using the appropriate *discount rate.* The discount rate is an interest rate reflecting the cost of the capital invested in the project. (The concepts of present value, net present value,

Values in $M *(except where noted)*	Year 1				Year 2				Year 3				Year 4			
	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Sales, machines					6.24	7.80	7.80	9.36	6.46	8.07	8.07	9.69	6.68	8.36	8.36	10.03
Sales Volume, machines (units/qtr)					*40,000*	*50,000*	*50,000*	*60,000*	*46,000*	*57,500*	*57,500*	*69,000*	*52,900*	*66,125*	*66,125*	*79,350*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, machines ($/unit)					*156*	*156*	*156*	*156*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*126*	*126*	*126*	*126*
Total Revenue					**6.24**	**7.80**	**7.80**	**9.36**	**6.46**	**8.07**	**8.07**	**9.69**	**6.68**	**8.36**	**8.36**	**10.03**
Product Development	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25												
Equipment and Tooling			2.00	2.00												
Production Ramp-up				1.00	1.00											
Marketing and Support				6.25	6.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
Production, machines					2.45	3.00	3.00	3.55	2.78	3.41	3.41	4.05	3.16	3.89	3.89	4.61
Total Costs	**1.25**	**1.25**	**3.25**	**10.50**	**9.70**	**4.25**	**4.25**	**4.80**	**4.03**	**4.66**	**4.66**	**5.30**	**4.41**	**5.14**	**5.14**	**5.86**

EXHIBIT 18-5 Merging the project financials and schedule into a cash flow table (values in millions of dollars, except for unit revenue and volume, as noted).

and discount rate are reviewed in Appendix A.) Consider, for example, the calculations for year 2, second quarter:

Sales revenue	$7.80M
Marketing and support	– $1.25M
Production	–$3.00M
Period cash flow	$3.55M
Period present value	$3.20M

The period cash flow is the sum of revenues minus costs, $3.55M. The present value of this period cash flow discounted at 7% per year (1.75% per quarter) back to before the first quarter of year 1 (a total of six quarters) is $\$3.55\text{M} \div (1 + 1.75\%)^6 = \$3.20\text{M}$.

Project NPV is the sum of the discounted cash flows for all of the periods, $13.1M, as shown in Exhibit 18-6. The positive NPV suggests that development, production, and sales of the AB-100 coffee maker is a profitable project. It pays back the investment at 7% interest and more. Next we consider also sales of the coffee capsules associated with sales of the machines.

Other Cash Flows

Many products generate revenues from associated sales and/or services. For example, the sale of a computer system may also result in revenues from software, accessories, and repair services. They may also have other expenses such as warranty costs related to the computer sales. Furthermore, these sales may cannibalize sales of other product lines. If any such cash flows are significant and can be directly associated with sales of the new product being analyzed, we would consider them also in the cash flow projection and the NPV calculation.

The AB-100 uses the manufacturer's existing coffee capsule system in which brewing each cup of coffee requires one capsule. Our analysis assumes that the capsule system requires no additional development or production investment and that each machine results in the (incremental) sale of 400 capsules per year. (Customers typically consume

Values in $M *(except where noted)*	Year 1				Year 2				Year 3				Year 4			
	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Sales, machines					6.24	7.80	7.80	9.36	6.46	8.07	8.07	9.69	6.68	8.36	8.36	10.03
Sales Volume, machines (units/qtr)					*40,000*	*50,000*	*50,000*	*60,000*	*46,000*	*57,500*	*57,500*	*69,000*	*52,900*	*66,125*	*66,125*	*79,350*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, machines ($/unit)					*156*	*156*	*156*	*156*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*126*	*126*	*126*	*126*
Total Revenue					**6.24**	**7.80**	**7.80**	**9.36**	**6.46**	**8.07**	**8.07**	**9.69**	**6.68**	**8.36**	**8.36**	**10.03**
Product Development	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25												
Equipment and Tooling			2.00	2.00												
Production Ramp-up				1.00	1.00											
Marketing and Support				6.25	6.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
Production, machines					2.45	3.00	3.00	3.55	2.78	3.41	3.41	4.05	3.16	3.89	3.89	4.61
Total Costs	**1.25**	**1.25**	**3.25**	**10.50**	**9.70**	**4.25**	**4.25**	**4.80**	**4.03**	**4.66**	**4.66**	**5.30**	**4.41**	**5.14**	**5.14**	**5.86**
Period Cash Flow	**–1.25**	**–1.25**	**–3.25**	**–10.50**	**–3.46**	**3.55**	**3.55**	**4.56**	**2.43**	**3.41**	**3.41**	**4.39**	**2.27**	**3.22**	**3.22**	**4.16**
Period Present Value	–1.23	–1.21	–3.09	–9.80	–3.17	3.20	3.14	3.97	2.08	2.87	2.82	3.57	1.82	2.52	2.48	3.15
Net Present Value	**$13.1 million**															

EXHIBIT 18-6 Cash flows and net present value.

EXHIBIT 18-7 AB-100 capsule production and sales parameters for the base-case model.

Model Parameter	Base-Case Value
Production cost, capsules	$0.05/unit
Sales volume, capsules per machine	400/year
Initial retail price, capsules	$0.60/unit
Retail price growth, capsules	5%/year

Values in $M *(except where noted)*	Year 1				Year 2				Year 3				Year 4			
	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Sales, machines					6.24	7.80	7.80	9.36	6.46	8.07	8.07	9.69	6.68	8.36	8.36	10.03
Sales Volume, machines (units/qtr)					*40,000*	*50,000*	*50,000*	*60,000*	*46,000*	*57,500*	*57,500*	*69,000*	*52,900*	*66,125*	*66,125*	*79,350*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, machines ($/unit)					*156*	*156*	*156*	*156*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*126*	*126*	*126*	*126*
Sales, capsules					1.44	3.24	5.04	7.20	9.30	11.47	13.65	16.25	19.17	21.79	24.42	27.56
Sales Volume, capsules (units/qtr)					*4,000,000*	*9,000,000*	*14,000,000*	*20,000,000*	*24,600,000*	*30,350,000*	*36,100,000*	*43,000,000*	*48,290,000*	*54,902,500*	*61,515,000*	*69,450,000*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, capsules ($/unit)					*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.40*	*0.40*	*0.40*	*0.40*
Total Revenue					**7.68**	**11.04**	**12.84**	**16.56**	**15.76**	**19.55**	**21.72**	**25.94**	**25.85**	**30.15**	**32.77**	**37.59**
Product Development	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25												
Equipment and Tooling			2.00	2.00												
Production Ramp-up				1.00	1.00											
Marketing and Support				6.25	6.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
Production, machines					2.45	3.00	3.00	3.55	2.78	3.41	3.41	4.05	3.16	3.89	3.89	4.61
Production, capsules					0.20	0.45	0.70	1.00	1.23	1.52	1.81	2.15	2.41	2.75	3.08	3.47
Total Costs	**1.25**	**1.25**	**3.25**	**10.50**	**9.90**	**4.70**	**4.95**	**5.80**	**5.26**	**6.18**	**6.47**	**7.45**	**6.82**	**7.88**	**8.21**	**9.34**
Period Cash Flow	**–1.25**	**–1.25**	**–3.25**	**–10.50**	**–2.22**	**6.34**	**7.89**	**10.76**	**10.50**	**13.37**	**15.25**	**18.50**	**19.03**	**22.26**	**24.56**	**28.25**
Period Present Value	–1.23	–1.21	–3.09	–9.80	–2.04	5.71	6.99	9.37	8.98	11.24	12.60	15.02	15.19	17.46	18.93	21.41
Net Present Value	**$125.5 million**															

EXHIBIT 18-8 Cash flows and net present value for coffee makers and capsules.

more than 400 capsules per machine per year; however, it is assumed that some machine sales are to existing consumers of the capsules, and thus not all the capsule sales are incremental.) Accordingly, we will augment the financial model to include ongoing capsule sales for each coffee maker sold. Capsules cost $0.05/unit to produce and have a retail price of $0.60/unit, a price that is increasing at 5%/year, and the same margins at the retail and distributor levels. These additional base-case model parameters are listed in Exhibit 18-7.

Exhibit 18-8 displays the cash flows and NPV analysis for coffee makers and capsules. The resulting NPV of $125.5M shows that considering the capsule sales has a tremendous impact on the business projection of the AB-100, with a profit almost 10 times that of selling machines alone. In fact, the coffee makers could be sold at a financial loss if customers would still purchase the coffee capsules.

Supporting Go/No-Go and Major Investment Decisions

The NPV of this project, according to the base-case model, is positive, so the model supports and is consistent with the decision to proceed with development. This decision would typically be considered at each major project milestone, and in particular at the reviews concluding each project phase.

It is helpful to put the NPV into context of the overall investment budget. In the AB-100 case, to achieve the expected return of $125.5M in NPV, an investment of $17.4M is necessary. This is seen in Exhibit 18-8 as the sum of the negative present values of cash flows for the first five quarters (until the project begins to yield positive cash flow).

This type of financial modeling can also be used to support major investment decisions. Say, for example, that the company was deciding between two different production facilities with different production, equipment, and ramp-up costs. The team could develop a model for each of the two scenarios and then compare the NPVs. The scenario with the higher NPV would be the one with greater profitability. We now consider sensitivity analysis as a technique for readily understanding multiple scenarios for various product development decisions.

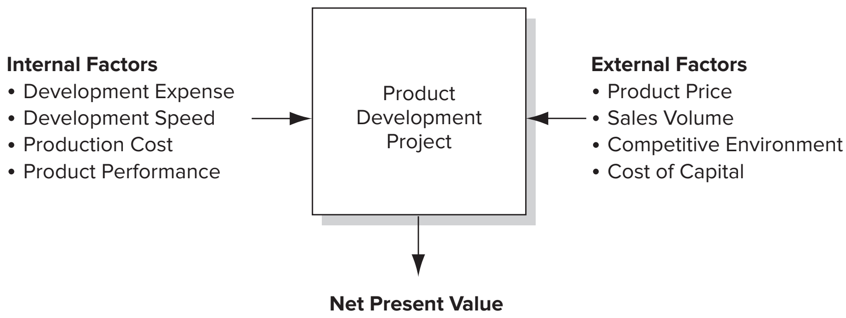
Step 2: Perform Sensitivity Analysis

Sensitivity analysis modifies the base-case financial model to answer "what-if" questions by calculating the change in NPV corresponding to a change in specific factors included in the model. Both internal and external factors influence project value. *Internal factors* are those over which the development team has a high degree of influence, including development program expense, development speed, production cost, and product performance. *External factors* are those that the team cannot arbitrarily change, including the competitive environment (e.g., market response, actions of competitors), sales volume, product price, and cost of capital. (There may be disagreement over whether price is an internal or external factor. Nevertheless, there is little disagreement that price is strongly influenced by the prices of competitive products and that it is coupled to sales volume.) While external factors are not directly controlled by the product development team, it is still useful to understand the project's sensitivity to such influences. The external and internal factors are shown in Exhibit 18-9.

Development Cost Example

As a first example, let us consider the sensitivity of NPV to changes in product development cost. By making incremental changes to development cost while holding other factors constant, we can see the incremental impact on project NPV. For example, what will be the change in NPV if development cost is decreased by 20%? This would lower the total development spending from \$5M to \$4M. If development time remains one year, then the spending per quarter would decrease from \$1.25M to \$1M.

EXHIBIT 18-9
Key factors influencing product development profitability.



Values in $M *(except where noted)*	Year 1				Year 2				Year 3				Year 4			
	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Sales, machines					6.24	7.80	7.80	9.36	6.46	8.07	8.07	9.69	6.68	8.36	8.36	10.03
Sales Volume, machines (units/qtr)					*40,000*	*50,000*	*50,000*	*60,000*	*46,000*	*57,500*	*57,500*	*69,000*	*52,900*	*66,125*	*66,125*	*79,350*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, machines ($/unit)					*156*	*156*	*156*	*156*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*126*	*126*	*126*	*126*
Sales, capsules					1.44	3.24	5.04	7.20	9.30	11.47	13.65	16.25	19.17	21.79	24.42	27.56
Sales Volume, capsules (units/qtr)					*4,000,000*	*9,000,000*	*14,000,000*	*20,000,000*	*24,600,000*	*30,350,000*	*36,100,000*	*43,000,000*	*48,290,000*	*54,902,500*	*61,515,000*	*69,450,000*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, capsules ($/unit)					*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.40*	*0.40*	*0.40*	*0.40*
Total Revenue					**7.68**	**11.04**	**12.84**	**16.56**	**15.76**	**19.55**	**21.72**	**25.94**	**25.85**	**30.15**	**32.77**	**37.59**
Product Development	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00												
Equipment and Tooling			2.00	2.00												
Production Ramp-up				1.00	1.00											
Marketing and Support				6.25	6.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
Production, machines					2.45	3.00	3.00	3.55	2.78	3.41	3.41	4.05	3.16	3.89	3.89	4.61
Production, capsules					0.20	0.45	0.70	1.00	1.23	1.52	1.81	2.15	2.41	2.75	3.08	3.47
Total Costs	**1.00**	**1.00**	**3.00**	**10.25**	**9.90**	**4.70**	**4.95**	**5.80**	**5.26**	**6.18**	**6.47**	**7.45**	**6.82**	**7.88**	**8.21**	**9.34**
Period Cash Flow	**–1.00**	**–1.00**	**–3.00**	**–10.25**	**–2.22**	**6.34**	**7.89**	**10.76**	**10.50**	**13.37**	**15.25**	**18.50**	**19.03**	**22.26**	**24.56**	**28.25**
Period Present Value	–0.98	–0.97	–2.85	–9.56	–2.04	5.71	6.99	9.37	8.98	11.24	12.60	15.02	15.19	17.46	18.93	21.41
Net Present Value	**$126.5 million**															

EXHIBIT 18-10 AB-100 financial model with 20% decrease in development spending.

This change is simply entered into the model and the resulting NPV is calculated. This change to the AB-100 base-case model is shown in Exhibit 18-10. In doing so, we find that a 20% decrease in product development cost will change NPV to $126.5M. This represents an increase of slightly less than $1M, which is 0.76% of the base NPV. This is an extremely simple case; we assume we can achieve the same project goals by spending $1M less on development, and we therefore have increased the project value by the present value of the $1M in savings accrued over a time period of one year.

The AB-100 product development cost sensitivity analysis for a range of changes is shown in Exhibit 18-11. The values in the table are computed by entering the changes corresponding to each scenario into the base-case model and noting the results. It is often useful to know the absolute dollar changes in NPV as well as the relative percentage changes, so we show both in the sensitivity table.

Change in Product Development Cost, %	Product Development Cost, $M	Change in Product Development Cost, $M	Change in NPV, %	NPV, $M	Change in NPV, $M
50	7.5	2.5	–1.91	123.14	–2.39
20	6.0	1.0	–0.76	124.58	–0.96
10	5.5	0.5	–0.38	125.06	–0.48
base	5.0	base	0	125.54	0
–10	4.5	–0.5	0.38	126.02	0.48
–20	4.0	–1.0	0.76	126.50	0.96
–50	2.5	–2.5	1.91	127.93	2.39

EXHIBIT 18-11 AB-100 product development cost sensitivities.

Development Time Example

As a second example, we calculate the development time sensitivities for the AB-100 model. Consider the impact on project NPV of a 25% increase in development time from four quarters to five quarters. This increase in development time would also delay the start of production ramp-up, marketing efforts, and product sales. To perform the sensitivity analysis, we must make several assumptions about the changes. In this case, we assume the same total amount of development cost, even though we will increase the time period over which the spending occurs, thus lowering the rate of spending from \$1.25M to \$1.0M per quarter. We also assume that there is a fixed window for sales, which starts as soon as the product enters the market and ends at a fixed date in the future (the fourth quarter of year 4). Note that these assumptions are unique to this development project; other projects would require different assumptions. For example, we might have instead assumed that the sales window simply shifts in time by one quarter. The change to the AB-100 financial model is shown in Exhibit 18-12. We find that a 25% increase in development time will decrease NPV to \$110.4M. This represents a decrease of \$15.1M, or 12.1% of base NPV.

Exhibit 18-13 presents the development time sensitivities for a range of changes one to two quarters faster or slower than the base case. This analysis also makes certain assumptions regarding the sales window, timing of price increases, and seasonal sales distribution in the partial years. Note the relationship between changes in development time and changes in NPV, and in particular the huge benefit of getting to market early in this case.

Sensitivities can be computed for each of the external and internal factors included in the base-case model. Note that the competitive environment is not explicitly contained in the model, so we would explore sensitivity to competition by considering the effects of pricing and sales volume changes in the model. These sensitivity analyses inform the team about which factors in the model have a substantial influence on NPV. This information is useful in helping the team understand which factors should be studied in more detail to refine and improve the base-case model. The information is also useful in making trade-off decisions, as discussed later.

Values in \$M *(except where noted)*	Year 1				Year 2				Year 3				Year 4			
	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Sales, machines						7.80	7.80	9.36	6.46	8.07	8.07	9.69	6.68	8.36	8.36	10.03
Sales Volume, machines (units/qtr)						*50,000*	*50,000*	*60,000*	*46,000*	*57,500*	*57,500*	*69,000*	*52,900*	*66,125*	*66,125*	*79,350*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, machines (\$/unit)						*156*	*156*	*156*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*140*	*126*	*126*	*126*	*126*
Sales, capsules						1.80	3.60	5.76	7.79	9.96	12.13	14.74	17.58	20.20	22.83	25.98
Sales Volume, capsules (units/qtr)						*5,000,000*	*10,000,000*	*16,000,000*	*20,600,000*	*26,350,000*	*32,100,000*	*39,000,000*	*44,290,000*	*50,902,500*	*57,515,000*	*65,450,000*
Unit Wholesale Revenue, capsules (\$/unit)						*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.36*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.38*	*0.40*	*0.40*	*0.40*	*0.40*
Total Revenue						**9.60**	**11.40**	**15.12**	**14.25**	**18.03**	**20.21**	**24.43**	**24.26**	**28.56**	**31.18**	**36.00**
Product Development	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00											
Equipment and Tooling				2.00	2.00											
Production Ramp-up					1.00	1.00										
Marketing and Support					6.25	6.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25	1.25
Production, machines						3.00	3.00	3.55	2.78	3.41	3.41	4.05	3.16	3.89	3.89	4.61
Production, capsules						0.25	0.50	0.80	1.03	1.32	1.61	1.95	2.21	2.55	2.88	3.27
Total Costs	**1.00**	**1.00**	**1.00**	**3.00**	**10.25**	**10.50**	**4.75**	**5.60**	**5.06**	**5.98**	**6.27**	**7.25**	**6.62**	**7.68**	**8.01**	**9.14**
Period Cash Flow	**–1.00**	**–1.00**	**–1.00**	**–3.00**	**–10.25**	**–0.90**	**6.65**	**9.52**	**9.19**	**12.05**	**13.94**	**17.18**	**17.64**	**20.88**	**23.17**	**26.87**
Period Present Value	–0.98	–0.97	–0.95	–2.80	–9.40	–0.81	5.89	8.29	7.86	10.13	11.52	13.95	14.08	16.37	17.86	20.35
Net Present Value	**\$110.4 million**															

EXHIBIT 18-12 AB-100 financial model with 25% increase in development time.

Change in Product Development Time, %	Product Development Time, Quarters	Change in Product Development Time, Quarters	Change in NPV, %	NPV, $M	Change in NPV, $M
50	6	2	−30.31	87.49	−38.05
25	5	1	−12.06	110.40	−15.14
base	4	base	0	125.54	0
−25	3	−1	13.01	141.87	16.33
−50	2	−2	25.84	157.98	32.44

EXHIBIT 18-13 AB-100 product development time sensitivities.

Understanding Uncertainties

Sensitivity analysis generally reveals that NPV is highly dependent on uncertainties in some base-case input values and less dependent on others. In addition, some of the input values used to compute the base case are more uncertain than others. For example, forecasted sales volume may be more uncertain than estimated unit production cost. By assuming a range of high and low values for any uncertain inputs in the financial analysis, the team can compute a range of predicted values for NPV. The high and low values can be thought of as defining the range within which the team is highly confident the actual outcomes will fall. This analysis can be summarized graphically in a *tornado chart*, showing the effect of each uncertainty on NPV. Parameters are shown in order of decreasing impact, giving the graph its tornado (funnel) shape.

Indeed, some of the input values in the AB-100 base-case analysis are fairly precisely known (e.g., estimated production costs), while other model values are less certain (e.g., sales volume). Uncertainty ranges of key parameter values are given in Exhibit 18-14. Changing these inputs in the model one at a time, holding everything else constant, yields the listed changes in NPV. Exhibit 18-15 shows these results as a tornado chart. As expected, variances of sales volumes and capsule price show the greatest impact on NPV; however, note that while capsule sales provide the vast majority of revenues and profits, several of the largest effects are due to ranges of the coffee machine sales values (because coffee machine sales lead to coffee capsule sales).

Step 3: Use Sensitivity Analysis to Understand Trade-Offs

Why would a product development team want to change the factors under its control? For instance, why should development time be increased if the change lowers the NPV of the project? Typically, the development team will make such a change only if some other offsetting gain is expected, such as a better-quality product with higher sales volumes. We therefore need to understand the relative magnitude of these financial interactions.

	Base-Case	Worst-Case Analysis			Best-Case Analysis		
Model Parameter	**Value**	**Value**	**NPV**	**% Δ NPV**	**Value**	**NPV**	**% Δ NPV**
Product development	$5M	$7M	123.6	–1.5%	$4M	126.5	0.8%
Equipment and tooling	$4M	$5M	124.6	–0.7%	$3M	126.5	0.7%
Production ramp-up	$2M	$2.5M	125.1	–0.4%	$1.5M	126.0	0.4%
Market launch	$10M	$15M	120.9	–3.7%	$8M	127.4	1.5%
Marketing and support	$5M/year	$6M	122.8	–2.2%	$4M	128.3	2.2%
Production direct cost, machines	$55/unit	$60	122.7	–2.3%	$50	128.4	2.3%
Production overhead	$1M/year	$1.2M	125.0	–0.4%	$0.8M	126.0	0.4%
Initial sales volume, machines	200K units/year	100K	44.8	–64.3%	250K	165.9	32.1%
Sales volume growth, machines	15%/year	–5%	105.9	–15.6%	25%	136.1	8.4%
Initial retail sale price, machines	$260/unit	$225	114.7	–8.6%	$295	136.4	8.6%
Retail price growth, machines	–10%/year	–15%	121.2	–3.4%	5%	139.4	11.0%
Production cost, capsules	$0.05/unit	$0.055	123.9	–1.3%	$0.045	127.2	1.3%
Sales volume, capsules per machine	400/year	250	83.4	–33.6%	600	181.7	44.8%
Initial retail price, capsules	$0.60/unit	$0.55	114.8	–8.6%	$0.70	147.1	17.1%
Retail price growth, capsules	5%/year	0%	116.8	–6.9%	5%	125.5	0.0%
Distributor and retail margin	40% combined	50%	90.6	–27.8%	35%	143.0	13.9%

EXHIBIT 18-14 Base-case, worst-case, and best-case values for the model parameters and their effects on the base-case NPV of $125.5M. Note that each case considers changing only one parameter at a time, keeping all others at base-case values.

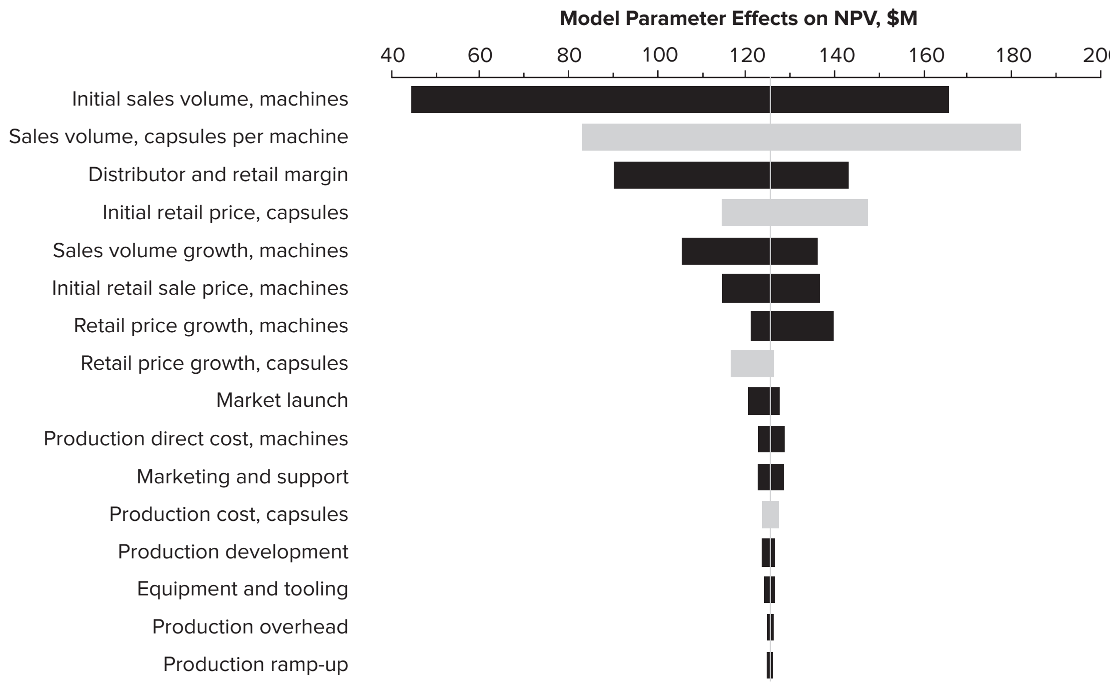


EXHIBIT 18-15 Tornado chart illustrating the effects on NPV of the uncertainty ranges for the model parameters listed in Exhibit 18-14. Dark bars represent machine values. Light bars represent capsule values.

Potential Interactions

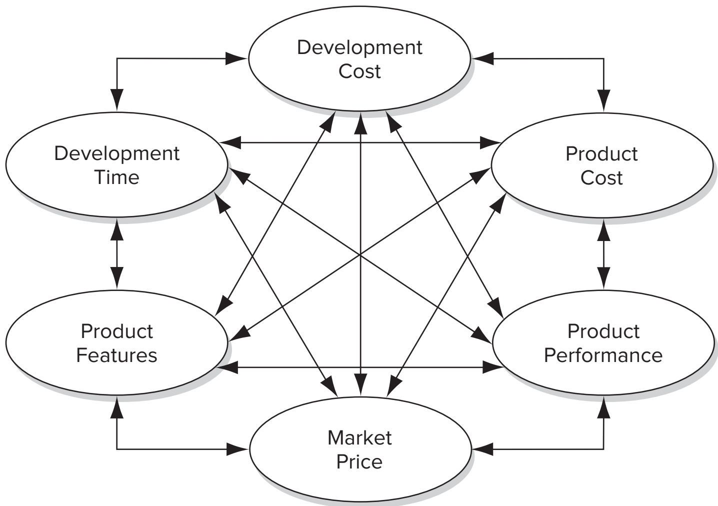
Development teams attempt to manage numerous potential interactions between the internally driven factors or with external ones. These interactions are shown schematically in Exhibit 18-16. Coupling between any two factors depends on the characteristics of the specific product and its context. In many cases, the interactions are trade-offs. For example, decreasing development time may lead to lower product performance. Increased product performance may require additional product cost; however, some of these interactions are more complex than a simple trade-off. For example, decreasing product development time may require an increase in development spending but may allow the product to reach the market sooner and thus increase sales volume. On the other hand, increasing development cost or time may enhance product performance and therefore increase sales volume and/or allow higher prices.

While accurate modeling of externally driven factors (e.g., price, sales volume) is often very difficult, the quantitative model can nevertheless support critical decisions. Recall from our initial examples that the AB-100 development team was considering increasing development spending to develop a higher-quality product, which they hoped would lead to greater sales volume. The quantitative model can support this decision by answering the question of how much the sales volume would have to increase to justify the additional spending on development. We have calculated the sensitivity of NPV to changes in development cost (Exhibit 18-11). We can also calculate the sensitivity of NPV to changes in sales volume, as shown in Exhibit 18-17.

Say that the AB-100 development team is considering actions that will incur a 20% increase in development cost. From Exhibit 18-11, we found that this increase in spending will decrease NPV by \$0.96M. Now, what increase in initial sales volume of coffee makers would be necessary to compensate for the decrease in NPV? From Exhibit 18-17, we know that a 10% increase in sales volume would increase NPV by \$16.1M. It follows, under assumptions of linearity, that a 0.60% increase (10% × \$0.96M/\$16.1M) in initial sales volume to 201,200 units/yr would increase NPV by \$0.96M. To summarize, a 20% *increase* in development cost would *decrease* NPV by \$0.96M. Merely a 0.60% *increase* in sales volume is needed to offset the drop.

EXHIBIT 18-16
Potential interactions between project factors.

Source: Adapted from Smith, Preston G. and Donald G. Reinertsen, *Developing Products in Half the Time: New Rules, New Tools*, second edition, Wiley, New York, 1997.



Change in Initial Sales Volume, %	Initial Sales Volume, thousands/year	Change in Initial Sales Volume, thousands/year	Change in NPV, %	NPV, $M	Change in NPV, $M
30	260	60	38.6	174.0	48.4
20	240	40	25.7	157.8	32.3
10	220	20	12.9	141.7	16.1
base	200	base	0	125.5	0
–10	180	–20	–12.9	109.4	–16.1
–20	160	–40	–25.7	93.3	–32.3
–30	140	–60	–38.6	77.1	–48.4

EXHIBIT 18-17 AB-100 sales volume sensitivities.

While the precise impact of the increased development spending on sales volume is not known, the model does provide a helpful guide for what magnitude of sales volume increase is needed to offset particular increases in development cost. Note that these sensitivities are highly project specific. Surely a different product without associated sales of highly profitable consumables would exhibit very different sensitivities and trade-offs.

Trade-Off Rules

The near linearity of many sensitivity analyses allows the team to compute some *trade-off rules* to inform day-to-day decision making. These rules take the form of change in NPV per unit change of the internal and external factors. For example, what is the reduction in NPV due to a one-quarter delay in development time? What is the impact of a 10% development budget overrun? What is the effect of a $1 per unit increase in manufacturing cost? The trade-off rules are easily computed from the financial model and can be used to inform the team of the relative magnitude of the sensitivities of the project profitability on factors (at least partially) under its control. Exhibit 18-18 shows several rules for the AB-100.

The trade-off rules can help answer questions such as the two asked in the chapter introduction.

- *Should the team increase development spending and production cost to add an additional feature, which could lead to greater sales volume?* The feature in question would add 10% to the product development budget and increase production costs by approximately $3/unit. These changes would reduce the expected NPV by $2.2M. To offset this would require only a 1.4% increase in sales of the coffee machines; however, a marketing study concluded that the feature would not likely have a positive effect on overall sales because the feature was already included on other models in the product line.
- *Would the project be profitable if the retail price is reduced by 10% due to competitive pricing pressure?* Dropping the price by 10% would reduce NPV by $8M. While this is significant, the resulting NPV of $117.5M is still highly attractive.

Factor	Trade-Off Rule	Comments
Product development cost	$480,000 per 10% change	Additional funds spent or saved on development is worth the present value of those funds.
Product development time	$16.3M for 1 quarter less −$15.1M for 1 quarter more	This nonlinear trade-off makes specific assumptions about timing of sales and pricing.
Equipment and tooling cost	$376,000 per 10% change	Incremental capital expenditures such as tooling are worth the present value of those expenses.
Production cost, machines	$575,000 per $1 change	A $1 decrease in unit cost raises unit profits margins by the same amount.
Retail price, machines	$310,000 per $1 change	A $1 increase in retail price raises profits by the manufacturer's share, which is 60% of retail.
Sales volume, machines	$1.6M per 1% change	Increasing sales is a powerful way to increase profits. Coffee maker sales also drives sales of coffee capsules.
Capsule consumption per machine	$1.1M per 1% change	Capsule sales make up the largest portion of revenues.

EXHIBIT 18-18 Trade-off rules for the AB-100 project highlight the effects on NPV of various operation factors in the financial model.

Limitations of Quantitative Analysis

Base-case financial modeling and sensitivity analysis are powerful tools for supporting product development decisions, but these techniques have important limitations. One school of thought believes that rigorous financial analyses are required to bring discipline and control to the product development process; however, detractors argue that quantitative analysis suffers from some of the following problems:

- ***Analysis focuses only on measurable quantities.*** Quantitative techniques like NPV emphasize and rely on that which is measurable; however, many critical factors impacting product development projects are difficult to measure accurately. In effect, quantitative techniques encourage investment in measurable assets and discourage investment in intangible assets.
- ***Analysis depends on validity of assumptions and data.*** Product development teams may be given a false sense of security by the seemingly precise result of an NPV calculation; however, *such precision in no way implies accuracy*. We can develop a highly sophisticated financial model of a product development project that computes project NPV to the fifth decimal place, yet if the assumptions and data of our model are not correct, the value calculated will not be correct. Consider the AB-100 development time sensitivity example's assumption of a fixed product sales window. This assumption was useful, but its integrity can easily be questioned. Indeed, a different assumption could give dramatically different results.
- ***Teams can easily game the analysis.*** It has been said that one can achieve any NVP they like by tweaking the model values. This is certainly true. In the AB-100 example,

changing all of the model parameters to the best-case or worst-case values would either triple the NPV or make it negative, respectively. This illustrates the necessity for both the team and its managers to understand the model in sufficient depth to challenge the underlying assumptions.

These concerns are generally quite valid; however, in our opinion, they are largely associated with naive application of the methods of the quantitative analysis or arise from the use of financial analysis within a poorly managed product development process. We reject the notion that quantitative analysis should not be done just because problems can arise from the blind application of the results. Rather, development teams should understand the strengths and limitations of the techniques and should be fully aware of how the models work and on what assumptions they are based. Furthermore, qualitative analysis, as discussed in the next section, can remedy some of the inherent weaknesses in the quantitative techniques.

Step 4: Consider the Influence of Qualitative Factors

Many factors influencing development projects are difficult to quantify because they are complex or uncertain. We refer to such factors as *qualitative* factors. After providing a conceptual framework for qualitative analysis, we use examples from the AB-100 to illustrate how the analysis is carried out.

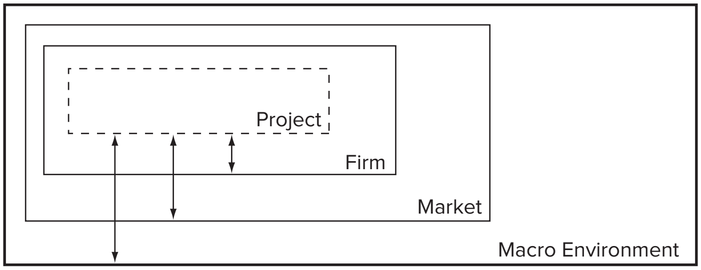
Consider the following questions about the AB-100 project: Will knowledge gained from the AB-100 development spill over and be of benefit to other development projects? How will competitors react to the introduction of the AB-100? Will competitors modify their own product lines in response? Will there be significant fluctuations in the dollar/euro exchange rate that would change the cost of component parts?

Our quantitative model implicitly accounts for these and many other issues with several broad assumptions. The model assumes that decisions made by the project team do not affect actions of groups external to the project, or alternatively that the external forces do not change the team's actions. This important assumption of our model is common to many financial models and is called the *ceteris paribus* (other things being equal) assumption.

Projects Interact with the Firm, the Market, and the Macro Environment

Decisions made within a project in general do have important consequences for the firm as a whole, for competitors and customers in the market, and even for the macroeconomic (macro) environment in which the market operates (Exhibit 18-19). Similarly, events and actions outside of a development project often significantly impact its value. Qualitative analysis focuses largely on these interactions. The most basic approach to qualitative analysis is to consider (1) the interactions between the project and the firm as a whole, (2) the interactions between the project and the market in which the product is sold, and (3) the interactions between the project and the macro environment.

EXHIBIT 18-19
The broader context of a development project.



Interactions between the Project and the Firm as a Whole

One assumption embedded in the quantitative model is that firm profit will be maximized if project profit is maximized; however, development decisions must be made in the context of the firm as a whole. The two key interactions between the project and the firm are *externalities* and *strategic fit.*

Externalities An externality is an "unpriced" cost or benefit imposed on one part of the firm by the actions of another; costs are known as negative externalities and benefits as positive externalities. An example of a positive externality would be development learning on one project that benefits other current or future projects but is paid for by the first project. An example of a negative externality could be cannibalization of sales of existing products due to the launch of the new product. How should projects account for such benefits gained at no additional cost? How should a project account for resources spent that benefit not only itself, but also other current or future projects?

Strategic fit Decisions of the development team must not only benefit the project, but also be consistent with the firm's overall product plan and technology strategy. For example, how well does a proposed new product, technology, or feature fit with the firm's resources and objectives? Is it compatible with the firm's need to maintain its technical excellence? Is it compatible with the firm's branding emphasis on uniqueness? Even if the project NPV is favorable, does the firm have other projects that (perhaps as a portfolio) offer superior NPV?

Because of their complexity and uncertainty, externalities and strategic fit are very difficult to quantify. Sometimes cross-project externalities are modeled quantitatively using a multi-project NPV analysis, possibly including multiple scenarios; however, generally they are considered qualitatively. See Chapter 4, Product Planning, for discussion of some strategic planning issues that cut across multiple projects. See also Appendix B at the end of this chapter for an overview of scenario analysis using decision trees.

Interactions between the Project and the Market

We have modeled explicitly only price and volume as the key externally driven factors. In effect, we have held the actions and reactions of the market constant. To model project value accurately, we must relax the *ceteris paribus* assumption to recognize that a development team's decisions impact the market and that market events impact the development project. The market environment is impacted by the actions of not only the development team but also three other groups:

- ***Competitors:*** Competitors may provide products in direct competition or products that compete indirectly as substitutes.
- ***Customers:*** Customers' expectations, incomes, or tastes may change. Changes may be independent or may be driven by new conditions in markets for complementary or substitute products.
- ***Suppliers:*** Suppliers of components and resources to the new product are subject to their own markets' competitive pressures. These pressures may, indirectly through the value chain, impact the new product.

Actions and reactions of these groups most often impact expected price and volume, but they can have second-order effects as well. For example, consider a new competitor that has rapid product development cycles and that seems to value market share rather than short-term profitability. Clearly, the entrance of such a new competitor would change our expected price and volume. Further, we may attempt to accelerate our own development efforts in response. Thus, the competitor's actions may impact not only our sales volume forecasts but also our planned development schedule. Often these cases can be considered analytically by simulating a range of market scenarios and their impact on the project.

Interactions between the Project and the Macro Environment

We must relax the *ceteris paribus* assumption to take into account key macro factors:

- ***Major economic shifts:*** Examples of economic shifts that impact the value of development projects include changes in foreign exchange rates, materials prices, labor costs, consumer disposable incomes, business investment levels, and cost of investment capital.
- ***Government regulations:*** New regulations can destroy a product development opportunity. On the other hand, a shift in the regulatory structure of an industry can also spawn entire new industries.
- ***Social trends:*** As with government regulations, new social concerns such as increased environmental awareness can also destroy existing industries and/or create new ones.

Macro factors can have important impacts on development project value; however, these effects are difficult to model quantitatively because of inherent complexity and uncertainty. The product development team for the AB-100 faced many qualitative issues during development of the product. We present two of the key qualitative issues that the team encountered and describe the impacts of these issues on the project. The examples illustrate not only the limitations of quantitative analysis but also the importance of qualitative analysis.

Carrying Out Qualitative Analysis

For most project teams, the most appropriate qualitative analysis method is simply to consider and discuss the interactions between the project and the firm, the project and the market, and the project and the macro environment. Then the team considers these interactions in concert with the results of the quantitative analysis to determine the most appropriate relative emphasis on development speed, development expense, manufacturing cost, and product performance. We provide two examples that follow of the qualitative analysis for the AB-100.

While we believe this informal approach is most appropriate for decisions made at the level of the project team, more structured techniques are available, including strategic analysis, game theory, Monte Carlo simulation, and scenario analysis techniques. References for each of these techniques are included in the bibliography.

Decrease in Price of a Substitute Product

Several competing coffee makers can be considered substitute products for the AB-100. Even though the AB-100 team initially priced the product competitively, after the market introduction a competitor lowered the price of their most similar product. The AB-100 project was faced with a change in the competitive environment caused by market conditions responding to the AB-100.

Here it is clear that the AB-100 project cannot be considered in isolation. The original sales volume assumptions were no longer valid. While this change could not be anticipated with certainty, the quantitative analysis was able to show the sensitivity of NPV to changes in sales volume, and the team was able to quickly grasp the magnitude of the change in project value. The combination of quantitative and qualitative analysis convinced the team to move quickly and to respond by reducing the retail price of the AB-100.

Option Value of a Platform Product

The AB-100 was not the first coffee maker in its product line using the capsule system as a platform. The initial development of the coffee capsules and the key components of the coffee machine was a very large investment. Many of the development decisions made at that time determined the ease with which future generation products could be built around the same basic technological platform. Development of a platform gives the firm the option to produce future models based on market response to the initial products and other future considerations. In some cases, it makes sense to invest in a platform even if doing so would not make economic sense in the context of a single product. Success of a platform-based product strategy therefore relies upon not only a suitable product architecture but also consideration of the long-term payback from the resulting product family.

Summary

Economic analysis is a useful tool for supporting decisions made during a product development project and to compute the expected payback time and financial returns.

- The method consists of four steps:
    1. Build a base-case financial model to compute expected profit.
    2. Perform sensitivity analysis to understand the key assumptions of the model.
    3. Use sensitivity analysis to understand project trade-offs.
    4. Consider the influence of qualitative factors on project success.
- Quantitative financial analysis based on NPV is practiced widely in business. The technique forces product development teams to look objectively at their projects and their decisions. At the very least, they must go through the process of creating realistic

project schedules and budgets. Financial modeling provides a method for quantitatively understanding the key profit drivers and uncertainties of the project.

- Quantitative techniques such as financial modeling and analysis rest upon assumptions about the external environment. This environment is constantly changing and may be influenced by a development team's decisions or by other uncontrollable factors. Further, quantitative analysis, by its very nature, considers only that which is measurable, yet many key factors influencing the project are highly complex or uncertain and are thus difficult to quantify.
- Qualitative analysis emphasizes the importance of such difficult-to-quantify issues by asking specifically what the interactions are between the project and the rest of the firm, the market, and the macro environment.
- Together, quantitative and qualitative techniques can help ensure that the team makes economically sound development decisions.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at
www.pdd-resources.net

For a thorough review of discounted cash flow techniques as well as option theory from a general financial perspective, see the classic text on corporate finance.

Brealey, Richard A., Stewart C. Myers, and Franklin Allen, *Principles of Corporate Finance,* twelfth edition, McGraw-Hill, New York, 2017.

Bayus provides an interesting analysis of trade-offs involving development time and product performance factors.

Bayus, Barry L., "Speed-to-Market and New Product Performance Trade-offs," *Journal of Product Innovation Management,* Vol. 14, 1997, pp. 485–497.

Smith and Reinertsen include a thorough discussion of how to model the economics of development time.

Smith, Preston G., and Donald G. Reinertsen, *Developing Products in Half the Time: New Rules, New Tools,* second edition, Wiley, New York, 1997.

Michael Porter's strategic analysis techniques have become standard fare for business school students. His 1980 text on strategic analysis has been very influential. In his 1985 book, Porter presents a general structured approach to scenario analysis, a technique originally developed by Royal Dutch Shell for planning under uncertainty.

Porter, Michael E., *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analyzing Industries and Competitors,* The Free Press, New York, 1980.

Porter, Michael E., *Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance,* The Free Press, New York, 1985.

Game theory can be used to analyze competitive interactions. Oster provides a view of strategic analysis and game theory from a microeconomic perspective.

Oster, Sharon M., *Modern Competitive Analysis,* third edition, Oxford University Press, New York, 1999.

Copeland and Antikarov provide a detailed treatment of real options and analysis of projects with uncertainty and decision points.

Copeland, Tom, and Vladimir Antikarov, *Real Options: A Practitioner's Guide,* Texere, New York, 2003.

Exercises

1. List five reasons firms may choose to pursue a product even if the quantitative analysis reveals a negative NPV.
2. Build a quantitative model to analyze the development and sale of a bicycle light. Assume that you could sell 20,000 units per year for five years at a sales price (wholesale) of $20 per unit and a manufacturing cost of $10 per unit. Assume that production ramp-up expenses would be $20,000, ongoing marketing and support costs would be $2,000 per month, and development would take another 12 months. How much development spending could such a project justify?
3. Compute the trade-off rules for the case described in Exercise 2.
4. Revise the tornado chart in Exhibit 18-15 to show the effect of an increase in development time. Assume that the minimum change in development time is zero, and the maximum change in development time is an increase of one quarter.
5. Consider the economic impact to the AB-100 project if the coffee capsules are recyclable. Assume that 50% of the capsules are returned, with a scrap material value of $0.001/unit, variable cost to recycle capsules of $0.01/unit, and $500,000 per year fixed costs to operate the recycling program. What increased sales volume would compensate for the cost of this recycling program?

Thought Questions

1. Can you think of successful products that never would have been developed if their creators had relied exclusively on a quantitative financial model to justify their efforts? Do these products share any characteristics?
2. One model of the impact of a delay in product introduction is that sales are simply shifted later in time. Another model is that some of the sales are pushed beyond the "window of opportunity" and are lost forever. Can you suggest other models for the implications of an extension of product development time? Is such an extension ever beneficial?
3. How would you use the quantitative analysis method to capture the economic performance of an entire line of products to be developed and introduced over several years?
4. What are various ways that you could consider in a quantitative analysis of the effect of cannibalization of an existing product offered by the same firm?

Appendix A

Time Value of Money and the Net Present Value Technique

This appendix provides a very basic tutorial on net present value for those who are unfamiliar with this concept.

Net present value (NPV) is an intuitive and powerful concept. In essence, NPV is simply a recognition of the fact that a dollar today is worth more than a dollar tomorrow. NPV calculations evaluate the value today (*present value*) of some future income or expense. Say that a bank will give an *interest rate* of 8% per time period (the time period could be a month, a quarter, or a year long). If we invest \$100 today for one time period at an interest rate of 8%, how much will the bank pay out after one time period? If we let r be the interest rate and C be the amount invested, then the amount received after one time period is

$$(1 + r) \times C = (1 + 0.80) \times 100 = (1.08) \times 100 = \$108$$

Thus, if we invest \$100 for one time period at an interest rate of 8%, we will receive \$108 at the end of the time period. In other words, \$100 today is worth \$108 received in the next time period.

Now, let's say that we have invested some amount, C', for one time period at an interest rate r. Let's also say that after the one time period, the amount received back is \$100, and the interest rate is 8%. How much, then, was invested originally? We can find C', the original investment, by doing the reverse of what we did in the previous example:

$$(1 + r) \times C' = \$100$$
$$C = \frac{\$100}{1 + r} = \frac{\$100}{1 + 0.08} = \frac{\$100}{1.08} = \$92.59$$

Thus, if we invest \$92.59 for one time period at an interest rate of 8%, we will receive \$100 at the end of the time period. In other words, \$92.59 today is worth \$100 received in the next time period.

We have just shown how a dollar today is worth more than a dollar tomorrow. Of course, \$100 today is worth \$100. But what is \$100 received *next* time period worth in *today's* dollars? The answer is \$92.59 as we showed in the last example. Stated another way, the *present value* of \$100 received in the next time period is \$92.59 at a *discount rate* of 8%. So, present value is the value in today's dollars of some income received or expense paid out in a future period.

Now let's look at the result of investing \$100 at 8% for longer periods:

One time period: $(1 + r) \times C = (1 + 0.08) \times \$100 = \$108$

Two time periods: $(1 + r) \times (1 + r) \times \$100 = (1 + 0.08)^2 \times \$100 = \$116.64$

Three time periods: $(1 + r) \times (1 + r) \times (1 + r) \times \$100 = (1 + 0.08)^3 \times \$100 = \$125.97$

As we did earlier, let's find the present value of three separate investments of \$100 received after one, two, and three time periods:

One time period: $(1 + r) \times C' = \$100$

$$C' = \frac{\$100}{1 + 0.08} = \$92.59$$

The present value of \$100 received next time period is \$92.59.

Two time periods: $(1 + r) \times (1 + r) \times C' = \$100$

$$C' = \frac{\$100}{(1 + 0.08)^2} = \$85.7$$

The present value of \$100 received after two time periods is \$85.73.

Three time periods: $(1 + r) \times (1 + r) \times (1 + r) \times C' = \$100$

$$C' = \frac{\$100}{(1 + 0.08)^3} = \$79.38$$

The present value of \$100 received after three time periods is \$79.38.

We found the present value of these three separate investments. Let's say instead that we had one investment that paid out \$100 in each of time periods one, two, and three. What would that investment be worth today? The answer is simply the sum of the individual present values, or \$257.70. The sum of the present values is called the *net present value,* or NPV. NPV is the present value of all cash inflows and all cash outflows. The present value of a cash *outflow* is just the negative of a cash *inflow* of the same amount.

We can summarize the present value calculation into a convenient formula. The present value (PV) of an amount C received (or paid out) t time periods from now is

$$PV = \frac{C}{(1 + r)^t}$$

Some calculators have a special present value function on them that can do the calculations quickly. Most computer spreadsheet programs have special financial functions that automatically do the present value calculations. The information required for these special functions is the future amount paid out, the interest rate, and the number of time periods of the investment.

What Discount Rate Should We Use?

The discount rate (also called the discount factor or hurdle rate) to use is the interest rate of our own or our company's "opportunity cost of capital." It is called the opportunity cost of capital because it is the return forgone by investing in the project rather than in other investments. Stated another way, the discount factor is the reward that investors demand for accepting delayed payment. A project that has a positive NPV must be earning more than the opportunity cost of capital and is thus a good investment. Note that many firms apply a constant hurdle rate to all their investment decisions. In recent years, most firms have been using discount factors of 5% to 15%. Large companies generally have an established guideline to determine the discount factor to use in NPV-based analyses. Smaller companies can use their estimated weighted average cost of capital or the rate of return the firm's investors expect. See Brealey and Myers (2017).

Sunk Costs Are Irrelevant for Net Present Value Calculations

In the context of product development decision making, costs that have already been incurred are termed sunk costs. Because sunk costs are past and irreversible outflows, they cannot be affected by present or future decisions, so they should be ignored for NPV calculations. To clarify this point, let's consider an example of the familiar "cut our losses" argument: "We've already spent over $600 million and nine years with no product to show for it, and you want me to approve another $90 million? That's crazy!" While this type of argument might sound logical, in fact the amount of money already spent is not important for the decision of whether or not to spend $90 million more. What is important is how much extra profit will be gained from investing the additional $90 million. Say that the expected profit from product sales is $350 million. Let's look at the NPV of the two options (assume all numbers given are present values):

"Cut Our Losses"		"Invest $90 Million More"	
Additional amount invested:	$0	Additional amount invested:	–$90
Profits from product sales:	0	Profits from product sales:	350
NPV of "cut losses" decision:	$0	NPV of "invest" decision:	$260
Total invested:	–$600	Total invested:	–$690
Total project return:	–$600	Total project return:	–$340

Because the "invest" decision has a positive NPV, the firm should proceed. While it is clear that the firm will lose money on the project in either case, the $600 million already spent is a sunk cost and should not impact the invest-or-cut-losses decision. Of course, the sunk cost argument is a cold analytical perspective; there is a saying that "sunk costs are only relevant to the manager who sunk them." Project managers with a long record of negative total project returns may find that sunk costs are extremely relevant to their ability to get support for future projects.

Appendix B

Modeling Uncertain Cash Flows Using Net Present Value Analysis

Product development projects face many perils. For example, the team may think that the manufacturing cost for a particular new product will be $40 per unit; however, the cost could be much higher or it might even be lower. The team does not know for sure until the product is actually built. The team may forecast sales for the new product, but the forecasts depend on (among other things) when competitors get their versions to the market, and this information will not be available until their products are actually introduced. These uncertainties that are particular to a project are called *project-specific risks.* How should project-specific risks be accounted for? Some development teams increase the discount rate to offset uncertainty about the outcomes; however, such an arbitrary increment in the discount rate would be applied uniformly to both certain and uncertain cash flows. Fortunately, better approaches are available if the team is able to estimate the probabilities of uncertain cash flows.

Instead of using arbitrary adjustments to the discount rate, development teams should strive for realistic forecasting of cash flows. These forecasts can be supplemented with sensitivity analysis to understand the impact of the full range of possible outcomes for the uncertain factors. Project-specific risks should be considered only in the expected cash flows and not in the discount rate.

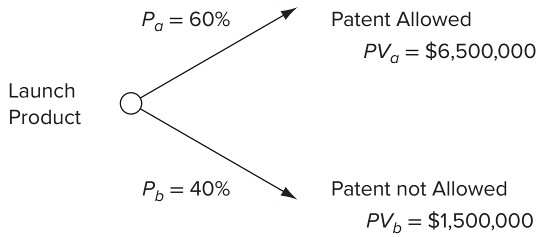
Sensitivity analysis can be performed by systematically varying the model parameters, such as product price or manufacturing cost, to understand how critically the net present value depends on specific values for these parameters. A basic analysis can be performed one variable at a time, as explained in the body of this chapter, or combinations of variables can be adjusted to form realistic scenarios. A more sophisticated analysis can be performed using Monte Carlo simulation based on assumed probability distributions for the parameters in the model.

Note that there is a second type of risk, *general market risk,* which is not specific to the project. General market risk stems from the fact that there are economywide perils, which threaten all businesses and projects. Although entire books on calculating market risk have been written, for our purposes it suffices to say that market risk is typically accounted for by inflating the discount rate.

Analyzing Scenarios

Sometimes project teams face discrete scenarios that are clearly foreseeable and that will have a direct and significant influence on the project outcome. For example, a team may have filed a patent application on a novel and distinctive product concept. If the patent is allowed, then the team expects to face much less of a competitive threat than if the patent is not allowed. These two scenarios can be modeled as a *decision tree,* as shown in Exhibit 18-20. (In this case, there is not an explicit decision, but rather an outcome of an uncertain process. These diagrams are nevertheless called decision trees by convention.)

EXHIBIT 18-20
A situation in which two discrete scenarios can be envisioned.



The two branches of this tree represent the two scenarios the team envisions. The present value of the project can be analyzed for each scenario taken independently. The team can also assign a probability to each scenario. Given these inputs, the team can now calculate the expected net present value for the project accounting for the two possible scenarios:

$$NPV = P_a \times PV_a + P_b \times PV_b \text{ where } P_a + P_b = 1$$

For the situation depicted by the decision tree shown in Exhibit 18-20,

$$NPV = 0.60 \times \$6,500,000 + 0.40 \times \$1,500,000 = \$4,500,000$$

This kind of analysis is appropriate when discrete and distinct scenarios can be envisioned and when these scenarios have substantially different cash flows.

Analyzing Scenarios with Decision Points

When analyzing product development projects, the team should recognize that most development projects can be discontinued or redirected based on the latest information available. Such decision points may occur at the time of major milestones or reviews. This flexibility to expand or contract a project is financially valuable. The notion of decision points with the ability to change an investment is the subject of an entire field of analysis called *real options.* Copeland and Antikarov (2003) provide a detailed treatment of this subject. Here we provide a way to think about scenarios containing decision points.

Consider the scenario depicted in Exhibit 18-21. A team is contemplating the launch of a product in an entirely new category, which is an inherently risky type of project. The team could just launch the project and hope for success, or it could spend time and money testing the product in the marketplace. If it invests in market testing, the team may discover that the product is not viable, in which case it has the option to cancel the project. Alternatively, it

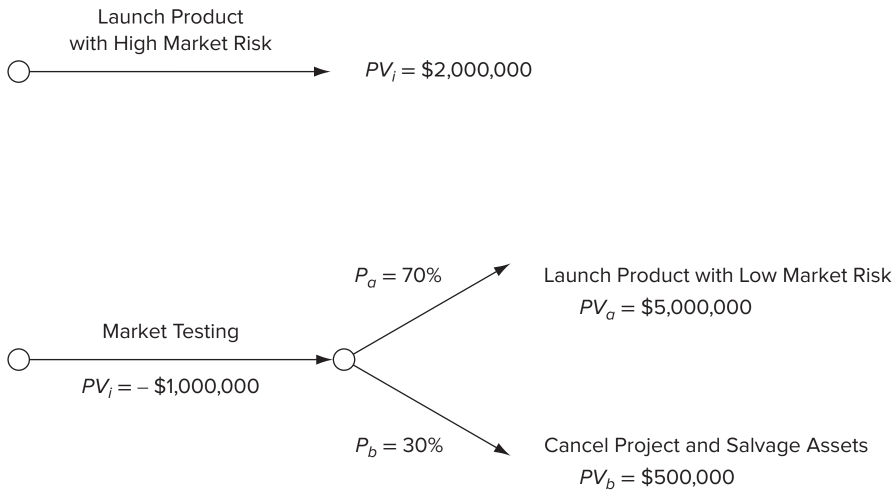


EXHIBIT 18-21 In this situation, the team can either launch the product immediately and face a great deal of market risk or it can test the market and then decide whether to launch the product.

may discover that the market is highly responsive to the new product, in which case it can launch with confidence and a much higher associated expected value of the future cash flows.

As a base case, the team analyzes the value of just launching the product without investigation. Given the team's assessment of the likelihood of success, the present value is \$2 million for this plan. The value of market testing followed by a decision to proceed or not can be analyzed as follows. In this case, the team spends an additional \$1 million for investigation. After investigation, there is a 70% chance that the team will launch the product and reap positive cash flow of \$5 million. There is a 30% chance that the team will decide to cancel the project, reaping only \$0.5 million in salvage value. Thus, the net present value of the project is

$$\begin{aligned} NPV &= PV_i + P_a \times PV_a + P_b \times PV_b \\ &= -\$1{,}000{,}000 + 0.70 \times \$5{,}000{,}000 + 0.30 \times \$500{,}000 \\ &= \$2{,}650{,}000 \end{aligned}$$

Based on these estimates, because the net present value exceeds that of just launching the product without testing, the team would be better off spending the \$1 million to test the market. There are, of course, many factors that influence a decision about whether to launch a product with high uncertainty or to perform further investigation. Economic modeling can be used as one perspective for informing this kind of decision.

CHAPTER NINETEEN

Project Management

Courtesy of Biogen

EXHIBIT 19-1
Biogen's Plegridy Pen offers patients an automatic injection device for administering Plegridy in treatment of relapsing multiple sclerosis.

Biogen, a global biotechnology company, has a portfolio of treatments for multiple sclerosis (MS). Management of relapsing MS sometimes requires periodic medication, either through infusions at a specialized clinic or through self-administered injections. Plegridy (peginterferon beta-1a) is used for the treatment of patients with relapsing MS and is intended for subcutaneous injection. The Plegridy Pen offers patients an automatic injection device they can use to administer Plegridy by themselves (Exhibit 19-1). A patient simply positions the Plegridy Pen on his or her thigh, abdomen, or the back of the upper arm and presses the Plegridy Pen down to administer the drug without needing to attach or see any needles. Having received regulatory approval of the Plegridy drug in a prefilled syringe, Biogen undertook to develop a new, single-use, auto-injection device to provide patients with a different option for administering their medication. Biogen had previously developed another autoinjector device for MS patients and was able to incorporate patient experience and feedback in the design of the Plegridy Pen. However, effective project management was crucial to the successful completion of the project in order to bring the Plegridy Pen to patients as soon as possible.

For all but the simplest products, the product development process involves many people completing a range of different tasks. Successful product development projects result in high-quality, low-cost products while making efficient use of time, money, and other resources. *Project management* is the activity of planning and coordinating resources and tasks to achieve these goals.

Project management involves *project planning* and *project execution.* Project planning includes scheduling the project tasks and determining resource requirements. The project plan is first laid out during the concept development phase, although it is a dynamic entity and continues to evolve throughout the development process. Project execution, sometimes called *project control*, involves coordinating and facilitating the myriad tasks required to complete the project in the face of inevitable unanticipated events and the arrival of new information. Execution is just as important as planning; many teams fail because they do not remain focused on their goals for the duration of the project.

This chapter contains five remaining sections. We first present the fundamentals of task dependencies and timing, along with three tools for representing relationships among project tasks. In the second section, we show how these principles are used to develop an effective product development plan. In the third section, we provide a set of guidelines for completing projects more quickly. After that, we discuss project execution, and finally we present a process for project evaluation and continuous improvement.

Understanding and Representing Tasks

Product development projects involve the completion of hundreds or even thousands of tasks. This section discusses some of the fundamental characteristics of interacting tasks—the "basic physics" of projects. We also present three ways to represent the tasks in a project.

Sequential, Parallel, and Coupled Tasks

Exhibit 19-2 displays the high-level tasks of the Plegridy Pen project. (Biogen's actual project plan included more than 200 tasks.) In this *network diagram*, tasks are represented by boxes, and the dependencies among the tasks are represented by arrows. While some dependencies may involve resource constraints, most of the dependencies involve transfer

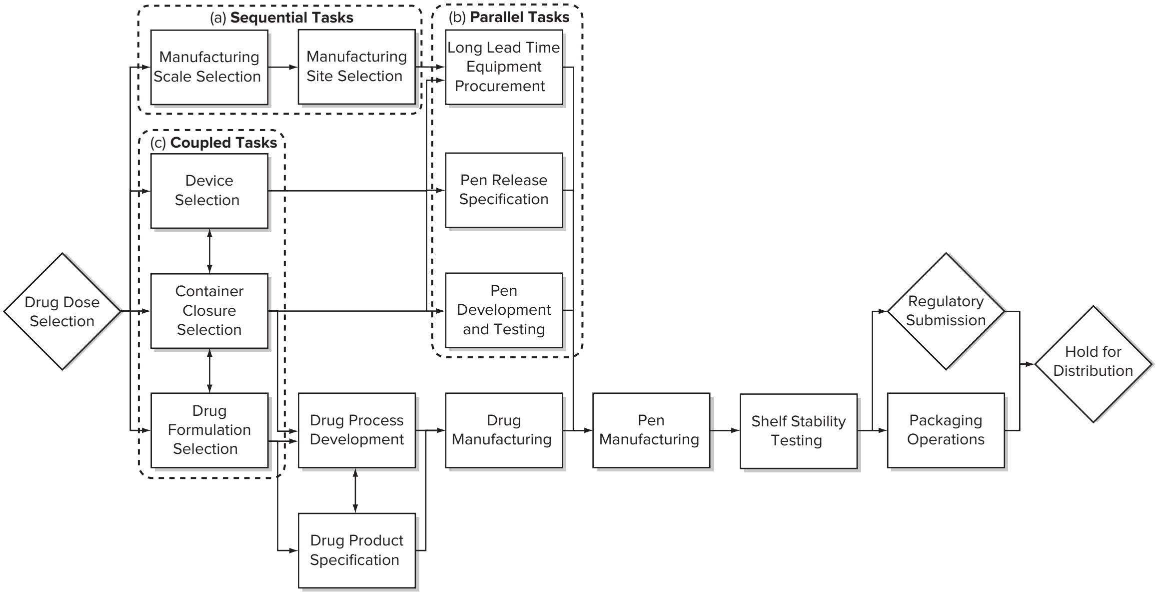


EXHIBIT 19-2 Task network for the Plegridy Pen project showing the three basic types of task dependencies: (a) sequential, (b) parallel, and (c) coupled.

of information (data) between the tasks, so this representation is often referred to as an *information-processing view* or a *data-driven perspective* of product development. We say that a task is *dependent* upon another task if the execution of an earlier task is required to complete the later task. This dependency is denoted by an arrow from the earlier (upstream) task to the later (downstream) task. Project milestones such as the start and end points or major reviews are sometimes distinguished in the network diagram using different shape graphics, as with the diamonds used in Exhibit 19-2.

Exhibit 19-2(a) identifies two tasks, the second of which is dependent on the output of the first task. These tasks are *sequential* because the dependencies impose a sequential order in which the tasks must be completed. (Note that when we refer to tasks being "completed" sequentially, we do not necessarily mean that the later task cannot be started before the earlier one has been completed. Often the later task can begin with partial information but cannot finish until the earlier task has been completed.) Exhibit 19-2(b) shows three development tasks which depend on earlier tasks but not upon each other. We call these tasks *parallel* because they are dependent on the same task(s) but are independent of each other. Exhibit 19-2(c) shows three development tasks which are *coupled.* Coupled tasks are mutually dependent; each task requires the result of the other tasks to be completed. Coupled tasks either must be executed simultaneously with continual exchanges of information or must be carried out in an iterative fashion. When coupled tasks are completed iteratively, the tasks are performed either sequentially or simultaneously with the understanding that the results are tentative and that each task will most likely be repeated one or more times until the team converges on a solution.

The Design Structure Matrix

A useful tool for representing and analyzing task dependencies is the *design structure matrix* (DSM). This representation was originally developed by Steward (1981) for the analysis of design descriptions and has more recently been extensively used to analyze development projects modeled at the task level (Eppinger and Browning, 2012). Exhibit 19-3 shows a DSM for the major tasks of the Plegridy Pen project.

When a DSM model is used to represent the process of executing a technical project, each task is assigned to a row and a corresponding column. The rows and columns are named and ordered identically, although generally only the rows list the complete names of the tasks. Each task's inputs are described by a row of the matrix. We represent the task's input dependencies by placing (X) marks in its row to indicate on which other tasks (columns) it depends. Reading across a row therefore reveals all of the tasks whose output is required to perform the task corresponding to the row. Reading down a column reveals which tasks receive information from the task corresponding to the column. The diagonal cells are usually filled in with dots or the task labels simply to separate the upper and lower triangular portions of the matrix and to facilitate tracing dependencies. Generally, a DSM representation of a process contains more dependencies than the corresponding boxes-and-arrows network model since it is easier to include a complete set of marks in the DSM without cluttering the model.

The DSM is most useful when the tasks are listed in the order in which they are to be executed. In most cases, this order will correspond to the order imposed by sequential dependencies. Note that if only sequentially dependent tasks were contained in the DSM, then the tasks could be sequenced such that the matrix would be lower triangular; that is, no marks would appear above the diagonal. A mark appearing above the diagonal has special significance; it indicates that an earlier task is dependent on a later task. An above-diagonal mark could mean that two sequentially dependent tasks are ordered backward, in which case the order of the tasks can be changed to eliminate the above-diagonal mark; however, when there is no ordering of the tasks that will eliminate an above-diagonal mark, the mark reveals that two or more tasks are coupled.

EXHIBIT 19-3
Design structure matrix for the Plegridy Pen project.

		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q
Drug Dose Selection	**A**	**A**																
Manufacturing Scale Selection	**B**	x	**B**															
Manufacturing Site Selection	**C**		x	**C**														
Device Selection	**D**	x			**D**	x	x											
Container Closure Selection	**E**	x			x	**E**	x											
Drug Formulation Selection	**F**	x			x	x	**F**											
Long Lead Time Equipment Procurement	**G**		x	x	x	x		**G**										
Pen Release Specification	**H**				x	x	x		**H**									
Pen Development and Testing	**I**				x	x				**I**								
Drug Process Development	**J**					x	x				**J**	x						
Drug Product Specification	**K**	x					x				x	**K**						
Drug Manufacturing	**L**	x		x		x	x				x	x	**L**					
Pen Manufacturing	**M**		x	x				x	x	x			x	**M**				
Shelf Stability Testing	**N**								x				x	x	**N**			
Packaging Operations	**O**							x	x				x	x	x	**O**		
Regulatory Submission	**P**	x		x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x		**P**	
Hold for Distribution	**Q**								x				x	x	x	x	x	**Q**

Changing the order of tasks is called *sequencing* (or sometimes, *partitioning*) the DSM. Simple algorithms are available for sequencing DSMs such that the tasks are ordered as much as possible according to the sequential dependencies of the tasks. Inspection of a sequenced DSM reveals which tasks are sequential, which are parallel, and which are coupled so as require simultaneous solution or iteration. In a sequenced DSM, a task is part of a sequential group if its row contains a mark just below the diagonal. Two or more tasks are parallel if there are no marks linking them. As noted, coupled tasks are identified by above-diagonal marks. Exhibit 19-3 shows how the DSM reveals all three types of relationships, including two groups of coupled tasks (indicated by solid boxes along the diagonal) and two groups of parallel tasks (dashed boxes).

Use of the DSM method has been a subject of research at MIT and other universities since the 1990s. Much of this work has applied the method to larger projects and to the development of complex systems such as automobiles and airplanes. Analytical methods have been developed to help understand the effects of complex task coupling, to predict the distribution of possible project completion times and costs, and to help plan organization designs based on product architectures (Eppinger and Browning, 2012).

Gantt Charts

The traditional tool for representing the timing of tasks is the Gantt chart. Exhibit 19-4 shows a Gantt chart for the Plegridy Pen project. Horizontal bars represent the start and end of each task along the time line. The filled-in portion of each bar represents the fraction of the task that is complete. The vertical line in Exhibit 19-4 shows the current date, so we can easily see which tasks are behind schedule and which ones are ahead of schedule.

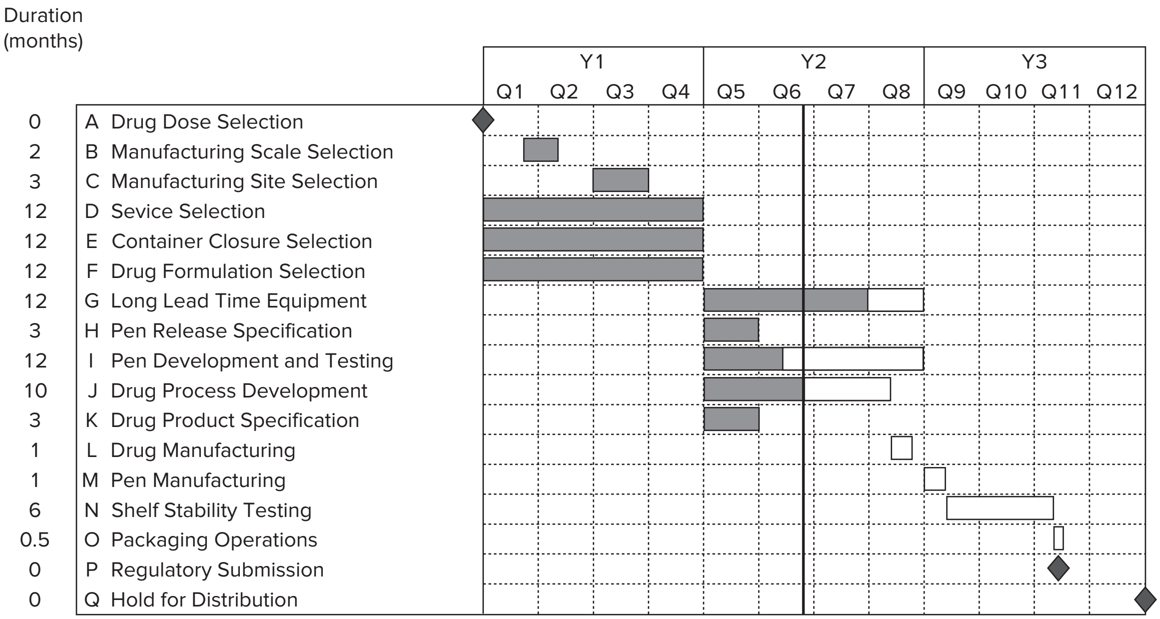


EXHIBIT 19-4 Gantt chart for the Plegridy Pen project.

A Gantt chart does not explicitly display the dependencies among tasks. Task dependencies constrain, but do not fully determine, the timing of the tasks. The dependencies dictate which tasks must be completed before others can begin and which tasks can be completed in parallel. When two tasks overlap in time on a Gantt chart, they may be parallel, sequential, or iteratively coupled. Parallel tasks can be overlapped in time for convenience in project scheduling because they do not depend on one another. Sequential tasks might be overlapped in time, depending on the exact nature of the information dependency, as described later in the section on accelerating projects. Coupled tasks must be overlapped in time because they need to be addressed simultaneously or in an iterative fashion.

PERT Charts

PERT (program evaluation and review technique) charts explicitly represent both dependencies and timing, in effect combining some of the information contained in the DSM and Gantt chart. While there are many forms of PERT charts, we prefer the "activities on nodes" form of the chart, which corresponds to the process diagrams that most people are familiar with. The PERT chart for the Plegridy Pen project is shown in Exhibit 19-5. The blocks in the PERT chart are labeled with both the task and its expected duration. Note that the PERT representation does not allow for loops or feedback and so cannot explicitly show iterative coupling. As a result, the coupled tasks are grouped together into one "rolled-up task." The graphical convention of PERT charts is that all links between tasks must proceed from left to right, indicating the temporal sequence in which tasks can be completed. When the blocks are sized to represent the duration of tasks, as in a Gantt chart, then a PERT diagram can also be used to represent a project schedule.

The Critical Path

The dependencies among the tasks in a PERT chart, some of which may be arranged sequentially and some of which may be arranged in parallel, lead to the concept of a *critical path.*

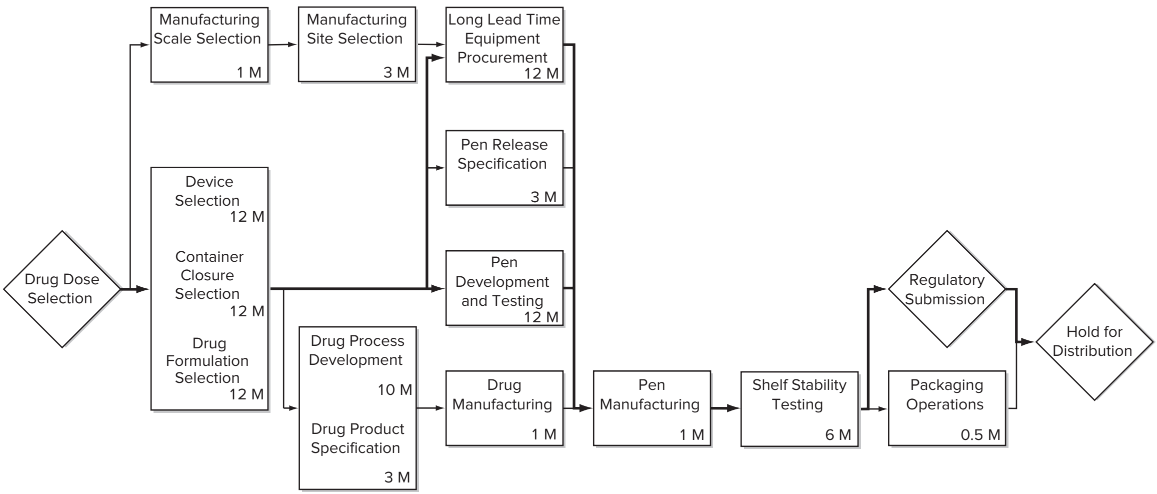


EXHIBIT 19-5 PERT chart for the Plegridy Pen project. The critical path is designated by the thicker lines connecting tasks. Note that coupled tasks are grouped together because the PERT representation does not depict coupled tasks explicitly. The critical path is denoted by thicker arrows.

The critical path is the longest chain of dependent events. This is the single sequence of tasks whose combined required times define the minimum possible completion time for the entire set of tasks. For the Plegridy Pen project, the critical path is shown by the heavier arrows in Exhibit 19-5 and represents 31 months of duration through regulatory submission. Identifying the critical path is important because a delay in any of these *critical tasks* would result in an increase in project duration. All other paths contain some *slack*, meaning that a delay in one of the noncritical tasks does not necessarily create a delay for the entire project. Exhibit 19-4 shows that the pen development and testing task is behind schedule. Because this task is on the critical path, this delay, if not corrected, will result in a delay of the completion of the entire project.

Several project management software packages are available for producing Gantt charts and PERT charts; these programs can also compute the critical path.

Baseline Project Planning

The project plan is the roadmap for the remaining development effort. The plan is important in coordinating the remaining tasks and in estimating the required development resources and development time. Some measure of project planning occurs at the earliest stages of product development, but the importance of the plan is highest at the end of the concept development phase, just before significant development resources are committed. This section presents a method for creating a *baseline project plan.* After establishing this baseline, the team considers whether it should modify the plan to change the planned development time, budget, or project scope.

The Contract Book

Many projects use a *contract book* to document the project plan and the results of the concept development phase of the development process. The concept of a contract book is detailed by Wheelwright and Clark (1992). The word *contract* is used to emphasize that the document represents an agreement between the development team and senior management about project goals, direction, and resource requirements. The book is sometimes actually signed by the key team members and the senior managers of the organization. A table of contents for a contract book is shown in Exhibit 19-6, along with references to the chapters in this book where some of these contents are discussed.

Project Task List

We have already introduced the idea that a project consists of a collection of tasks. The first step in planning a project is to list the tasks that make up the project. For most product development projects, the team will not be able to list every task in great detail; too much uncertainty remains in the subsequent development activities; however, the team will be able to list its best estimate of the remaining tasks at a general level of detail. To be most useful during project planning, the task list should contain from 50 to 200 items.

For small projects, such as the development of a hand tool, each task may correspond to several days of work for a single individual. For medium-sized projects, such as the development of a consumer electronic device, each task may correspond to one or a few weeks of work for a small group of people. For a large project, such as the development of an automobile, each task may correspond to one or more months of efforts for an entire subteam or

EXHIBIT 19-6
Table of contents of a contract book for a project of moderate complexity.

Item	Approximate Pages	See Chapter(s)
Mission Statement	1	4
Customer Needs List	1-2	5
Competitive Analysis	1-2	3, 4, 5, 8, 9
Product Specifications	1-3	6
Sketches of Product Concept	1-2	7, 11
Concept Test Report	1-2	9
Sales Forecast	1-3	9, 18
Economic Analysis/Business Case	1-3	18
Environmental Impact Assessment	1-2	12
Manufacturing/Operations Plan	1-5	13
Task/Resource List	1-5	2, 19
Design Structure Matrix	2-3	19
Team Staffing and Organization	1	2, 19
Schedule (Gantt Chart)	1-2	19
Budget	1	19
Risk Plan	1	19
Project Performance Measurement Plan	1	19
Incentives	1	19

functional department. For very large projects, each of the tasks identified at this level may be treated as its own project with a detailed project plan and its own resources.

An effective way to tackle the generation of the task list is to consider the tasks in each of the remaining phases of development. For our generic development process, the phases remaining after concept development are system-level design, detail design, testing and refinement, and production ramp-up. (See Chapter 2, Product Development Process and Organization.) In some cases, the current effort will be very similar to a previous project. In these cases, the list of tasks from the previous project is a good starting point for the new task list. The Plegridy Pen project was indeed similar to previous autoinjector projects. For this reason, the team had no trouble identifying the project tasks. (Its challenge was to complete them quickly.)

For each task in the list, the team determines what input information or predecessor tasks are needed. This listing is then easily converted into a project network diagram or DSM (Exhibits 19-2 and 19-3). This begins to represent the project baseline plan.

After listing all of the tasks, the team estimates the effort required to complete each task. Effort is usually expressed in units of person-hours, person-days, or person-weeks, depending on the size of the project. Generally, these estimates reflect the “actual working time” that members of the development team would have to apply to the task and not the “elapsed calendar time” the team expects the task to require. Because the speed with which a task is completed has some influence on the total amount of effort that must be applied to the task, the estimates embody preliminary assumptions about the overall project schedule and how quickly the team will attempt to complete tasks. These estimates are typically derived from past experience or the judgment of experienced members of the development team.

The high-level task list for the Plegridy Pen project is shown in Exhibit 19-7. Project managers estimated the necessary duration of each task that would allow the project to meet its target completion date. They would then allocate whatever resources were required to complete each task in the expected time.

EXHIBIT 19-7
Partial (high-level) task list for the Plegridy Pen project. The actual list contained over 200 tasks.

Task	Estimated Duration (months)
Manufacturing Scale Selection	2
Manufacturing Site Selection	3
Device Selection	12
Container Closure Selection	12
Drug Formulation Selection	12
Long Lead Time Equipment Procurement	12
Pen Release Specification	3
Pen Development and Testing	12
Drug Process Development	10
Drug Product Specification	3
Drug Manufacturing	1
Pen Manufacturing	1
Shelf Stability Testing	6
Packaging Operations	0.5

Team Staffing and Organization

The project team is the collection of individuals who complete project tasks. Whether or not this team is effective depends on a wide variety of individual and organizational factors. Smith and Reinertsen (1997) propose seven criteria as determinants of the speed with which a team will complete product development; in our experience, these criteria predict many of the other dimensions of team performance as well:

1. There are 10 or fewer members of the team.
2. Members volunteer to work on the team.
3. Members serve on the team from the time of concept development until product launch.
4. Members are assigned to the team full-time.
5. Members report directly to the team leader.
6. The key functions, including at least marketing, design, manufacturing, and product management are on the team.
7. Members are located within conversational distance of each other.

While few teams are staffed and organized ideally, these criteria raise several key issues:

How big should the team be? How should the team be organized relative to the larger enterprise? Which functions should be represented on the team? How can the development team of a very large project exhibit some of the agility of a small team? Here we address the issues related to team size. Chapter 1, Introduction, and Chapter 2, Product Development Process and Organization, address some of the other team and organizational issues.

All other things being equal, small teams seem to be more efficient than large teams, so a theoretical ideal situation would be to have a team made up of the minimum necessary people, each dedicated full time. Several factors make realizing this ideal difficult. First, specialized skills are often required to complete the project and not enough of those resources may be available as quickly as needed. Second, one or more key team members may have other unavoidable responsibilities that limit their time on the project. Third, the work required to complete tasks on the project is not constant over time. In many projects, necessary effort increases steadily until the beginning of production ramp-up and then begins to taper off.

As a result, the team will generally have to grow in size as the project progresses to complete the project as quickly as possible.

After considering the need for specialized skills, the reality of other commitments of the team members, and the need to accommodate an increase and subsequent decrease in workload, the project leader, in consultation with his or her management, identifies the full project staff and approximately when each person will join the team. When possible, team members are identified by name, although in some cases they will be identified only by area of expertise (e.g., device engineer, supply chain planner).

Biogen assigned technical resources for the Plegridy Pen project not to exceed 70% of full time in order to allow time for training activities, personal time, and other interruptions. A person assigned 50% to the project may also have another project at 20% time. The project staffing is shown in Exhibit 19-8.

Project Schedule

The project schedule adds expected timing to the project task list. The schedule identifies when major project milestones are expected to occur and when each project task is expected to begin and end. The team uses this schedule to track progress and to orchestrate the exchange of materials and information between individuals. It is therefore important that the schedule is viewed as credible by members of the project team.

We recommend the following steps to create a baseline project schedule:

1. Use the DSM or PERT chart to identify the dependencies among tasks.
2. Position the key project milestones along a time line in a Gantt chart.
3. Schedule the tasks, considering the project staffing and other critical resources.
4. Adjust the timing of the milestones to be consistent with the time required for the tasks.

Project milestones are useful as anchor points for the scheduling activity. Common milestones include design reviews (also called phase reviews or design gates), comprehensive prototypes (e.g., alpha prototype, beta prototype), interfaces with other projects, and fixed

Person **Quarter:**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**
Project Director	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.1
Project Manager	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.1
Formulation Scientist	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.1
Drug Product Process Engineer				0.2	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.1
Drug Product Manufacturing Engineer		0.1	0.5	0.5	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.2	
Product Quality Manager							0.3	0.3	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.2
Device Engineer 1	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1				
Device Engineer 2	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.1
Device Manufacturing Engineer				0.2	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.2	0.2	0.1
Human Factors Specialist	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3					0.3	0.3	0.3	
Device Quality Manager			0.1	0.1	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.5	0.5	0.2
Supply Chain Planner	0.4	0.4	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.4	0.3	0.3
Packaging Engineer				0.1					0.2	0.2	0.3	0.5
Regulatory Manager		0.1	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.5	0.5	0.2

EXHIBIT 19-8 Project staffing for the Plegridy Pen project. Numbers shown are approximate fractions of full time.

events such as customer demonstrations or trade shows. Because such major milestones typically require input from almost everyone on the development team, they serve as powerful forces for integration and act as anchor points on the schedule. Once the milestones are laid out on the schedule, the tasks can be arranged between these milestones.

The Plegridy Pen project schedule was developed by expanding the typical project phases into a set of approximately 200 tasks. The major milestones were the concept approval, the testing of beta prototype pens, regulatory approval, and production ramp-up. Relationships among these activities and the critical path were documented using a combined PERT/Gantt chart.

Project Budget

Budgets are customarily developed in a simple spreadsheet, although many companies have standard budgeting forms for requests and approvals. The major budget items are staff, materials and services, project-specific capital investment in facilities and equipment, and spending on outside development resources.

For most projects, the largest budget item is the cost of staff. The personnel costs can be derived directly from the staffing plan by applying the *loaded salary* rates to the estimated time commitments of the staff on the project. Loaded salaries include employee benefits and overhead and are typically between two and three times the actual salary cost of the team member. Many companies use only one or two different rates to represent the cost of the people on a project. Average staff costs for product development projects range from $2,000 to $5,000 per person-week. For the Plegridy Pen project, assuming an average cost of $40,000 per person-quarter, the total cost for the 37.4 person-quarters of effort listed in Exhibit 19-8 would be $1.5 million.

Early in the development project, uncertainty of both timing and costs is high, and the forecasts may be accurate only within 30 to 50 percent. In the later stages of the project, the program uncertainty is reduced to perhaps 5 to 10 percent. For this reason, some margin should be added to the budget as a contingency. A summary of the Plegridy Pen project budget is shown in Exhibit 19-9. This budget includes the project staffing described above, capital costs for tooling and equipment, and operational expenses such as production and logistic costs required to achieve regulatory approval.

Project Risk Plan

Projects rarely proceed exactly according to plan. Some of the deviations from the plan are minor and can be accommodated with little or no impact on project performance. Other deviations can cause major delays, budget overruns, poor product performance, or high

Item	Amount ($)
Project Staffing Expenses	1.5M
Capital Expenses	1.5M
Operational Expenses through Submission	12.5M
	Total $15.5M

EXHIBIT 19-9 Summary budget for the Plegridy Pen project. Note that the much larger costs of drug substance development and clinical trials are budgeted separately rather than as part of the device development project. (Amounts are not actual and are provided for illustrative purposes only.)

manufacturing costs. Often the team can assemble, in advance, a list of what might go wrong, that is, the areas of risk for the project. To identify risks, the team asks what uncertainties could affect the project's technical, financial, and schedule performance. Uncertainties may relate to task timing, technical developments, market acceptance, material costs, competition, and so on.

After identifying each risk, the team can prioritize the risks. To do so, some teams use a scale combining severity and likelihood of each risk. A complete risk plan also includes a list of actions the team will take to minimize the risk. It is good project management practice to address the greatest risks as early as possible in the project. This is done by scheduling early actions to reduce the likelihood and/or impact of risks that have been identified. In addition to pushing the team to work to minimize risk, the explicit focus on risk during the project planning activity helps to minimize the number of surprises the team will have to communicate to its senior management later in the project. A subset of the risk plan for the Plegridy Pen project is shown in Exhibit 19-10.

Modifying the Baseline Plan

The baseline project plan embodies assumptions about how quickly the project should be completed, about the performance and cost goals for the product, and about the resources to be applied to the project. After completing a baseline plan, the team should consider whether some of these assumptions should be revisited. In particular, the team can usually choose to trade off development time, development cost, product manufacturing cost, product performance, and risk. For example, a project can sometimes be completed more quickly by spending more money. Some of these trade-offs can be explored quantitatively using the economic analysis techniques described in Chapter 18, Product Development Economics. The team may also develop contingency plans in case certain risks cannot be overcome. The most common desired modification to the baseline plan is to compress the schedule. For this reason, we devote the next section to ways the team can accelerate the project.

EXHIBIT 19-10
Risk plan for the Plegridy Pen project

Risk	Likelihood	Impact	Actions to Minimize Risk
Commercial demand exceeds manufacturing capacity	Low	High	• Develop drug product and device processes with flexibility for increased demand • Connect frequently with sales to adjust capacity as information becomes available • Build inventory in advance of product launch
Delay in delivery of long-lead-time equipment	Low	Medium	• Have regular updates with vendors • Add incentives in vendor contracts to meet agreed-upon time lines • Model equipment performance using small-scale equipment
Delay in regulatory approval	Medium	High	• Arrange pre-meetings with regulatory agencies for specific questions about the data that will be filed to ensure they agree with the approach and rationale

Accelerating Projects

Product development time is often the dominant concern in project planning and execution. This section provides a set of guidelines for accelerating product development projects. Most of these guidelines are applicable at the project planning stage, although a few can be applied throughout a development project. Accelerating a project with a better plan before it has begun is much easier than trying to expedite a project that is already under way.

The first set of guidelines applies to the project as a whole.

- ***Start the project early.*** Saving a month at the beginning of a project is just as helpful as saving a month at the end of a project, yet teams often work with little urgency before development formally begins. For example, the meeting to approve a project plan and review a contract book may be delayed for weeks because of difficulty in scheduling a meeting with senior managers. This delay at the beginning of a project costs exactly as much time as the same delay during production ramp-up. The easiest way to complete a project sooner is to start it early.
- ***Manage the project scope.*** There is a natural tendency to include additional features and capabilities to the product as development progresses. Some companies call this phenomenon "feature creep" or "creeping elegance," and in time-sensitive contexts it may result in an elegant, feature-rich product without a target market. Disciplined teams and organizations are able to "freeze the design" and leave incremental improvements for the next generation of the product.
- ***Facilitate the exchange of essential information.*** As illustrated by a DSM representation, a tremendous amount of information must be transferred within the product development team. Every task has one or more internal customers for the information it produces. For small teams, frequent exchange of information is quite natural and is facilitated by team meetings and colocation of team members. Larger teams may require more structure to promote rapid and frequent information exchange. Blocks of coupled tasks revealed by the DSM identify the specific needs for intensive information exchange. Collaboration software tools can facilitate regular information transfer within large and dispersed product development teams.

The second set of guidelines is aimed at decreasing the time required to complete the tasks on the critical path. These guidelines arise from the fact that the only way to reduce the time required to complete a project is to shorten the critical path. Note that a decision to allocate additional resources to shortening the critical path should be based on the value of accelerating the entire project. For some projects, time reductions on the critical path can be worth thousands, or even millions, of dollars per week.

- ***Complete individual tasks on the critical path more quickly.*** The benefit of recognizing the critical path is that the team can focus its efforts on this vital sequence of tasks. The critical path generally represents only a fraction of the total project effort, and so additional spending on completing a critical task more quickly can usually be justified. Sometimes completing critical tasks more quickly can be achieved simply by identifying a task as critical so that it gets special attention, starts earlier, and is not interrupted. Note that the accelerated completion of a critical task may cause the critical path to shift to include previously noncritical tasks.

- ***Move tasks off the critical path.*** By carefully considering each task on the critical path, it is sometimes possible to turn sequential tasks into parallel ones. In some cases, this may require a significant redefinition of the tasks or even changes to the architecture of the product. (See Chapter 10, Product Architecture, for more details on dependencies arising from the architecture of the product.) For example, in the Plegridy Pen project, device selection would normally be required for manufacturing scale and site selection. However, to save several months, these were done in parallel. The resulting difficulty was managed with occasional discussions involving those executing these tasks.
- ***Eliminate some critical tasks entirely.*** Scrutinize each and every task on the critical path and ask whether it can be removed or accomplished in another way. Some reduction of project scope could eliminate certain critical path tasks and may be justified if the savings due to acceleration are greater than any profits forgone due to lost sales.
- ***Aggregate safety times.*** The estimated duration of each task in the project generally includes some amount of "safety time." This time accounts for the many normal but unpredictable delays that occur during the execution of each task. Common delays include: waiting for information and approvals, interruptions from other tasks or projects, and tasks being more difficult than anticipated. Goldratt (1997) estimates that built-in safety doubles the nominal duration of tasks. Although safety time is added to the expected task duration to account for random delays, these estimates are placed into the project schedule and become targets during execution of the tasks. This means that tasks are rarely completed early—and, in fact, many tasks overrun. Goldratt recommends removing the safety time from each task along the critical path and aggregating all of the safety time from the critical path into a single *project buffer* placed at the end of the project schedule. Because the need to extend task duration occurs somewhat randomly, only some of the tasks will actually need to utilize time from the project buffer. Therefore, a single project buffer can be smaller than the sum of the safety times that would be included in each estimate of task duration, and the critical path may be completed sooner. In practice, the project buffer may only need to start with time equal to 20 to 50 percent of the shortened critical path duration. Goldratt has developed these ideas into a project management method called *Critical Chain.* In addition to the project buffer, the method uses *feeder buffers* to protect the critical path from delays where noncritical tasks feed into the critical path. Each feeder buffer aggregates the safety times of the tasks on a noncritical path.
- ***Eliminate waiting delays for critical path resources.*** Tasks on the critical path are sometimes delayed by waiting for a busy resource. The waiting time is frequently longer than the actual time required to complete the task. Delays due to waiting are particularly prominent when receiving services by or procuring special components from suppliers. Sometimes such delays can be avoided by paying more for critical services, reserving supplier capacity, or ordering an assortment of materials and components to be sure to have the right items on hand. These expenses may make perfect economic sense in the context of the overall development project, even though the expenditure may seem extravagant when viewed in isolation. In other cases, administrative tasks such as purchase order approvals may become bottlenecks and need to be resolved through better internal relationships or procedures.
- ***Overlap selected critical tasks.*** By scrutinizing the relationships between sequentially dependent tasks on the critical path, the tasks can sometimes be overlapped or executed in parallel. Overlapping entails simply transferring partial information earlier and/or more frequently

between nominally sequential tasks or freezing the critical upstream information earlier. Krishnan (1996) provides a framework for choosing various overlapping strategies.

- ***Pipeline large tasks.*** The technique of *pipelining* is applied by breaking up a single large task into smaller tasks whose results can be passed along as soon as they are completed. For example, the process of finding and qualifying the many vendors that supply the components of a product can be time-consuming and can even delay the production ramp-up if not completed early enough. Instead of waiting until the entire bill of materials is complete before the purchasing department begins qualifying vendors, purchasing could qualify vendors as soon as each component is identified. Pipelining in effect allows nominally sequential tasks to be overlapped.
- ***Outsource some tasks.*** Project resource constraints are common. When a project is constrained by available resources, assigning tasks to an outside firm or to another group within the company may prove effective in accelerating the overall project.

The final set of guidelines is aimed at completing coupled tasks more quickly. Recall that coupled tasks are those that must be completed simultaneously or iteratively because they are mutually dependent.

- ***Perform more iterations quickly.*** Much of the delay in completing coupled tasks is in passing information from one person to another and in waiting for a response. If the iteration cycles can be completed at a higher frequency, then the coupled tasks can sometimes be completed more quickly. Faster iterations can be achieved through faster and more frequent information exchanges. In the Plegridy Pen project, the drug product manufacturing engineer would communicate frequently with the device engineering designer. They worked together on the 3D CAD models of the pen components, jointly manipulating the models, and sometimes sharing a single computer display for the purpose of rapidly exchanging ideas about how the design was evolving from their different perspectives.
- ***Decouple tasks to avoid iterations.*** Iterations can often be reduced or eliminated by taking actions to decouple tasks. For example, by clearly defining an interface between two interacting components early in the design process, the subsequent design of the two components can proceed independently and in parallel. The definition of the interface may take some time in advance, but the avoidance of time-consuming iterations may result in net time savings. (See Chapter 10, Product Architecture, for a discussion of establishing interfaces to allow the independent development of components.)
- ***Consider sets of solutions.*** Iterations involve the exchange of information about the evolving product design. Rather than exchanging point-value estimates of design parameters, in some cases the use of ranges or sets of values may facilitate faster convergence of coupled tasks. Researchers have described the application of such set-based approaches to engineering processes at Toyota (Sobek et al., 1999).

Project Execution

Smooth execution of even a well-planned project requires careful attention. Three problems of project execution are particularly important: (1) What mechanisms can be used to coordinate tasks? (2) How can project status be assessed? and (3) What actions can the team take to correct for undesirable deviations from the project plan? We devote this section to these issues.

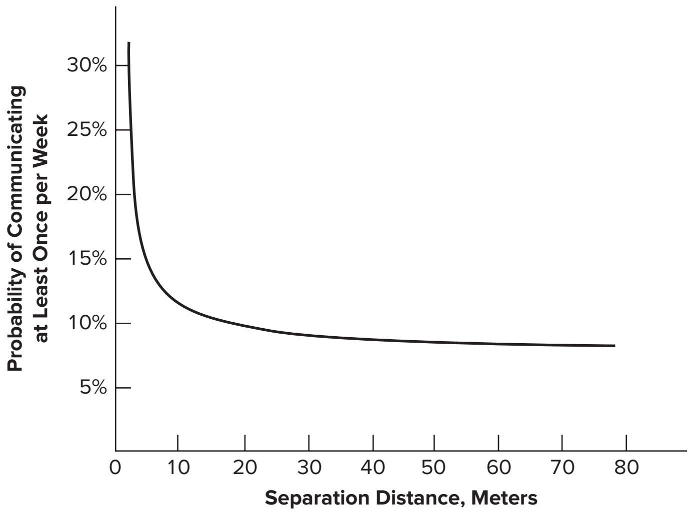
Coordination Mechanisms

Coordination among the activities of the different members of the team is required throughout a product development project. The need for coordination is a natural outgrowth of dependencies among tasks. Coordination needs also arise from the inevitable changes in the project plan caused by unanticipated events and new information. Difficulties in coordination can arise from inadequate exchanges of information and from organizational barriers to cross-functional cooperation. Here are several mechanisms used by teams to address these difficulties and facilitate coordination.

- ***Informal communication:*** A team member engaged in a product development project may communicate with other team members dozens of times per day. Many of these communications are informal; they involve a spontaneous stop by someone's desk, a telephone call, text message, or e-mail to request or provide a piece of information. Good informal communication is one of the mechanisms most useful in breaking down individual and organizational barriers to cross-functional cooperation. While professionals today are generally comfortable interacting with collaborators around the globe, informal communication is dramatically enhanced by locating the core members of the development team in the same work space. Allen (2007) has shown that communication frequency is inversely related to physical separation and falls off rapidly when people are located more than a few meters from one another (Exhibit 19-11). In our experience, e-mail, text messaging, and videoconferencing provide effective means of fostering informal communication primarily among people who are already well acquainted with one another. On the Plegridy Pen project, the core team members were colocated for most of the duration in order to enable highly effective communication.
- ***Meetings:*** The primary formal communication mechanism for project teams is meetings. Most teams meet formally at least once each week. Many teams meet twice each week, and some teams meet every day. Teams located in the same work space need fewer formal meetings than those whose members are geographically separated. Time spent exchanging

EXHIBIT 19-11
Communication frequency versus separation distance. This relationship shown is for individuals with an organizational bond, such as belonging to the same product development team.

Source: Based on Allen, Thomas J., and Gunter W. Henn, *The Organization and Architecture of Innovation: Managing the Flow of Technology*, Elsevier, Burlington, MA, 2007.



information in meetings is time not spent completing other project tasks. To minimize the amount of time wasted in meetings, some teams that hold frequent meetings meet standing up to emphasize that the meeting is intended to be quick. Other techniques for controlling the length of meetings include preparing a written agenda, appointing someone to run the meeting, and holding the meeting just before lunchtime or near the end of the day when people are anxious to leave. We recommend that team meetings be held at a regular time and place so that no extra effort is expended in scheduling the meeting and in informing the team of its time and location.

- ***Schedule display:*** The most important information system in project execution is the project schedule, usually in the form of a PERT or Gantt chart. Most successful projects have a single person who is responsible for monitoring the schedule. On small projects, this is usually the team leader. Larger projects generally have a designated person other than the project leader who keeps track of tasks and updates the schedule regularly. On the Plegridy Pen project, Biogen used a part-time project analyst who kept the schedule current on a weekly basis and reported to the project team leader. The team members understood the importance of accurate schedule projections and were very cooperative in this effort. Schedule updates are usually displayed in Gantt chart form (Exhibit 19-4).
- ***Weekly updates:*** The *weekly status memo* is written by the project leader and is distributed to the entire extended project team, usually on Friday or over the weekend. The memo is usually one or two pages long and lists the key accomplishments, decisions, and events of the past week. It also lists the key events of the coming week. It is sometimes accompanied by an updated schedule.
- ***Incentives:*** Some of the most basic organizational forms, such as functional organizations that use functional performance reviews, may inhibit the productive collaboration of team members across functions. The implementation of project-based performance measures creates incentives for team members to contribute more fully to the project. Having both a project manager and a functional manager contribute to individual performance reviews leading to promotions, merit increases, and bonuses sends a strong message that project results are highly valued. (See Chapter 2, Product Development Process and Organization, for a discussion of various organizational forms, including project, functional, and matrix organizations.)
- ***Process documents:*** Each of the methods presented in this book also has an associated information system that assists the project team in making decisions and provides documentation. (By information systems, we mean all of the structured means the team uses to exchange information, not only the computer systems used by the team.) For example, the concept selection method uses two concept selection matrices to both document and facilitate the selection process. Similarly, each of the other information systems serves both to facilitate the logical execution of the process step and to document its results. Exhibit 19-12 lists some of the important information systems used at the various stages of the development process.
- ***Scrum teams:*** Many of the challenges of project coordination have been addressed in recent years by combining several of the above mechanisms into a self-managed team method known as *Scrum.* Scrum teams hold brief daily meetings in which everyone reports their status: what I did yesterday, what I'm doing today, and what help I need. The team leader, known as the *scrum master*, works to eliminate any impediments raised in

EXHIBIT 19-12
Information systems that facilitate product development decision making, team consensus, and the exchange of information.

Development Activity	Information Systems Used
Product planning	Product segment map Technology roadmap Product-process change matrix Aggregate resource plan Product plan Mission statement
Customer needs identification	Customer needs lists
Concept generation	Function diagrams Concept classification tree Concept combination table Concept descriptions and sketches
Concept selection	Concept screening matrix Concept scoring matrix
Product specifications	Needs-metrics matrix Competitive benchmarking charts Specifications lists
System-level design	Schematic diagram Geometric layout Differentiation plan Commonality plan
Detailed design	Bill of materials Prototyping plan Environmental impact assessment
Industrial design	Aesthetic/ergonomic importance
Testing	Test planning matrix Performance test reports Durability test reports
Product development economics	NPV analysis spreadsheet
Project management	Contract book Task list Project network or PERT chart Design structure matrix Gantt chart Staffing matrix Daily meeting Product backlog Weekly status memo Buffer report Risk analysis Postmortem project report

the daily meeting. Scrum teams also plan projects very differently, with minimal planning done at the start and dynamic correction during execution. Work is executed in a series of *sprints*, with each one lasting a fixed period of time (such as two weeks). Before the start of each sprint, the team selects tasks from a prioritized list of work items known as the *product backlog*. Each sprint ends with some sort of deliverable which can be reviewed by appropriate stakeholders, with the feedback used to plan the next sprint. While the Scrum method emerged as a practice in the software industry (Sutherland et al., 2011), many other types of project teams can implement variants of this approach.

Assessing Project Status

Project leaders and senior managers need to be able to assess project status to know whether corrective actions are warranted. In projects of modest size (say, fewer than 50 people) project leaders are fairly easily able to assess the status of the project. The project leader assesses project status during formal team meetings, by reviewing the project schedule, and by gathering information in informal ways. The leader constantly interacts with the project team, meets regularly with individuals to work through difficult problems, and is able to observe all of the information systems of the project. A team may also engage an expert from outside the core team to provide an independent assessment of the project status.

Project reviews, conducted by senior managers or technical peers representing critical disciplines, are another common method of assessing progress. The goal of these reviews is to highlight problem areas and to generate ideas for addressing these risks. Reviews frequently correspond to the end of each phase of development and are key project milestones. These events serve not only to inform senior managers of the status of a project but also to bring closure to a wide variety of development tasks. While these reviews can be useful milestones and can enhance project performance, too frequent reviews can also hinder performance. Detrimental results arise from devoting too much time to preparing formal presentations, from delays in scheduling reviews with busy managers, and from excessive meddling in the details of the project by those reviewing it.

The Critical Chain method uses a novel approach to monitoring the project schedule. By simply monitoring the project buffer and the feeder buffers of the project (described briefly earlier), the project manager can quickly assess the criticality of each path and the estimated likelihood of completing the project time. If tasks consume the project buffer faster than the critical path is being completed, the project runs the risk of slipping the end date. A buffer report therefore provides a concise update on the project status in terms of progress of the critical path and its feeder paths.

Many projects use a simple status reporting technique based on traffic light colors, where each element of the project is judged to be of green, yellow, or red status. Green, of course signifies that aspect of the project is fully on track, with no concerns. Red denotes a known problem, for example, when the team is behind schedule and is unable to complete certain tasks on schedule or does not expect to meet technical specifications. Yellow status is given to tasks or high-level goals where any concerns have been identified. This signals the need for additional resources or problem-solving assistance in order to avoid becoming red.

Corrective Actions

After discovering an undesirable deviation from the project plan, the team attempts to take corrective action. Problems almost always manifest themselves as potential schedule slippage, and so most of these corrective actions relate to arresting potential delays. Some of the possible actions include:

- ***Changing the timing or frequency of meetings:*** Sometimes a simple change from weekly to daily meetings increases the "driving frequency" of the information flow among team members and enables more rapid completion of tasks. This is particularly true of teams that are not colocated or for any reason not communicating effectively. Of course, to minimize travel time for regular meetings, remote team members can generally participate in team meetings by video. Sometimes simply moving a weekly meeting from Tuesday morning to Friday afternoon increases the urgency felt by the team to "get it done this week."

- ***Changing the project staff:*** The skills, capabilities, and commitment of the members of the project team in large measure determine project performance. When the project team is grossly understaffed, performance can sometimes be increased by adding the necessary staff. When the project team is overstaffed, performance can sometimes be increased by removing staff. Note that desperately adding staff near the end of a late project can lead to further delays in project completion because the increased coordination requirements may outweigh the benefit of the increased resources.
- ***Locating the team together physically:*** If the team is geographically dispersed, one way to increase project performance is to locate the team in the same work space. This action invariably increases communication among the team members. Some benefit of "virtual colocation" is possible with e-mail, videoconferencing, and other network-based collaboration tools.
- ***Soliciting more time and effort from the team:*** If some team members are distributing their efforts among several projects, project performance may be increased by relieving them of other responsibilities. Needless to say, high-performance project teams include team members who regularly deliver more than a 40-hour workweek to the project. If a few critical tasks demand extraordinary effort, most committed teams are willing to devote a few weeks of 14-hour days to get the job done; however, 60- or 70-hour weeks cannot reasonably be expected from most team members for more than a few weeks without causing fatigue and burnout.
- ***Focusing more effort on the critical tasks:*** By definition, only one sequence of tasks forms the critical path. When the path can be usefully attacked by additional people, the team may choose to temporarily drop some or all other noncritical tasks to ensure timely completion of the critical tasks.
- ***Engaging outside resources:*** The team may be able to retain an outside resource such as an engineering firm or a short-term contractor to perform some of the development tasks. Outside firms are typically fast and relatively economical when a set of tasks can be clearly defined and when coordination requirements are not severe.
- ***Changing the project scope or schedule:*** If all other efforts fail to correct undesirable deviations from the project plan, then the team must narrow the scope of the project, identify an alternative project goal, or extend the project schedule. These changes are necessary to maintain a credible and useful project plan.

Postmortem Project Evaluation

An evaluation of the project's performance after it has been completed is useful for both personal and organizational improvement. This review is often called a *postmortem project evaluation* or *post-project review.* The postmortem evaluation is usually an open-ended discussion of the strengths and weaknesses of the project plan, development processes employed, commercial and technical results, and quality of execution. This discussion is sometimes facilitated by an outside consultant or by another project leader within the company who was not involved in the project. Several questions help to guide the discussion:

- Did the team achieve the goals articulated in the mission statement (including strategic, technical, and financial goals)?
- Which aspects of project performance (development time, development cost, product quality, manufacturing cost, environmental impacts) were most positive?
- Which aspects of project performance were most negative?
- Which tools, methods, and practices contributed to the positive aspects of performance?
- Which tools, methods, and practices detracted from project success?
- What problems did the team encounter?
- What specific actions can the organization take to improve project performance?
- What specific technical lessons were learned? How can they be shared with other parts of the organization?

A postmortem report may be prepared as part of the formal closing of the project. These reports are used in the project planning stage of future projects to help team members know what to expect and to help identify what pitfalls to avoid. The reports are also a valuable source of historical data for studies of the firm's product development practices. Together with the project documentation, and particularly the contract book, they provide "before and after" views of each project.

For the Plegridy Pen project, the postmortem discussion involved six members of the core team and lasted two hours. The discussion was facilitated by a senior project manager who was familiar with but not involved in the project. The project was completed on schedule and had experienced a successful product launch, so much of the discussion focused on what the team had done to contribute to this success. The team agreed that the most important contributors to project success were:

- Effective team problem solving.
- Emphasis on adherence to established time lines and goals.
- Regular internal and external communications.
- Commitment of experienced subject matter experts from line functions.
- Frequency of team meetings.
- Building on prior experience in auto-injection pen development.
- Early analysis of manufacturing capabilities.

The Plegridy Pen team also identified a few opportunities for improvement:

- Well-defined roles, responsibilities, and expectations of team members.
- Clear communication channels for better transparency.
- Better resource planning to avoid overcommitting key resources.

Summary

Successful product development requires effective project management. Some of the key ideas in this chapter are:

- Projects consist of tasks linked to each other by dependencies. Tasks can be sequential, parallel, or coupled.
- The design structure matrix (DSM) can be used to represent dependencies. Gantt charts are used to represent the timing of tasks. PERT charts represent both dependencies and timing and are frequently used to compute the critical path.
- Project planning results in a task list, a project schedule, staffing requirements, a project budget, and a risk plan. These items are key elements of the contract book.
- The longest sequence of dependent tasks defines the critical path, which dictates the completion time of the project. There are many ways to complete development projects more quickly. Most opportunities for accelerating projects arise during the project planning phase.
- Project execution involves coordination, assessment of progress, and taking action to address deviations from the plan.
- Evaluating the performance of a project encourages and facilitates personal and organizational improvement.

References and Bibliography

Many current resources are available online at:
www.pdd-resources.net

There are many basic texts on project management, although most do not focus on product development projects. PERT, critical path, and Gantt techniques are described in most project management books. These classic texts also discuss project staffing, planning, budgeting, risk management, monitoring, control, and auditing.

Kerzner, Harold, *Project Management: A Systems Approach to Planning*, *Scheduling*, *and Controlling*, twelfth edition, Wiley, New York, 2017.

Meredith, Jack R., Scott M. Shafer, and Samuel J. Mantel Jr., *Project Management: A Strategic Managerial Approach*, tenth edition, Wiley, New York, 2018.

The product management and the project management professions each have professional organizations that maintain a compendium of the tools and best practices of their profession. Known respectively as the ProdBOK and the PMBOK, these “bodies of knowledge” serve not only as professional handbooks, but also as the basis for training and certification programs.

Product Management Educational Institute, *The Guide to the Product Management and Marketing Body of Knowledge: ProdBOK*, 2013.

Project Management Institute, *A Guide to the Project Management Body of Knowledge: PMBOK Guide*, sixth edition, 2017.

Several authors have written specifically about the management of product development. Smith and Reinertsen provide many ideas for accelerating product development projects, along with interesting insights on team staffing and organization. Wheelwright and Clark discuss team leadership and other project management issues in depth.

Smith, Preston G., and Donald G. Reinertsen, *Developing Products in Half the Time: New Rules, New Tools*, second edition, Wiley, New York, 1997.

Wheelwright, Stephen C., and Kim B. Clark, *Revolutionizing Product Development: Quantum Leaps in Speed, Efficiency, and Quality*, The Free Press, New York, 1992.

Sobek, Ward, and Liker present the principles of set-based concurrent engineering, in which product development teams reason about sets of possible design solutions rather than using only point-based values to describe the evolving design.

Sobek II, Durward K., Allen C. Ward, and Jeffrey K. Liker, "Toyota's Principles of Set-Based Concurrent Engineering," *Sloan Management Review*, Vol. 40, No. 2, Winter 1999, pp. 67–83.

Design structure matrix (DSM) has been applied to technical project planning and product development process improvement by Eppinger and his research group at MIT, among others.

Eppinger, Steven D., and Tyson R. Browning, *Design Structure Matrix Methods and Applications*, MIT Press, Cambridge, MA, 2012.

Krishnan provides a framework for overlapping nominally sequential tasks, explaining under what conditions it is better to transfer preliminary information from upstream to downstream and when it may be better to freeze the upstream task early.

Krishnan, Viswanathan, "Managing the Simultaneous Execution of Coupled Phases in Concurrent Product Development," *IEEE Transactions on Engineering Management*, Vol. 43, No. 2, May 1996, pp. 210–217.

Goldratt developed the Critical Chain method of project management. This approach aggregates safety times from each task into project and feeder buffers, allowing the project to be tracked by monitoring these buffers. Critical Chain has been developed into a management technique focusing on prioritization of work and project efficiency by Newbold and Lynch.

Goldratt, Eliyahu M., *Critical Chain*, North River Press, Great Barrington, MA, 1997.

Newbold, Rob, and Bill Lynch, *The Project Manifesto: Transforming Your Life and Work with Critical Chain Values*, ProChain Press, Lake Ridge, VA, 2014.

Project Management Institute teaches a structured process for risk identification, analysis, and management. (See also Kerzner, 2017.)

Project Management Institute, *Practice Standard for Project Risk Management*, 2009.

Allen has extensively studied communication in R&D organizations. With Henn, he discusses the results of his seminal empirical studies of the influence of architecture and workspace design on communication and organizational effectiveness.

Allen, Thomas J., and Gunter W. Henn, *The Organization and Architecture of Innovation: Managing the Flow of Technology*, Elsevier, Burlington, MA, 2007.

Several books describe agile software development practices. Perhaps the most widely used agile project management method is Scrum, originally developed by Sutherland. Design teams in many other industries have been experimenting with Scrum to learn how to apply the approach.

Sutherland, Jeff, Rini van Solingen, and Eelco Rustenburg, *The Power of Scrum*, North Charleston, SC: CreateSpace, 2011.

Exercises

1. The tasks for preparing a dinner (along with the normal completion times) might include:

   a. Wash and cut vegetables for the salad (15 minutes).
   b. Toss the salad (2 minutes).
   c. Set the table (8 minutes).
   d. Start the rice cooking (2 minutes).
   e. Cook rice (25 minutes).
   f. Place the rice in a serving dish (1 minute).
   g. Mix casserole ingredients (10 minutes).
   h. Bake the casserole (25 minutes).

   Prepare a DSM for these tasks.
2. Prepare a PERT chart for the tasks in Exercise 1. How fast can one person prepare this dinner? What if there are two people?
3. What strategies could you employ to prepare dinner more quickly? If you thought about dinner 24 hours in advance, are there any steps you could take to reduce the time between arriving home the next day and serving dinner?
4. Referring to the DSM shown in Exhibit 19-3, in addition to the dashed boxes indicating parallel task structures, where else are there opportunities to execute tasks in parallel?
5. Interview a project manager (not necessarily in a product development context). Ask him or her to describe the major obstacles to project success.

Thought Questions

1. When a task on the critical path (e.g., the fabrication of a mold) is delayed, the completion of the entire project is delayed, even though the total amount of work required to complete the project may remain the same. How would you expect such a delay to impact the total cost of the project?
2. This chapter has focused on the “hard” issues in project management related to tasks, dependencies, and schedules. What are some of the “soft,” or behavioral, issues related to project management?
3. What would you expect to be some of the characteristics of individuals who successfully lead project teams?
4. Under what conditions might efforts to accelerate a product development project also lead to increased product quality and/or decreased product manufacturing costs? Under what conditions might these attributes of the product deteriorate when the project is accelerated?

INDEX

A

Aaker, David A., 117
Adaptations, as product change motive, 194
Add-ons, as product change motive, 194
Aesthetic needs, industrial design, 219–220
Aggregate planning, 67–69
Air pollution, 241
Alexander, Christopher, 211
Alger, J.R., 166
Allen, Franklin, 393
Allen, Thomas J., 32, 423
Almquist, Eric, 332
Alpha prototypes, 15, 311, 367
Altshuller, Genrich, 146
Analysis of means, 328–329
Analysis of variance (ANOVA), 330
Analytical prototypes, 297, 299, 303
  physical prototype *vs.,* 303
Andreasen, M. Myrup, 32
Antikarov, Vladimir, 394
Apple Inc., 44, 217
Apple iPhone, 20
Aronson, Lillian, 47
Asentio Design, 36
Assembly costs, 267
  customer assembly, 278
  estimation of, 272–273
  maximize ease of assembly, 277–278
  part integration, 277
  reduction in, 277–279
Assumptions, in pre-project planning, 71–72
Audio recording, as interview documentation method, 85
Avallone, Eugene A., 146
AvaTech Avalanche Probe, 1, 5
Ayres, Ian, 52

B

Bakerjian, R., 284
Bang & Olufsen, 223
Base-case financial model, 376–381
  cash flows, timing/magnitude of, estimation of, 376–378
Baseline project plan, 407–412
  contract book, 407
  modification, 412
  project budget, 411
  project schedule, 410–411
  project task list, 407–409
  project team, 409–410
  risk plan, 411–412
Bass, Frank M., 185–186
Baumeister, Theodore, III, 146
Bayus, Barry L., 393
Beitz, Wolfgang, 145, 166
Belle-V Ice Cream Scoop, 1, 5
Benchmarking
  in concept development, 17–18
  for concept generation, 131
Beta prototypes, 15, 302, 311, 367
Bhamra, T., 242, 247, 255
Bias, sample, 175
Bill of materials (BOM), 110–111, 269–270
Biodiversity, 241
Biogen, 401, 402, 410
Bitner, M. J., 370
Black box, 126
Black box supplier design, 276
Blessing, L., 145
BMW
  corporate identity, 223
  S1000RR motorcycle, 195–196
Boatwright, Peter, 233
Boeing 787 Aircraft, 1, 5
Bolt laser-based cat toy, 35–36
Boothroyd, G., 277, 284, 293, 294
Boothroyd Dewhurst, Inc., 273
Box, George E. P., 332
Brainstorming, 131
Bralla, James G., 284
Braun, 223
Braungart, M., 242, 256
Brealey, Richard A., 393
Breuer, Marcel, 216
Brezet, H., 242, 256
Browning, Tyson R., 423
Brundtland Report, 242
Budget, project, 411
Budget allocations, 114
Burall, P., 242, 256
Burchill, Gary, 93
Burden rates. *See* Overhead rates
Burgelman, Robert A., 73
Bus-modular architecture, 192

C

Cagan, Jonathan, 233
Cameron, Bruce, 211
Caplan, Ralph, 233
Cash flows, 374, 375
  net present value, computation of, 378–379
  timing/magnitude of, estimation of, 376–378
Ceteris paribus, 389, 391
Cham, Jorge G., 146
Charter. *See also* Mission statement
  establishment of, 41–42
Choudary, Sangeet Paul, 74
Christensen, Clayton M., 73, 75
Chunks
  architecture of, 209
  assignment of elements to, 199–201
  component integration, 196
  component standardization, 195
  defined, 191
  in integral architecture, 191–192
  in modular architecture, 191, 192–193
  product change and, 193–194
  in product development management, 196–197
Claims, patents
  crafting, guidelines for, 352
  dependent, 350
  independent, 350
  outlining of, 345–346
  refinement of, 349–352
  writing, 349–352
Clark, Kim B., 31, 74, 314, 407, 423
Clausing, Don, 99, 103, 116, 309, 313
Clayton M. Christensen, 73
CNC machining, 287
Coca-Cola, 338
Coffee maker, 373–374
Coffin, David W., Sr., 337–338, 340–341, 345, 346, 348, 350–352, 355
Commonality plan, 207–208
Communication
  in concept testing, 175–180
  informal, 416
  prototypes for, 301
Competition, project timing and, 69
Competitive benchmarking, 17–18
  collecting information about, 103, 104
Competitive design, 154
Competitive mapping, 112–113
Competitive strategy, 60–61
Competitors, qualitative analysis and, 391
Complex systems, 22
Component integration, 196
Component standardization, 195
Components
  black box supplier design, 276
  costs of, 267, 274–277
  economies of scale for, 275–276
  error proofing, 279
  manufacturing costs, 287–291
  maximize ease of assembly, 277–278
  part integration, 277
  redesigning, 275
  reuse, design for manufacturing and, 282
Compounded noise, 322, 326
Comprehensive prototypes, 297
Computer-aided engineering (CAE) tools, 307
Concept classification tree, 136–138
Concept combination table, 138–141
Concept development
  concept generation and, 122–123
  concept testing in, 172
  customer needs in, 16, 78–79
  in product development process, 14, 15
Concept generation, 17, 121–144
  benchmarking and, 131
  concept classification tree, 136–138
  concept combination table, 138–141
  in concept development process, 122–123
  consult experts, 129
  external searches for, 128–131
  five-step method, 123–144
  gallery method, 134
  hints for, 133–134
  industrial design process and, 224–225
  internal search, 131–135
  lead users, interviewing, 128–129
  periodic action principle, 134
  problem clarification in, 124–128
  published literature, searching, 130–131

Concept generation—*Cont.*
reflect on solutions and process, 143–144
search patents, 129–130
structured approach to, 123
systematic exploration, 135–143
TRIZ (theory of invention problem solving), 134
Concept scoring, 160–163
defined, 155
rank concepts, 162
rate concepts, 161–162
reference concept in, 160
reflect on results and process, 163
selection matrix, preparation of, 160–161
selection of concepts, 162–163
Concept screening, 156–159
defined, 155
rank concepts, 158
rate concepts, 157–158
reference concept in, 157
reflect on results and process, 159
selection matrix, preparation of, 156–157
selection of concepts, 158–159
Concept selection
caveats, 163–164
concept scoring, 155, 160–163
concept screening, 155, 156–159
decomposition of concept quality, 163–164
defined, 17, 150
methods for, 151, 154
multivoting, 151, 157
in product development process, 150–151
structured method, 154–155
subjective criteria, 164
Concept testing, 171–185
communication in, 175–180
in concept development, 172
customer response, measurement of, 181
defined, 17
interpretation of results, 181–184
market segments and, 173–174
matching survey format with communication, 179
purchase intent measurement, 181
purchase price and, 180
purpose of, 173
reflect on results and process, 184–185
sales forecasts, 181–184
screener questions, 173
survey format, choosing, 174–175
survey population, choosing, 173–174
Conjoint analysis, 102, 113
Constraints, in pre-project planning, 71–72
Consumer ethnography, 44
Contract book, 17, 98, 407
Control documentation, 15
Control drawings/models, 226–227
Control factors, 321
Cooper, Robert G., 32, 74
Cooper, Robin, 117
Coordination, product development process and, 12
Copeland, Tom, 394
Copyright, 338
Cordless PLA project, 55, 60, 68, 70, 71
Core team, 4, 69
Corporate identity, industrial design and, 222–223
Cost drivers
and overhead costs estimation, 273–274
process constraints and, 274
Cost leadership, 60–61
Cost-plus pricing, 118
Cost(s)
assembly (*See* Assembly costs)
bill of materials, 110–111
components, 267, 274–277, 287–290
development (*See* Development costs)
direct, 220
economies of scale, 275–276
fixed, 5
fixed *vs.* variable, 269
of industrial design, 220
life cycle, design for manufacturing and, 282
logistics, 268–269, 280–281
manufacturing, 220
materials, 286
overhead, 267, 273
processing, 271
of product development, 2, 5
sourcing decisions, 264–266
structures, 294
sunk, 377
support, 267, 278–279
target, 110, 118–120
time, 220
tooling, 272
transportation, 266
Coupled task, 402–403
Cradle to Cradle: Remaking the Way We Make Things (McDonough and Braungart), 242
Crawford, C. Merle, 73, 185
Crawley, Edward, 211
Creeping elegance, 413
Crest SpinBrush, 47
Critical Chain, 414, 419
Critical path, 406–407, 414
Cross-functional team, for design for manufacturing, 262–263
Cubberly, William H., 284
Custom components, 267
costs, estimation of, 271–272
Customer assembly, 278
Customer attributes/requirements. *See* Customer needs
Customer focus strategy, 61
Customer-focused product, 154
Customer involvement, in services, 361
Customer needs, 96
in concept development, 16, 78–79
goals of, 78
identification of (*See* Customer needs identification)
industrial design and, 224
latent needs, 44, 79
organizing in hierarchical list, 88–90
relationship with metrics, 99–101
relative importance of, 90–91
specifications and, 79
Customer needs identification, 77–94
data interpretation, 87–88
documenting interactions with customers, 85–86
eliciting customer needs data, 84–85
reflect on results, 92
selection of customers, 82–84
steps in, 79–92
Customer statements, 85
Customers
gathering raw data from, 81–86
lead users, 47, 83, 128–129
response in concept testing, 181
selection for interview, 82–83
Customized products, 20–21
Cusumano, Michael A., 313, 370

D

3D CAD models, 307–308
Dahan, Ely, 186
Data-driven perspective, 403
Davis, Timothy P., 332
Day, George S., 52, 117
Decision making process, 155
Decision matrices, 151
Decision tree, 398–399
Decomposition, of problems, 137–138
Defensive disclosure, 348–349
Defensive rights, 340
Delayed differentiation/postponement, 203–206
Dell, 47
Dependent claims, 350
Description, patent, 346–349
defensive disclosure, 348–349
detailed, writing, 347–348
elements of, 346–347
estimation of cost of assembly, 277
figures on, 347
Design. *See also* Design for assembly (DFA); Design for environment (DFE); Design for manufacturing (DFM); Design of experiments (DOE)
freezing, 413
in product development, 3, 14, 15
Design brief. *See* Mission statement
Design-build team (DBT), 27
Design for assembly (DFA)
customer assembly, 278
maximize ease of assembly, 277–278
part integration, 277
Design for environment (DFE), 237–260
agenda, setting, 244–247
defined, 239
disassembly, 242, 252
ecodesign, 242
environmental impacts (*See* Environmental impacts)
external drivers of, 245–247
goals, setting, 245–246
guidelines of (*See* Guidelines, design for environment)
at Herman Miller Inc., 238–239, 242–243, 245–246
historical overview of, 242
internal drivers of, 245–247
material chemistry, 242
process of, 243
product life cycle and, 240–241
recyclability, 242
reflect on process and results, 253–254
team, setting, 245–246
Design for manufacturing (DFM), 261–283
assembly costs (*See* Assembly costs)
component integration, 196
and component reuse, 282
components costs, 274–277
cross-functional team for, 262–263
decisions, impact on other factors, 281–282
defined, 262

and development costs, 281
and development time, 281
in developmental process, 263
economies of scale, 275–276
error proofing, 279
process, overview of, 263, 264
and product quality, 281–282
results, 282, 283
sourcing decisions, 264–266
systemic complexity, minimizing, 279
Design for X (DFX), 262
Design of experiments (DOE)
analysis, 327–329
caveats, 330
compounded noise, 322
control factors/noise factors/ performance metrics, identification of, 321–322
experimental plan, development of, 323–326
factor effects computation by analysis of means, 328–329
factor setpoints, 329
noise factors, testing of, 325–326
objective function formulation, 322–323
orthogonal array, 325, 326, 333–336
reflect and repeat, 329–330
robust design and, 320
screening experiment, 322
techniques, 109
Design of services, 359–369. *See also* Services
Design patents, 339
Design structure matrix (DSM), 404–405
sequencing/partitioning, 405
Detail design, 14, 15
Development capability, 3
Development costs
design for manufacturing decisions and, 281
sensitivity analysis and, 381–382
Development process. *See also* Product development process
prototypes and, 306
Development time, 2
design for manufacturing decisions and, 281
sensitivity analysis and, 383–384
Developmental process, design for manufacturing in, 263
Dewhurst, P., 277, 284
Di Benedetto, Anthony, 73
Di Benedetto, C. Anthony, 73, 185
Differentiating attributes, 206
Differentiation plan, 206, 207
Digital mock-up, 307
Digital prototype, 307
Dimensional weight, 280
Direct cost, 220
Discount rate, 378, 395–396
Distributed product development teams, 30
Documentation, project, 417
Draper, Norman R., 322
Dreyfuss, Henry, 216
Durables, 181
Dysfunctional product development teams, 7–8

E

Eberle, Bob, 146
Ecodesign, 242
EcoDesign Web, 247
Economic analysis
base-case financial model, 376–381
in concept development, 17
elements of, 374–375
go/no-go milestone decisions, 376, 380–381
net present value (*See* Net present value (NPV))
operational design/ development decisions, 376
process of, 376–392
purpose of, 375–376
qualitative analysis, 375, 389–392
quantitative analysis, 374–375, 388–389
sensitivity analysis, 381–389
Economies of scale, 275–276
Eder, W. Ernst, 145
Edgett, Scott J., 74
Eelco Rustenburg, 32
Electric scooter project, 171–172
Electronic mail surveys, 175
Elsen, C., 146
Embodiments, of invention, 347–348
Emotional appeal, industrial design quality and, 230–231
emPower Corporation, 171–172
Engelhardt, Fredrik, 332
Engineering prototypes. *See* Experimental/engineering prototypes
Environment. *See* Design for environment (DFE)
Environmental impacts, 241
assessment of, 251–252
to DFE goals, 252
identification of, 247, 248
reduction/elimination of, 252–253
Eppinger, Steven D., 211, 423
Error proofing, 279
Experimental/engineering prototypes, 312
Experimental plan
designs for, 323–325
development of, 323–326
execution of, 327
factor levels, 323
noise factors, testing of, 325–326
for prototype, 310
Experts consultation, for concept generation, 129
Extended team, 4
External decision, and concept selection, 151
External drivers, of design for environment, 245–247
External searches
benchmarking, 131
for concept generation, 128–131
experts consultation, 129
lead users, interviewing, 128–129
published literature, searching, 130–131
search patents, 129–130
Externalities, qualitative analysis and, 390
Extreme users, 83

F

Face-to-face surveys, 174–175
Factor effects, 328–329
Factor levels, 323
Factor setpoints, 329
Farag, Mahmoud M., 284
Farmer, Steven M., 145
Feature creep, 413
Feeder buffers, 414
Feinberg, 94
Feldhusen, Jörg, 145, 166
Fiksel, J. R., 242, 255
Final specifications, 98, 107–115
competitive mapping, 112–113
contract book and, 98
cost models and, 110–111
design-of-experiment (DOE) technique, 109
flow down as appropriate, 113–115
reflect on results, 115
setting, 17
technical models and, 109–110
and trade-offs, 107
Financial arrangements, 24
Firm, interactions with projects, 390
Fixed costs, 5
economies of scale and, 275–276
vs. variable costs, 269
Flow down, specifications, 113–115
Flowers, Woodie C., 314
Focus groups, as data collection method, 81
Focused prototypes, 297
Ford Motor Company seat belt design, 317–330
Foreign patents, filing for, 343
Foster, Richard N., 74
Fractional factorial experimental design, 325
Free-form fabrication system, 308
Frey, Daniel D., 332
FroliCat, 35–36, 37, 38–39, 40, 41, 49–51
Front-end process, 16–18
Full factorial experimental design, 323, 325
Function sharing, 196
Functional decomposition, 125–127
Functional elements, of product, 190, 197–198
Functional organization, 24, 25–27, 28
characteristics of, 29
Fundamental interactions, 202, 206

G

Galbraith, Jay R., 33
Gallery method, 134
Gantt chart, 405–406
Gemser, Gerda, 234
General market risk, 398
Generic product development process
complex systems, 23
customized products, 20–21
high-risk products, 21
phases of, 13–16
platform products, 20
process flow diagrams for, 23
process-intensive products, 20
product-service systems, 22
quick-build products, 21
technology-push products, 18–20
Geometric layout, creation of, 201
Gertsakis, J., 255
Gillette razor, 20
Girotra, Karan, 53, 370
Giudice, Fabio, 256
Global warming, 241
Go/no-go milestone decisions, 375, 380–381
Goldenberg, Jacob, 146
Goldratt, Eliyahu M., 423
Google, 367
Gordon, William J. J., 146
Gore-Tex, 18
Green, Don W., 147

Greitzer, Edward M., 332
Griffin, Abbie, 81–82, 87, 93
Groenveld, Pieter, 74
Grote, Karl-Heinrich, 145, 166
Grove, Daniel M., 332
Guidelines, design for environment
  applying, 244–245, 248–250
  life cycle stage, 258–259
  selection of, 248–250

H

Hall, Arthur D., III, 211
Hard models, 225
Hardware swamp, 309
Harkins, Jack, 233
Hauser, John R., 81, 82, 87, 93, 94, 99, 103, 116, 161, 166
Hayes, Robert H., 32
Hays, C.V., 166
Heavyweight project organization, 27
  characteristics of, 29
Hein, Lars, 32
Henn, Gunter W., 423
Herman Miller, Inc. chairs, 237–239, 242–243, 245–246
Hertenstein, Julie H., 234
Heskett, 370
Hewlett-Packard DeskJet Printer, 189–190, 197–208
High-risk products, 21
Home coffee maker, 373–374
Honda, T., 146
Horizon 1/2/3 opportunities, 37
Hot beverage insulating sleeve, 337–338
House of Quality, 99, 103
Hubka, Vladimir, 145
Hunter, J. Stuart, 332
Hunter, William G., 332

I

Ideal target value, 103–107
Imitation
  opportunity identification and, 45–46
  strategy for new product evaluation, 61
Incentives, 417
Incidental interactions, 202–203
Independent claims, 350
Indirect allocations, 267
Industrial design (ID), 213–232
  aesthetic needs, 219–220
  and corporate identity, 222–223
  costs of, 220
  defined, 216
  expenditures for, 217–218
  historical overview of, 216–217
  impact of, 220–223
  importance of, 218–219
  investment in, 220–222
  need for, 217–220
  principles, 216–217
  process of (*See* Industrial design process)
  quality assessment of, 229–232
  Sonicare toothbrush, 213–215
  user experience needs, 219
Industrial design process, 223–227
  concept generation stage, 224–225
  control drawings/models, 226–227
  customer needs, identification of, 224
  engineering, manufacturing, and external vendors, 227
  final refinement step, 225–226
  management of, 227–229
  preliminary refinement phase, 225
  timing of, 229
Industrial Designers Society of America (IDSA), 216
Informal communication, 416
Information-processing view, 403
Injection molding, 291
Innovation charter, 41–42
Insulating sleeve, 337–338
Integral architecture
  project management styles, 197
  and project management styles, 197
  properties of, 191–192
Integrated product team (IPT), 27
Intel chipset, 20
Intellectual property. *See also* Patent(s)
  defined, 338
  types of, 338–339 (*See also specific types*)
Interaction graph, 202
Interaction matrix, 202
Interactions, product architecture
  fundamental, 202
  incidental, 202–203
Interactive multimedia, for concept description, 178
Internal drivers, of design for environment, 245–247
Internal searches, for concept generation, 131–135
Internet surveys, 175
Interviews
  customers selection for, 82–83
  as data collection method, 81
  documenting interactions with customers, 85–86
  eliciting customer needs data, 84–85
Introduction to Quality Engineering (Taguchi), 333
Intuition, concept selection and, 151
Invention disclosure, 340–354
  claims, outlining of, 345–346
  claims, refinement of, 349–352
  description of, writing, 346–349
  patent application, pursuance of, 352–353
  results and reflection on, 354
  strategy/plan formulation, 342–344
  studying prior inventions, 344–345
Inventors
  advice to, 354–355
  list of, 344
  patent ownership and, 340
Investment castings, 282
iRobot PackBot, 295–312
iRobot Roomba Vacuum Cleaner, 1, 5
Isaksen, Scott G., 145

J

Jamieson, Linda F., 185–186
JavaJacket (trademark), 338

K

Katzenbach, Jon R., 10
Keeney, Ralph L., 165
Kelley, Tom, 313
Kepner, Charles H., 166
Kerzner, Harold, 422
Kidder, Tracy, 10
Kim, W. Chan, 52
Kinnear, Thomas C., 94
Kleinschmidt, Elko J., 74
Kornish, Laura J., 53
Krishnan, Viswanathan, 423
Kumar, V., 117
Kurman, Melba, 313

L

La Rosa, G., 256
Land degradation, 241
Latent needs, 44
  importance of, 79
Lead users, 47, 83
  interviewing, for concept generation, 128–129
Lee, Hau L., 211
Leenders, Mark A. A. M, 233
Lefteri, Chris, 284
Lehnerd, Alvin P., 74
Leonard-Barton, Dorothy, 313
Leone, Robert P., 117
Lewis, H., 255
Licensing, patent, 357
LiDS Wheel, 247
Life cycle
  costs, design for manufacturing and, 283
  natural/product, 240–241
Life cycle assessment (LCA) tools, 252
Lightweight project organization, 27
  characteristics of, 29
Liker, Jeffrey K., 423
Lim, Kirsten, 146
Lipson, Hod, 313
Littman, Jonathan, 313
Loaded salaries, 411
Loewy, Raymond, 216
Lofthouse, V., 242, 247, 255
Logistics costs, 268–269
Looks-like prototype, 297
Loosschilder, Gerard H., 186
Lorenz, Christopher, 233
Lucie-Smith, Edward, 233

M

3M, 36
Macomber, Bryan, 186
Mahajan, Vijay, 186
Maier, Mark W., 117, 211
Make-buy decision, 265
Make-*versus*-buy decision, 265
Manufacturability, 196
Manufacturer, 264
Manufacturing. *See also* Design for manufacturing (DFM)
  assumptions and constraints, 71
  complexity, 279
  in product development, 3, 14
Manufacturing costs, 262
  assembly costs, 267, 272–273, 277–278
  bill of materials, 269–270
  components, 287–292
  components costs, 267, 274–277
  custom components, 271–272
  economies of scale, 275–276
  elements of, 267
  fixed *vs.* variable costs, 269
  of industrial design, 220
  materials costs, 286
  overhead costs, 267, 273–274
  standard components, 270–271
  support costs, 267, 278–279
  transportation costs, 266
Marginally acceptable target value, 103–107
Market-pull products, 18
Market readiness, 69
Market segmentation, 61

Marketing, in product
development, 3, 14
Markets
general risk, 398
interactions with projects,
390–391
size, estimation of, 187–188
Marks' Standard Handbook of Mechanical Engineering, 131
Marle, Franck, 32
Material chemistry, 242, 252
Materials costs, 286
Matrix organization, 27, 28
Mauborgne, Renee, 52
Maximizing, objective
function, 322
Mazursky, David, 146
McClees, Cheryl W., 75
McConnell, Steve, 32
McDonough, W., 242, 256
McDonough Braungart Design
Chemistry (MBDC), 242
McGrath, Joseph E., 132
McGrath, Michael E., 74
McKim, Robert H., 133, 146
Mechanisms and Mechanical Devices Sourcebook, 131
Meetings, 416–417
Metric, of specifications, 97
competitive benchmarking
chart, 103, 104
customer needs in relationship
with, 99–101
target values of, 103–107
Meyer, Marc H., 74
Microsoft, 302
Mies van der Rohe, Ludwig, 216
Milestone prototypes, 302–303,
311–312
Minimizing, objective
function, 323
Mission statement, 13, 70–71, 80.
See also Charter
Models. *See also* Prototypes
in concept development, 18
control, 226
cost, 110–111
hard, 225
physical appearance
models, 178
soft, 225
technical, 109–110
Modular architecture
project management
styles, 197
and project management
styles, 197
properties of, 191
types of, 192–193
Montgomery, Douglas C., 332
Moore, Geoffrey A., 73
Morgan, F. N., 370
Motorola, 64
Muller, Eitan, 186
Multivoting
concept selection and,
151, 157
screening opportunities,
48–49
workshops with, 48–49
Myers, Stewart C., 393

N

Nalebuff, Barry, 52
Needs statements, 86, 87, 88
Neeley, Lawrence W., 132, 146
Nespresso coffee maker, 373–374
Nest learning thermostat, 77–78
Net present value (NPV)
cash flows, computation
of, 378–379
defined, 374
discount rate, 378, 395–396
sensitivity analysis of,
381–382
sunk costs and, 397
time value of money and,
395–397
uncertain cash flows and,
397–400
Net-shape fabrication, 275
Netessine, S., 370
New products
evaluating opportunities
for, 65
in product planning process, 57
Noise factors, 319–321
testing, 325–326
Nonobvious, patent inventions, 340
Norman, Donald A., 94, 233
Notes, as interview documentation
method, 85
Novel patent inventions, 340

O

Objective functions, 322–323, 327
Offensive rights, 340, 348
Olins, Wally, 234
One-at-a-time experimental
plan, 325
Opportunity
defined, 36
generating, 42–47
identification of
(*See* Opportunity
identification)
screening, 48–49
types of, 36–37
Opportunity funnel, 59
Opportunity identification, 35–53
charter, establishment of,
41–42
develop promising
opportunities, 49
exceptional opportunities,
selection of, 49–51
generating opportunities,
42–47
imitation, 45–46
process of, 41–51
in product planning process,
59–60
Real-Win-Worth-it (RWW)
method, 49–51
screen opportunities, 48–49
study customers, 44
tournament structure of, 37–41
trends and, 44–45
Organizational structure
characteristics of, 29
functional/project
organization, 24, 26–27
heavyweight project
organization, 27
lightweight project
organization, 27
matrix organization, 27
product development, 24,
26–30
selection of, 27–30
Tyco International, 30
Original design and manufacturer
(ODM), 265
Orthogonal array, 325, 326,
333–336
Osborn, Alex F., 131, 134, 145
Oster, Sharon M., 393
Osterwalder, A., 370
Ostrom, A. L., 370
Otto, Kevin N., 166
Outer arrays, 326, 336
Outpatient syringes, 149–164
Outsource, 415
Overhead costs, 267–268
estimation of, 273–274
Overhead rates, 273
OXO, 223
Ozone layer, depletion of, 241

P

Pahl, Gerhard, 145, 166
Papanek, V., 242, 256
Parallel task, 402–403
Parameter design, 319.
See also Robust design
Parameter diagram (p-diagram),
321–322
Parker, Geoffrey G., 74
Part integration, 277
Partitioned DSM, 405
Patent application
claims, refinement of,
349–350
defensive disclosure, 348–349
embodiments of invention,
347–348
Patent Cooperation Treaty,
343–344, 353
provisional, 343–344, 353
pursuance, 352–353
regular, 343, 353
results and reflection on, 354
scope of, 354
specifications, 346
timing of, 342–343
type of, 343–344
Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)
application, 343–344, 353
Patent law, 339, 346
Patent(s), 338–354
claims (*See* Claims, patents)
defined, 338
description of, writing
(*See* Description, patent)
design, 339
figures for, 347
foreign, filing for, 343
invention disclosure
(*See* Invention disclosure)
licensing, 357
nonobvious, 340
searching, for concept
generation, 129–130
Paulus, P., 145
Pearson, Scott, 234
Periodic action principle, 134
Perry, Robert H., 131, 147
Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook, 131
PERT charts, 406
Phadke, Madhav S., 331
Philips Electronics, 64, 242
Philips Sonicare ProtectiveClean
electric toothbrush, 213–215
Photos
for concept description, 176
as interview documentation
method, 85
Physical appearance models, for
concept description, 178
Physical elements, of product,
190–191
Physical layouts, 24
Physical prototypes, 297, 298
analytical prototypes *vs.,* 303
Pigneur, Y., 370
Pine, B. Joseph, II, 211
Pipeline management, 69
Pipelining strategy, tasks, 415
Planning phase, product
development process, 13–16
Platform plan, products, 206–208
commonality plan, 206–207
differentiation plan, 206, 207
to evaluate and prioritize new
products, 63
trade-offs between, 207–208
Platform products, 20
Platt, Marjorie B., 234
Plegridy project, 401–421

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), 251
Porter, Michael E., 74, 393
Postal surveys, 175
Postlaunch project review, 16
Postmortem project evaluation, 420–421
Potter, Stephen, 234
Pre-project planning
- assumptions and constraints, 71–72
- mission statement, 70–71
- product vision statement, 69–70
- project timing, 69
- staffing, 72

Preferred embodiment, 347, 348
Preproduction prototypes, 302, 311
Pressman, David, 352, 355
Prices
- cost-plus pricing, 118
- purchase, concept testing and, 180
- target costing, 118–120

Primary customer needs, 88, 89
Prior art, 340, 344–345
Problem clarification, in concept generation, 124–128
Problem decomposition, 137–138
Process flow diagrams, for product development processes, 22–23, 23
Process-intensive products, 20
Processing costs, 271
Procter & Gamble, 36, 81
Product architecture, 189–209
- characteristics of, 190–192
- cluster schematic elements, 199–201
- component standardization, 195
- defined, 190, 193
- delayed differentiation, 203–206
- DFE guidelines and, 250–251
- establishment of, 197–203
- geometric layout, creation of, 201
- at Hewlett-Packard, 190
- implications of, 193–197
- integral architecture, 191–192
- interactions, identification of, 202–203
- manufacturability, 196
- modular architecture, 191
- modularity, 191, 192–193
- platform planning, 206–208
- product change, 193–194
- product development management, 196–197
- product performance, 195–196
- for product performance, 195–196
- product variety, 194–195
- purpose of, 190
- schematic of product, creation of, 197–199
- system-level design issues, 208–209

Product champion, 151
Product development
- challenges of, 6
- costs of, 2, 5
- defined, 2
- dimensions of, 2–3
- functions, 3–4
- process (*See* Product development process)
- projects (*See* Product development projects)
- time (*See* Development time)

Product development organizations, 24, 26–30
Product development process
- complex systems, 22
- concept development, 14, 15, 16–18
- customized products, 20–21
- defined, 12
- detail design, 14, 15
- distributed product development teams, 30
- economic analysis of (*See* Economic analysis)
- front-end process, 16–18
- high-risk products, 21
- market-pull products, 18
- organizations for, 24, 26–30
- phases of, 13–16
- planning phase, 13–16
- platform products, 20
- process flow diagrams for, 22–23
- process-intensive products, 20
- product-service systems, 22
- production ramp-up, 14, 15–16
- quick-build products, 21
- robust design in, 318–319
- selection in, 150–151
- spiral, 21
- system-level design, 14, 15
- technology-push products, 18–20
- testing and refinement, 14, 15
- at Tyco International, 23–25
- usefulness of, 12–13

Product development projects
- classification of, 58

Product development team (PDT), 27
Product introduction, reduced time to, 155
Product planning process, 55–73
- aggregate planning, 67–69
- assumptions and constraints, 71–72
- balancing portfolio, 65–67
- competitive strategy, 60–61
- defined, 57
- evaluate and prioritize projects, 60–69
- market segmentation, 61–62
- mission statement, 70–71
- new product platforms, 58
- opportunity identification, 59–60
- overview of, 58–59
- pre-project planning, 69–72
- product platform planning, 63
- product vision statement, 69–72
- resource allocation and, 68–69
- staffing, 72
- technology roadmapping, 64–65

Product portfolio, balancing, 65–67
Product-process coordination, 155
Product quality, impact of DFM on, 281–282
Product segment map, 62
Product-service systems, 22, 360–361
Product specifications. *See* Specifications
Product vision statement, 69–70
Production ramp-up, 14, 15–16
Product–process change matrix, 65–67
Product(s)
- architecture of (*See* Product architecture)
- changes in, 193–194
- changes to, 193–194
- customized, 20–21
- defined, 2
- differentiation, 232
- environmental impacts, 241
- functional elements of, 190
- high-risk, 21
- life cycles, 240–241
- maintenance and repair, 231–232
- manufacturing cost of, 2
- market-pull, 18
- performance of, 195–196
- physical elements of, 190–191
- platform, 20
- process-intensive, 20
- quality of, 2
- quick-build, 21
- schematic of, 197–199
- secondary systems of, 208–209
- services *vs.,* 361–362
- technology-driven, 228
- technology-push, 18–20
- use environment of, 78
- user-driven, 228
- variety of, 194

Product–technology roadmap, 64
Profit margin
- manufacturing costs and, 262
- in target costing, 118–120

Progressive die stamping, 291
Project budget, 411
Project buffer, 414
Project execution/control, 402
Project management, 401–421
- baseline project plan (*See* Baseline project plan)
- corrective actions for, 419–420
- defined, 402
- and execution of project, 415–419
- guidelines for project acceleration, 413–415
- postmortem project evaluation, 420–421
- tasks, representation of (*See* Tasks)

Project organizations, 24, 26–27, 28
- characteristics of, 29
- heavyweight, 27
- lightweight, 27

Project planning. *See also* Baseline project plan
- in concept development, 17
- defined, 402

Project reviews, 419
Project risk plan, 411–412
Project schedule, 410–411, 417
Project-specific risks, 398
Project team, 24, 26–27, 409–410, 420
- composition of, 3–4
- DFE team, 246–247
- distributed product development teams, 30
- dysfunctional, 7–8
- heavyweight, 27
- organizational structure and, 24, 26–27

ProtectiveClean model, 214
Prototypes, 295–312
- alpha, 15, 311, 367
- analytical, 297, 299, 303
- approximation level of, 310
- beta, 15, 302, 311, 367
- for communication, 301
- in concept development, 18
- 3D CAD models, 307–308
- defined, 297
- and development process, 306
- digital, 307
- elimination of, 311–312
- experimental/engineering, 312
- experimental plan for, 310
- focused, 297
- free-form fabrication system, 308
- for integration, 301–302
- for learning, 300
- looks-like, 297
- milestone, 302–303, 311–312
- physical, 297, 298, 303–304
- planning steps, 309–311
- preproduction, 302, 311

principles of, 303–307
purpose of, 309
rapid prototyping, 308
and reduction in risk of costly iteration, 304–305
to restructure task dependencies, 307
schedule for procurement/construction/and testing, 310–311
of services, 367–368
in software development processes, 302
testbed, 302
types of, 297–300
uses of, 300–303
virtual, 307
working, for concept testing, 179
works-like, 297
Provisional patent application, 343–344, 353
Published literature, searching, 130–131
Pugh, Stuart, 156, 166
Pugh concept selection, 156
Purchase intent, 181

Q

Qualitative analysis, 375, 389–392
Quality assessment, of industrial design, 229–232
Quality assurance, product development process and, 12
Quality Function Deployment (QFD), 99
Quantitative analysis, 374–375
limitations of, 388–386
net present value, 374
Quick-build products, 21

R

Raiffa, Howard, 165
Ramaswamy, Rajan, 117
Rank concepts, 158, 162
Rapid prototyping, 308
Real options, 399
Real-Win-Worth-it (RWW) method, 49–51
Rechtin, Eberhardt, 117, 211
Recyclability, 242, 252
Recycled content, 252
Red Bull, 47
Reference concept
in concept scoring, 160
in concept screening, 157
Regular patent application, 343, 353
Reinertsen, Donald G., 393, 423
Renderings, 225
for concept description, 176
Reporting relationships, 24
Resources
allocation, and product planning process, 67–69
depletion of, 241
and opportunity identification, 43–44
usage of, 232
VRIN, 44
Rini van Solingen, 32
Risitano, A., 256
Robertson, David, 211
Robust design, 317–330
analysis, 327–329
caveats, 330
compounded noise, 322
control factors/noise factors/performance metrics, identification of, 321–322
and design of experiments approach, 320
experimental plan, development of, 323–326
factor effects computation by analysis of means, 328–329
factor setpoints, 329
noise factors, testing of, 325–326
objective function formulation, 322–323
orthogonal array, 325, 326, 333–336
in product development process, 318–319
reflect and repeat, 329–330
screening experiment, 322
Robust setpoint, 318
Roofing nailer project, 121–122, 125–135
Rosbergen, Edward, 186
Ross, Phillip J., 331
Rowles, Craig M., 211
Roy, Robin, 234

S

Sabbagh, Karl, 10, 314
Sadegh, Ali, 146
Sales forecasts, in concept testing, 181–184
Sampson, S. E., 370
Sand castings, 291–292
Sanderson, Susan W., 74
Sasser, W. E., 370
Schedule, project, 410–411, 417
Schilling, Melissa A., 74
Schlesinger, L. A., 370
Schrage, Michael, 313
Schultz, Howard, 47
Sclater, Neil, 147
Scoring matrix, 155, 160–163, 169
Screener questions, 173
Screening experiment, 322
Screening matrix, 155, 156–159, 168
Screening opportunities, 48–49
Seat belt design (Ford Motor Company), 317–330
Secondary customer needs, 88, 89
Secondary systems, products, 208–209
Sectional-modular architecture, 192, 193
Seepersad, C. C., 256
Selva, Daniel, 211
Sensitivity analysis, 381–389, 398
and development costs, 381–382
and development time, 383–384
external factors, 381
internal factors, 381
and trade-offs, 384–389
and uncertainties, 384
Sequential task, 402–403
Service concept, 362–364
Services, 360
characteristics of, 361–362
design process, 362–366
downstream development activities in, 366–369
expansion, 368
functional elements of, 365–366
process flow diagram, 365–366
products *vs.,* 361–362
prototype of, 367–368
subsequent refinement, 366
Setu chair, 237–239, 245–246
SharkNinja project, 55–56, 58, 60–62, 67, 68, 71
Shimano, 44–45
Signal-to-noise ratio, 320, 323, 329
Simon, Herbert, 211
Simulation, for concept description, 178
Sketches
for concept description, 176
industrial design process and, 224
Slagmulder, Regine, 117
Slot-modular architecture, 192
Smith, Douglas K., 10
Smith, Preston G., 393, 423
Sobek II, Durward K., 423
Social networks, 47
Social trends, qualitative analysis and, 391
Soft models, 225
Software development process, prototypes in, 302
Solid waste, 241
Sonicare toothbrush, 213–215
Sorensen, Jay, 355
Sosa, Manuel E., 32, 211
Souder, William E., 165
Specialized Bicycle Components project, 96–115
Specifications, 96–117
conjoint analysis, 102, 113
defined, 96–97
establishment, timing for, 97–98
final (*See* Final specifications)
metric of (*See* Metric, of specifications)
patent application, 346
target (*See* Target specifications)
value of, 97
Spiral product development process, 21
process flow diagrams for, 23
Srinivasan, V., 186
Standard components, 270–271
costs, estimation of, 271–272
Stanley-Bostitch, 122
Starbucks, 47
Stead-Dorval, K. Brian, 145
Stereolithography, 308
Steward, Donald V., 404
Stim, Richard, 355
Stock-keeping units (SKUs), 214
Storyboard, 363
Storyboards, for concept description, 176
Strategic fit, qualitative analysis and, 390
Studio, 238
Submarining, 318
Subproblems, 128
problem decomposition into, 137–138
Sunk costs, 377
net present value and, 397
Suppliers, qualitative analysis and, 391
Supply chain, 3, 203
Support costs, 267
reduction in, 278–279
Surveys
for collecting customer data, 81
electronic mail, 175
face-to-face interactions, 174–175
Internet, 175
population, choosing, 173–174
postal, 175
and relative importance of needs, 90–91
telephone, 175
web-based screening surveys, 48–49
Sustainable development, 242
Sutherland, Jeff, 32
Swaminathan, Jayashankar M., 211
Swatch watches, 194–195

Sway, 51
Syringes, 149–164
System architecture, 203
System-level design, 14, 15
  chunks architecture, establishment of, 209
  fundamental interactions, 209
  issues, product architecture and, 208–209
  secondary systems, defining, 208–209
Systematic exploration, 135–143
  concept classification tree, 136–138
  concept combination table, 138–141
  managing process, 141–143
Systems engineering, 115

T

Taguchi, Genichi, 320, 331, 333
Target cost, 110, 118–120
Target market, survey populations and, 173
Target specifications, 97–98
  collect competitive benchmarking information, 103
  in concept development, 16–17
  establishment of, 98–107
  list of metrics, preparation of, 99–102
  reflect on results, 107
  set ideal and marginally acceptable values for, 103–107
Target value, objective function, 323
Tasks
  coordination among, 416–419
  coupled, 402–403
  critical path, 406–407
  decouple, 415
  design structure matrix, 404–405
  Gantt chart, 405–406
  list, 407–409
  parallel, 402–403
  PERT charts, 406
  pipelining, 415
  representation of, 402–407
  sequential, 402–403
Taylor, James R., 94
Technical model, 109–110
Technical University of Delft, 242
Technological trajectories, 61–62
Technology-driven products, 228
Technology leadership, 60
Technology-push products, 18–20
Technology roadmapping, 64–65
Technology S-curves, 61–62
Telenko, C., 248, 249, 256, 258
Telephone surveys, 175
Terninko, John, 146
Terwiesch, Christian, 52, 74, 145
Tesla Model S Automobile, 1, 5
Testbed prototypes, 302
Testing and refinement phase, of product development process, 14, 15
Thomas Register, 131
Thomke, Stefan H., 313, 370
Thompson, R., 284
Thumbnail sketches, 224
Tierney, Pamela, 145
Time costs, of industrial design, 220
Time/timing
  cash flows, estimation of, 376–378
  of industrial design process, 229
  of patent application, 342–343
  product introduction, 155
  of projects, 69
  services, 361
  of specification establishment, 97–98
Tooling costs, 272
Tornado chart, 384, 385
Tournament structure, of opportunity identification, 37–41
Toyota, 360
Trade-off map, 112
Trade-offs
  final specifications and, 107, 112–113
  interactions between internal and external factors, 386–387
  in platform planning, 207–208
  rules, 387–388
  sensitivity analysis and, 384–389
Trade secret, 338
Trademark
  defined, 338
  uses of, 356
Transportation costs, 266
Treacy, Michael, 74
Treffinger, Donald J., 145
Tregoe, Benjamin B., 166
Trends, opportunity identification and, 44–45
TRIZ (theory of invention problem solving), 134
Trucks, H. E., 284
Tsai, G., 146
Tuytschaevers, Thomas J., 355
Tyco International
  organizational structure, 30
  product development process for, 23–25
  wireless security alarm, 11–12

U

Ulrich, Karl T., 52, 53, 74, 117, 145, 192, 210, 211, 314
Urban, Glen L., 94, 103, 161, 166
Usability, quality of, 230
Use environment, 78
Usefulness, patent inventions, 340
User anthropology, 44
User-driven products, 228
Utility patents, 340
Uzumeri, Mustafa, 74

V

Validity, of patent(s), 340
Value, of specification, 97
Van Alstyne, Marshall W., 74
van Hemel, 242
van Hemel, C., 256
Vance, Ashley, 10
VanGundy, Arthur B., 52, 133, 145
Variable costs
  economies of scale and, 275
  fixed costs *vs.,* 269
Vendors
  black box supplier design and, 276–277
  capabilities of, 200
Verbal description, 176
Vertical integration, 265
Veryzer, Robert W., 234
Videos
  for concept description, 178
Virtual prototypes, 307
Visual equity, 223
von Hippel, Eric, 83, 94, 146
von Oech, Roger, 133, 146
Vriens, Marco, 186
VRIN (valuable, rare, inimitable, nonsubstitutable) resources, 44

W

W. L. Gore Associates, 18
Wall, Matthew B., 314
Wallace, K., 145
Walton, Mary, 10, 314
Ward, Allen C., 423
Water pollution, 241
Wazer desktop water jet cutting machine, 261–283
Web-based survey, concept selection and, 151
Webber, M. E., 256
Weekly status memo, 417
Wheelwright, Stephen C., 32, 73, 74, 314, 407, 422
Whitney, Daniel E., 284
Wiersema, Fred, 74
Willyard, Charles H., 75
Wireless security alarm (Tyco), 11–12
Wittink, Dick R., 186
Wood, Kristin L., 166
Working prototypes, for concept testing, 179
Works-like prototype, 297
Workshops with multivote, 48–49
Wyner, Gordon, 332

Y

Yang, M. C., 146
Yang, Maria C., 186

Z

Zhu, April, 146
Zipcar, 359–369
  concept development, 364
Zlotin, Boris, 146
Zusman, Alla, 146